John Downe. e. c. d. a. 7. 1685. p. 49

THE HIDDEN TREASURES OF THE Art of Physick;

Fully Discovered.

IN FOUR BOOKS.

BIBLIOTHECA BODLEIANA

CONTAINING

1. *A Physical Description of MAN.*
2. *The Causes, Signs and Cures of all Diseases incident to the Body.*
3. *The general Cure of Wounds, Tumors and ulcers.*
4. *A general Rule, for making all kind of Medicines; with the use and Nature of Distilled Waters, Juyces, Decoctions, Conserves, Powders, Electuaries, Plaisters, &c.*

To which is added Three necessary Tables.

1. *Sheweth the Contents of the* Four Books.
2. *Explaineth all the Terms of Art which are used in Physick and Chyrurgery.*

Explaining the Nature *and* Use *of* Simples *what they are, and where they grow.*

A Work whereby the diligent Reader may, without the help of other Authors, attain to the Knowledge of the Art above-named.

The Third Edition, with Additions.

By John Tanner, *Student in Physick and Astrology.*

London, Printed by *John Streater*, and are to be sold by *George Sawbridge*, at the Bible on *Ludgate-Hill*. 1672.

20. C. 7.

TO

My truly Honoured, and Worthily reſpected Friend Mr. *William Beal*, of Little *Miſſenden* in the County of *Buckingham*;

J. T. Wiſheth all Health, Happineſs and Proſperity in this Life, and Eternal Glory in the Life to come.

Honoured Sir,

THat *which (for the moſt part) emboldeneth Men to dedicate their Labours unto any Parſonage, is the affinity between the matter of the Work which they preſent, and the Mind of him to whom it is preſented. I have here ſwerved from this cuſtome, being altogether too weak to preſent you with a Work ſutable to your far more excellent parts: Yet when I conſidered my Deſign, viz. to ſerve my*

Countrey, and to instruct the unlearned in this so excellent and necessary a Science; *I thought none so fit to patronize and encourage a piece of this Nature, than one who heartily desires the Publique Good; which publique Spirit and charitable Principle, I have (in a more than ordinary manner) observed in you, and your poor Neighbours (to their comfort) are daily sensible of. Sir I need not tell you how useful a Subject of this Nature may prove to the Commonalty, whose ignorance of their own condition whilest they are Sick, and want of strength of body or purse to confer with a Physitian, proves fatal to many a poor Christian in this Nation. I shall leave this to the consideration of the Reader, and humbly crave your favourable acceptance of these my weak endeavors, and First-Fruits of my few years hard Study: Which if I obtain, my Book, though a stripling, and very impotent of it self; yet under your favourable protection, I am confident, will manfully obvert and defend it self against the venemous Bitings of Slande-*

rous

rous Tongues, from which it muſt expect not a little oppoſition. I hope, nay confidently believe, that this poor Infant, though but meanly clad, will find your encouragement being an honeſt man's Child, no Vagrant. I beſeech you, Sir, *excuſe my confidence, who dare thus ruſh into your preſence; and demand, without any merit of my own, your favourable protection.*

But it is your good Nature, of which I am an Admirer, that hath ſo far emboldened me. Had Nature been more liberal to me in Expreſſions, or had tipt my Tongue with Eloquence; yet I durſt not make uſe of it to you, for I know you delight not in it; nor is my ſelf therewith affected: Therefore, in all Humility, Sincerity, and plain Language, I ſubſcribe my ſelf.

Your moſt affectionate

SERVANT,

John Tanner.

TO THE

READER.

It is not Vain-Glory, (Courteous Reader) Arrogancy or Preſumption, that hath put me upon this Deſign, *viz.* publiſhing this Tractate of Phyſick: But for ſome years (having abandoned the hunting after all gliſtering ſhews of happineſs) I have applyed my Mind to the ſtudy of Nature; and finding nothing in the World that God, the Great Creator, hath kept to himſelf, but made ſubject to the induſtrious Capacity of man's ſoaring Brain. And that the ſame God that infuſed into man a conceiveable Mind to underſtand the Myſteries of Nature, alſo gave a Tongue able to expreſs his Conceptions to another, and a Hand to write it for the benefit of Poſterity. As there is nothing can make a man approach nearer to the perfection of Nature which he loſt in his Fall, then painful ſearching into the Secrets of Nature: ſo there is nothing in Nature can make a man more glorifie his Maker, then communicating what he hath found by

Search

Search and Induſtry to Poſterity. Theſe Conſiderations put me upon the Enterpriſe, not forgetting the ſaying of *Plato*, and the *Stoicks*, *Non nobis ſolum nati ſumus, ortuſq; noſtri partem patria vendicat, partem parentes, partem amici. Quæ in terris gignuntur, ad uſum hominum omnia creari, homines autem hominum cauſa eſſe generatos, ut ipſi inter ſe aliis alii prodeſſe poſſent:* We are not born for our ſelves alone, but partly for our Country, partly for our Parents, and partly for our Friends: What ever the Earth hath produced, was created for the uſe of Man; Man alſo was created for Man's ſake, that they might among themſelves profit one by another. Theſe conſiderations (I ſay) moved me to purſue this Deſign, which (though it will not ſatisfie every detracting Critick, and ſelf-conceited Practitioner) I hope will find acceptance among thoſe for whom I principally intended it.

Courteous Reader, I have collected out of the Works of moſt of the Antient and Modern Phyſitians now extant among us, this Compendium or Abridgment of Phyſick, much of which I have ſealed and confirmed by the *Probatum eſt* of my own Experience, as Providence hath given me occaſion. I have not put this to view in competition with the Works of ſo grave and Learned Rabbies, but for the good of thoſe that want ſuch helps, and are unacquainted with the Latine Tongue; but more particularly for theſe reaſons.

Firſt,

First, because many industrious Students have not a Purse to purchase so many Authors.

Secondly, others have not a Brain to peruse such large Volumes, but are at first better able to apprehend much lying in a little compass, the use of which (as an Introduction) will give them light to pass thorough larger Volums with more ease. Thirdly, that people void of Learning, and of mean Capacities, may be better able to judge of a Disease by the Symptomes, and give a better Information to an absent Physitian, than to set him to juggle in the Piss-pot. Fourthly, Ladies and Gentlewomen who are wont to help their poor sick Neighbours, may be the better enabled, and be forewarned by dangerous Symptomes, to haste to the Learned Physitian. Lastly, that all Women may the better understand the Physitians Directions, and with more Prudence govern the Sick.

The first Book was the Fruits of my wandering Meditations, which I once intended not for publick View. Much of the second was my daily Collections, which my Practice did lead me to.

In the Theory, I interlaced the Judgements of Authors, making choice of that which seemed most consentaneous to Reason, and my own Experience. In the Practique Part, I have quoted Medicines from several Authors, as left by them: Some I have somewhat altered, and that for two Reasons.

First,

First, some I have altered to make them more strong and efficacious.

Secondly, others I altered, when I was enforced to use (for want of one ingredient) another of the same Nature. This Book swelled to such a bigness, that I was forced to contract my self in the two last, and to be somewhat briefer than I intended.

Thus, courteous Reader, I have, for thy sake, exposed my self to the dangerous and sharp Teeth of envious Detractors, which is a great hazard, especially in this polished Age, among so many fine & curious Wits, who scarcely can approve of any thing, though never so judiciously composed, Yet if it find acceptation with thee, I have my end, and shall receive sufficient encouragement to undertake somewhat more for thy benefit; which I shall suddainly do, if I find this give content. If any fault committed by my Pen, or the Press, pass uncorrected, excuse it. Accept it with a chearful heart, and as I freely impart, so do thou, whatever profit or knowledge thou gainest thereby, freely for the good of thy Neighbour, to the honour of God, and praise of this Laudable Science, and for the further encouragement of him, who now is, farther to be,

Thine in all Offices of Love,

September 2. 1667.

J. TANNER.

A general TABLE *of all the Principal* Contents *of this* BOOK.

The Contents of the first Book.

Chap. 1. *A physical Description of Man.* page 1
Chap. 2. *A more particular Description of Man.* 3
Chap. 3. *A Description of the Head.* 4
Chap. 4. *Of the parts belonging to the Head.* 7
Chap. 5. *Of the Stomach, and its Faculties.* 12
Chap. 6. *Of the Heart.* 14
Chap. 7. *Of the Lungs, Liver, &c.* 16
Chap. 8. *Of the Reins and Kidneys.* 19
Chap. 9. *Of the Generative parts.* 21
Chap. 10. *The Conclusion.* 24

The Contents of the Second Book.

Chap. 1. *Of the nature of Physick, and office of a physitian,* pag. 26
Chap. 2. *Of diseases of the Head: Cephalea and Megrim.* 28
Chap. 3. *Of the Frensie.* 33
Chap. 4. *Of Madness.* 37
Chap. 5. *Of the Apoplexy, Lethargy, and sleepy disease.* 38
Chap. 6. *Of the Vertigo.* 42
Chap. 7. *Of the Palsie.* 45
Chap. 8. *Of the Convulsion.* 47
Chap. 9. *Of a Catarrh or Defluxion.* 50
Chap. 10. *Of diseases of the Eyes, proceeding from obstruction of the optick Nerves.* 55
Chap. 11. *Of a Cataract.* 58
Chap. 12. *Of the enlarging or straitning of the Pupilla.* 65

Chap. 13.

Chap. 13. Of the Pin and Web. page 63
Chap. 14. Of the inflammation of the Eyes. 64
Chap. 15. Of the Cancer, and Rupture of the Cornea. 69
Chap. 16. Of Diseases of the corners of the Eyes and Eye-lids. 70
Chap. 17. Of Diseases of the Ears. 74
Chap. 18. Of Diseases of the Nostrils. 79
Chap. 19. Of bleeding at the Nose. 83
Chap. 20. Of the Diseases of the Tongue. 86
Chap. 21. Of the Diseases of the Teeth. 88
Chap. 22. Of the Diseases of the Gums. 90
Chap. 23. Of ulcers of the Mouth. 91
Chap. 24. Of a loose and inflamed Columella, and Diseases of the Tensils. 92
Chap. 25. Of the Quinzie. 93
Chap. 26. Of the Asthma. 96
Chap. 27. Of the Pleurisie and inflammation of the Lungs. 98
Chap. 28. Of Empyema. 101
Chap. 29. Of spitting of blood. 102
Chap. 31. Of the Consumption or Ptisick. 104
Chap. 32. Of the palpitation of the Heart. 108
Chap. 33. Of swooning or Syncope. 110
Chap. 34. Of want of Appetite. 112
Chap. 35. Of a depraved Appetite. 114
Chap. 36. Of the Thirsty disease. 116
Chap. 37. Of evil Digestion. 117
Chap. 38. Of the Hiccough. 119
Chap. 39. Of Vomiting. 120
Chap. 40. Of Cholera. 122
Chap. 41. Of pain in the stomach. 124
Chap. 42. Of the inflammation, ulcer, and imposthume of the stomach. 126
Chap. 43. Of the Chollick. 128
Chap. 44. Of the Iliack passion. 130
Chap. 45. Of the Lientery and Cæliack passion. 132
Chap. 46. Of the Flux Diarrhæa. 134
Chap. 47. Of the Dysentery or bloody-flux. 136
Chap. 48. Of the Tenasmus. 139
Chap. 49. Of the Flux of the Liver. 140
Chap. 50. Of the Worms. 142
Chap. 51. Of the immoderate Flux of the Hemorrhoids. 144
Chap. 52. Of the pain of the Hemorrhoids. 146
Chap. 53. Of a hot distemper of the Liver. 147
Chap. 54. Of the inflammation of the Liver. 149

Chap. 55. Of the obſtruction of the Liver. 152
Chap. 56. Of the Schirrus of the Liver. 154
Chap. 57. Of the Jaundice. 155
Chap. 58. Of the Dropſie. 157
Chap. 59. Of the obſtruction, inflammation, and tumor of the Spleen. 162
Chap. 60. Of Hypochondriack melancholy. 163
Chap. 61. Of the Scurvy. 165
Chap. 62. Of the ſtone in the Kidneys. 167
Chap. 63. Of the ſtone in the Bladder. 171
Chap. 64. Of the inflammation of the Reins and Bladder. 173
Chap. 65. Of the ulcer of the Reins and Bladder. 174
Chap. 66. Of extraordinary piſſing. 176
Chap. 67. Of involuntary piſſing. 178
Chap. 68. Of the ſtoppage of the urine and ſtrangury. 179
Chap. 69. Of the ſcalding of the urine. 181
Chap. 70. Of piſſing of blood. 182
Chap. 71. Of the Green-ſickneſs. 184
Chap. 72. Of the ſtoppage of the Terms. 186
Chap. 73. Of the immoderate Menſtruall-flux. 188
Chap. 74. Of the whites. 190
Chap. 75. Of the Mother. 192
Chap. 76. Of the inflammation, ulcer, and hard ſwelling of the womb. 196
Chap. 77. Of the ſwelling of the womb by wind or water. 199
Chap. 78. Of the falling down of the womb. 201
Chap. 79. Of Barrenneſs. 203
Chap. 80. Of Miſcarriage. 206
Chap. 81. Of hard Travel in Child-birth. 208
Chap. 82. Of the Gout and Sciatica. 211
Chap. 83. Of the one day Feaver. 216
Chap. 84. Of the Feaver Synochus non putridus. 217
Chap. 85. Of continual putrid Feavers. 218
Chap. 86. Of the Hectick Feaver. 223
Chap. 87. Of the Tertian Ague. 225
Chap. 88. Of the Quotidian Ague. 257
Chap. 89. Of the Quartane Ague. ibid.
Chap. 90. Of the Peſtilence. 230
Chap. 91. Of the ſmall-pox and Meaſles. 235

The Contents of the Third Book.

Chap. 1. *Of a green Wound.* page 238
Chap. 2. *Of a contused Wound and a Bruise* 242
Chap. 3. *Of Wounds by biting or stinging of any Creature, venimous or not.* 244
Chap. 4. *Of a Wound in the Nerves, Tendons, Ligaments, Veins and Arteries.* 245
Chap. 5. *Of Luxations and Fractures.* 247
Chap. 6. *Of Accidents, happening to wounded persons.* 250
Chap. 7. *Of sanguine Tumors.* 253
Chap. 8. *Of Cholerick Tumors.* 257
Chap. 9. *Of phlegmatick Tumors.* 258
Chap. 10. *Of Melancholy Tumors.* 262
Chap. 11. *Of ulcers.* 265
Chap. 12. *Rules for Vomiting and purging.* 268

The Contents of the Fourth Book.

Chap. 1. *Of Distilled Waters.* page 270
Chap. 2. *Of Syrups.* 275
Chap. 3. *Of Decoction and Juyces.* 288
Chap. 4. *Of Lohocks.* 289
Chap. 5. *Of preserves, Conserves, sugars and Lozenges.* 291
Chap. 6. *Of Troches.* 293
Chap. 7. *Of pills.* 298
Chap. 8. *Of powders.* 303
Chap. 9. *Of Electuaries.* 309
Chap. 10. *Of oyls* 316
Chip. 11. *Of ointments.* 319
Chap. 12. *Of pluisters.* 328

CHAP.

CHAP. I.

A Phyſical Deſcription of MAN.

THe Omnipotent and wiſe Creator, having Created all things out of nothing, and out of a rude and undigeſted lump or maſs (according to his Will, and by his Word) brought all things into a decent Frame and comely Structure: out of a confuſed Nothing wrought the Heaven and the Earth, out of that which was dark and void he created Light, he ſeparated the Waters from the Earth, and gave bounds to the unruly Waves; and indued the dry and barren Earth with a Prolifical virtue, richly adorning it with Graſs, Herbs, and Fruit-trees; he made the Sun, Moon, and Stars, to divide the Light from the Darkneſs, to enlighten and rule both Day and Night, to be for Signs, to diſtinguiſh Seaſons, Days, and Years; by his Word he created every living thing that moveth in the Sea and in the Earth. Having thus far, I ſay, proceeded in his ſo excellent and admirable Workmanſhip of Creation, he made MAN a Summary of the Worlds Fabrick, a ſmall Draught of the Divine Nature: he was made after other Creatures, not only as the moſt perfect, but as the Super-intendent and Maſter of all things created, *Quod dominetur in piſces maris, & in volucres cœli, & in pecudes, & in univerſam terram, atque in omnia reptilia reptantia ſuper terram*, To rule over the Fiſh of the Sea, and over the Fowls of the Air, and over the Cattel, and over the Earth, and over every creeping thing that creepeth upon the Earth.

In Man he cloſed up, and ended his Work; on Man he ſtamped his Seal and ſign of his Power, on him he hath imprinted his Image and Superſcription, his Arms and his Portraicture. *Dixit Deus, Faciamus hominem ad imaginem noſtram, ſecundum ſimilitudinem noſtram*, God ſaid, Let us make Man in our Image, after our likeneſs: In the Creation of Man, God ſeemeth to deliberate and take counſel with himſelf, how to Epitomize and gather together all his Works in ſo ſmall a Compaſs, to contract his (ſo large) Book of Creation, into ſo ſmall a Volume.

He is called the *Microcosm*, or little World, the recapitulation of all things, the ligament of Angels and Beasts, heavenly and earthly, spiritual and corporal things, the perfection of the whole Work, the honour and miracle of Nature. He created him naked, being a pure, neat and delicate Creature, made up of thin, subtil, well tempered and seasoned humors, innocent, and far more beautiful than the rest. He was created upright, but little touching the Earth, quite opposite to the Vegetable Plant, whose Root is therein fixed; far different also from the Beast, who is a mean between a Plant and himself, and goeth downward; his two Extreams tending to the bounds of the Horizon: This upright gate belongeth only unto man, as the holiest & most divine Creature, his hand tending to the Heavens, on which he looks, and there beholds himself as in a Glass, according to that of *Ovid*:

Os homini sublime dedit, cœlumque videre
Jussit, & erectos ad sydera tollere vultus.

Which I English thus:

He gave man lofty looks and upright gate,
To view the Heav'ns and thereon contemplate.

His Body being thus formed of pure subtil Earth, as a house and habitation for the Soul, God breathed in him the breath of Life, and he became a living Creature. So in the ordinary Generation and Formation, which is made of the seed in the Womb, Nature observeth the self-same order; the Body is first formed as well by the Elementary force which is in the Seed, and the heat of the Matrix, as by the Celestial influence of the Sun; according to the Adagy, *Sol & homo generant hominem*, the Sun and Man do engender Man; which is done (according to the Opinion of most) in such order, that the first seven days, the seed of the man and woman mingle and curdle like Cream, which is the beginning of Conception; the second seven days, the seed is changed into a formless bloody substance, and concocted into a thick and indigested mass of flesh, the proper matter of the Child: the next seven days, out of this lump is produced and fashioned a gross body, with the three most noble parts, *viz.* The Liver, Heart and Brain: the fourth seven days, or near thirty, the whole body is ended, perfected, joynted, and organized, and becometh a Body fit to entertain the Soul, which invests it self into the Body (as some think) about the seven and thirtieth or fortieth day: at the third Moneth, or thereabouts, the Infant hath motion and sense;

at

at the ninth Moneth is brought forth. These times cannot be so exactly prefixed, but that by the strength or debility of the Seed or Marrix, it may be either hastned or prolonged. But I shall forbear further discourse of the Soul, it not being my task to act the part of a Divine; and come to a more particular description of Man, yet not so, as to act the part of an Anatomist.

CHAP. II.

A more particular Description of the Body of Man.

THe Body of Man consists of above two hundred Bones, and as many Cartilages, which are as the basis and upholding Pillars of the whole Building; the Joynts are compacted with many Ligaments, and cloathed with innumerable Membranes, the Members are supplied with above thirty pair of sensitive Nerves, as with little Cords; and all besprinkled with as many Arteries, like Water-pipes, conveying vital spirits to all parts: The empty places are filled up with almost four hundred Muscles and flesh of divers sorts, as with Flocks, all covered over with skin. In him are the temperament of all Creatures; some there are who have the stomach of an Ostrich, others the heart of a Lion, too too many have the heart of a Dog, not a few conditioned like a Sow, and many by nature very like to the Ass.

Man for whom all things was made, is nourished by the Balsamick Spirits of Vegetables, Animals and Minerals, and therefore doth consist of all these Faculties, that spring up as a token of health or sickness: Balm, Violets and Germander produce fruit in Man, *viz.* The Spirits of the Heart, Brain and Liver: Likewise the Nettle, *Aron* and *Crowfoot*, as Scabs, Soars and Pushes; Mineral separations also may appear in Man, of Vitriol, Allum, Salt and Tartar, *&c.* as the Leprosie, Elephantiasis, Morphew and Cancer: Nor is Man free from Mineral Generations, as Gold, Silver, Tin, Copper, Iron, Lead; the Heart, the Brain, Liver, Reins, Gall and Spleen: In the body of Man is likewise to be found Quarries of Stone, *viz.* in the Bladder and Kidneys, which serve not to build, but to destroy the Fabrick.

The Celestial Planets have a Dukedom in this little World; the moistning power of the Moon is represented by the Marrow which flows from the Brain; in the Genital part is *Venus* seated, Eloquence and Comelinesse is the effects of nimble-witted *Mercury*, the Sun hath a near affinity to the *Heart*; benevolent *Jupiter* hath his

ſeat in the Liver; the Fountain of nutritive Blood; the fiery fury of *Mars* is lodged in the Gall; the ſpungy and hollow Milt, the ſeat and receptacle of melancholick humors, is a perfect repreſentation of the cold Planet *Saturn*. Indeed the Spirits of the Body do manifeſt and hold forth the quinteſſence of all things, the four humors in Man anſwer to the four Elements; Choler which is hot and dry, repreſenteth the Fire; hot and moiſt blood, the Air; Flegm cold and moiſt, the water; cold and dry melancholy the Earth.

I may yet proceed further in declaring the harmony between the great and little World: The Belly of man may fitly repreſent the Land or main Continent; the *Vena Cava* the Mediterrenean Sea; the Bladder, the Weſtern Sea, into which the Rivers of the Body do all run and diſcharge themſelves; his Mouth anſwereth to the Eaſt quarter of the World, his Fundament to the Weſt, his Navel to the South, and his Back to the North. The Body of Man you ſee, is an admirable Creature, the meaſure of all things, the pattern of the Univerſe and Epitome of the World; the Horizon of corporal and incorporeal things. I ſhall conclude with the ſaying of *Zoroaſtres*, O Man! the workmanſhip of moſt powerful Nature, for it is the moſt artificial Maſter-piece of Gods hand.

CHAP. III.

A Deſcription of the Head.

THe Head of a Man ſeemeth to offer it ſelf, as the firſt thing to be conſidered; it doth poſſeſs the higheſt place in the Body, and repreſents the uppermoſt and Angelical Region; it is the Fort of mans Minde, the Seat of Reaſon, the Habitation of Wiſdom, the Shop of Memory, Judgment and Cogitations: It containeth the Brain, cold and ſpongeous by nature, incloſed with two skins, the one more hard and thick, joyning it ſelf to the Brain-pan, called *Dura Mater*; the other more thin and eaſie, wherein lieth the Brain incloſed, called *Pia Mater*, it is ſoft and tender to the Brain, and nouriſheth it, as a loving Mother doth her young and tender Babe; from *Pia Mater* doth iſſue the Sinews and Marrow that deſcendeth and falleth down into the Reins of the Back: In the Brain, is the ſeat and throne of the rational Soul, in which are a very great number of Veins and Arteries planted, ramifying (or branching) themſelves through all the ſubſtance thereof, adminiſtring to the Brain, both Spirit and Life, vital and nutrimental nouriſhment, which is brought by the aforeſaid ſmall Veins and Arteries from the Heart and Liver; and con-

coctcd

cocted and reconcocted, elaborated and made very subtil, passing through those woven and interlaced, turning and winding passages, in which labyrinth the vital Spirit often passing and re-passing, is perfected and refined, and becomes animal.

It is not lost labour, if we consider, how the *Pia Mater* divideth the substance of the Brain, and lappeth it into certain Cells or Divisions, *viz.* the substance of the Brain is divided into three Ventricles, of which the foremost containeth the most, the middlemost less, the hindermost the least. In the foremost part of the Brain Imagination is seated, in the middlemost Judgment, in the hindermost Memory: Imagination is hot and dry in quality, quick and active, from whence it cometh that frantick men, and such as are sick of hot and burning Maladies, are excellent in that which belongs to Imagination; many upon such a distemper have been excellent in Poetry and Divination, it never sleepeth, but is always working, whether the man be sleeping or waking; and by the Vapors that come from the Heart, from variety of Cogitations, which, wanting the regulation of Judgment, (when man sleepeth) becomes a Dream.

Hence it appeareth, that Subtilty, Promptitude, and that which they commonly call Wit, belongeth to a hot Imagination: It is active, stirring, undertaketh all, and setteth all the rest to work, it gathereth the kinds and figures of things, both present, by the service of the five Senses, and absent by the common Sense.

Judgment is seated in the midst of the Brain, there to bear rule over the other Faculties, it is the Judge of the little World, the seat of the rational Soul, and the Judge of mens Actions. If you would know the mean, whereby it knoweth and judgeth of things, *Aristotle* and many others have thought that the Spirit knoweth by the help of the Senses, and that the Understanding without the Senses is but as white paper. *Nil est in intellectu, quod non fuerit prius in sensu.* There is nothing in the Understanding which was not first in the Sense.

This opinion is false, because the seeds of Science and Vertue are insinuated into our Spirits, else is the state of the reasonable Soul worse than the vegetative or sensitive, which of themselves are able to exercise their Functions: It were absurd to think that so Noble and divine a Faculty should beg assistance of so vile and corruptible as the Senses, which apprehend only the simple accidents, not the natures nor essence of things. Again, were it so, it must follow, that they that have their Senses most perfect, should be most witty; whereas we many times see the contrary.

Yet let no man think, that the Spirit hath no service from the Senses, for in the beginning, discovery and invention of things, the Senses do much service to the Spirit, but the Spirit dependeth not upon the Senses.

Some are of opinion that it is hot and moist in quality, others say, that a dry temperature is proper to the Understanding, whereby it comes to pass, that aged persons excel those in Understanding that are young, because as years increase, moisture doth decrease in the Brain; hence it comes to pass, that melancholick persons that are afflicted with want, and fast much, are wise and ingenious, for heaviness and fasting are great driers: *Splendor siccus, animus sapientissimus: vexatio dat intellectum,* heat and drought refineth the wit; affliction giveth understanding, and that is the reason that great persons that feed highly, and take little care, and seldome lie under vexation or affliction, for the most part are none of the wisest: Beasts that are of a dry temperature, as Ants, Bees, Elephants, *&c.* are wise and ingenious: On the contrary, they that are of a moist Constitution, are stupid and without spirit, as are Swine. Memory is seated in the hinder Cell of the Brain, as the grand Accountant or Register of the little World, whose office is to record things past, present, or to come: Some say its temperature is cold and dry, and that is the reason that melancholick people have good memories; others, that it is moist, because Children have better memories than old Men; men are more apt for Memory in the Morning by reason of the moisture gained by sleep in the Night: the common people do more esteem of memory, and delight more in it than of the other two; it maketh a great shew in the world, and they judge those who have a good memory to be very wise, esteeming more of Science than of Wisdom, but of the three it is the least, and that which fools do many times enjoy, for seldom is an excellent memory joyned with understanding and wisdom, for their temperatures are contrary; hence comes that ill course in the instructing of youth, *viz.* to make them have by heart all they learn, and so stuff and gorge memory with other mens good, and starve the understanding. We see those that have all *Aristotle* and *Cicero* in their heads, yet are the veriest sots in the world.

Many have been very excellent in this Faculty, *Seneca* repeated two thousand Names as they were first spoken; he also hearing two hundred Verses, rehearsed them, and began at the last. *Cyrus* and *Scipio* knew every Souldiers Name in their Armies. *Mithridates* learned the language of two and twenty Nations: *Esdras* the Priest had the whole Jewish Doctrine by heart; *Julius Cæsar* would dictate to four at the same time; and that which is more strange, *Pliny* would dictate to one, hear another, and read at the same instant. As these were so excellent and acute in memory, others were as dull: *Atticus* could never learn the Letters of the Alphabet by heart: others could not count above four: it is said, that *Theodore Beza* two years before he died, as he languished, his Mind grew so feeble that

that he forgat things present, yet held those things, which were printed in his mind before time, when his understanding and memory was good. What shall we say of *Messala Corvinus*, who forgat his own name? Or *Franciscus Barbarus* of *Athens*, a very learned man in the Greek tongue, having received a blow on his head with a stone, forgat his learning, which he had spent the greatest part of his time upon, yet remembred all things else? These things are brought to pass (without doubt) either by the strength or debility of mens genitures, and from directions, and accidents thence proceeding. Wit and understanding, and all the faculties of the soul depends on a certain temperament: and hence it comes to pass (and oftentimes) that those that are acute, and wise in some things, are stupid and dull in others some. But I have too far digressed, I must return to my rode again.

CHAP. IV.

Of the parts belonging to the Head.

HAving given you a brief and general description of the Head, and of the intellective faculty of man; it is meet now to treat of the sensitive part, which will lead me to describe the particular parts of the head.

The sensitive faculty hath its residence in the *Pia Mater*, it is that which gives vertue to all the particular senses, and keeps a harmony among them: they are five in number, *viz.* Seeing, Hearing, Smelling, Tasting, Feeling: Although these are all united in one in the brain, yet operatively they are distinguished in their several seats, and places of residence.

The sight resides in the eyes, and particularly in the Crystalline humor, they are two in number, and collateral, planted in the highest stage as *Centinels*, they are the luminaries of the *Microcosm*; *Galen* saith, the brain and the head were made for the eye, that they might be in the highest as a beholder in a Tower, they are next in nature unto the Soul; for in the eye is seen and known the disturbances and griefs, gladness and joys of the Soul, as Love, Wrath, and other Passions; they be compounded and made of seven Tunicles or Coats, and three humors, they proceed out of the substance of the brain, and come through the *Pia Mater*, of whose substance they take a panicle, to defend it from annoyance. They meet and are united into one sinew, about half an inch in length, before they enter the skull, and after divided into two, each goeth into one eye, they are called *Nervi Optici*, the Optick Nerves, and through these, are brought the visible

Spirits to the eye. These are the most noble outward parts of the body, in beauty, utility, mobility and activity. They are to the visage, that which the visage is to the body, they are the face of the face; and because they are tender delicate and pretious, they are fenced and rampar'd on all sides, with skins, lids, brows, and hair. The object of the eye or sight is colour (according to the common opinion) which is the adherent quality in bodies, whereof there are six simples as white, yellow, red, purple, green, and blew: the compounds are infinite; to speak more fully, the true object is light; which is never without colour. and without which the colours are invisible.

The sense of *Seeing* excelleth all the rest in many things; it apprehendeth farther off, and extendeth it self even to the Stars. It is certainly reported, that *Strabo* had such acute eyes, that from *Lilybæum*, he could discern ships, going forth of the *Carthaginian* Haven, and could number them, the distance was 135. miles. It hath more variety of objects, for to all things, and generally in all, there is light and colour the objects of the eyes, as I hinted before. It is most exquisite; for it is most exact, in the least and finest thing that presents it self. It is more prompt and sudden, for it apprehendeth even in a moment and without motion, when the other senses require motion and time. It enjoyeth a liberty incomparable to others: the eye seeth, or seeth not, and therefore hath lids to open or shut: it is active, all the rest purely passive. But that which is most noble in this sense is, that the privation of the object thereof, which is darkness, brings fear, and that naturally, because then a man findeth himself robbed of so excellent a guide: the sight in the light, is instead of company, wherein man much delighteth.

It would fill a large volume, to describe the Eye in every particular, but that which I have said thereof, is sufficient, it being not my task to write an Anatomy. Hearing is the next sense to be considered, whose residence is in the eares, it is in quality cold and dry, under the dominion of *Saturn*. They are placed on the outside of the head, in the self-same height as the eyes are, as the Scouts of the body, Porters of the Spirit, the Receivers and Judgers of the sounds, which alwayes ascend. They have their entrance oblique and crooked, that so the sound may not enter all at once, whereby the sense of hearing might be hindred, and not well able to judge: and again that the sounds being fugitive, might there lurk, and abide under his shadow, till the instruments of hearing have gotten possession thereof. The Sinews that are the organs of hearing, spring each from the Brain, and when they come to the hole of the Eare, they are writhed together; the end is like a worm or little teat, into which is received the sound, and from thence carried to the common wits to distinguish. The object of the ear or hearing in a sound, or noise proceeding from the encoun-

ter

ter of two bodies: A pleasant and melodious sound sweetneth and appeaseth the Spirit, consequently the body too, and drives maladies from them both; the sharp and penetrant, doth trouble and wound the Spirit. This sense hath many singularities; for the service of the body, the sight is most necessary, but for the Spirit, hearing hath the superiority. It is Spiritual, the agent of understanding; many that have been blind, have been great and wise Philosophers, but never any that were deaf. In brief, science, truth, and virtue, hath no other entrance into the Soul, but by the Ear. Christianity teaches that faith cometh by hearing, which the sight doth rather hurt than help. Faith is the belief of those things, which are not seen; which belief is acquired by hearing. For all these reasons and many more that might be inserted, the wisest have so much commended Hearing, the pure guardian from all corruption; the health of the inward man.

Smelling is seated in the Nose, governed by *Mars*, and is hot and dry in quality; and therefore Martial Creatures, or such as are hot and dry of constitution, excel in this faculty, as Doggs, *&c.* From the brain cometh two Sinews to the holes of the brain pan, where beginneth the concavity of the Nose, and these two are the proper Organs or Instruments of smelling, they have heads like paps, into which is received the virtue of smelling, and presenting it to the common sense. Over these two Organs, is placed *Colatorium*, or the nostrils, which concavity or ditch was made for two causes; first, that the air, that bringeth the spirit of smelling, might rest therein, till it were received by its proper Organs. Secondly, that the excrements of the Brain might be hidden under it, till it be fit to be ejected. From this concavity goeth two holes into the mouth, of which we may take notice of three conveniences: First, that when a mans mouth is closed, either by eating or sleeping, that then air might come through them to the Lungs: else a man must be forced to hold his mouth open always. Secondly, they are helpful to a mans speech, for when one or both of those passages are stopped a man speaketh in the Nose, as we commonly say. Thirdly, they are useful in the cleansing of the concavities of the nose, either by snuffing, or drawing it through the mouth. The object of smell is an odour, or scent, which is a fume rising from an odoriferous object, ascending to the nose, to the ventricles of the brain: the strong and violent hurteth the brain, the temperate and good, doth rejoyce, delight and comfort. This sense is oftentimes very useful, in discovering meats or drinks of an evil odour, which otherwise would much prejudice the stomach, and work evil effects in the body of man.

Much more might be said, touching the shape and form, matter and composition of the Nose, but my design is to distinguish the parts in a general way.

The

The Taſt is hot and moiſt, and under the influence of *Jupiter*; this Senſe hath its reſidence in the palate of the mouth, and tongue. Its office is to diſcern what food is congruous to the ſtomach, and what not. The skin of the palate of the mouth is the ſame, with the inward part of the ſtomach; and the ſame with the way of the meat into the ſtomach; and hence it cometh to paſs, that when a man is touched upon the Palate of the mouth, it tickleth the ſtomach, and ſo much the nearer to the throat, ſo much more the ſtomach abhorreth. The object of Taſting is a ſavour or ſmack, whereof there are ſix ſimple kinds; as Sweet, Sowr, Sharp, Tart, Salt, Bitter; the compounds are many. And being led to the mouth, it is not amiſs, if I ſpeak a few words to the compoſition thereof. In the mouth, are five parts to be conſidered; the Lips, the Teeth, the Tongue, the Uvula, the Palate of the mouth; of the which I have already ſpoken: A word or two of the reſt: The lips are made of a muſculous fleſh, their office is, firſt, as the door to the houſe to keep the mouth cloſe, till the meat be chewed, Secondly they help to pronounce the ſpeech. The Teeth the hardeſt members, faſtned into the mandible; their office is firſt to grind the meat before it goeth into the ſtomach, that ſo it may the better digeſt; Secondly, that it might be a help to the ſpeech, for they that want any of their Teeth are defective therein. The number is uncertain, ſome have more, ſome have leſs; they who have their full number have thirty and two. The tongue is a carnous member, compound and made of many Nerves, Ligaments, Veins and Arteries, ordained principally for three cauſes: Firſt, that when a man eateth, the tongue might turn the meat in the mouth, till it be chewed. Secondly by the tongue, and the palate of the mouth near the root of the tongue, is received the taſt of ſweet or ſower, and thence preſented to the common ſenſes to paſs Judgment thereof. Thirdly and principally the tongue is ordained for the pronunciation of ſpeech, of which faculty I muſt crave leave to inſiſt on, and that as briefly as may be. Speech is an excellent preſent, and very neceſſary; given only unto man, *animi index & ſpeculum*: it is the interpreter and image of the ſoul; the hearts meſſenger: the gate, through which doth paſs all that lyeth within the dark and hidden corners of man; by this the Spirit becomes viſible. Of all the external and viſible parts of the body, that which cometh neareſt to the heart is the root thereof; and that which cometh neareſt the thoughts is ſpeech. *Out of the abundance of the Heart the mouth ſpeaketh*; It is a powerful Maſter, an Imperious Commander; it ſtirreth up, animateth, exaſperateth, appeaſeth, maketh ſad, merry, it imprinteth whatever paſſion it handleth; feedeth the ſoul of the hearer; it maketh him bluſh, wax pale, laugh,

cry,

ery, tremble, mad with choler, leap for joy, what not? It is the great huckſter, and intermedler, by it we traffick, peace is handled, affairs are managed, it is the band of humane ſociety: hearing and ſpeech anſwer, and are accommodated the one to the other: by theſe two the ſouls are poured the one into the other: ſo that if theſe two gates be ſhut, (as it is in thoſe that are deaf and dumb) the Spirit remaineth ſolitary and miſerable. Hearing is the gate to enter; by it the Spirit receiveth all things from without: ſpeech is the gate to go out, through it the Spirit ſendeth forth that which was within. From the communication of theſe two, as from the ſtroke of two flints, there cometh forth the fire of truth; & ſo by the poliſhing & rubbing of theſe two, knowledge cometh to perfection. But Hearing is the firſt and principal, for there can nothing come forth, which not firſt entered; and therefore he that is deaf altogether by nature, is alſo dumb.

I might much more enlarge my ſelf in the deſcription of the head: but my purpoſe being to declare nothing, but what may be pertinent in the manifeſtation of the humane faculties and vertues; I ſhall conclude this Chapter with a word or two of the ſenſe of feeling which is of no particular quality, but of all, hot, cold, dry, and moiſt, it is deputed to no particular Organ, but is ſpread abroad over the whole body: it is the Index of all tangible things: its Object then muſt be heat or cold, drouth or moiſture; things preſent and polite, ſharp and ſmarting, motion, reſt, tickling. It is well known that man, and other Creatures live without ſome particular ſenſe; It is the opinion of moſt, that a man cannot live without this ſenſe of Feeling, being only neceſſary unto life: yet *Auguſtine* proveth the contrary, in the 14 Book *de Civitate Dei*; by example of a Presbyter, that lay as though he were dead, and did not feel thoſe that pulled him, nor would he ſtir, though they burned him with fire, yet confeſſed that he could then hear men ſpeak, (if they ſpake aloud) as though they were far from him; by which it appears, that this he did, not by reſiſting, but for want of the ſenſe of feeling which afterward was reſtored to him again: I ſhall paſs by what the Engliſh Hiſtory relates of one *Elizabeth Barton*, a maid of *Canterbury*, who oftentimes was deprived of her ſenſes, by reaſon of a diſeaſe ſhe had.

I ſhall alſo wave Diſputes concerning the number of the ſenſes, ſome ſuppoſing there are no more in nature than are apparent in us. There may very well be more, yet greatly to be doubted that there are; it is impoſſible for us to know them, to affirm them, or to deny them, becauſe a man ſhall never know the want of that ſenſe, which he never had, one ſenſe cannot diſcover another; and if a man want one by nature, yet he knows not which way to affirm it. A man that is born blind, and hath not heard what ſight is; cannot conceive that

he

he ſeeth not, nor deſireth to ſee. So man, being not able to imagine more than the five that he hath, cannot know how to judge, whether there be more in nature, who knoweth whether the difficulties that we find in many of the Works of Nature, and the effects of many Creatures, which we cannot underſtand, do proceed from the want of ſome ſenſe that we have not? There are hidden properties, which we ſee in many things; and a man may ſay that there are ſenſible faculties in nature, proper to judge and apprehend them, yet muſt conclude, we have them not: who knoweth whether it be ſome particular ſenſe, that diſcovereth the hour of midnight to the Cock, and moves him to crow; or how Beaſts are taught to chooſe certain herbs for their cure, and many ſuch like wonders? None can affirm or deny, ſaying, This it is, or, That it is.

CHAP. V.

Of the Stomach and its Faculties.

THe Stomach is a member, Compound and Spermatick, ſinewy and ſenſible, wherein is made the perfect firſt digeſtion of *Chile*; It is a neceſſary member to the body, for if it fail in its operation, the whole Fabrick is corrupted. It is in the little world, the ſame as the terreſtrial Globe is in the great world: In it, is expreſſed the ſublunary part of the world; in it are contained the parts that ſerve for nutrition, concoction, and procreation. And this leads me to diſcourſe of the adminiſtring vertues in man, which are here ſeated; and to wind up all with a touch of the office of the *Microcoſmical* Stars, with as much brevity as may be. The Stomach is framed of two pannicles, the outer is *Carneous*, the inner *Nervous*, from which is ſtretched to the mouth *Iſuſagus*, or the way of the meat, by which the ſtomach draweth to its ſelf meat and drink, as with hands. By the vertue of the ſubtil will which is in this *Muſcus Longitudinal*, is made the attractive virtue, which is hot and dry, by a quality active, or principal, which appears by the Sun, the Fountain of all heat, which is of an attractive quality, which is evident by his extracting and exhaling the humidity from this inferiour Globe, into the airy Region, as into the neck or higher part of an *Alimbeck*; and being reſolved into water, (by reaſon of their weight) fall down again upon the earth, which is the veſſel receiving: So through continued diſtillations, by ſublimation of the water, by cohobation, by drawing of the liquor, (being often poured on) and fortified by the influence of the Celeſtial, the Central Sun, the body becomes indued with a concoctive, nutritive,

tive, and procreative vertue. So in the Stomach, by the active quality of the *Microcoſmical* Sun, his benevolent rayes, and friendly heat, meat and drink is deſired, and attracted into the ſtomach, for the nouriſhment of the whole body.

We can do no leſs than give *Mars* a ſhare in the dominion of the attractive faculty, being hot and dry by nature, this is the reaſon: Experience telleth us, That Martial men, or men of a Cholerick conſtitution, are none of the worſt Trencher-men; and at the Pot incomparable.

In the ſtomach is a *Tranſverſe Muſcle*, to withhold or make retention: by this retentive vertue, thoſe things that are brought into the ſtomach are kept and withholden, until Nature hath wrought his kind, and every faculty hath executed his office. It is in quality cold and dry; Cold, becauſe the nature of cold is to compreſs, or hold together, as you may ſee in Ice: Dry, becauſe it is the nature of drineſs to keep and hold what is compreſſed. It is under the influence of *Saturn*, and that is the reaſon, why, for the moſt part, men that are cold and dry of temperature, or, as Aſtrologers ſay, *Saturnine* people, are covetous and tenacious: and that is the reaſon that old men are naturally covetous, becauſe *Saturn* ruleth old age; and by the decay of nature, the temperature becomes cold and dry.

It hath the Spleen, the repreſentative of *Saturn*, lying toward the left ſide, and furniſheth the ſtomach with humours neceſſary to fortifie the retentive virtue.

The digeſtive faculty (which is the chief and moſt principal,) the other, like hand-Maids attending it) is hot and moiſt; Natures Cook, and principal Workman, the *Archæus*, and central fire, which in this Philoſophical Veſſel, *viz.* the Stomach digeſteth the victuals into a *Chaos*, or confuſed Maſs, that ſo a natural ſeparation may be made. It is under the influence of *Jupiter*, who furniſheth it with friendly heat and moiſture, by the Liver, (the *Microcoſmical Jupiter*) chafing and beating the right ſide of the ſtomach.

The ſtomach hath alſo a Latitudinal Muſcle or will, which makes the expulſive faculty: It is naturally cold and moiſt; cold to compreſs the ſuperfluity; moiſt, to make the matter ſlippery and fit for ejection, alſo to work a ſutable diſpoſition in the body. It is a neceſſary operation, by it, after the ſeparation of the pure from the Impure, the Elements from the *Caput Mortuum*, or rather *fæces*, is removed, and carried away all that's needleſs or prejudicial to Nature. It is under the dominion of the Moon (with whom you may joyn *Venus*, being of the ſame nature) whoſe *Epitome*, or *Microcoſmical ſubſtitute*, viz. the Brain ſendeth a branch of Nerves to the ſtomach, and thereby furniſheth it with humours cold and moiſt, fit for expulſion.

I ſhall now haſten, to give you a ſhort deſcription of the Heart, Liver, Spleen, and Kidneys, *&c.*

CHAP. VI.

Of the Heart.

I Now come to ſpeak briefly of the Heart, who is the principal of all other members, and the beginning of life, he is ſet in the mid'ſt of the Breaſt, by himſelf as Lord and King of all the Members. And, as Lord or King ought to be ſerved of his Subjects that have their living of him; ſo are all the Members of the body, ſubjects of the Heart: they receive their living from him, and in many wayes they do him ſervice. He is the ſame in the little world, as the Sun that glorious Lamp of Heaven is in the great world. It is called *Sol Corporis*, as the Sun is called *Cor Cœli*, becauſe their operations are ſo like. The vital Spirit hath its reſidence here; why then ſhould antiquity with *Ignominy* be brought to the Bar, and condemned, for ſaying the Heart lives firſt, and dyes laſt: he being the Fountain and beginning of life, it muſt needs follow, that it is the firſt thing in man that lives, and the laſt that dyes.

Here is to be noted, That the Heart hath blood in his ſubſtance, whereas all other members have it in their Veins and Arteries. It is bound to the back part of the Breaſt by certain Ligaments, which Ligaments though they touch not the ſubſtance of the Heart; yet in the over part they ſpring forth of him; By which he appears to be King of the members, and Center of the *Microcoſmical* Planetary *Hierarchy*.

Moreover, the Heart hath two Ventricles or Concavities, and the left is higher than the right; the cauſe of its hollowneſs, is to keep the blood for his nouriſhing; and the Air to abate and temper the great heat which is included, and ſhut up in the Concavities.

As he is *Sol Corporis*, and Center of the reſt of the Members, and ruler of the Family, he communicates to them Life and *Motion*: yet by his heat he attracts what is needfull for himſelf, from the other members as a ſubſidy or tax impoſed upon his Subjects. And therefore to the right Ventricle of the Heart, cometh a Vein from the great Vein called *Venakelis*, which receiveth all the ſubſtance of the blood from the Liver; this Vein, I ſay, paſſeth from *Venakelis* to the right ventricle of the Heart, and bringeth a great portion of the thickeſt and pureſt blood to nouriſh the Heart. The reſidue that is left of this, is made more ſubtil through the vertue and heat of the Heart,

and

and then ſent into a Concavity or pit in the midſt of the Heart, between the two Ventricles : therein it is made more hot, and pure, and from thence it paſſeth to the beſt Ventricle, and there is engendred in it a Spirit, that is clearer, brighter and ſubtiller, than any Corporeal or bodily thing, which is engendred of the four Elements; for it is a mean between the Body and the Soul. Wherefore of the Philoſophers it is likened more to heavenly than earthly things.

And here I ſhall take leave to digreſs, and tell you of ſome things wonderful, touching the Heart ; If we credit *Avicenna* : Some have wanted a Heart : and to this purpoſe I could recite other mens opinions ; but I ſhall not trouble the Readers head with ſuch things, which ſeem to my ſelf impoſſible. *Valerius Maximus* ſpeaketh of one *Ariſtomanes Meſſenius*, (who killed 300 *Lacedemonians*) who had a hairy Heart. *Beneventus* reports the ſame of a certain Thief. *Columbus* obſerved a young man that wanted the *Pericardium*, (which is a thin skin involving the Heart as in a Purſe) and he was much troubled with ſwooning Fits. It hath been the Opinion, That a man cannot live a moment ſcarcely, who hath received a wound in the Heart : And good reaſon too, ſeeing the life depends upon the ſafety of the Spirits, the Heart being the ſhop and making thereof ; when the Heart is wounded, it is neceſſary that the generation of the Spirits ceaſe. Yet *Nicol. Malerius* relates a Hiſtory of one *Andreas Haſenvanger*, who was one of the Life-guard of Count *William* of *Naſſaw* Governor of *Friſia*, *&c.* who received a wound in the Breaſt by his fellow-Souldier, *Anno* 1607. on the 22. of *Auguſt*, in the evening, he died on the 8th of *September* following, one hour after Sun-riſing, his body being opened to ſearch for the wound, by the aforenamed *Nicol. Malerius*, and two other Chirurgions, in the preſence of ſeveral Souldiers of Note ; they found that the wound had entred the right cavity of the Heart, and that part of the Heart was almoſt conſumed ; the left part remaining entire, which is the chief habitation of the vital ſpirits. By this means he lived 16 days, which had been impoſſible, if the left ventricle had been wounded.

But to proceed ; From the left Ventricle of the Heart, ſpringeth two Arteries, the one having but one Coat, and therefore is called *Arteria Venalis*, which carrieth blood from the Heart to the Lungs, which blood is vaporous, and fit for its nouriſhment ; and carrieth back air from the Lungs to refreſh the Heart.

See here the Harmony and friendly Agreement between the *Microcoſmical* Sun and *Mercury* ; the firſt affordeth of his own nutriment to nouriſh the other, whilſt the other rewards him with air to refreſh him.

The

The other Artery hath two Coats, it is called *Vena Arterialis*, or the great *Artery*, of which ſpringeth all the other Arteries, that ſpread to every member of the body, which carrieth the Spirits, which are the Treaſures of the Souls vertue. Thus it paſſeth till it come to the Brain, and be made an animal Spirit, as you have heard before in the Third Chapter; at the Liver it is made nutrimental and at the Teſticles generative. Thus by the Heart is made a Spirit of every kind, and (like the Sun in the Heavens) by his royal preſence, he doth confer life and liberty to his ſuppliants.

I might here tell you, why theſe Arteries have two Coats, namely, becauſe one is not ſufficient to withhold the vital Spirits carried in them, their motion being ſo violent. Again, the thing carried about being ſo precious a treaſure, it had need of better keeping. This Artery is called the pulſative Vein. I might here frame a large diſcourſe of the pellicles of the Heart, which open and ſhut to receive the blood: Alſo the two little ears by whom cometh in and paſſeth out the air: I might ſay much of the pannicles, which as ſome think have their original from *Dura Mater*, as namely, *Pericardium*, called of ſome, *Capſula Cordis*, which ſpringeth of the upper pannicle of the Midriff, and covereth the Heart: of the which ſpringeth another called *Mediaſtinum*, which parteth the Breaſt in the mid'ſt, and keepeth that the Lungs fall not over the Heart, (ſuch a rule hath the Architect Spirit given to each part, as Stars to move in their ſeveral Orbs:) there is another pannicle that covereth the Ribs, of whom the Midriff taketh its beginning. But this being beyond my intended ſcope, I will put an end to this Chapter of the Heart.

CHAP. VII.

Of the Lungs, Liver, &c.

THe Lungs is made of a ſubſtance very ſoft and ſpongeous; ſupple, to draw and to inforce from, like a pair of bellows: it is an inſtrument of reſpiration, whereby the Heart is refreſhed, drawing unto it the blood, the Spirits and the air, and diſburthening it ſelf of thoſe fumes and excrements which oppreſs it. It is naturally cold and dry, accidentally cold and moiſt: naturally cold and dry waving about the Heart, abating his heat, by its refreſhing blaſt; it is accidentally moiſt, by reaſon of *Catarrhs* and *Rhewms*, which it receiveth from the Brain.

There are three principal parts in the Lungs conſiderable, one is a Vein

Veins coming from the Liver, which bringeth with it the crude and undigeſted part of the Chile to feed the Lungs. Another in *Arteria Venialis*, coming from the Heart, bringing the Spirit of life to nouriſh the Lungs. The third is *Trachea Arteria*, that bringeth air to the Lungs, and it paſſeth through all the left part of them to do its office.

The Lungs is divided into the five portions or pellicles, three on the right ſide, and two on the left ſide; if in caſe any impediment or hurt ſhould happen in any one part, the other ſhould be ready to ſupply the office.

But I forbear any further deſcription of the Lungs, and come to the Liver, which is a principal member in the little world, repreſenting the Planet *Jupiter*, *Quaſi juvans pater*, hot and moiſt, inclining towards the right ſide, under the ſhort ribs. The form of the Liver is *Gibbous* or *Bunchy* on the back ſide; on the other ſide hollow like the inſide of an hand: that it might be pliable to the ſtomach, (as a mans hand is to an apple or any thing that is round) to further its digeſtion: for his heat is to the Stomach, as the heat of a fire is to the pot which hangeth over it. It is the Store-houſe of the Blood, the Fountain of the Veins, the ſeat of the natural nouriſhing faculty, or vegetative Soul, ingendred of the Blood of that Chile which it draweth from the Meſeraique Veins, and receiveth by the *Vena Porta* which entreth into the concavities thereof, and afterwards is ſent and diſtributed through the whole body by the help of *Vena Cava*, which ariſeth from the bunch or branches thereof, which are in great numbers as the Rivers from the Ocean.

The natural and nutrimental faculty hath its reſidence in the Liver, and is diſperſed through the whole body, with the Veins, from which are bred four particular humours, *viz.* Blood, Choler, Flegm, and Melancholy.

It is ſo excellent and neceſſary a member, that I dare not give credit to their opinions, who ſay it may be wanting in a man; as ſome ſay, it was in one *Mathias Ortelius* a Merchant in *Antwerp*.

Blood is made of meat perfectly concocted, in quality hot and moiſt *Jupiter*'s darling, the moſt perfect and neceſſary humour, (the other three being ſuperfluities, yet neceſſary too.) The blood thus concocted, is drawn out by the *Vena Cava*, whoſe branches ramifying upwards and downwards, carrieth and conveigheth it to all other Members of the body for their nouriſhment, where, by a third digeſtion, it is tranſmuted into the fleſh.

Choler is made of meat more than perfectly concocted, it is the ſpume or froth of blood: it clarifieth all the humours, hears the body, nouriſheth the apprehenſion. It is in quality hot and dry, it fortifieth the attractive faculty, as blood doth the digeſtive; it moveth

man to activity and valour, it is under the Planet *Mars*, whose residence is in the Gall, which is an official member, a purse or panicular vesicle placed in the hollowness of the Liver, whose office is to receive the Cholerick superfluities, which are engendred in the Liver as aforesaid. Which Purse or Bag hath three holes or necks; by the first it draweth to it self the Choler from the Liver, that so the blood be not hurt by the choler. By the second it sendeth choler to the bottom of the Stomach, to fortifie the attractive faculty. And lastly, it sendeth choler regularly to every gut, from one to another, to cleanse them from superfluities and drois.

Flegm is made of meat not perfectly digested, it fortifieth the virtue expulsive (what it is, and what the other faculties are, you have heard in the fifth Chapter) and maketh the body fit for ejection, it is kind to, and fortifieth the Brain by its consimilitude with it, it is antipathetical to the apprehension, and doth much injure it, therefore flegmatick persons have but weak apprehensions; It is cold and moist in quality, its receptacle is in the Lungs, it is governed by the Moon and *Venus*: Therefore it qualifies choler, cools and moisteneth the Heart (as you have heard before in the description of the Lungs) thereby sustaining it and the whole body from the fiery effects which continual motion would produce.

Melancholy is the sediment of blood, it is cold and dry in quality: it maketh men sober, solid and staid, fit for study, or any serious employment: It curbs the unbridled toys and fooleries incident to the sanguine complexion: it stayeth wandring and idle thoughts, and reduceth them home to the Centre: It is like a grave Counseller to the whole body. It is governed by the Planet *Saturn*, it strengtheneth the retentive faculty, and its receptacle is in the Spleen, which in the body is placed on the left side, transversly linked to the Stomach.

Hollerius reports, That a Woman at *Paris* was found without a Spleen. And *Pliny* in his Natural History saith, That in *Cawnus* men are born without it: and hence the common people thought, that it might be safely cut out of Footmen and Horses, and as it hath been wanting in some, so it hath abounded in others: *Fallopius* observed three that lay one upon another. One was seen so great, that it weighed above 20 pounds, *Colum. Anatom.*

Another had a Milt weighed 23 pound. Where it increaseth, the body decreaseth, because it sucks away too much Chilus from the Liver. Therefore fitly did *Trajan* liken the Spleen to the Treasury, for as that groweth rich, the common people grow poor: So, as the Spleen encreaseth, the other parts decay.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the Reins and Kidneys.

NOw I come to a few words of the Reins and Kidneys, which are placed within the region of the Nutrites backward; and they are ordained to cleanse the blood from the watry superfluities: They have two passages; by the one is drawn the water from *Venakelis* by two Veins, which are called *Venæ emulgentes*, the emulgent Veins, and by the other is sent the same water to the Bladder, and this is called *Poros urithedes*.

The Kidneys are made of a hard substance, and full of hard concavities, and therefore the sores of them are hard to cure, they are harder in substance than any other fleshy member, and that for two causes; The first is, that they be not much hurt by the sharpness of the Urine. The other is, that the Urine that passeth from them, might be the better cleansed by them. The Heart sendeth an Artery to convey to them Blood, Heat, Spirit and Life. And from the Liver there comes a Vein, which bringeth nutrimental blood. Their fatness is as of the other members, made of thin blood congealed and crudded by cold; there is ordained the greater quantity in this place, because it should temper the heat of the Kidneys, which they have of the biting sharpness of the Urine.

The next thing that offereth it self to our consideration is the Bladder, which is compounded of two nervous panicles, in complexion it is cold and dry, whose neck is carnous, and hath two Muscles to withhold and to let go: in man it is long, and is contained with the yard passing through the *Peritoneum*; but in women it is shorter, & is contained with the *Vulva*, the place of the Bladder is between the share bone and *Longaon* (commonly called the Arse Gut.) In Women it is between the aforesaid bone and the Matrix. In the Bladder are implanted the Ureters, which bring the Urine or water from the Kidneys thither, and privily entreth into the holes and pannicles thereof, which is done by a natural motion between Tunicle and Tunicle, till the Urine findeth the hole of the neither Tunicle, where it entreth privily into the concavity. And the more the Bladder is filled with Urine, the streighter be the pannicles compressed together: The holes be not set one against the other, so that if the bladder be never so full, none can go back again.

This is the *Microcosmical* Ocean, into which all the Rivers of the body discharge themselves. There must needs be more than a watry

ſubſtance in it: for many times in diſeaſes, it is plentifully made, though the Patient drinketh little or nothing. And it is obſerved, That Creatures that Drink nothing will make water. Phyſitians oftentimes foretel many things by their colour, thinneſs, and thickneſs. Salt you know is hid in meats, and that Plants have very much Salt in them, you may find by diſtilling them. And it is very well known, that by the Chymical Art, many kinds of Salt may be fetched out of Urines. The artificial *Cryſocolla* is made of Urine. *Nitre* is made of Earth moiſtned with the Urine and Dung of living Creatures. The Urine hath a ſympathetical relation to the conſtitution of the body. The *Arabians* ſay, amongſt the reſt *Abenzoar*, that a man that is bit with a mad Dogg, in his Urine the Picture of Dogs may be ſeen: but this is attributed to the force of the Venome, which changeth a mans conſtitution, and maketh it like to a Dogs. *Sennertus* himſelf ſaith, That it doth ſo much corrupt the humours, that little Creatures like Puppies are bred in the body. If we credit the Writings of wiſe, honeſt, and learned men (which not to do were uncharitable) we ſhall find, that Worms and many kinds of living Creatures have been bred in the Bladder. We read of a Woman that voided one, that way, a ſpan long; and a Maid, many, as big as Woodlice. One voided one like a Magpye. Another who had the Stone in the Bladder, voided two with Horns, ſharp head, back and belly, cruſty, black, and like a Tortoiſe, onely their bellies were red. Another voided a living Scorpion, and another a ſhell-fiſh. The paſſage of the Urine from the Bladder, all know; yet ſometimes men are known to make their Urine another way. The Son of one *Borius* urined a little beneath the Glans. A Maid at the *Hague* of a Noble Family, made water at her Navel. One, by an Ulcer on his Buttock, and another by the Belly. For my own part, I have known two young men, who urined between the Teſticles and the Fundament: read *Fernelius*, *l. 6. c. 13.* who affirms the ſame thing. I need not tell you that ſtones are bred in the urine of a fæculent matter, mingled with ſalt and ſtony juyce ſometimes ſmall, and ſometimes great, of ſeveral ſhapes and forms: ſometimes, like the Sea ſand, ſometimes like pebbles, ſometimes like Salt, and ſometimes they are found ragged and branching, lively and excellently reſembling the ſtock and branches of Coral: few or none are ignorant of this. Thus have I, with as much brevity, as may be, deſcribed this *Microcoſmical* Ocean.

CHAP.

CHAP. IX.

Of the Generative Parts.

I Shall herein uſe as much brevity as may be, and ſhall write nothing but with a minde that is modeſt, and with ſuch a mind I deſire it may be read. The Inſtrument of Generation are of two ſorts, Male and Female; their uſe is the Procreation of Mankinde, the Operation is by Action and Paſſion, the Agent is the Seed, the Patient the Blood. Although this cometh to be ſpoken of in the laſt place, yet it might have deſervedly been put in the firſt; for Nature regards not only the conſervation of it ſelf, but to beget its like, and conceive its Species. *Venus* hath the principal Government of the Members of Generation; in which Members there are many parts conſiderable, but I ſhall onely epitomize them.

Firſt, Of the Genitals of Men; the firſt thing to be conſidered is, that which Anatomiſts call *Vaſa preparantia*, or preparing Veſſels, which bring Blood and vital Spirits to the Stones, they are four in number, and before they come to the Stones, they make a curious implication, interrexture or twiſting the one with the other, the Arteries into the Veins, and the Veins into the Arteries, which Phyſicians call *Corpus varicoſum*, ſome call it *Pampiniformis*: This interweaving reacheth down even into the ſubſtance of the Stones, their uſe is to mix the blood and vital ſpirit together, that ſo the Stones may have a fit matter to work on.

The Teſticles or Stones are of a white, ſoft and ſpungy ſubſtance, full of ſmall Veins and Arteries; or elſe, when humours flow to them, they could not ſwell to ſuch a bigneſs: their form is Oval, of their bigneſs few are ignorant. Each Stone hath a muſcle which the Learned call *Cremaſter*, which ſerveth to pull up the Stones in the act of Generation, as its name in the Greek ſignifieth, that ſo the Veſſels being ſlackned, may better avoid the Seed.

The Seed being throughly concocted by the Teſticles or Stones, there are two other ſmall Pipes called *Vaſa deferentia*, they are alſo called πορὸς σπερματικὸς, Spermatick pores; their office is to carry the Seed to the Seminary Veſſels, who are to keep it till need requireth its expulſion. From the Stones they ariſe very near to the preparing Veſſels into the cavity of the Belly, then turning back again, they turn to the backſide of the Bladder between it and the right Gut, there they are joyned to the ſeminal Veſſels, which are ſoft and ſpungy, ſomewhat like Kernels, through which paſſeth the *Urethra*, or common paſſage in the Yard both for Seed and Urine.

Hiſtories make mention, and Experience evidenceth, that ſome are born without Stones, ſome with one, *Philip*, *Landgrave* of *Haſſia* had three, he was ſo full of ſeed and prone to Venereous actions, that his Wife could not ſuffer him ſo often as neceſſity urged him to it, he otherwiſe being chaſt and honeſt; he relating his minde to the Prieſts, with the conſent of his Wife took a Concubine.

It would be too tedious if I ſhould take upon me to deſcribe the Yard, and all the parts thereof, it would make my Book ſwell too big, and I ſhould run beyond my firſt intention, *viz.* onely to give a brief touch of the moſt conſiderable parts.

I now come to the Generative parts of Women, and ſhall be ſilent in what is viſible, and declare onely the internal parts for brevity ſake, and firſt of the *Clytoris*, which is a ſinewy and hard body, much like the Yard of a man, and ſuffers erection and falling, cauſeth luſt in Women, and giveth delight in Copulation: *Avicenna* calleth it the Wand, or *Albathara*, and *Albucaſis* calleth it *Tentigo*, and *Falloppius* ſaith, that this hath ſometimes grown ſo big, that women would copulate with others like men. This obſerve, that the paſſage of the Urine is not through the neck of the Womb; near the paſſage of the Urine are four Caruncles or fleſhy knobs, they are called *Myrtiformes*, becauſe they reſemble Myrtleberries; the uppermoſt of them is largeſt and forked, to receive the neck of the paſſage of the Urine: the other lie below this on the ſides, and are to keep back the air, or any hurtful thing from the Womb. In Virgins theſe knobs are joyned together by a thin skin, interlated with many ſmall Veins, with a hole in the middle about the bigneſs of ones little finger, through which paſſeth the menſtruous blood: this skin is a note of Virginity, for the firſt act of copulation breaketh it. I believe that this was that note of Virginity which God gave to the *Hebrews*: Theſe knobs joyned together do much reſemble a Roſe not quite blown, therefore called a flower, thence came the word to Deflower a Virgin. If I ſhould take upon me to declare the Opinions of Authors, it would prove (almoſt) an endleſs task; This I ſhall add, that I conceive it not a certain note of Virginity, becauſe it may be broken without the act of Copulation; as namely, by applying Peſſaries to provoke the Menſtrues, or by a defluxion of ſharp humors, *&c.* but 'tis probable that the Jewiſh Virgins were more chary of it, their reputations depending thereon.

The Womb in figure is almoſt perfectly round, in Virgins about the bigneſs of a Walnut, yet when a woman is conceived with Child, it dilates it ſelf to ſuch a capacity, that it is able to contain the Child; the mouth of it no bigger than to receive the Glans of the Yard, yet at the delivery makes room for the Child to come out be

it

it never ſo big: This made *Galen* admire, and it may be a great admiration to all, if we conſider the wonderful works of God in the Creation of Man: He who knows himſelf may know there is an All-powerful God; and therefore it was ingraven with Letters of Gold over the Porch of the Temple of *Apollo*, the God (according to the *Panims*) of knowledge and wiſdom; this Sentence, *Know thy ſelf*, as a ſalutation unto all, ſignifying, that he that would have acceſs unto that Divinity, and entrance into that Temple, muſt firſt know himſelf.

But I return to my intended Diſcourſe, The Womb before Conception is ſmall, becauſe the Seed being but little in quantity, might be cloſe embraced and cheriſhed; it hath but one cavity, though it is the common approved Opinion, that it hath ſeven Cells, and of this opinion was *Galen*; the truth is, the Matrix in Women differs much from Beaſts, and *Galen* never ſaw a Woman Anatomized.

Women have Teſticles or Stones as Men have, but they differ from Mens in theſe particulars, They are within the belly in Women, in Men without, they are not ſo ſmooth in women as in men, they are leſs than the Stones of Men, they are not ſtaid by Muſcles, but by Ligaments; as mens are Oval they are flattiſh, they have but one skin, mens have four, becauſe they are without the body, and expoſed to the cold, they are more ſoft and colder than mens are.

But they are ordained both in men and women for the ſame uſe, *viz.* to concoct Seed, and though *Ariſtotle* denied ſeed in Women, yet *Hippocrates* one of the Ancients of Phyſick was of this Judgement, Reaſon and Experience confirmeth it.

The *Vaſa preparantia*, the preparing Veſſels, and *Vaſa deferentia* carrying Veſſels, are of the ſame nature and office as they are in men, they differ onely in this, that they are ſomewhat ſhorter, having a ſhorter way to go, the Teſticles being within the belly in women: but leſt the ſhortneſs of the paſſage ſhould hinder their operation, God and Nature hath ſo provided, that they are more twiſted and interweaved than they are in men, that they may the better mingle the blood and vital ſpirit, as you have heard before.

CHAP. X.

The Conclusion.

THus have I given you a brief Description of Man, the Masterpiece of Gods Workmanship; I have onely given you an Epitome or Breviary of him, who is a small draught of all things in the Universe; should any attempt a particular description of the Body and Faculties of Man, he would fall short of his expectations, it being an *Herculean* task for the most acute Genius: This I will add, not to say, that the World would not contain the Books that might be written of him, the Life of Man would be too short to perfect it. Not to recapitulate what I have formerly delivered: In Man, as in a perspective-Glass, may our Mother-Earth, with her innumerable Off-spring be discovered; in him may the unruly and restless Waves of the Ocean be delineated: Nor doth he onely epitomize the Elemental World, but also the Celestial; In him are discovered the prudent, majestical, sumptuous, magnificent, honourable, affable and humane *Solar quality*: The unstedfast, timerous, soon-daunted, oft-changing and shifting temper among men, answer to the various motions of the low and oft-changing *Luna*. Others in profundity of imagination, reservedness of words, austerity of actions, *&c.* are a fit portraict of the melancholy Planet *Saturn*. There are yet a few in the world who are faithful Lovers of fair-dealing, beneficient to all men, doing glorious, honourable and religious actions, just, wise, prudent, vertuous, *&c.* of the temper of benevolent *Jupiter*. There are (in our apprehensions) too many of the Martial temper, who are Valiant, Lovers of Wars, Frays and Commotions, subject to no reason, bold, confident, willingly obeying no body, *&c.* Nor is *Venus* excluded those peoples affections, who love mirth in words and actions, musical, delighting in Venery, drinking and merry-meetings, who trouble not themselves in State-affairs, nor are inquisitive after Armies or Navies, unless they bring good News from the *Canaries*. Nor is *Mercury* without his party among us, who are subtil and politick, excellent Disputants and Logicians, sharp-witted, and able to learn any thing, men of unwearied Fancies, and fit for any Imployment, yet unconstant. The Planetary influence in the good or ill disposition of the Air, is lively represented in man. A he lthy sanguine Constitution, or a delicate composure of heat and moisture answer to a serene temperate Air, with seasonable moistning dews and showers which are the sweet influence of the *Sun*, *Jupiter* and *Venus*. The feaverish, hot and parching distempers of the body

body, answer to the hot and scorching weather occasioned by the fiery beams of *Mars*. Nor is the cold, chilly, melancholy, weeping and lamenting disposition of many people, less represented by the melancholy, dark, cold and wet weather proceeding from *Saturn*'s influx; I could much dilate, but I forbear. The intellectual World hath also in Man its Portraicture; witness the soaring Contemplations of the Soul of Man, which cannot (like the body) be confined to any place, but in a moment surrounds this terrestrial Globe, nor there content, but as soon mounts it self to the Heavens, and searcheth their secret corners: nor there satisfied till he comes to the highest, for by his Contemplations, (having his Original from the uncreated light) he reflects thither, *viz.* to the Divine Majesty: To conclude, God hath made all things in Man, he hath made all things for Man; for Mans sake he made himself Man, to redeem Man to himself; To whom be all Honour, Glory, and praise for ever.

The End of the First Book.

THE

THE SECOND BOOK.

CHAP. I.

OF

The Nature of Physick,

AND

The Office of a Physitian.

GOd in his Power having created all things; in his Wisdom, by Nature governeth and preserveth them: By her are the variable motions and revolutions of the Sun, Moon and Stars harmonically preserved; in her hands are the mutations and Catastrophes of times; she is the Moderatrix of the scourging Ocean. This immensity of things she governeth in a certain and immutable Order; there is nothing in the Universe but yields obedience to this Law: what ever are contained in the Animal, Vegetable, or Mineral Kingdoms, are wisely governed, and providentially preserved by the Will of the Divine Architector in the Government of Nature.

But to steer our course nearer to our intention; The little World or Body of Man, is subject to Natures Government, whose Deputy or Representative is Physick; *Naturæ legibus esse medicinæ leges consentaneas*: The Laws of Physick are agreeable to the Laws of Nature; Physick imitates Nature, its design is to preserve the body in health

health, defend it from infirmities, to ſtrengthen and corroborate the weak, to raiſe the dejected; in a word, to keep the Body in health and comfort till the approach of death, to whoſe yoke all muſt yield, whoſe Laws the greateſt Monarchs, Kings and Princes cannot reſiſt. To this one Law all people of every Country, Nation, Quality and Degree become obedient, as to a Law, moſt neceſſary, moſt excellent, ſound, pure and juſt, being grounded upon, and drawn from the pureſt and moſt wholſom Fountains of Nature. It is not ſtrict nor rigid, but mild and gentle; it ſuccoureth, refreſheth and reſtoreth thoſe that have languiſhed by reaſon of tedious Diſeaſes; health of body is all the comfort a man hath in this troubleſome and turbulent world: this is that which maketh humane actions to flouriſh, ſhe is the moſt excellent Chamber-companion, ſhe is the richeſt Treaſure, for ſhe is more precious than Gold, the beſt of all earthly goods: to ſay all, without it no earthly thing is a bleſſing.

Hence it cometh, that the Art of Phyſick hath gained a reverend eſteem in all Ages, and the Phyſicians ſometimes more than humane honour. *Æſculapius* tranſported this Art from *Egypt* into *Greece*; the *Grecians* (thinking he could raiſe the dead) honoured and worſhipped him as a God, and his two Daughters as Goddeſſes. Indeed the difficulty of Medicine brings the more honour and dignity to a good Phyſician, which generally is thus deſcribed; A good Phyſician ought to be a man learned, honeſt, gentle, diligent, he ought to truſt in God, more than his own skill; he ought to know what he ſhould do, and be able to put it into practice, becauſe the health and life of Mankind is committed into his hands: And, as he imitates Chriſt who cures the Soul, the Phyſician the Body, ſo he ought to imitate him in a holy and unblameable converſation: He ought to deny himſelf, and to be very tender of the poor; He muſt not be ignorant in Divinity, well skilled in Anatomy, in the knowledge of Simples, and making up of compound Medicines: And (ſaith *Galen*) if he be ignorant of the Mathematicks, he is a Murderer:

Hippocrates in his Aphoriſms deſcribes a Phyſician thus; He ought in diſcourſe to be witty and ſolid, and ſo let him behave himſelf in reproving the errors of his Patient, and thoſe that look to him; let him not be fearful nor over-confident, but let him walk in the middle path, between fear and confidence: He ſhould be neat in body and minde, temperate in Diet, a hater of venereous and laſcivious actions; let every wiſe man beware of a drunken Phyſician, or any way viciouſly inclined. Let him not greedily deſire honour, but what he honeſtly getteth by his Art; let him not beg it of others, nor confer it upon himſelf; let him be courteous and have a fellow-feeling of others miſeries. Let him declare the event of a Diſeaſe ſo far as he knoweth

knoweth it, that ſo he may ſtir up the ſick to obedience, and avoid the ignominy that may be caſt upon the Art: yet let him ſo declare it, as not to afflict the minde with the Diſeaſe of the body. A good Phyſician is not envious at the ſucceſs of another, nor will he detract from his due praiſe: he ought not to be dogged, curriſh, ſcurrilous, nor ridiculous, to be familiar with all, and ſpeak no more than becometh him: let him uſe but few words, and thoſe that are pertinent to the purpoſe, let gravity and love be read in his face. He ought to viſit the ſick as often as neceſſity requireth, and ſpeak comfortably to him: Let no unſeemly action nor uncivil word proceed from him; let him not forſake his Patient for any cauſe whatſoever. Let him conſult with God in the beginning of all his Cures, and heartily give God thanks for the performance of them: Let him love godlineſs and honeſty, and be an unblameable ſervant to God and Nature. Theſe are the principal and chief Characters, by which every diſeaſed man may make choice of his Phyſician, of whom I ſhall ſay with the Learned *Fernelius*; *Medicus remedia confert, non ſolum ut naturæ miniſter, ſed interdum ut adjutor, interdum etiam ut opifex primarius*: A Phyſician doth cure, not onely as Natures ſervant, but ſometimes as her helper, yea, ſometimes as the chief workman. I ſhall not build my diſcourſe Theorically but Practically; and having in the former Book briefly deſcribed the principal parts of Man, and the humane faculties and virtues thereon depending: I ſhall in this Book declare the Cauſes, Symptomes and Cures of Diſeaſes in thoſe parts, which hinder them in the exerciſe of thoſe humane faculties. I ſhall treat of each Diſeaſe ſimply and diſtinctly, and leave this Aphoriſm to the conſideration of the Ingenious: *Simplex affectus, ſimplici remedio; compoſitus compoſito propellendus*; A ſimple Diſeaſe is removed by a ſimple Remedy; a compound Diſeaſe is expelled by compound Medicines.

CHAP. II.

Of Diſeaſes of the Head.

MAny Diſeaſes are incident to the Head of Man, I ſhall treat of them in order according to the places which they poſſeſs, which I ſhall divide into three parts: Firſt, the Membranes: Secondly, The ſubſtance of the Brain: Thirdly, The Nerves which nouriſh the Brain. The Membranes are the firſt Pannicle within the Skull, called *Dura Mater*, or without the Skull, called *Pericranium*, which are ſubject to theſe Diſeaſes, *viz.* the Head-ach, the inveterate Head-ach,

and

and the Megrim. In the ſubſtance of the Brain, which is the ſeat and inſtrument of the intellectual Faculties of the Soul, *viz.* Imagination, Judgment and Memory, are defects alſo, *viz.* the depravation of thoſe faculties, as a Frenſie, Melancholy, and Madneſs, ſleepy Diſeaſe, Lethargie. The Ventricles of the Brain are ſubject to many Diſtempers, as Vertigo, Falling-Sickneſs, the Night-Mare, the Apoplexy, Palſie, Convulſion, Trembling and quaking, and Catarrhs.

Of inveterate Head-ach, and the Megrim.

The inveterate Head-ach is called in Greek and Latine, *Cephalæa*; is a Diſeaſe of long continuance, very painful, and upon every light occaſion invadeth the Patient with ſharp Fits, that he cannot endure noiſe, nor light, but deſireth to lie ſtill in the dark; ſometime this Diſeaſe is with continuance, and ſometimes with intermiſſion.

The Cauſe.

This Diſeaſe is cauſed through blood or other humors abounding, or by ſharp humors or vapors within or without the Skull, inflaming the Head, ſometimes weakneſs of the Head is the cauſe.

The Sign.

If fulneſs of humors be the cauſe of the Diſeaſe, then is the Head very heavy and lumpiſh: if the humours be ſharp, the pain is felt with pricking and ſhooting, if there be Inflammation, the Head worketh like the Pulſes: if wind be the peccant cauſe, there is found diſtention or ſtretching out without heavineſs or beating; if two or more of theſe Symptomes appear together, judge accordingly. Note that if the pain be felt ſuperficially, or outwardly, then is the *Pericranium* grieved; if it be felt within (which is known by the pain at the roots of the Eyes) then is the grief within the *Dura Mater*. *Hemicrania* or the Megrim differeth not from *Cephalæa*, ſaving that in the Megrim one half of the Head is afflicted, whereas in the other the whole Head by the foregoing Symptome, you may diſcover the humour offending.

The Cure.

As there are diverſity of Cauſes, ſo there is of Cures; If the Diſeaſe be ingendred of plenitude of humors, and the whole Body

appears

appear full, it is not amiſs to begin the Cure with the evacuation of the whole Body, and if Age, Strength and the Seaſon conſent, open the Cephalick or Head-vein: If flegmatick and viſcous humours be the cauſe, it is good to extenuate and make thin the humors thus; Take of *Oxymel ſcilliticum*, and Syrup of *Stœchas*, of each half an Ounce, diſtilled water of Marjerom, Betony and Parſley, an Ounce, mix theſe, and make a Potion for the Morning. Or elſe make a Decoction in this manner: Take Mint, Calamint, Marjerom, Betony, Sage, of each half a handful, the Seeds of ſweet Fennel, Annis, and Parſley, of each half an Ounce, the Roots of Aſparagus, Fennel and Parſley, of each two Ounces, Pyony Root half an Ounce; ſhread the Herbs, bruiſe the Seeds, ſlice the Roots, and take out the Pith, and boyl it in a quart of water till half be conſumed, ſtrein it, and add of ſyrup of Betony compound, one Ounce, and *Oxymel ſimplex* as much, and make a Potion for three times; take it, at Night two hours after a light Supper: The Body thus prepared, you may come to purge and evacuate the peccant humors; Take half a dram of *Pill. Cochiæ* the greater, in the Morning, and keep the Chamber; they which are moſt commendable are Pills of *Hiera* with *Agarick*, take half a Dram at Night two hours after a light Supper, take ſome warm Broath in the Morning, and keep the houſe, thus do for a week or longer: In like manner you may uſe *Pill. Alephanginæ*, and order your body as before, and remember that groſs and clammy humors will not follow a ſudden Purgation, and therefore often purging is uſed, that ſo they may be drawn out by little and little. Alſo Clyſters are neceſſary, becauſe they cleanſe the Bowels, and pull back thoſe humors and vapors which aſcend and annoy the head: Take of Mallows, Pellitory of the Wall, Endive, Succory, Violet-leaves, Cammomel-flowers, of each one handful, ſweet Fennel-ſeed half an Ounce, Linſeed two Drams, boyl them in a quart of Spring-water, (or rather clear Poſſet-drink) till half be conſumed, ſtrein it out; and to the Concoction add of the Pulp of Caſſia Fiſtula one Ounce, Oyl of Rue half an Ounce, Benedictæ Laxativæ half an Ounce.

The Body being purged by diſcretion, it is not amiſs for the Patient to make uſe of ſome Diet-drink that hath power to warm the Brain, to exſiccate and concoct crude humors, to attenuate the groſs, cut that which is tough, and expel the thinneſt, either by Urine or inſenſible tranſpiration.

You may make it thus; Take of Guajacum, Saxafras, the Root of Sarſaperilla, of each two Ounces, Engliſh Liquoris and Cinnamon, of each one Ounce, Coriander-ſeed half an Ounce; infuſe them 24 hours in four quarts of Spring-water, the Veſſel ſtanding in hot Embers, and cloſe covered, afterwards boyl it gently to the conſumption

tion of half, ſweeten it with honey whileſt it is hot; let the Patient drink half a Pint in the Morning, and diſpoſe himſelf for ſweat, and if he drink it for his ordinary drink 15 or 20 days more or leſs, as neceſſity requireth, it is the better; if the Patient become coſtive by the uſe of this Diet-drink, let him take a Clyſter as often as need requireth, and once in ſeven days let him take ſome purging Medicine, that day omitting the Diet-drink.

This Bole taken in the Morning two hours before meat, is exceeding good to ſtrengthen the Head after due evacuation of the peccant humours, *viz.* Conſerve of Roſes, and of Roſemary flowers, of each two ſcruples, of Venice Treacle the weight of both, with a little fine Sugar, make a Bole, and adminiſter it as before.

Likewiſe may Gargariſms be made and uſed in manner following; Take the Root of Maſterwort a dram, Long-Pepper and Nutmegs half a Dram, Muſtard-ſeed one ſcruple, beat them to powder, and put them in a linnen cloth, and chew it half an hour, which will purge the head of groſs and phlegmatick humors.

Sometimes it is convenient to uſe Sneezing-Powder, and you may make them in this ſort: Take the leaves of Marjerom, Roſemary, and Betony dried, two ſcruples, white Hellebore, Cloves, Nutmegs, Cubebs, of each half a ſcruple, beat them into fine powder, and by the help of a Quill provoke ſneezing.

Alſo a Quilt to corroborate and ſtrengthen the Brain, may be thus made: Take of Wood-Betony dried one Ounce, the Flowers of Roſemary and Stœchas a dram, red Roſe-leaves two Drams, Frankincenſe, Maſtick, Benzoin, Mace and Cloves, of each half a Dram, beat them to powder, and quilt it in ſilk or linnen, and apply it warm.

I might here teach you to make Plaiſters to corroborate the Brain, to attract or reſolve the humors, but I forbear here for brevities ſake, and refer you to its proper place, where I ſhall treat of the making of Plaiſters, and their uſes.

If the Diſtemper hath its Original from Choleric humors, let him uſe Meats and Drinks that are naturally cold and moiſt; it is convenient that the humors be prepared, quenched and concocted, for which purpoſe you may uſe this Medicine following; Syrup of Violets one Ounce, of Water-Lillies half an Ounce, diſtilled Waters of Endive, Succory and Lettuce, of each one Ounce, mix them, and drink it in the Morning faſting: the humours thus concocted and made mild and obedient unto Nature, may the better be removed by purging Medicines; to which purpoſe, take fine Rubarb two Drams, Spicknard one ſcruple, cut ſmall and infuſed in the diſtilled Water of Endive, Succory and Bugloſs, of each one Ounce, for the ſpace

of

of twelve hours, diſſolve therein a Dram of the Electuary of the juyce of Roſes, and make a purging Potion. Pills of Rubarb and Alephangina may be ſafely uſed in this Caſe, the Doſe is a ſcruple or half a Dram, taken at night going to bed; *Pill. Aureæ* or golden Pills taken half a Dram in the Morning, purge cholerick and other offenſive humors from the head.

Clyſters in this caſe profit much; Take of the Decoction for a Clyſter before deſcribed, add one Ounce of Caſſia Fiſtula, Hiera Picra half an Ounce, Oyl of Roſes one Ounce, Salt half a Dram, mix them and make a Clyſter.

After purging of the cholerick Humor, it is convenient to cool and ſtrengthen the Head by outward Medicines, Oyl of Roſes, and Oyl of Camomel mixed with a little White-wine-Vinegar, is good to anoint the Head; but if there need greater cooling, you may add to the Oyls juyce of Houſleek, Purſlane, Nightſhade or Sorrel: If the ſick cannot ſleep, anoint the Fore-head with Oyl of Water-Lillies and Poppy.

If the ſymptomes declare wind to be the cauſe, let the Patient eſchew all Meats that do breed windineſs, empty the Belly with Clyſters; that are made of ſuch things as doe naturally diſſolve windineſs, *viz.* the Seeds of Anniſe, ſweet Fennel, Caraway and Cummin, of each one Ounce, boyl them in a quart of Poſſet-drink till half be waſted, ſtrein it, and add to the Liquor Catholicon and Diaphœnicon, of each half an ounce: This Clyſter doth not onely purge the Inteſtines and thoſe parts about the Liver, but alſo pulleth back thoſe vapors which aſcend to the head.

To the outſide of the Head may be applied repulſive Medicines, as Vinegar, Wormwood, Melilot, Mints, Pomegranate-rinds, Shepherds-pouch, Purſlane, Lawrel, Nutmegs, *&c.* After a moderate uſe of theſe, add Medicines that have power to mitigate, concoct and digeſt, as Camomel, Linſeed, Fenugreek, Saffron, Yelks of Eggs, Hens greaſe and Gooſe-greaſe. Laſtly, Apply Medicines that have power to diſcuſs, *viz.* Meal of Lupines and Barley, Lilly-roots, Nigella, Oyls of Dill and Rew.

CHAP.

CHAP. III.

Of the Frenſie.

THe Frenſie is an inflammation of the Brain and Membranes thereof, cauſed by the abundance of blood or choler occupying thoſe parts: it differeth from madneſs in this, that a Feaver is joyned to the Frenſie: Some that are thus grieved, do err much in imagination; others are acute in imagination, but want judgment to regulate their cogitations: and ſome are deprived of memory.

Symptoms and Signs.

They who are thus grieved, are in a continual Feaver, are mad, and cannot ſleep: Sometimes they ſleep, and are much troubled therein. They often rub their eyes, which are red, and ſometimes dry, ſometimes afflicted with a hot Rheume. The tongue is rough, ſometimes they bleed at Noſe; they ſnatch and catch at the bed-clothes: their Pulſe is weak and hard, like the motion of a ſinew: they breath ſeldome: If choler be the cauſe of the Phrenſie, they rage very turiouſly, and can ſcarcely be ruled: if blood be the cauſe, they ſometimes laugh, and rejoyce: This diſeaſe (according to the opinion of the wiſeſt Phyſicians) for the moſt part is deadly and incurable.

The Cure.

From the Cure of this Diſtemper, the blood or choler afflicting the Brain muſt be diſcuſſed, pulled back, repelled and evacuated, ſo that the diſtemper of the Head be removed, the ſtrength of the head and the whole body be reſerved. It is convenient, as ſoon as the Diſeaſe is diſcovered, to open a Vein, having firſt adminiſtred a Clyſter, thus made: Take of the Leaves of Violets, Mallows, Endive, Beets and Lettuce, of each one handful, of the root of Marſh-Mallows an ounce, of the flowers of Water-Lillies, and the tops of Dill, of each half a handful, let them be boiled in a ſufficient quantity of Barley-water; then ſtreined out to a pint of this decoction, diſſolve Caſſia newly drawn, Syrup of Violets, Diaprunum Lenitive, of each half an ounce, brown Sugar one ounce, and make a Clyſter.

You muſt, ſoon after the Patient hath had a ſtool, open the Cephalick, or Head-Vein; but if blood do abound, open the Baſilick or Liver-Vein, or the middle Vein firſt, and after a while breathe the

Cephalick Vein. If you find that ſuppreſſion of Menſtrues, or the Hemorrhoids hath been the cauſe of the Diſtemper; you may firſt open the Vein under the Ancle called Saphæna, and afterwards open the Cephalick-Vein. If the age and ſtrength of the Patient forbid not, you muſt bleed him often in the Cephalick-Vein; if the body be weak, open the Vein under the Ancle: be ſure not to draw too much blood at once, leſt the ſick faint. If you fear blood-letting, by reaſon of age, want of ſtrength, or a bad ſeaſon, uſe cupping with ſcarrification behind the neck upon the back-bone.

It is good alſo to uſe Frictions and ligatures upon the Legs, and to draw bliſters upon the Arms and Shoulders.

After Phlebotomy, you muſt apply Medicines that do cool the Brain, and repel and hinder the humors from aſcending to the head: as Oyl of Roſes two ounces, Roſe-Vinegar one ounce, the water of Plantane and Lettuce, of each two ounces, with the whites of two Eggs, mingle them together, and apply it to the fore-head with a double cloath. If that prove not efficacious, take Oyl of Mandrakes, Roſes, Violets, and water-Lillies, of each two drachms; the juyce of Lettuce and Purſlane, of each an ounce, the whites of two eggs, mingle and apply it.

But here let me adviſe people to be very wary and careful in the applying of theſe Medicines; by no means apply cooling Medicines in the extremity of the fit; nor refrigerate and ſtupifie the Brain too ſuddenly, leſt by overmuch cooling, you turn the Frenſie into a Lethargy, and make your Patient ſleep his laſt. Likewiſe conſider from the Symptomes of the Diſeaſe, to what part of the head to apply your Medicine, having conſideration to the age of your Patient, and ſeaſon of the year, your wit will inform you, whether you are beſt to apply it warm or cold. If you find the inflammation extend it ſelf to the skin and exterior parts, uſe no repelling Medicines, for fear you drive the diſtemper to the Brain.

It is convenient likewiſe to refrigerate the interior parts thus; Take of the Syrup of Violets, Erratick Poppies, and Pomegranates, of each four drachms: the diſtilled waters of Plantane, Lettuce, Poppy, and Purſlane, of each two ounces, mix them, and make a Julep, for three dozes. This Electuary is good in this caſe: Conſerve of Roſes and Violets of each one ounce; the Conſerve of Clove-Gilliflowers, and Water-Lillies, of each half an ounce; Diamargariton frigidum, half a drachm, with Syrup of Violets: make it into an Electuary, give the ſick the quantity of a Nutmeg, once in an hour, two, or three, as neceſſity ſhall require.

Having thus prepared the humors, you may evacuate them by Purgations, but it is convenient to uſe the moſt gentle purgers; you may

may ſafely adminiſter an ounce of Catholicon in the evening; drink ſomewhat warm in the morning; it is a fine cooling and gentle purge. Or you may make a decoction of ſome cooling Herbs, and in half a pint of the liquor warm, infuſe therein a drachm of Rubarb twelve hours; diſſolve therein half an ounce of Catholicon, and two drachms of Syrup of Roſes, and make a potion. Let his drink be Barley-water, and mingle with it the Syrup of Pomegranates, Lemons or Barberies. By this you may know how to cure not onely Frenſies, but all ravings and watchings which are ingendred by Fevers.

CHAP. IV.

Of Madneſs.

THe Latins call this Diſeaſe *Inſania* and *Furor*, and the Greeks *Mania*, we call it Madneſs. In this diſtemper the body is much out of order, and the Spirits much diſquieted: It cometh without a Fever, and therein it differeth from the Frenſie. This Diſeaſe is cauſed, ſometimes of the abundance of blood flowing up to the Brain: Sometimes of hot and cholerick humours, or of a hot diſtemper of the Brain. The Symptomes of Madneſs, are weakneſs of the Head, tickling of the Ears, and ſhinings before their Eyes, watchings, ſtrange thoughts, and ravenous appetite: If it proceed from the abundance of blood, there followeth continual laughings, Objects of laughter evermore appearing before the Eyes. When it proceedeth from both blood and choler, it cauſeth a daſhing and fervent Motion in the Brain, which maketh the ſick ireful, full of motion, and bold. But if the choler wax groſs, the ſick is more mad, and harder to cure.

There is another ſort of Madneſs cauſed by Melancholy, occupying the mind, and changing the temperature of it: Sometimes the blood is generally corrupted by melancholy, & the brain hurt thereby. Sometimes melancholy blood aſcendeth to the Brain, when the blood is not generally corrupted. Sometimes inflammations, obſtructions, and evil effects of the Stomach and Spleen may be the cauſe thereof. There are many Signs of this Diſtemper; they which are moſt common are theſe, fearfulneſs, ſadneſs, hatred, and very ſtrange imaginations: ſome have fancied themſelves Beaſts, and have counterfeited the voice of Beaſts: others, Earthen-pots, and have fled from Company for fear of being broken: Sometimes they deſire death, and to make away themſelves; ſometimes they much dread death.

Some think themſelves inſpired with the holy Spirit, and do Propheſie; others fancie themſelves great Philoſophers. If the blood be generally corrupted, the body is lean, pale and rough, and generally melancholy. They, whoſe Diſtemper ariſe from defects of the ſtomach or ſpleen, have burnings, grievous inflammations, and plucking of the ſides, are ſubject to be coſtive, troubled with wind fuming to the head, cauſing lightneſs and troubleſome dreams.

For the Cure, if blood abound(after the adminiſtring of a Clyſter) you muſt come to blood-letting: You may open the Cephalick, but if that appear not, then the middle Vein: draw as much blood as the ſtrength of the Patient will bear; you may, as you find occaſion, open the vein in the forehead, if it appear: if the ſick be a woman, open the vein under the Ancle, you may alſo bleed the Hemorrhoid-veins. I beſeech you, not only here, but in all other diſtempers, to be very careful, and ſparing of your Patients blood; draw not too much at a time, leſt you weaken nature too much: in this caſe it is beſt often to bleed, and in the mean time keep the body ſoluble, either by Clyſters, make as the former Chapter will direct you, or other convenient purges, *viz.* Take black Hellebore ſifted ſmall, one ounce; infuſe it three dayes in a quarter of a pint of Rain-water: then boil it gently to the conſumption of the third part (keeping it cloſe covered) ſtrain it out, and add to the liquor two ounces of clarified honey; let the ſick drink half an ounce (in the morning) in a little broath or poſſet-drink, for ſeveral dayes together: increaſe or decreaſe the doſe, according to the ſtrength or debility of your Patient. Or take of the extract of black Hellebore half a ſcruple, Syrup of Violets, one ounce; mix it for one doſe.

If the Body require a ſtronger purgation; Take of *Diagridium*, and *Lapis Lazuli*, of each half a drachm; *Turbith*, one drachm; *Sennæ*, half an ounce; Epithymum, *Cremo-tartar*, of each two drachms: of Cinamon, add Citron-pills, of each one ſcruple; Saffron, half a ſcruple; Let them be finely pulverized, the doſe is a drachm or four ſcruples adminiſtred in broath, or ſome other convenient Liquor. Theſe are convenient Medicines, which purge both choler and melancholly. You may purge with Confectio Hamech, Diaſenæ, Pilulæ Indæ, Pill. Lapid. Lazuli; the doſe muſt be regulated according to your Patients condition, ſtrength, and age. Before you come to purging, make uſe of altering or preparing Medicines; Take of the flowers of Borage, Bugloſs, and Violets, of Harts-tongue, Fumitory, and Tamariſk, of each one handful; Raiſins of the Sun ſtoned, one ounce: bark of the root of Capers, three drachms; roots of Fennel, Parſly, Licoriſh, of each a drachm: boyl them all gently in three pints of water, till one be conſumed, ſtrain them out,

and

and claritie the liquor with white of eggs; add to the ſame of the Syrups of Fumitory, Epithimum, and apples magiſterial of each one ounce: Take half a pint in the morning; uſe this, or medicines of this nature, three or four dayes; twice in the week purge gently: twice in a month adminiſter a ſtrong purge, ever remember in the mean time to uſe Phleborotomy, as neceſſity requireth; forget not to empty the body by Clyſters, if there be occaſion: The night after you have let your Patient blood, be ſure you adminiſter ſuch things as have power to procure ſleep, which you may do thus: Take of Conſerve of Roſes, Violets and Bugloſs-flowers, of each half an ounce; the conſerve of the young tops of Tamarisk and Clove-Gilli-flowers; of the ſtalk of Lettuce, and Citron-rindes preſerved, of each four drachms, Mirabolans and Emblicks, of each one: *Confectio Alchermes* and *de Hyacintho*, of each two drachms, Coral and Pearls prepared, of each two ſcruples, *pil. Diamargariton frigidum*, and *Lætificans*, half a drachm, mix them well in a marble or glaſs Mortar, adding one ounce of Syrup of ſweet-ſcented Apples: The doſe is the quantity of a Wall-nut, drink after it a little of ſome convenient Julep or decoction. You muſt likewiſe apply repelling and diſcuſſing Medicines to the head; the Chapter of the Frenſie will furniſh you with ſuch Medicines. But if the Cholerick and Melancholly humors in the Brain are groſs and hard to be removed, prepare a fomentation in this manner. Take a ſufficient quantity of Cephalick herbs, *viz.* Betony, Penny-royal, Roſemary, Lettuce, Plantane, Willow-leaves, Houſleek, Strawberry-leaves, Violet-leaves, Fumitory, Water-Lillies (or their Flowers) Stœchas, Poppys, boil them in a ſufficient quantity of Fountain-water: then take of Bay-berries, and the root of black Hellebore, a ſufficient quantity, groſly bruiſe them, and ſew them (with ſome of the ſofteſt of the Herbs) into a long bagg, boyl the bagg a little in the aforeſaid decoction; bathe the head (being ſhaved) with the decoction an hour, as hot as may well be endured, with double clothes: then bind the bag to the crown of the head with hot clothes, let the Patient lie in his bed and ſleep if he can; this will wonderfully expel the humours through the Emunctories of the head, for it wonderfully diſcuſſeth the ſuliginous matter gathered in the head, which other Remedies can ſcarcely perform. This you may do for nine dayes together if you ſee occaſion; but be ſure to keep the head warm afterward. If you find that obſtruction or inflammation of the Spleen, or defects of the Stomach be the cauſe of the Diſtemper, you muſt adminiſter inward and outward Medicines to open the obſtruction, and allay the inflammation; for ſuch Medicines, I refer you to thoſe Chapters, where I ſhall treat of the Diſtempers of thoſe parts.

CHAP. V.

Of the Apoplexy, Lethargy, and Sleepy-diſeaſe.

THe Apoplexy is a depriving of ſenſe and motion throughout the whole body, coming ſuddenly without let or hurt of all voluntary function.

Cauſes.

It is cauſed of humours cold, groſs and tough, which fill up and obſtruct the Ventricles of the Brain; which are engendred by overmuch crudities: Drunkenneſs is oftentimes the cauſe: Sometimes a blow or fall cauſing humours to flow thither is the cauſe: Sometimes of a groſs melancholly humour; Or, the excrements and humidity of the Brain, are congealed and thickned by the coldneſs of the Air.

Signs.

The Symptomes or fore-runners of this Diſeaſe are violent and ſharp pains of the Head, the Vertigo, the ſwelling of the Veins of the neck, a ſlowneſs to move, the extreme parts of the body, cold. When the diſeaſe cometh to its height, the breathing is ſo diminiſhed, that it cannot be perceived, and that is a very evil ſign; or elſe it is holden a while, and then fetcht with great violence: ſo much the more it differeth from the natural courſe, ſo much ſtronger is the Diſeaſe. *Hippocrates* in his Aphoriſmes ſaith, that it is impoſſible to cure a ſtrong *Apoplexy*, and not eaſie to cure a weak one.

The *Lethargy* is likewiſe an inexpugnable deſire of ſleeping, and ſluggiſhneſs; Its name in the Greek is Λήθη Ἀργὸς: Λήθη ſignifieth forgetfulneſs, and Ἀργὸς dull, *viz.* dull oblivion. The cauſe is the ſame with the former in quality: they differ only in this, that the *Lethargy* is accompanied with a Feaver and raving: the Pulſe is great and ſtriketh ſeldom, and as if they were full of water: they fetch their breath weakly, always ſleepy, and can ſcarcely be compelled to awake. If you call them very loud, they will ſometimes open their eys, but ſoon ſhut them againe: they gaſp and gape, and ſometimes forget to ſhut their mouths, &c.

Coma is a profound ſleep, from which if he be rouſed, he will anſwer to any Queſtion, but ſoon fall aſleep again: ſome times the ſick watcheth much, yet cannot hold open his eyes, but is very deſirous to ſleep.

Carus is alſo a ſleepy diſeaſe, and differeth from the reſt; it differeth from

from *Coma*, and the *Lethargy*, becauſe they that have *Carus* lie in a dead ſleep, call them, pull them, and prick them, they will not anſwer. Again, for the moſt part a violent Feaver goeth before *Carus*; in the *Lethargy* it followeth; it differeth from the *Apoplexy*, in it the breath is very ſtreight, that the ſick can hardly breath at all, but in *Carus* the ſick hath its breath at liberty.

The Cure.

They who are afflicted with either of theſe Diſeaſes, are in much danger, and have need of the ſpeedy help of an able Phyſician, who muſt without delay uſe his beſt endeavours. Firſt, let him endeavour to awake his Patient out of his dead ſleep, by preſenting forcible objects to every ſenſe: Let him place him ſo, That the Sun-beams, or ſome clear light, may ſhine upon his face. Let him fill his ears with noiſe, clamours, and ſounds, and call him by his name with a loud voice; put up into his noſe things that are ſharp, as Rue, Caſtoreum, and Vinegar: do the like to his mouth. Likewiſe you muſt provoke the ſenſe of feeling by Frictions, pulling of the hair, and folding of the fingers, and all other parts, binding, *&c.* You muſt provoke the body to ſtool by ſharp Clyſters, thus; Take of Sage, Betony, Rue, Centory, of each one handful; Camomile, Calamint, and Penny-royal, of each half a handful: the ſeeds of Cummin, ſweet Fennel, and Dill, of each three drachms: the roots of Polypody, ſix drachms: Agarick, three drachms: pulp of Coliquintida, one drachm: boyl them in a convenient quantity of water, until half be conſumed; to a pint of the decoction, add the oyls of Lillies and Rue, of each half an ounce: Hiera Picra, Benedicta Laxativa, and Diaphœnicon of each half an ounce; Honey of Roſes, an ounce, Salt a drachm: mix them and make a Clyſter. If your Patient be young, ſtrong, and full of hot humours and blood, you muſt ſoon after the operation of the Clyſter, open a Vein in one Arm, let him not bleed too much at once, leſt his ſtrength fail; in a few hours ſpace open a vein in the other Arm: ſo by that means the diſeaſe will be the more abated, and the ſtrength the more preſerved. After the firſt vein opened, if you perceive his countenance more lively, his pulſe beat more orderly, and his breath fetcht with more eaſe, it is a good ſign, and a good encouragement to open another Vein: make the Orifice wide, or elſe the groſſeſt blood will lie behind. Where you ſee the body abound with blood, draw blood liberally: if not, draw blood ſparingly.

After letting blood, if you ſee hopes of your Patients recovery, within a few hours, you muſt adminiſter ſome purgation, the time of the day matters not: one ounce of Elect. Diacarthamum, half a ſcruple of Caſtor, diſſolved in Betony water: you may in this caſe make uſe of Pillulæ Cochiæ the greater or the leſs: or Pillulæ de Agari-

ſo, (pills of Agarick.) But in the *Lethargy* (by reaſon it is accompanied with a Feaver) you ought to adminiſter more gentle purgations, as *Pillulæ Hiera cum Agarico*, (I ſhall lay down ſome general Rules for purging, in the next Book,) which ſerve to divert the humours, flowing to the Head. But the humours there fixed, muſt be purged with Scammony one Scruple; Caſtor, two ſcruples, adminiſtred in Oximel, which hath been proved with good ſucceſs.

If hitherto your Medicines prove unſucceſsful, you muſt venter to adminiſter ſtronger, not fearing the danger or ſtrength of your Medicine, ſeeing without it, nothing can be expected. You may uſe ſuch Medicines as are extracted out of the Antimony, or thoſe leſs violent, as is the infuſion of *Crocus Metallorum*; or two drachms of the Tincture of Tobacco, extracted with the Spirit of Wine, doth powerfully evacuate upwards and downwards, both cholerick and flegmatick humours, and cleanſeth not onely the Stomach and Bowels, but the Brain alſo.

Alſo Fricions and Ligatures on the extreme parts are neceſſary, that the vapours do not aſcend to the Head. You may faſten Cupping-glaſſes to the Shoulders, Arms, and Thighs with ſcarrification, if you have not let your Patient blood, otherwiſe without: forget not the often adminiſtration of Clyſters, or inſtead thereof, you may uſe Suppoſitories, made thus. Take two ounces of Honey boiled to a due thickneſs, of Hiera Picra, two drachms; Coloquintida, Agarick, and Scammony, of each two ſcruples: Sal gemme, one drachm: make them into fine powder, and mix them with Honey, and make Suppoſitories as long as you think good.

You may apply things to their Noſes, which have property to awaken them, as Vinegar, Caſtoreum, Galbanum, Sulphur, Goats-horn or harts-horn burnt, and holden to the Noſe: A fume made with white Amber, is of excellent virtue in the *Apoplexy*; You muſt pull them by the hair, and prick their Legs, or rub them with Salt and Vinegar: You muſt annoint the Palate of the Mouth with ſtrong and ſharp Medicines, as Methridate, Muſtard, Powder of Maſterwort: and rub the bottoms of the Feet with Salt and Vinegar, and the Palms of the Hands with the Oyls of Rue, and Caſtor. If the diſeaſe be of long continuance, provoke ſneezing, with thoſe Powders preſcribed in the ſecond Chapter: to which you may add Rue and Caſtor.

You may apply reſolving Medicines, but firſt you muſt make them thus. Take the leaves of Betony, Sage, and Roſemary, of each one handful; the tops of Lavender, and Marjerom, Rue, and Savoury, of each a handful; the root of Angelica, Maſterwort, and Setwall, of each one ounce; Bayberries, and Juniper-berries, of each half an ounce; boyl them in a ſufficient quantity of Vinegar, and with

a

a Spunge or cloath dipped in the decoction, bathe the head of the ſick.

If the Diſeaſe yield not to theſe Medicines, you may faſten Cupping-glaſſes to the upper part of the Neck, about the firſt or ſecond Joynt; Some uſe to draw Bliſters there, and with good ſucceſs.

Many precious Medicines, againſt this diſtemper, have been left to poſterity; I ſhall (omitting many) inſert this one, *viz.* Take of the root of Peony, and miſleto of the Oak, of each two ounces; Calamus Aromaticus, Galanga, Cyperus, of each one ounce; of Betony, Sage, Marjerom, of each one handful; the ſeeds of Peony, Annis, Fennel, and Caraway, of each three drachms; the flowers of Lavender, Stœchas, and Roſemary, of each half an handful; of Nutmegs, Mace, Cubebs, Cloves, Grains of Paradice, of each half an ounce: Cinnamon, two ounces: Saffron, half a drachm: of Species Diambræ, and Diamoſhi, of each two drachms. Let all theſe ingredients be ſhred and bruiſed, and put into a glaſs Limbeck; pour on them of the beſt rectified Spirit of Wine, enough to cover them, the breadth of three fingers; digeſt them in Bathe eight dayes, afterward diſtil it, and upon occaſion adminiſter a drachm, or half a drachm, in ſome other convenient liquor. In like manner may the Spirit of Caſtor be adminiſtred in Oximel, and 'tis a good Medicine againſt theſe Diſeaſes. Moreover, be very careful that you well underſtand the nature of the humor offending, as if blood offend, uſe not too many refrigerating Medicines, and bleed the more: I need ſay no more, *Verbum ſapientibus, &c.* If after ſo many Evacuations, the Brain become too cold, and much weakned, you may ſtrengthen it with Lozenges made thus, or after this manner; Take of the diſtilled oyls of Annis, Cinnamon, and Nutmegs, of each three drops: oyl of Cloves, one drop: Amber-greaſe, half a ſcruple: with four ounces of Sugar, diſſolved in Betony water, make Lozenges, take a drachm in a morning. Likewiſe you may make Pills to ſtrengthen the Head in this manner: Take of the Species *Cordiales temperatæ*, and *Aromaticum Roſatum*, of each two drachms: Maſtick, Nutmegs, and Cloves, of each one ſcruple; Amber-greaſe, half a ſcruple, and Muſk three grains; make it into a maſs for Pills with the juyce of Marjerom, and take a ſcruple to bedward, once or twice a week: or you may take half a drachm of the powder, called *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, night or morning. If any fear the return of this Diſeaſe again after cure: or any (by the aforegoing Symptoms) fear its growth upon them: let them carefully conſider the humour offending: if blood abound, leſſen it by opening a vein; if Choler, flegm, or melancholy, by purgation; How you may know which humour offendeth, or by what it may be purged, this Treatiſe (if you have any ingenuity) will inform you.

CHAP.

CHAP. VI.

Of the Vertigo, and Falling-ſickneſs.

THe *Vertigo* is a Diſeaſe which maketh a man think every thing turneth round, and ſuddenly his ſight faileth him, all things appear miſty and dark. This diſeaſe is cauſed through inordinate moving of windy vapours, and Spirits contained in the Brain, or in the mouth of the Stomach offending the Brain.

The Sign.

Thoſe that are thus troubled, a darkneſs and miſt appears before their eyes upon every light occaſion, eſpecially if they turn about. It aſtoniſheth him to ſee a man, a wheel, or any thing, turn round. When it is accompanied with ſound and noiſe in the ears, and vehement pain in the head, with much heavineſs, the deprivation or debility of any of the ſenſes, theſe are infallible teſtimonies, that the cauſe of the diſtemper lieth in the Brain; then is that fit worſt, when the head is heat by the Sun, or any other means. A gnawing of the ſtomach, or a diſpoſition to vomit precede the fit, then the Diſeaſe proceedeth from the mouth of the Stomach. This Diſeaſe is oftentimes a Prodromus or forerunner of the *Epilepſie* or Falling-ſickneſs, and ſometimes of the *Apoplexie*.

The *Epilepſie* is a Writhing, Cramp, and Convulſion of all the parts of the Body; it attacheth and much hurteth the ſenſe and mind. Sometimes it is cauſed through groſs and clammy flegm or choler, ſtopping the paſſage of the Ventricles of the Brain: and ſometimes from the mouth of the Stomach, as in the *Vertigo*. There goeth before this Diſeaſe an evil ſtate of the body and mind, ſadneſs, forgetfulneſs, troubleſome dreams, ach of the Head, and continual fulneſs of the ſame, paleneſs of the Face, and inordinate moving of the Tongue.

The Sign.

They who are afflicted with this Diſeaſe fall down, are plucked up together, they tremble and turn about, ſnort, cry out, beat themſelves, and foam at the Mouth.

The Cure.

It is good for thoſe that are thus afflicted, to eſchew all meats of a hard

hard digeſture, and ſuch as afford a crude nouriſhment, or breed fumoſities; obſerve the ſame in all Diſeaſes of the Head. In the beginning of the Cure, make the body ſoluble by Clyſters if need be. If plenitude appear, and the ſick be of a ſanguine complexion, begin the Cure with blood-letting: otherwiſe obſerve the ſame order before preſcribed in the *Cephalæa*, or Head-ach, proceeding of groſs and phlegmatick humors; this remembring, to add to the Medicines there preſcribed, the roots and ſeeds of Peony, and Miſſeto of the Oak, which have a notable faculty in the Cure of the Falling-ſickneſs, as experience teacheth. Make uſe of the ſudorifick drink there preſcribed, thirty or fourty days, adding to every doſe, three or four drops of Vitriol; You muſt purge the Sick with *Pillulæ Cochiæ*, *Pillulæ cum Agarico*, or ſuch as purge flegm, but remember to regulate your Purges according to the ſtrength of the ſick; and to prepare the Body with Medicines, which do attenuate and cut groſs and thick humors: as be the Syrups of Wormwood, Hyſop, Stœchas, or Oxymel ſcilliticum: or with the decoction of Hyſop, the roots of Peony or ſuch like. Stibium is of great force, and doth mightily purge the ſuperfluous humors of the Head; you muſt uſe it thus, Take 12 grains, and make it into fine powder; put it into four ounces of Wine, and there let it remain 24 hours, ſhaking it every three or four hours; then pour off the Wine, leaving the powder, and drink it with a little Sugar: let none uſe this Medicine, but ſuch as have ſtrong Bodies, and be firſt well adviſed by a skilful Phyſitian. The ſyrup of Tobacco, mentioned by *Quercitanus* in his *Pharmacopæia*, is of great force, and vertue againſt this Diſeaſe; but before you make uſe thereof, be well adviſed, as I ſaid before. After the Body hath been diligently and carefully purged, it is meet you make uſe of this, or ſuch like Medicines, *viz.* Take of the flowers of Betony, Roſemary, Peony and Bugloſs, of each one ounce; the root of Eringo, and the rind of Citrons preſerved, of each two drachms; powder of Saxafras, one ounce; of the ſeed of Peony, and Miſſeto of the Oak gathered the Moon decreaſing, Elks claws, of each half a drachm: of the Skull of a man not buried calcined, half a drachm: of Coral, Pearls, and Harts-horn prepared, of each four ſcruples; of Bezoar, one ſcruple: *Diamoſh. dulcis*, four ſcruples; *Theriaca Andromachi*, and *Confectio de Hyacintho*, of each four ſcruples; of Vitriol 20 drops, with as much Syrup, Citron Pills, and Oxymel, as is ſufficient to make a liquid Electuary or Opiat, of which take three or four times in a day the quantity of a Filberd. *Emplaſtrum Epiſpaſticum*, and ſuch as have power to draw bliſters and Cauſticks, may with good ſucceſs be applyed to the hinder part of the Head and Neck.

Fabius

Fabius Columnus extolleth the root of Valerian to the Skies, for the cure of this Diſeaſe; a drachm in powder adminiſtred in Wine, or other convenient liquor, is a ſufficient Doſe. Of no leſs eſteem is this Chymical Medicine following; Spirit of Vitriol, one ſcruple; Spirit of Tartar, one drachm: Treacle water camphorated, one drachm and an half: mix them, and in a glaſs well ſealed, digeſt them a Moneth; the Doſe is one drachm, taken with ſome convenient liquor.

If a Child have this Diſeaſe, you muſt make uſe of Medicines ſutable to the age and ſtrength of the Child: If it ſuck, let the Nurſe uſe a moderate diet, and eat ſuch meats as afford good nouriſhment: By Clyſter or Suppoſitory, make the Child ſoluble. Take one ounce of fine Sugar, of Peony root, and Miſſeto of the Oak, of each half a drachm: with as much Oyl of ſweet Almonds as is ſufficient to make a Lohoch, and let the Child lick often thereof.

Riverius commendeth this Epileptick powder, by him called *Pulvis de gutteta*, Take the root and ſeed of Peony, the root of white Dittany, Miſſeto of the Oak, of each half an ounce: the ſeed of Arach, two drachms: of mans Skull, three drachms: red Coral prepared, of Hyacinths or Jacinth, of each half a drachm, of Elks claws prepared, half an ounce; Muſk, one ſcruple; leaf-gold, one drachm; mix them, and make them into very fine powder: of which adminiſter from half a ſcruple to a ſcruple; in milk, broth, or ſome Antepileptical water, as the compound water of Peony, *&c.* Anoint the Head of the Child with oyls of Dill and Marjerom: apply Medicines to the Head, that have power to diſcuſs the peccant humours, and to corroborate the Brain; Anoint the Back-bone, and thoſe members which are contracted and drawn together, with this following Liniment. Take of the Oyls of Rue, and Earth-worms of each two ounces: the Oyl of Caſter, a drachm; with a little *Aqua vitæ* make a Liniment. Or, take of Venice-Treacle one drachm; *Confectio Alchermes*, and *de Hyacintho*, of each a ſcruple; the waters of Betony, Sage, Marjerom, and Cinnamon of each half an ounce; mix them all, and bathe the Noſe, Temples and Ears; and you may give the Child half an ounce to take inwardly. You may purge the Child twice in the Moneth with Manna, Syrups of Roſes & Rubarb; and every change of the Moon, take a doſe of the powder before mentioned, and oftner if need require.

To conclude, if the Diſeaſe be cauſed by ſome evil effects in the mouth of the Stomach; you muſt labour to free the Stomach from the humors that offend.

For the Cure of the *Vertigo*, I ſhall ſay nothing, but refer you to thoſe Medicines propounded for the Cure of the Falling-Sickneſs; and

and to the Second Chapter, *viz. Of the Cure of Cephalæa*, proceeding from cold, crude and phlegmatick humors; it being my preſent task only to epitomize, not to write largely of the cure of Diſeaſes.

CHAP. VII.

Of the Palſie.

Paralyſis, or the Palſie, is a Diſeaſe wherein the whole Body, or part thereof (as Arm, Hand, Leg or Tongue,) doth loſe ſenſe or motion, or both: Sometimes it followeth the Apoplexy. Here note, that the Faculty of ſenſe and motion floweth from the Brain, as from its proper fountain, and is conveyed to all parts of the Body by the ſinews, the proper Organs of ſenſe and motion. Hence it cometh to paſs, that if the faculty of the Brain be obſtructed that it cannot deſcend to all parts, that all or ſome of the parts of the Body, loſe either motion, or ſenſe, or both, according to the part obſtructed.

The Cauſes.

The Palſie is cauſed by abundance of groſs and clammy humors, which ſtop the ſinews, and hinder the animal Faculty, that it cannot come from the Brain or fountain to the Members. It may be cauſed by vehement cold, or by ſome inflammation or ſwelling near the Back-bone: or the ſinews may be cruſhed by ſome binding, or hurt by ſome wound, or Ulcer, or the like.

The Cure.

There need no more Signs to know this Diſeaſe by, than what hath been declared in the explanation of it. This Diſeaſe for the moſt part happeneth to old Folk, and ſurprizeth them in the Winter time; therefore Phlebotomy for the moſt part is unneceſſary and dangerous. If plenitude of humors or blood appear, open a vein on the ſound ſide, draw blood ſparingly, leſt you cool the Body too much. Let what part ſoever of the Body be affected, yet you muſt not forget the Brain, but you muſt purge, corroborate, and ſtrengthen it: If you find the original of the diſtemper in the Brain, you muſt apply Medicines which have power to extenuate, diſſolve and diſcuſs; ſuch as are preſcribed in the ſecond Chapter, for the cure of cold and phlegmatick Diſtempers of the Head. To the purging Medicines, you may add theſe, *Pillulæ Fœtidæ, de opopanace, Arabicæ*, and

and *Trochiſci Alhandal*, taken in a convenient quantity (as you ſhall be inſtructed in the next Book) and ſutable to the ſeaſon of the year, and age of your Patient. Let him abſtain from drinking of ſtrong Beer and Wine; and let moſt of his drink be the decoction of Guaiacum, and the bark of the ſame; and if you add Cephalick herbs to theſe, it will be the better. This Decoction is commendable, *viz.* Take of Guajacum ground, two ounces; of the bark of the ſame, half an ounce: the root of China, and Sarſaparilla, of each two drachms; Saxafras, three drachms; Lignum Aloes, and Galanga, of each two ſcruples; the roots of Angelica, Peony, and Fennel, of each two drachms, the ſeeds of Peony, and ſweet Fennel, of each one drachm: Betony, ground Pine, Sage, of each one handful: the flowers of Lavender, Roſemary, Stœchas, and Cowſlips, of each one pugil: Cinamons, and Polipodium of the Oak, of each half an ounce: Infuſe them in ſix quarts of water twenty four hours: then boil it gently to the conſumption of two quarts, ſtrain it, and add to the decoction brown Sugar-candy, and ſyrup of Stœchas, of each four ounces. Let the diſeaſed take half a pint in a morning, three or four mornings as a preparative to purging, you muſt purge once in a week, with one of the aforenamed Medicines; having reſpect to the age and ſtrength of your Patient, and ſeaſon of the Year. Or, you may prepare the aforeſaid water by diſtillation, thus, Take of the ſimples aforenamed, and infuſe them 24 hours in four quarts of water, and two of White-wine: then diſtil them in *Balneo Mariæ*, (as you ſhall be taught in the fourth part of this Treatiſe) to a pound of this diſtilled water, add one ounce of the ſyrup of *Stœchas*, and a drachm of *Theriaca Diateſſaron*, divide it into three parts for three mornings.

It is convenient to ſet Cupping-glaſſes to the part affected, without ſcarrifying of it, but eaſily drawing the humors and ſpirits to the place; afterwards you muſt rub and chafe the parts: it is convenient to bathe the paralytick part, and cauſe it to ſweat with the decoction of Bur-root, and Elder-leaves: hot-houſes often profit much; but much better it is, if they can come to natural Baths, which proceed either from *Nitrous*, *Bituminous*, or ſulphurous Mines, as the Bath of *Bath*. You may ſafely bathe two or three times in a week, and afterwards anoint the Member with ſome convenient Liniment, *viz.* Take of the Oyls of Foxes, Caſtor, Earth-worms, and Rue, of each one ounce: *Unguentum Nervinum*, and *Martiatum*, of each half an ounce: the diſtilled Oyl of Roſemary, one drachm; Oyl of Spike, ſix crops: mix all theſe, and make a ſoft Ointment; with which anoint the Back-bone, and the other parts that are diſeaſed; afterwards wrap them up warm with the skin of a Fox or Hare. If the Palſie be cauſed by an inflammation, or hard ſwelling in any part; the cure of the in-

inflammation or swelling, cures the Palsie also. If bruising of the sihews by pinching or binding be the cause, remove the bruised blood, and the cure will ensue. If the Spondils of the Back be out or broke, and that cause the *Palsie* or Resolution; the cure of the cause taketh away the effect. If the *Palsie* ensue a wound or Ulcer in the Head, Back, or any particular Sinew; if the Sinew be curable, the *Palsie* ceaseth.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the Convulsion.

Spasmus. Cramp or Convulsion, is a Disease when the Sinews are drawn or plucked up against a mans will. Of this there are two sorts, *viz.* a true Convulsion, when there is a constant retraction of the Muscles, and the Limb remains unmoveable: or a convulsive motion, when the retraction is every time new, and the Members moved divers ways. They differ likewise in their Causes, for a true Convulsion proceedeth, either from repletion, or inanition; a convulsive motion from irritation or provocation. Again, they are thus divided, a true Convulsion is either total, by which most part of the Body is contracted; or partial, by which one particular member suffereth contraction. The Universal Convulsion is caused from the Brain, when the Face is plucked together as well as the whole Body; or from the marrow of the Back, when the Muscles that move the Head and Back, are drawn together. A particular Convulsion is made from the contraction of the Musele of some part, coming from the hurt of that Nerve which is ordained for his motion.

The immediate Causes (as I said before) are repletion, or inanition; the Nerves being too full of moisture, or too dry, are extended or contracted, and the Muscles into which they are united, are, by that means drawn back to their original.

The mediate Causes of a Convulsion, proceeding from repletion, are flegm and wateriſh humours flowing to the Nerves stretching them in breadth, must consequently make them shorter, and sometimes cause an inflammation.

But here in the way lieth an Objection, namely, why a watery humour obstructing the Nerves, and the cause of the Palsie and Convulsion,

vulsion, should sometimes bring one, and sometimes the other: the humour offending, and the parts affected, being one and the same. The divers opinions, and long disputation of Writers, I shall not here repeat; the difficulty of the matter having distracted them into divers Opinions.

I shall answer the Objection briefly, and adhere to the most able modern Physicians, and say they differ thus: A Palsie is caused of a purge watery humour without mixture, which softeneth the Nerves, extends them not: The Convulsion is caused of the same humour, but mixed with much wind, by which the Nerves are stretched, and the Muscles contracted to their original. It is the Opinion of all Physitians, That wind is the cause of Convulsions; and Experience teacheth us, That the greatest distentions are caused by wind, as we see in the Dropsie, Tympanies, and the Cholick. Sometimes an inflammation in or near the original of the Nerves, may cause a contraction of those nervous parts; and the cause of this inflammation is sometimes internal as a flux of blood upon the part; or external by a wound, contusion, or bruise.

The Causes of a Convulsion by emptiness, are all immoderate evacuations whatsoever, diseases, diet, and Medicines which are hot and dry.

A Convulsive motion is caused by humours, or vapours which are full of Acrimony, or Malignancy: and sometimes so happeneth in malignant Feavers; and Diseases of Choler occupying the Head, or Stomach.

From what hath been said, it is easie to know a Convulsion proceeding from fulness or emptiness or Convulsive motion. A Convulsion near the Brain is dangerous; in the Muscles of the Breast, gives fear or suffocation: If it come after bleeding or purging, it is deadly: So is a Convulsion, following a Frensie. A Convulsion coming upon a Feaver, shews a malignant matter, which ends in death: but if a Feaver follow a Convulsion, it taketh away its Cause.

The Cure of this Disease is as various as the cause: the Convulsion caused by emptiness requires moystening Medicines, both internal and external: This Disease seldome happening, and almost (if not altogether incurable) I shall say nothing of it.

A Convulsion coming of repletion or fulness must be cured by evacuation of the peccant humours; if you see occasion, make use of Phlebotomy, and purge the humours with Medicines agreeable to the age and strength of your Patient: and sometimes with sharp Clysters, such as are described in the Fifth Chapter. If you see it not convenient to let blood, apply Cupping-glasses, alwayes above the parts

grieved,

grieved, that ſo the humours may be brought back to their orginal; that is to ſay, if the Convulſion or Cramp be in the Legg, apply them to the Buttocks and Loins; obſerve the ſame rule where-ever it be. The part affected ought to be chafed with Oyls and Oyntments ſutable to ſuch a diſtemper, *viz.* the Oyls of Rue, Camomil, Dill, Spike, the oyl of Foxes, *&c.* the oyntments of Marſh-mallows, *Martiatum*, *Nervinum*, to which may be added the Mucilage of Briony, with which you may make convenient Liniments to anoint the parts affected, and the root of the Nerve which comes to it. Ducks or Gooſ-greaſe, prepared in manner following, is much commended, *viz.* Take a fat Duck or Goole, pluck it and draw it, then fill it with theſe things following, *viz.* of Sage, Marjoram, and Stœchas, of each one handful; *Gum Ammoniacum* & *Bdellium*, of each one ounce; *Calamus Aromaticus*, Nutmegs, Mace, and Cloves, of each half an ounce: beat them in a Morter, moyſtening them with oyl of Earth-worms: after, ſew them into the belly of a Gooſe or Duck, ſpit it and roaſt it, receiving the dripping in a pan, half full of Vinegar, and anoint therewith. Or you may make it ſtronger thus: Take of the aforeſaid dripping ſix ounces, the Chymical Oyls of Wax, Nutmegs and Sage, of each two drams, mix it and make a Liniment: When you have anointed the part affected, cover it with a hot ſheeps skin, a hares or Foxes skin. To put the part affected into an Oxe or Sheeps belly, or any other beaſt newly killed; or to apply the Lungs of a Sheep, young Pidgeons, Whelps or Chickens ſlit in the middle, is much commended, and hath been ſucceſsfully proved. For thoſe that are thus affected, it is very good to bath themſelves in the Bath of *Bath*, or ſuch like, proceeding from a ſulphurous Mine: If you cannot conveniently come to this Bath, you muſt make a Bath with theſe things following: Of Marſh-mall w roots, and Lillies, of each two pounds: of the leaves of Pennyroyal, Lawrel, Rue, Marjerom, St. Johns-wort, Violets, Mallows, Sage and Wormwood, of each two handfuls; Linſeeds and Fenugreek: of each one pound, boyl all theſe in water ſufficient to make a Bath, and let the party diſeaſed ſit therein, not too long, but let him come out as ſoon as he finds eaſe. If you dare venture to be at the coſt, make your Bath with oyl, boyling a Fox therein, together with the aforeſaid Herbs, you may purge the Head with Sternutations, Gargariſms, and ſuch medicines as you may find in the Second Chapter, for the cure of a cold Phlegmatick diſtemper of the Brain; and it is good to foment the Hinder part of the Head & Neck with hot *Aqua Vitæ*, the infuſion of Caſtor, or the Spirit of the ſame, and the doſe is a drachm, or half a drachm, according to the age or ſtrength of the Patient. *Mithiolus* his Bezoar-water the like doſe; the compound water of Peony: give theſe mixed with other cooler medicines. The ſyrup of Peony com-

pound, *Diamoſchu dulce*, *Diacorum*, *Diateſſaron*, are much commended for the cure of this Diſeaſe.

I might add variety of Medicines for the Cure of this Diſtemper, but what I have ſaid (I hope) is ſufficient to give light to the Ingenious ſearching Spirits.

CHAP. IX.

Of a Catarrh or Defluxion.

A Catarrh is a Defluxion of excrementitious humours from the head into the inferiour parts. The brain requiring much nouriſhment, muſt neceſſarily void much excrements, which if they are in quantity moderate, and natural, they are received into the fore-Ventricles, and convey'd to the moiſt glandules, and ſpit out from the Palate; If it grow more plentiful, yet natural, it is diſperſed through the films of the brain, and ſent forth by the Noſtril as well as the Palate. But when the brain is weak, and affected with diſtempers, and receiveth more nouriſhment than it can concoct, it aboundeth with excrements, which by their quality and quantity overcome the retentive, and provoke the expulſive faculties, and ſo evacuate themſelves by unuſual and improper ways, to the diſturbance of the whole body.

The cauſe of this diſtemper proceeds from want of a good concoction in the brain, and this proceeds either from a hot or cold diſtemper.

A hot diſtemper doth attract more nouriſhment than Nature can ſufficiently digeſt. A cold diſtemper turneth the nouriſhment, brought to the brain, to flegm or water. Cold, groſs, and ſlimy meats hinder a good concoction, and windy meats ſend up many vapours to the head.

And to theſe many external cauſes, as Southerly winds, long ſleep upon a full ſtomach, eſpecially an idle life, &c. And though this be accounted a diſeaſe of the head, yet the principal cauſe lyeth in the inferiour parts, in which evil humours are collected, as the Liver, Spleen, Meſentery, womb, *&c.* from whom, not only vapours, but even the humours themſelves are ſent to the head, and deſcend to the inferiour parts again; a hot diſtemper of the Bowels, like an Alembeck ſend continual vapours to the head; a cold diſtemper engenders crude humours, which are alſo many times drawn up thither. Coſtiveneſs

ſtiveneſs or obſtructions in the lower belly, which hinder the avoiding of excrements, they not finding their ordinary paſſage fly up to the brain, which, by reaſon of its weakneſs, and looſe and ſoft ſubſtance, is forced to yield to the ſtronger parts disburthening themſelves upon it. The Impulſive cauſes are too much heat or cold in the brain: too much heat doth extenuate and diffuſe the humours, and this happeneth to the head, heated by the Sun, fire, covering, *&c.* Coldneſs doth compreſs the head, and ſtrains forth the humours therein contained, as a ſpunge is ſqueeſed in the hand. A Catarrh is cauſed by a Communication of cold humors, to the brain, from the feet, conveyed by the chiefeſt Nerves, which run through the marrow of the back: The ſtoppage or cloſure of the external pores, when the body requireth ſweat is the cauſe of a Catarrh; hence it cometh to paſs that Catarrhs are moſt frequent in Autumn, *viz.* the body Being made thin in the Summer, and the pores open, evacuating excrements by ſweat and inſenſible tranſpiration: in Autumn the pores being ſuddenly ſtopt, by reaſon of the contraction of ſudden cold, which cauſeth many vapours to fly to the head. Many more cauſes might be inſtanced, but I fear I ſhall grow too voluminous, and what I have ſaid is ſufficient to ſtir up ingenious wits to further diſcoveries. I ſhall add a few words, of the nature of the parts receiving this Defluxion, which by reaſon of their weakneſs are forced to receive the burthen laid upon them, by the ſtronger parts, like the inferior Commons, who are forced to bear the heavy impoſitions of their inſulting Superiours. The Lungs is naturally weak by reaſon of its ſoftneſs and looſneſs, which maketh the part fit to receive Defluxions; want of natural heat, cauſed by a cold diſtemper, maketh the part unable to reſiſt Defluxions: A wound or Ulcer in the part, cauſeth the humours to flow thither, if you take notice of Iſſues and Cauteries, you will ſcarcely doubt of the truth of it: So doth any inflammation or unnatural heat in the Lungs. Conſider of this, and you may be able to give a reaſon of Conſumptions of the Lungs, Pleuriſies, and ſpitting of bloody matter. The humours, which cauſe a Catarrh, flow from the Brain internally or externally: internally, if the humors fall upon the Breaſt, it is called a Catarrh or Defluxion: If upon *Aſpera Arteria*, it is called *Raucedo* or hoarſneſs: If it flows into the Noſtrils, it cauſeth *Coryza*, *Ozena*, or *Polypus*. If it falls upon the Nerves, it produceth Numbneſs, Palſy, Convulſion, Trembling: If in the Ears, Deafneſs; if in the Eyes, Inflammation, Tears, Blindneſs; if upon the *Uvula* or Palate, it cauſeth a Swelling, Looſneſs, or Ulcer there. If it fall into the Throat, the Quinſie follows; if on the Lungs, Inflammation, Pleuriſie, ſhortneſs of Breath, Cough, Conſumption: If it falls into the Stomach, vo-

miting and want of appetite enſues; if into the Bowels, *Dyarrhea*, or *Dyſentery*: and ſometimes it floweth into the Veins with the blood, and cauſeth a Feaver called *Febris Catarrhalis*, and is the fore-runner of the Joynt-Gout, and *Eryſipelas*. Sometimes the humors flow from the Head externally, without the Skull under the skin; theſe Humors fall into the Eyes, Teeth, Neck, and other external parts: therefore it is rightly conceived by many Learned men, That the greateſt part of the Diſeaſes incident to the body of Man, have their original from the head: Such whoſe bodies are ſpare and ſlender, eaſily penetrated by heat or cold; or ſuch as are groſly compact, and have not free tranſpiration: Such who have weak and cold Brains, that cannot diſcuſs, nor concoct the humours or vapours therein contained; or thoſe whoſe Brains are ſo hot as to attract too many vapours; Such, whoſe Stomachs and Livers are contrary in quality, *viz.* one hot, the other cold, are men ſubject to Catarrhs or Defluxions.

The ſigns of this diſeaſe may eaſily be gathered from the Cauſes, the approach of this diſeaſe may eaſily be diſcovered by the following Symptoms, *viz.* by heavineſs of the head, dulneſs of the Senſes, long ſleep, a ſnotty noſe, much ſpitting, coſtiveneſs of the body, and much wind; when the diſeaſe is perfect, the flowing humors are plainly felt, with ſwellings and pains in divers parts: if the defluxion be of cold humours, then will the body be ſenſible of cold, the face pale, the habit of the body generally flegmatick, troubled with ſour belchings, ſweet, ſlimy and wateriſh ſpittle. If it be a hot diſtillation, the habit of the whole body is cholerick; the parts affected inflamed and painful, the face red, much thirſt, a ſalt and ſharp humour in the mouth.

I need not tell you how an external Defluxion may be known from an internal; but take notice, that if there appear plenty of humors, the Catarrh is more dangerous, for by a ſudden defluxion deſperate accidents may follow.

If age, ſtrength, and the ſeaſon permit, or if the body abound with blood, or the Liver be too hot, (as it often happens in this diſtemper) breathe a Vein at the beginning of the Cure, the contrary prohibiting Phlebotomy. You muſt firſt prepare the matter, then gently purge the head, afterwards more ſtrongly purge the peccant humours: out of the former Chapters you may find what purges are convenient, with reſpect to the humour offending; *Coloquintida* hath an excellent quality to purge the head, but by reaſon of its violent operation, is not fit for common uſe; therefore uſe it not without good advice. In this Diſeaſe alſo it is good to uſe Maſticatories, and Gargariſms, when the humours fall into the Eyes or Noſe, *&c.*

Errhines,

Errhines, and ſneezing Powders when it falls upon the Breaſt, Lungs, *&c.* Iſſues behind the Neck or Ears are found by experience a gallant remedy for a Catarrh.

I ſhall not here trouble my ſelf or the Reader, to inſert Examples of the aforegoing Medicines; the Chapters before-going, together with every Artiſts ingenuity will ſufficiently inform. Take this for a general Rule, That when a Catarrh or Defluxion is cauſed by excrementitious humors flowing from any of the inferiour parts, by reaſon of the natural paſſage being ſtopped, you muſt open the obſtruction, by often purging, or by Medicines, regarding the nature of the obſtruction, and by that means turn the humors offending into their natural channel, after convenient Evacuations, with internal and external Medicines, Labour to corroborate the Head, & dry up the humors.

Internal Medicines may be prepared thus, or after this manner: Take of Coriander-ſeed prepared, and Coltsfoot dried, Nutmegs and Frankincenſe of each half an ounce; Liquoris, Maſtich and Cubebs, of each two drachms, *Flos Sulphuris*, three drams, Conſerve of red Roſes one ounce, with a pound of white Sugar diſſolved in Poppy-water, make Rolls weighing three drachms or half an ounce: Take one Morning and Evening.

Or you may make Troches in this manner; Take of the beſt Frankincenſe, and juyce of Liquoris, of each one dram; *Lac Sulphuris*, half a drachm; Opium, Saffron and Myrrh, of each one ſcruple; the Oyls of Annis-ſeed and Nutmegs, of each three drops; with *Diacodium*, as much as ſufficeth, to make Troches; or if you pleaſe you may make them into Pills; and take half a drachm morning and evening. It is good to apply bags of Herbs to the fore-part of the head, which have a drying quality, ſhave the fore-part of the head, and apply the *Gum Tacamahacca* ſpread upon a cloath in the form of a Plaiſter, and add thereto a little Myrrh; or if you make a fume thereof, and ſhut the Chamber cloſe, it profiteth.

If the Defluxion proceed from a hot cauſe, you muſt adminiſter Medicines which have power to thicken the Humour, to repel and evacuate it: you muſt likewiſe correct the diſtempers, and fortifie the parts both ſending and receiving; and that you may ſo do, you muſt repel or pull back the Humors by Phlebotomy, if nothing hinder it. You muſt thicken the humors, by adminiſtring Juleps, made of the Waters of Plantane, Purſlane, Lettuce, the Syrups of Poppies, Violets, Water-Lillies, of dried Roſes, and Meconium, and ſuch like. Having thus thickned and prepared the humours, you muſt evacuate them by gentle Purgatives; Take of the beſt Rhubarb a drachm, infuſe it in any of the aforenamed Waters (as much as is ufficient for a potion) ſix hours in warm Embers, ſtrain it out, and

add to the liquor one ounce of Manna, and as much Syrup of dryed Roſes, and adminiſter it. To make the Potion ſtronger, you may diſſolve therein *Catholicon*, *Diaprunum Solutive*, or *Lenitive*, *Confectio Hamech*, *&c.* or ſuch like, having reſpect to the age and ſtrength of your Patient, and humor offending.

You muſt endeavour to reſtrain the Flux thus; Take of Conſerve of Roſes one ounce, *Diatragacanthum Frigidum*, and *Pulvis Haly*, of each a drachm, Bole-armenick prepared with Roſe-water a drachm; with the Emulſion of the four great cold Seeds, and Syrup of dried Roſes, make an Opiate, and give the quantity of a Nutmeg to bedward. Theſe Troches are much commended, take Gum-Dragant, and Arabick, of each two drachms; Bole-armenick, and *Terra ſigillata* waſhed in Roſewater, of each one drachm; white Poppy-ſeeds, and Juyce of Liquoris, of each half a drachm; Sugar-penids one ounce, with the Muſilage of Quince-ſeeds, extracted with Roſewater, make Troches to be held in the mouth day and night.

The Spirit of Sulphur, and Vitriol given three or four drops in a convenient Julep, Morning and Evening, worketh no ſmall effects againſt a Defluxion, eſpecially if it proceed from an inflammation of the Bowels. If you find the Diſeaſe too ſtubborn to yield to theſe Medicines, you muſt make uſe of Narcoticks, of which Laudanum is none of the worſt, four or five grains given at bed-time.

Faventius extolleth theſe Pills in ſalt Catarrh, or Defluxion of ſalt humors; Take of the juyce of Liquoris two drachms, waſhed Aloes one drachm, *Pilulæ de Cynoglosso* half a drachm, with Syrup of Violets, make a Maſs, and take a ſcruple thereof at bed-time.

It is convenient to make Powders to apply to the head, which have power to ſtrengthen, to ſtop the Defluxion; and conſume the Humors: Take of white Amber, Benjamin, Maſtich, Nutmegs, of each half an ounce; Betony, Sage, Roſemary, Lavender, Marjerom, of each half a handful; Frankincenſe, grains of Kermes, red Roſes, Peony-ſeeds and Poppy-heads, of each two drachms: Sanders, Myrtles, Cypreſs Nuts, and Pomegranate Flowers, of each one drachm; make a powder for the lining of a Cap or Quilt. Or if you had rather, you may make Plaiſters with the ſame Simples, with Wax and Oyl of Roſes, according to Art; and apply it to the Head, being firſt ſhaved.

CHAP.

CHAP. X.

Of Diſeaſes of the Eyes, and firſt of the Diſeaſes proceeding from Obſtruction in the Optick Nerves.

IN the former Book having given you a brief account of this worthy Member, and what variety of wonderful operations God and Nature have placed in ſo little a ſubject: yet of the parts and faculties thereof, it is too hard a task for the moſt exquiſite Philoſopher to conceive aright, or for the moſt Eloquent Orator, to expreſs ſuch wonderful Notions. But, ſeeing God hath endued every man with this Member, by whoſe curious inſpection, he is enabled to pry into all things; it is the duty of every Naturaliſt to exerciſe this Member in finding out its own conſtitution, and curing the diſtemper and maladies, to which it is ſubject. For the benefit of thoſe who want better helps, I ſhall, as briefly as may be, diſcover the Diſeaſes and Cures of the Eyes, as they are, in which Work I adhere to the Opinions of the Wiſe and Learned Phyſitians, verified by Reaſon, and my own Experience.

Sometimes it happeneth, that the ſight of the Eye is totally extinguiſhed, and no fault appears in the Eye: And this cometh to paſs, either by obſtruction or adſtriction of the Optick Nerves; and is called by the Latines *Gutta Serena*, and *Amaureſis*. Obſtruction (for the moſt part) is the cauſe of this diſeaſe, which happeneth by the flowing down of a watry humor upon the Nerves, which cauſeth blindneſs or dimneſs of ſight: the like obſtruction happening to the other Nerves, cauſeth the Palſie. Adſtriction or Compreſſion ſometimes happeneth by ſome moiſt humour gathered about the Optick Nerves, as blood or filthy matter, gathered in the Brain, ſometimes by humours, ſometimes by inflammation, in malignant Feavers, and may be the cauſe of this Diſeaſe. For the Nerves being thus obſtructed or compreſſed, the animal Spirits cannot paſs from the Brain to the Eyes. To this I may add, That in caſe by a wound in the Head, the Optick Nerves be cut, without controverſie it cauſeth blindneſs.

The ſign of this Diſeaſe, is the loſs of Sight, and the Eye appearing in its natural condition, onely the *Pupilla*, or the ſight of the Eye looketh wider, blacker and dimmer. The difference of cauſes is thus known: If the cauſe be blood or choler, ſome inflammation, impoſtume or wound in the Head hath gone before. If the Nerves are compreſſed by Flegm gathered about the roots of the Eyes, all or moſt of the Head is affected, and the other Senſes are hurt: but if it be obſtruction of the Optick Nerves, the Eye is onely affected, or the fore-part of the Head about the Eye-browes beareth part of the affliction.

If the Diſeaſe proceed from an obſtruction in the Optick Nerves, and the ſight be totally loſt, for the moſt part the Diſeaſe is incurable: but if the obſtruction be imperfect, that is to ſay, the ſight much diminiſhed, and the Patient not totally blind, then there is hope of recovery. If it happen by humours gathered into the fore-part of the Head, compreſſing the Nerves, it is curable.

For the Cure, the Head muſt be cleanſed by Medicines, which effectually purge thoſe humours which compreſs or obſtruct the Nerves: But remember, That as you cannot free the Nerves, without purging the whole head, ſo you cannot cleanſe the Head without purging the whole body. It is good that the Patient avoid a thick, cold, cloudy, and moiſt Air, and frequent the contrary. Let him eſchew all meats that are groſs, or yield a groſs juyce, ſuch as are windy, hot ſpices, or whatever fills the Head with vapours. It is good to put the ſeed of Fennel into his Bread. Let his meat for his ſauce be extenuating, as Betony, Eye-bright, Fennel, Hyſop, Marjerom, Sage: Nutmeg alſo doth much comfort the Brain, and clears the ſight, as 'tis generally believed: Let the aforeſaid Herbs likewiſe be boyled in his broth: Lettuce and ſuch like cold Herbs are very hurtful; Turneps are highly commended, and 'tis proved they clear the ſight, being often eaten: Pidgeons, Sparrows, and ſuch like Fowls are ſaid to be a good food for ſuch who are thus diſeaſed. Let him eat no Supper; if he eat any, let it be light, and not too late. Then let him make uſe of this Diet-Drink following: Take of Betony, Eye-bright, Celandine the great, Fennel, Balm, Marjerom, Sage, and Vervain, of each two handfuls: the roots of Elecampane, Fennel, Flower-de-luce, Liquoris, and Sarſaparilla ſliced, of each one handful: the ſeeds of Coriander, Aniſe, and Fennel, of each one ounce; the flowers of Roſemary and Lavender, of each a handful: Raiſins of the Sun ſtoned, and blew figs ſliced, of each a pound: Senna two ounces. Let all theſe be infuſed ſix hours in a ſufficient quantity of Wort, upon hot embers, then turned up in four gallons of New-beer, let them work together: Let the Patient drink a draught every morning till the Cure be perfected, unleſs ſome other medicine intervene. You muſt purge the Body often, as you ſee cauſe, either with gentle or ſtronger Purges; let them be Pills, and ſuch as purge the Humour offending: Of which, you ſhall have a particular account in the Fourth Book.

If your Patient be not old, and you find blood abound, you may open a vein: the opening of the particular veins of the Head, eſpecially thoſe that are neareſt the Eyes, have often proved ſucceſsful, becauſe the Veins, by reaſon of their fulneſs of blood, have compreſſed the Optick Nerves.

Some

Sometimes the application of Cupping glaſſes, Veſicatories, and Cauteries, to the hinder part of the Head or Neck, to the Shoulders or Back, have been attended with admirable ſucceſs. After due evacuation, it is convenient to dry up the humors by a ſucorifick Diet-Drink, made and uſed, as is deſcribed in the Second Chapter; adding ſuch Herbs as have a ſpecial property to cure the Eyes, *viz.* Celandine, Eye-bright, Fennel, and Vervain. If you ſee occaſion to dry up the moiſt humours of the Head, make uſe of ſuch powders, bags and caps preſcribed in the fore-going Chapters. Alſo ſulphurous and Bituminous Baths profit much.

The Glaſſie and Cryſtalline humours of the Eye are ſubject to infirmities and diſorder: the firſt is ſubject to a mixture, with other humours; and this Diſeaſe is hard to diſcover, but muſt be cured by cleanſing the head and optick nerves, and repelling and diſcuſſing the humor which mixeth with the vitrious humour, and maketh it dusky. This humour alſo may be diſordered, in reſpect of its ſituation, when it is brought before the Cryſtalline, and ſo diminiſheth the ſight. This Diſeaſe is hardly diſtinguiſhed from a Cataract, onely it differeth in the cauſe; for a Cataract cometh by a defluxion of humour; this from a blow or contuſion, and is uncurable: ſometimes it happeneth that Nature works a Cure, and reduceth it to its place again; but no man as yet can imitate her, therefore we leave the buſineſs to her diſpoſing.

The Cryſtalline humour is the chief inſtrument of Sight, and if any defect happen to it, that it be not pure nor perſpicuous, the viſive ſpirits cannot exerciſe their office. This humour doth often ſuffer prejudice through ſome drying and condenſing cauſe, as it often happens to ancient people, where the aforeſaid cauſe changeth the Cryſtalline humour to redneſs. The ſign of this Diſeaſe is a thick White about the ſight of the Eye, and every object appeareth to the Patient as through a Cloud: it is called *Glaucoma*, and differeth from a Cataract in this; *viz.* a Cataract lieth in the *Pupilla*, or ſight near *Cornea*, but *Glaucoma* lieth much deeper, and is uncurable, eſpecially in old people.

Sometimes the Cryſtalline humour is diſplaced, that it lieth not directly againſt the *Pupilla*; ſometimes it lieth too high, and ſometimes too low; and if one eye ſuffer, all things ſeem double: Sometimes vapours and water divide the viſive humours, and cauſeth the objects to be received into two places. Sometimes the Cryſtalline Humor is removed and brought nearer to the *Pupilla*, and things that are near, are not ſo eaſily ſeen, as things farther off. But if it be removed backward, things near are plainly ſeen, but not afar off; the uſe of Spectacles are profitable in this caſe. Sometimes the Cryſtalline

line humour lyeth to the right, or to the left side, so that more White appeareth on one side, than on the other; and this we call *Strabismus*, or Squinting, this also is uncurable, especially if it happeneth that the muscles of the Eyes be displaced by Convulsion or Palsie, then without hope, is uncurable. Sometimes there happeneth an inversion of the Crystalline humor, so that the objects seem folded or crooked: But these Diseases being uncurable by Medicines, I shall prescribe none.

CHAP. XI.

Of a Cataract.

A Cataract is caused or bred by a distemper of a watry humour of the Eye, which distemper is in quantity or quality: if in quantity, it causeth a dilation of the *Pupilla*; of which I shall speak in the next Chapter. If the Distemper be in quality, it proceeds from a mixture of excrementitious humours with the watry humor; In the beginning of this distemper, the sight being a little darkned, it is called Suffusion; but when it is gathered about the *Pupilla* (like water) they call it *Aqua* water; but when it is gathered thick about the *Pupilla*, it is called a Cataract. If Choler be the humor mixed with the watry humor, the Cataract appeareth somewhat citrine or yellow: If Melancholy, then is the Cataract more dull and blackish: If it be white as chalk, it signifieth a thick and compacted matter: If it be of the colour of Pearl, then slime and transparent flegm is the humour offending.

There are two sorts of Cataracts, a true, and a Bastard-Cataract: A true Cataract doth for the most part affect one eye onely; and if both be affected, they are not alike, nor affected at the same time, as in the spurious Cataract. In a true Cataract or Suffusion, a dark matter appeareth in the *Pupilla*, which doth not in the other.

But here let the Reader beware, lest he fall into error; for this doth not always hold as a sure distinguishing Rule: for if the humor be as thin as the watry humor, nothing appeareth; and many upon this ground have thought it to be *Gutta Serena*: but there is a great difference between *Gutta Serena*, and this: for in *Gutta Serena* the sight is quite lost, or at least much diminished, and no fault appears in the *Pupilla*: But it is not so in this Suffusion, which cannot be seen; for the sight is but a little diminished, because the humour being thin and transparent, the objects pierce it like glass.

Though

Though I need say nothing of the signs of this Disease, it being easie to gather the signs from the causes, yet I shall add a few words. In the beginning of a Suffusion, certain small Bodies, as hairs, flyes, cobwebs, gnats, wool, and such like, flye before the eyes, as it grows on, the symptoms are more evident, and the objects appear as through a glass: when it is perfect the *Pupilla* is changed in colour, and the sight is totally lost: What the colours denote, I have already laid down. If the matter of the Cataract appear dark, it lyeth between Chorion (or *uvea*) and *Cornea*, and the *Pupilla* is dilated, and white or red veins appear about the circle of the Eye; if the contrary appear, judge that the matter lieth between the Crystalline, and *uvea*. If the matter lye deep, the *Pupilla* is contracted, if higher enlarged. When the Cataract is newly begun, and the Patient can see, as through a cloud, if he be young, and the season sutable, it may be cured: On the contrary, if it be confirmed, and the matter grosse, it yields not to Medicines, but must be couched with a needle.

And seeing I speak of couching, give me leave to tell you, That 'tis a dangerous operation, and often attended with bad success; but if you find it needful, and likely to be prevalent, make use of a neat-handed Chyrurgion: and that you may know whether it be likely or no to be cured, consider a few Rules.

Signs of Cure, by couching, are these: If when the sound eye be shut, the *Pupilla* of the Eye affected appear larger, and perceive some light, there is hopes of cure: If the contrary appear, judge accordingly. A black, green, yellow and hard Cataract, never yieldeth to Medicine, seldom to the Needle: Attempt not the operation on old men, nor children: You must also consider, before you attempt this operation, whether the Suffusion be ripe and fit for couching; or whether it be not grown too hard. The first you must try thus; Press down the eye affected with your finger, and if you alter the shape of the Suffusion, and when your finger is off, it returneth to its former station, then is it thin, and not ripe: but if the contrary appear, it may be couched with a Needle. But here note, That it must be moderate, and not too compact, but like a skin that will rowl upon the Needle: if it be thick and solid like chalk, or hail, it cannot be couched.

For the Cure, you must observe the same Rules prescribed in the former Chapter, you must use and abstain from the same kind of diet; you must use general and particular Evacuations; you must repel the humors offending, and strengthen the head and eyes. Then you must come to Topical Medicines, and though I am (almost) of *Galen*'s opinion, who saith they are little worth, for they promise more than they can perform; yet Experience hath taught, and Au-

thors

thors have confirmed, that Cataracts, which have not been of long continuance, but taken in the beginning, have been cured by Topicks, after the use of the medicines before mentioned, therefore I shall insert a few of them, and leave the Ingenious to finde out more.

First, you must make a Fomentation of such things as have power to mollifie and dissolve: Take of Celandine, Fennel, Eye-bright, of each one handful; of Rue, Vervain, Clary, of each half a handful; Melilot, Chamomil Flowers, and red Rose leaves, of each one pugil; Fenugreek seed one ounce: boil them in a pint and a half of Spring-water, to the consumption of the half pint, then put in a half pint of White-Wine, and let it boyl a little. Strain it out, and with clothes wet in the liquor, foment the eyes every morning so long as you see occasion. If you wash the Eyes with red Wine sometimes, it hinders the defluxion, discusseth and dissolveth. It is good to let a Child lick the Eye, after it hath eaten sweet Fennel seeds. Infuse *Crocus Metallorum* in white-Wine, and wash the Eye with the Wine; or after a sufficient infusion, pour off the Wine clear, and with sweet Fennel and Fenugeek seed, of each one ounce, of Alloes half an ounce, Saffron a dram, beat them, and searce them into fine powder, the blood of a young Pidgion hot with weight of them all, with the aforesaid Wine, what is sufficient to make a soft Pultis, & apply it warm to the Eye at Night; take it off in the morning. Or slit a young Pigeon, and lay it to the Eye. Then you must come to make use of Topical Medicines called *Collyries*, which many times (by *Galen's* favour) have good success, if the Cataract be not too much confirmed. Take the leaves of Rue, Fennel, Vervain, Celandine, and Eye-bright, of each one handful; Centaury the less, Burnet, Avens, Sage, of each half a handfull; Fennel roots and the roots of round Birthwort, of each half a pound; Red Rose leaves and White Violet leaves, of each one ounce; Radish seed, and Fenugreek seed, of each one dram; Ammoniacum, and the Natural Balsome, of each a dram, Tutty two drams: pouder those that are to be poudered, the herbs and roots shred and sliced; put to them White-Wine, honey, and the Urine of a Boy, as much as may wet them all, *viz.* of white Wine three parts; of the Urine two, and Honey one; then distil them in *Balneo Mariæ*: drop the water into the Eyes, morning and evening. regarding the course and medicines before prescribed. *Josephus Quercetanus*, in his *Pharmacopœia*, doth much commend this following Water, *viz.* Take of the water of the greater Celandine six ounces, *Crocus Metallorum* one dram; infuse it in the same water, and drop two or three drops into the Eye, three or four times a day as long as need requireth.

I could inſert many more Receipts of Learned and able men, but I fear my Book will ſwell too big: I ſhall only inſert the Oyntment of *Zacutus Luſitanus*, which he commends, for drying and purging the moiſture flowing into the Eyes: Take of the Oyl of Roſes three ounces, white Roſe-water nine ounces; Camphire one dram, Tutty one ſcruple, Honey two ounces, the Gall of a Goat half an ounce, Lupin meal half a dram, Aloes Succotrine one dram, Sugar-Candy half a dram, the juyce of Horehound, Fennel, and Rue, of each half an ounce, Myrrh one ſcruple, Ammoniacum half a dram, Sarcocol one dram and an half.

Pouder them that are to be poudered, mix them, and boyl them a little with a gentle fire, and with the greaſe of a Goat or ſheep, and a little Wax, make an Oyntment according to Art; anoint the Eye-brows twice in a day, three hours after meat, which will purge plenty of water out of the head, through the corner of the eye.

When you have finiſhed your Cure, whether by Medicines, or by the Needle, you muſt keep your Patient in a courſe of Phyſick, for fear of a Relapſe, and adminiſter ſuch things as ſtrengthen the Head and Eyes, and hinder defluxion: It is good to waſh the Head and Eyes every morning with white Wine, wherein had been bruiſed ſweet Fennel-ſeed in powder, till they ſmart; but for other Medicines, to ſtrengthen the Head and Eyes, I refer you to the preceding Chapter.

CHAP. XII.

Of the enlarging and dilating; of the ſtraitning or contracting of the Pupilla.

THis Diſeaſe is called in Greek *Mydriaſis*, becauſe too much light going in, hurteth the ſight: Hence it is, that thoſe that are thus diſtempered, ſee better in a darkiſh place than in the light. And this may be demonſtrated by the natural change of the *Pupilla* (in ſound Eyes) in bright and obſcure places. For when a man is in a bright and clear place, the *Pupilla* is contracted and made leſs, leſt the light, going in too faſt, ſhould diſſipate the ſpirits: ſo that a man going ſuddenly out of a very light place, into a houſe or place more obſcure, at the firſt entry he ſeeth (almoſt) nothing at all the *Pupilla* being ſo lately contracted: he remaining in the ſame place, the *Pupilla* is ſoon dilated or enlarged to receive more light, and then he ſeeth perfectly thoſe things, which before he could not. Then if he go out ſuddenly into a very light place his Eyes are dazled, and he

ſeth

ſeeth not perfectly, becauſe the Pupilla is inlarged, and the light goeth in ſo faſt, doth diſſipate and diſperſe the Viſive Spirits. Hence you perceive that the light ought to paſs into the Eye in a moderate quantity, and the Pupilla ought to be of a moderate ſize. Hence *Galen* obſerves, that they who are born with narrow Pupilla's ſee beſt.

The Pupilla is inlarged or contracted by drineſs, or repletion, it is inlarged by drineſs, which ſtretcheth the Uvea, which maketh the form of the Pupilla larger; as Leather being pierced when it is dry, the hole is larger, and this proceeds from Feavers, and ſuch drying Diſeaſes, which are attended with want of ſleep. So may the Pupilla be ſtreightned by drineſs, when the Tunicle Uvea by reaſon of the diminiſhing of the humor of the Eye, loſeth its former extenſion, falls together and is wrinkled, and ſo the hole of the Pupilla is made ſtreighter; whereas in the former the Tunicle though dry, holdeth its extenſion. It is made larger alſo by repletion, namely, by vapors or wind ſent unto the Eye, or by the extraordinary flowing of the watry and other humors to the Eye, or by the ſwelling of the Uvea it ſelf, it is diſtended, and the Pupilla made larger. So the ſame watry humor may work a contrary effect, namely, by relaxing the ſame Tunicle, and by that means making the hole ſtreighter. The Pupilla is inlarged ſometimes by Convulſion, as may be ſeen by ſome Epileptick Children; ſometimes a ſtroke or fall may cauſe a defluxion into the Eyes, hence comes extenſion: retenſion of the Spirits cauſeth wind and humors, and that cauſeth diſtenſion of the Pupilla, and ſometimes the Pupilla is made ſtreighter, by reaſon of the want of the viſive Spirits to extend the Tunicles, for want of which they are relaxed and fall together, as may be ſeen in old men.

Theſe Diſeaſes though they are contrary, yet are to be cured by the ſame Medicines; remember this, that if theſe Diſeaſes be of long continuance, and in ancient people they are (without doubt) incurable. But if the Patient be young, and the Diſeaſe of no long continuance, you muſt proceed, with this conſideration, that the cure muſt be varied according to the variety of cauſes: If it proceed from drineſs, you muſt refreſh the body with Medicines which are moiſt and reſtaurative; and ſuch you ſhall finde in the cure of the Hectick Feaver. If it comes from a humor filling the Eye, you muſt purge and cleanſe the Head and the whole body of that Humor, as you are taught in the cure of a Cataract. If from wind, after due Evacuations, you muſt labour to diſcuſs the wind with the decoction of Fennel, Rue, Dill, Camomel, red Roſes made in red Roſewater and Whitewine, and the Eyes fomented therewith. If there be occaſion for Aſtringent

Medicines,

Medicines, to bring the Pupilla (being inlarged) to its former ſtate, make uſe of this following, taught by *Riverius*: Take of red Roſes dried, two ſcruples, Saffron, Spicknard, and the Bark of Frankincenſe-tree, of each half a ſcruple, Tutty prepared, Burnt-Ivory and Acatia, of each one ſcruple, make them into fine powder, and tie it up in a fine linnen rag, and hang it in three Ounces of red Roſe-water, when you have occaſion to uſe it, ſqueeze the cloth, and drop the water into the Eyes, and waſh them therewith. If a blow in the Eye cauſeth an inflammation, cure it as the inflammation of the Eye; but if by the blow the Pupilla be inlarged without inflammation, drop in a drop or two of Pigeons blood, and apply a Cataplaſm made with Beanflower and red Roſes, juyce of Plantane and red Roſewater.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the Pin and Web.

THe Tunicle, called *Cornea*, ſometimes loſeth its colour and brightneſs, ſometimes it grows thick by drineſs, as in old men, and is incurable; ſometimes groſs humors are faſtned to it by reaſon of inflammation, ſometimes by reſolving Medicines, the thinner humors are diſſolved, and the thicker remain; or by the uſe of cold Medicines the humors are thickned, and a white humor is contracted, which is called by ſome *Leucoma*, by others *Albugo*, commonly a Pin and Web. Sometimes it comes from a Scar, after an Ulcer, and ſo the *Cornea* loſeth its tranſparentneſs. Sometimes the Eye is bloodſhod, and that ſpoileth the natural colour of the *Cornea*, and this is called *Sugillatio*: Sometimes the *Cornea* is made yellow by the Jaundiſe. All theſe Diſeaſes are eaſily diſcovered, and their cauſes are laid down in the Deſcription: That which cometh after a Wound or Ulcer, and is a Scar, is not eaſily cured. But the cure of the Pin and Web conſiſts in Emollients, attenuating and diſcuſſing Medicines. But the Antecedent cauſe muſt firſt be removed by Univerſal Evacuations, ſuch as are deſcribed in the Tenth and Eleventh Chapters. Then you muſt ſoften the hard matter with the decoction of Fenugreek, Mallows, Melilot, Celandine, Fennel, and the like. Then let a Child chew ſweet Fennel-ſeed, and afterwards lick the Eye, or make a Water thus: Take of Honey a pint, the juyce of Fennel, Brooklime and Celandine, of each half a pint, Sugar-candy diſſolved in the Juyces an Ounce, with the natural Balſom a ſcruple, clarifie them together, or diſtil them in *Balneo Mariæ*, and drop it into the Eye. The Seed of *Oculus Chriſti* put into the Eye is good. If it

be

be a Scar, after the uſe of the former Medicines, uſe the Water of Honey; afterwards put a quantity of the Gall of an Ox to the Juyce before ſpoken of, and thicken it with Gum-Traganth. If the Eye be blood-ſhod, and yeldeth not to the fore-going Medicine, you muſt ſeek its cure in the Chapter of the Cataract. As for the yellowneſs of the Eyes cauſed by the Jaundiſe, take away the Cauſe and the Effect ceaſeth.

CHAP. XIV.

Of the Inflammation of the Eyes.

THis Diſeaſe is called *Ophthalmy*, which is an inflammation of the Tunicle *Adnata*, and is ſometimes extended to the *Cornea*: By the *Latines* it is called *Lippitudo*, bloodſhotneſs; This Diſeaſe is divided into three kinds, the firſt is called *Taraxis* by the *Grecks*, and by the *Latines*, *Conturbatio*, and it cometh from an external cauſe, *viz.* the Sun, Smoke, Oyl, Duſt, or the like. If it comes from an internal cauſe, namely the Diſtempers of the Stomach, it is called *Phlogeſis*, and is a light inflammation, but is the Original of the true Ophthalmy, which always proceeds from an internal cauſe, accompanied with tumour, redneſs and pain, and a thick Excrement called *Lippa*, from whence the *Latines* call it *Lippitudo*, or bloodſhotneſs. The third ſort is called χυμόωσις, in Latine alſo *Chimoſis*, this is attended with vehement pain, and the eye-lids are ſo inverted, that they can ſcarcely cover the eye, the red covereth moſt part of the Iris, and it proceedeth from repletion and flegmatick humors. I might here ſhew you how *Hippocrates* hath divided theſe Diſeaſes, namely a moiſt and dry Ophthalmy, the moiſt I have already ſpoken of, the dry he calleth ξηροφθαλμία, it wanteth humidity, and proceedeth from Choler and adutt Melancholy: there are other ſubdiviſions, if there be itching joyned with it, he calleth it ὑγροφθαλμία, and if it come with hardneſs of Eye-lids σκληροφθαλμία, *Galen* mentions another, which he calleth *Ophthalmia Tabida*, which ends with a conſumption and loſs of the Eye: this hapneth to them who have moiſt heads and weak eyes, fit to receive a defluxion. The immediate cauſes are defluxion or congeſtion, and ſometimes both; the defluxion cometh from the head, either by the internal Veins, which come from the Brain under the Skull, or by the external Veins, which come from the Pericranium to the Eyes.

Theſe ſigns demonſtrate the Diſeaſe and the Cauſe thereof; if redneſs appear without ſwelling, it is a Conturbation: If ſwelling, hear

heat and tears be joyned to the redneſs, then it is a perfect Ophthalmy; but if ever it cover the black of the eye, and invert the eye-lids, then it is called *Chimoſis*: If blood abound, and cauſe the Diſtemper, the eye and face will be red, and the Veins ſwelled: if Choler be the cauſe, the Patient feeleth a pricking pain with ſharp tears which corrode the cheeks and corners of the eyes. If it proceed from Flegm, the pain is heavy, many ſlimy and glutinous tears. If Melancholy cauſe the grief, the tumour is but ſmall, the colour of a dusky redneſs, few tears, the humor thick, the conſtitution of the Patient melancholy. If the defluxion come from the internal parts of the head, the pain will be felt inwardly, and about the roots of the eyes; if through the exterior Veſſels the contrary ſigns appear, the Veins of the Forehead are diſtended, and there is much ſhooting about the Temples.

For the Cure, the external cauſes muſt be removed, the antecedent cauſes evacuated, revelled and repelled, the conjunct cauſe derived and diſcuſſed, and the parts affected ſtrengthened.

Let the Patient obſerve an orderly and temperate Diet, and eat ſuch things that are of eaſie digeſture, let him avoid all ſharp and ſalt things, and ſuch as fume up to the head, and ſuch things as breed Choler, let him abſtain from ſtrong drink, let moſt of his drink be Barley-water, let him avoid all motion, let him lie ſtill as long as he is able, and ſleep as long as he can, let him keep his eyes ſhut, and whatever he do, endeavour to keep his body ſoluble.

Phlebotomy for the moſt part is convenient, but let it be regulated and moderated according to the conſtitution, ſtrength, age, and ſex of your Patient, and nature of the Diſeaſe.

If the Body be Plethorick, and the Diſeaſe hath its original from blood, you muſt take away the greater quantity, for *Galen* in his Book *De curat. per ſang. miſ.* relateth how one was cured of an Opthalmy by blood-letting, firſt, three pounds, and four hours after one pound; underſtand this onely in the caſe before-mentioned: though I could anſwer many caſes more, cited by eminent Authors and Fathers of Phyſick, yet let theſe ſerve for all to avoid prolixity. If only one Eye be effected, bleed your Patient on the contrary ſide. If you finde a ſtoppage of any accuſtomed evacuations, *viz.* the Terms or Hemorrhoid Veins; if the firſt be ſtopped, open the Saphæna, if the other, bleed them with Leeches.

To make revulſion, ſome do apply Cupping-glaſſes to the ſhoulders and back, others open the Veins of the Head and Temples, ſometimes the Veins of the corner of the Eyes, and behind the Ears; and ſome bleed theſe Veins by Leeches, all which are very profitable for derivation. When you have bled, and made ſufficient revulſion, you

muſt purge the humour that offendeth, and cauſeth the blood to be inflamed; but firſt let the humors be prepared, then purge gently and often; and if you ſee occaſion, after all this, you may purge more ſtrongly: prepare the humours thus, Take of Endive, Succory and Fumitory, of each one handful, red Roſe-leaves one Ounce, of the greater Cold-ſeeds half an Ounce, of Lettuce and Poppy-ſeeds, of each two ſcruples, boyl them in a quart of ſpring-water, to the conſumption of half, ſtrein it, and with Syrup of Violets two Ounces, and Syrup of Fumitory one Ounce, make a Julep for three Potions; afterwards you muſt adminiſter ſuch Medicines as have power gently to carry away the peccant humours. Take of Caſſia newly drawn, one Ounce and an half, Manna diſſolved in Roſewater an Ounce, Catholicon half an Ounce, Powder of Rubarb two drams, with Sugar ſufficient, make a Bolus for three times. If the body be flegmatick purge with Pills of Agarick, or Lucis Majores; but take this caution along with you, that you adminiſter no ſtrong Purgation in this Diſtemper without the advice of an able Phyſician. After ſufficient Evacuations, you may profitably apply a Cataplaſm to the Forehead and Temples, that hath an aſtringent power, by which the humors flowing to the Eyes may be ſtopt. Take of Bole-armenick, Maſtick, Frankincenſe, Sanguis Draconis, and Wheat-flower, of each one Dram, the powder of Lentils and red Roſes, of each two ſcruples, with the White of an Egg, juyce of Nettles, Vinegar of Roſes, of each a like quantity, ſufficient to make a Cataplaſm. An Apple roaſted with Frankincenſe and Maſtick in it, moiſten it with the White of an Egg beaten to water, and as much of a ſound womans breaſt-milk, make a Cataplaſm, and apply it to the Eye; or with crums of bread, and womans-milk, with a little Roſewater, you may make a convenient Cataplaſm.

Then you muſt prepare Collyries, Ungents, and Fomentations, which muſt be uſed with diſcretion, and varied as the pain or inflammation increaſeth or decreaſeth, or as the humors are diſcuſſed or fixed, *&c.* out of the multiplicity of ſuch Medicines; I ſhall inſert a few, and but a few, for brevities ſake.

Take the Salt of Lead one Scruple, Sal Armoniack ſix Grains, Roſe-water and Plantane-water, of each thee Ounces, the white of an Egg beaten to water one ounce, let them be mixed therein, and the Salts well diſſolved, drop a little into the Eye Morning and Evening. *Quercetan* commends the infuſion of Crocus Metallorum, made in Eye-bright and Fennel-water, and uſed as before. *Pæuotus* his Ointment is very good in theſe ocular inflamations, and the way to prepare it is thus; Take of Tutty prepared an ounce and a half, Camphire one dram, Verdegreeſe twelve grains, beat the Tutty and

the

the Camphire together in a Morter, into fine powder, likewiſe the Verdegreece by it ſelf, then take of freſh Butter (or *May* Butter if you can have it) one ounce; Roſe-water one dram; boyl them gently together, then take them from the fire; firſt put in the Camphire and Tutty, then the Verdegreece by degrees, ſtir them well together, and ſtrein them through a piece of Sarſnet, put it into a Glaſs, and keep it for your uſe; anoint the inſide of the *Eye*-lids, eſpecially about the corners, and you ſhall finde eaſe, whether it be a moiſt or dry inflammation. If you make an Ointment of freſh Butter and juyce of Tobacco, you may do wonders in this caſe, but you muſt onely anoint the out-ſide of the *Eye*-lids. In the declination of the Diſeaſe, you may make a Fomentation, which hath a power to diſcuſs and reſolve, of the decoction of Camomel, Meliſot, Roſes, Eyebright, and Marjerom, and with clothes foment the *Eyes*.

If the Diſeaſe hath its Original from a flegmatick humour, your Reſolvents muſt be the ſtronger Baths: alſo the drinking of Wine hath been approved and much commended by *Galen* and *Hippocrates*, as a means to extenuate, diſſolve, diffuſe, and diſcuſs the thick humors gathered in the *Eyes*, and to open obſtructions. If you finde that the Opthalmy is cauſed by defects of the Brain, by defluxion, or a hot diſtemper of the Liver, then labour firſt to remove the cauſe, as the ſeveral Chapters thereof intreating will inſtruct you.

Sometimes if the humors cannot be reſolved, there is a Suppuration and an Ulcer ſometimes followeth it, and ſometimes matter gathereth under the Cornea; this is called *Hypopye*, this cometh alſo ſometimes by a Contuſion, ſometimes it covereth the Pupilla, and ſometimes compaſſeth the Circle of the eye, and is like a mans Nail. Hence the Greek call it ὄνυξ. This Diſeaſe is known by the inflammation going before; the matter is white under the Cornea, and when the Eye is moved, it hath a motion. For the cure of this, you muſt (if any of the inflammation remain) uſe the aforegoing Medicines, afterward do as you are taught in the cure of a Cataract.

Sometimes not onely in the Cornea, but alſo in the *Adnata*, little bliſters do ariſe like little bubbles, like Pearls of Grumwel-ſeed, it hath its original from a ſharp and watry humor; it is called *Phlyctænæ*: in the *Adnata* they are red, in the *Cornea* white within; but if they be on the out-ſide, they are black. They which are in the *Cornea* are more dangerous than thoſe that are in *Adnata*, and the more ſuperficial they are, the leſs is the danger. The Cure conſiſteth in the reſolving the matter conjoyned, and averting the antecedent cauſe, labour to prevent a Suppuration, leſt an Ulcer follow. For the particular Cure of this Diſeaſe, you muſt uſe thoſe Medicines proper for the Cure of the Ophthalmy.

After an Ophthalmy, and Blisters in the Eyes, Ulcers sometimes happen in the aforesaid Tunicles, when the humors are gathered, or the Blisters come to Suppuration: and sometimes they follow sharp, corroding and watry humors flowing into the Eyes. Some of them are superficial or profound, broad or narrow; a hollow, narrow and hard Ulcer is called in Greek Βόθριον, in Latine *Fossula*, or a little Ditch. An Ulcer that is broad, and not so deep, is called κοίλωμα; that which cometh in the Circle of the Eye is called ἄρθμιον, or *ulcus coronale*. They that are deep, solid, hard and crusty, are called ὕπτιλωμα, or ἔσχαρμα. If the Ulcer be in the Cornea, there will be a small white blemish in the black of the Eye: If it be in the *Adnata*, there will be a small red blemish in the White of the Eye, because the Adnata is full of Blood. All Ulcers in the Eyes are dangerous and hard to cure, but more in the Cornea than in the Adnata; if it happen in the Pupilla, though it be cured, it much prejudiceth the sight, because it leaveth a scar, which hindereth the perspicuity of the Cornea. For the Cure, you must use such Medicines as dry and cleanse moderately, such as asswage pain and revel, and restrain the humours flowing upon the Eyes. You can scarcely read thus far, and be ignorant of particular Medicines, yet for the benefit of the unskilful, I shall insert one or two: Take an Egg boyled hard, pilled and cut in two pieces; take out the Yelk, and fill the hollow with Sugar-Candy and Myrrh with powder, tie them fast, and hang them up in a Cellar, and a water will drop from it, which is good to cleanse the Eye without pain: the Water of Honey distilled hath been found very effectual. But if these Medicines are not strong enough, do as followeth; Take of Plantane, Vervain, and white Rose-water, of each one ounce, Honey two ounces, the Whites of ten new laid Eggs boyled hard, of Myrrh, Tutty, and the white Troches of Rasis, of each a dram, Sarcocol, Frankincense, Aloes, and Ceruse, of each half a dram, powder them that are to be powdered, and mix them all in a stone Mortar, then put them into a small Glass-body with a head and receiver, and distil it in Balneo: This Water is excellent against Ulcers in the Eyes. These three Diseases I thought good to annex to the cure of the Inflammation of the Eyes, having a dependencie thereupon.

CHAP.

CHAP. XV.

Of the Cancer and Rupture of the Cornea.

SOmetimes a Cancer groweth up and is perfected in the Eye, of which there is two ſorts, either Occult or Ulcerated, the occult is called a Cancerous Tumor, or Cancer of the Eye; the ulcerated is called a cancerous ulcer in the Eye, it is known by a blew leaden colour, and unequal hardneſs, the Veins adjoyning are very full and blew, and the Eye, the Temples and the whole Head is afflicted with a ſtrong and pricking pain. If the Diſeaſe be fixed and perfect, it is incurable, except it be taken away by manual operation, but if it be taken in the beginning, it may be cured: you muſt adminiſter convenient Phyſick, and adjoyn a ſuitable Diet. You muſt draw blood on the ſame ſide; if you finde occaſion, bleed the Hemorrhoid Veins by Leeches, and apply them behind the Ears: after the uſe of theſe or the like revulſion, purge Melancholy often, and gently, once or twice a week (if the body be ſtrong enough) purge with the extract of black Hellebore. Theſe Remedies will much diminiſh the humors, and decreaſe the pain, after which you muſt uſe Topicks, ſuch as have prepared Tutty, and the white Troches in them, for which have recourſe to the preceding Chapter. The fleſh of yong Pidgeons or Chickens applied to the Cancer, hath been found very available.

The Rupture of the Cornea, is when the Tunicle is ſo divided, that the watry humor, and ſometimes the Uvea cometh forth: the cauſe of both is a Wound, Ulcer, or a great afflux of humors, by which the Cornea is ſo diſtended, that it cracks, and the humors contained are let out, and ſometimes the Uvea ſhooteth out: *Paulus* divideth this Diſeaſe into four kinds; the firſt cometh forth like the head of a fly, and therefore he calleth it μυοκέφαλον. The ſecond is, when a greater part cometh forth, and is like the ſtone of a Raſin, and is called ϛαφυλῶμα. The third is, when the Eruption is ſo great that it ſeemeth like an Apple, and is called μῆλον. The fourth is, when the Uvea (being come forth) is hard, and is called πλῆ. The Cure is very difficult alway, but for the moſt part it is incurable: after bleeding (if need be) and purging the peccant humors, you muſt uſe aſtringent and glutinating Medicines, as the white Troches, and the white of an Egg dropt into the Eye, then make a Cataplaſm to the part, thus; Take the root of *Solomon's* Seal four ounces, Quinces pared and ſliced two ounces, red Roſes-leaves a handful, Acacia a dram, Saffron two ſcruples, boyl theſe in Red-

wine and Plantane-water (of each a like quantity) as much as is ſufficient to make a Cataplaſm. Afterwards, to make a perfect conſolidation, take an ounce of the Gum Mucilage of Traganth made in Plantane water, the clarified juyce of Plantane, and of the root of Solomons Seal, of each one ſpoonful: of the white of an egg beaten to clean water, and a womans breaſt-milk, of both a ſpoonful; waſhed Aloes, prepared Tutty, and Sarcocol, of each two ſcruples; Saffron one ſcruple: pouder what is to be poudered, and mix them for a Collyrie.

CHAP. XVI.

Of the Diſeaſes of the corners of the Eyes and Eye-lids.

SOmetimes there happeneth a Tumor in the corner of the Eye, at the root of the Noſe; if it do not break, it is called Anchylops; if it do break, it is called Ægylops. Sometimes this Tumor cometh without inflammation, and is bred of a thick, flegmatick, ſlimy humour, as the Tumors called Atheromata, Steatomata, *&c.* of which you ſhall have a brief account in the next Book.

When it cometh with inflammation, it is like a Boil, with ſhooting pain, and very red, and it cometh by thin and cholerick blood flowing thither, and then impoſthumateth; which being open produceth an Ulcer; then it becomes hollow, and is called *Fiſtula Lachrymalis.* The cure is very difficult, becauſe it is ill applying medicines, the eye being ſo near. If it hath not been of long continuance, and the Oriſice to be ſeen externally, it may be cured by Medicines, But if it hath continued a year, the Bone is foul, and hard to be cured without burning. If it turns to a Caneer, it is incurable, becauſe Medicines will enlarge it, and increaſe pain, and is known by the hardneſs and blewneſs of the skin, the extenſion of the Veins, and extremity of the pain.

You muſt open a vein, if nothing hinder, and revel the humours by purging, which you may do by theſe following Pills, *viz.* Cochiæ, Arabicæ, Aureæ, and Lucis Majoris: then you muſt endeavour to ſtop the progreſs by repelling medicines: take the juyce of Nightſhade, Shepheards-purſe, and Knotgraſs, of each two ounces; Acacia, the flowers of Balauſtines, Bole-armonick, Gauls, Frankincenſe, and Roch-allum, of each a dram; boyl them well together: then with four ounces of white Wax, and four drams of Turpentine, make a Cerate, to be applied to the forehead: Afterwards endeavour to reſolve the humours: *Amatus Luſitanus* commends this following Cerate:

Cerate: Take of the Powder of Cockle-ſhels two drams; Myrrh, Aloes, and Frankincenſe, of each half an ounce: Sarcocol, Sanguis Draconis, and Ceruſe, of each three drams: Opopanax diſſolved in Wine, Vinegar, and Blood-ſtone, of each one dram and an half, Saffron two ſcruples, Wax and Rozen, of each three ounces: make a Cerate according to art, and apply it to the corner of the eye and Forehead. If, after all this, it will come to Suppuration, make uſe of ſuch things as will haſten it, leſt the humours corrode the part: apply a Plaiſter of *Diachilon Simplex*. If an Inflammation approach, apply a Cataplaſme made with white bread and milk: If it break not ſuddenly, open it with a Launcet, cleanſe the Ulcer and heal it. But if it prove a Fiſtula, you muſt be the more careful, firſt to cleanſe it thus: Take of *Aqua-vitæ*, and Honey of Roſes, of each one ounce; Myrrh two ounces, with Allum and Verdegreece, of each a dram: boil them together, and make a Liniment; Unguentum Ægyptiacum, and Apoſtolorum, is of great vertue in this caſe.

If the bone be foul, it muſt be cured by an actual Cautery: yet *Fabricius Hildanus* ſaith, he cured a Lachrymal Fiſtula with Medicines; he applied *Euphorbium*, and upon the ſame an Emplaiſter of Gum-Elemi, and this he did till he skaled the bone: afterwards with the Tolutan Balſome, a drop upon a little lint, he incarnated, and conſolidated the Fiſtula in a very ſhort time.

After this Lachrymal Fiſtula, there followeth a conſuming and diminiſhing of the Carunele in the corner of the Eye; ſometimes it alſo happeneth by a ſharp humour falling down thither, and ſometimes by cleanſing medicines applied without diſcretion; this Diſeaſe is called *Rhyas*. There is another Diſeaſe contrary to this, which is an immoderate growth and increaſe of the fleſh in the corner of the Eye; which proceedeth ſometimes for want of orderly drying up of the Ulcer, and ſometimes by a defluxion of blood to the part, and this is called *Enchanthis*.

For the Cure of the firſt, you muſt perform it by incarnative Medicines: Take of Aloes, Borax, Frankincenſe, Dragons-blood, Cypreſs Nuts, and Myrtles, of each one dram, the flowers of Pomegranates, Red Roſes, and Comfry, of each two ſcruples; the ſeeds of Sumach one ſcruple: Let them be boyled in old Canary, and Plantane and Roſe-water, of each half a pint, to the conſumption of half, and with this Collyrie often waſh the part affected.

The other you muſt cure by taking away the ſuperfluous fleſh, with eating medicines, as Burnt Allum, burnt Vitriol, *Unguentum Ægyptiacum*, or *Apoſtolorum*; or you muſt cut it off, and burn it with an Iron: But proceed which way you will, you muſt not forget convenient Evacuations, for fear of a defluxion, and you muſt beware leſt

you take it not away too near, leſt it turn to *Rhyas*. There is alſo a defluxion of Rheum, iſſuing out of the corners of the Eyes, and is called involuntary weeping, and by ſome, *Epiphora*: for the producing of this Diſeaſe, there is an indiſpoſition in the part ſending, and the part receiving: the part ſending is the Brain, which being too hot or too cold, attracteth a watry humour, and ſendeth it to the inferiour parts. By the weakneſs, thinneſs, thickneſs of the Caruncle in the corner of the Eye, it is made uncapable to reſiſt ſuch a defluxion, which often happeneth in the three forementioned Diſeaſes.

This defluxion is conveyed ſometimes by the external, and ſometimes by the internal veins: Sometimes the defluxion is hot, and ſometimes cold. If it be conveyed by the external veins, the veins of the Forehead and Temples are diſtended, and the pain is felt without the Skull; if internally, the pain is felt contrarily. If the humor be hot, it cauſeth the more pain; heat, redneſs, and exulceration of the eye brows follow.

If this Diſeaſe cometh from an outward cauſe, if it hath continued long, it may be ſoon cured; but hardly if your patient be old. If it proceed from a Lachrymal Fiſtula, Rhyas, or Encanthis, it hath its cure with thoſe Diſeaſes. You muſt take away the defluxion and ſtrengthen the part, you muſt evacuate the humor offending by purging: likewiſe if the body be Plethorick, and nothing prohibit, you may open a vein. You muſt make revulſion of the flowing humors by Cupping, Veſicatories, Bliſters behind the neck, and Iſſues in the arms.

For derivation, apply Leeches behind the Ears, and Maſticatories in the morning: ſtrengthen the head and Brain, whether the humor be hot or cold: the Chapter of the Catarrh, and of the coldeſt diſtempers of the Brain, will particularly inform you, how to purge, revel, and derive the peccant humours, and ſtrengthen the part affected. Then you muſt apply aſtringent Medicines to the Forehead and Temples; if the humor flow through the external veins: If it be a cold humour, take of Frankincenſe, *Tacamahacca*, and Maſtich, of each two drams: *Terra Sigillata* one dram, Mace pulverized, and Juniper Gum, of each two ſcruples; Turpentine and Wax ſufficient to make a Cerate for the Fore-head and Temples: But if it be a hot and ſharp humour, take of Endive and Knot-graſs, of each one handful; the Root of Solomons-Seal one pound, beat them well in a ſtone Morter, and with a pint of White-Wine-Vinegar, let them boil till half of the Vinegar be conſumed: then take of Bole armenick. Sanguis Draconis, Pomegranate Flowers, of each two drams; Frankincenſe, Maſtick and red Roſes, of each half a dram, powder them, and mix them with the other, and make a Cataplaſme to be applied as aforeſaid.

You

You muſt likewiſe apply drying and aſtringent Medicines to the part affected. Take of prepared Tutty, Egg-ſhels, Aloes, Frankincenſe and Maſtich, of each two ſcruples, Sarcocol, Sanguis Draconis, and Sumach ſeed, of each one ſcruple; Mirrh and Spicknard of each ſix grains; make them all into fine powder, and tie them up in a rag, and ſteep it in white Wine, Fennel, Eye-bright, or white-Roſe-water, and ſqueeze it often into the eyes. Theſe Medicines preſcribed for an *Ophthalmy*, are good likewiſe in this diſtemper.

There is another Diſeaſe appertaining to the corner of the Eye, it is called by ſome (*Pterygium*) by other ſome the *Haw in the Eye*; and by others *unguis*: and it is a hard and Nervous Membrane, growing out of the corner of the Eye, covering the white, and in time the *Pupilla* alſo. Sometimes it is thin and white, and ſometimes it is red and full of veins.

It is cauſed by Ulceration of the Carunele of the Eye, and is bred by excrements (flowing to the part) as well as blood: hence it cometh to paſs, that variety of Haws are bred, according to the feeding humour, and may be thus diſtinguiſhed; A red Haw comes of pure blood, a yellow of Choler; a white of Flegme; a dark and black one of Melancholy. If the Eye affected grow leſs, it is an evil ſign, and little hopes there is of recovery.

If you take it whilſt it is new and beginning, it may (with difficulty) be taken off by Medicine; but if it be far gone, it muſt be done by Chyrurgery, you muſt Evacuate and purge the Antecedent cauſe, as you have heard ſufficiently already in the other Chapters of the diſeaſes of the eyes; and you muſt uſe the ſame Courſe of Diet.

Then you may make uſe of the Topicks ſpoken of in the Cure of bliſters in the eyes.

Take of Cuttlebone in fine powder, and put it upon the Haw; this I have known take the Haw from the eye of an Horſe: if you mix Tutty and Vitriol to it, it may prove the better.

I ſhall inſtance one more commended by *Foreſtus*: *Take of the juyce of Fennel four ounces, the juyce of Celandine three ounces, of Rue two ounces, and of Mallows two ounces and an half, Aloes one dram, Vitriol two ſcruples, Verdegreaſe one ſcruple, Ginger and Cinnamon, of each half a ſcruple; the Gall of an Eel half an ounce, the Gall of an Ox two drams, Sugar-Candy two ſcruples, let the juyces boyl with the reſt, then clarifie it and make a Collyrium*; with which dreſs the Eye: and if this prevail not, it muſt be taken off by Chirurgery.

I ſhall ſay no more, but put an end to this Chapter, and the diſeaſes of the Eyes.

CHAP.

CHAP. XVII.

Of the Diſeaſes of the Ears.

THe Ear is the Organ of Hearing, the moſt ſpiritual ſenſe, the agent of Underſtanding, the gate through which Science, Truth and Vertue hath its entrance into the Soul, this Member is ſubject to divers Diſeaſes, Similary, Organick, and Common, which are known and diſtinguiſhed by their Symptoms.

There is firſt deafneſs or dulneſs of hearing, which I ſhall joyn, becauſe they differ only in degrees, and are the ſame in cauſes. I ſhall not ſpend my time to ſhew you the difference between deafneſs and dulneſs of hearing, only declare the cauſes of both. The firſt is called by the Greeks κώφωσις, the other is called βαρυήκοια, both of theſe have their original from a diſtemper of the Brain. The cauſe lieth either in the exterior, or interior cavity; the exterior Cavity may be obſtructed or ſtopped by Tumor, Impoſtume, blood, matter, flegm, or the like, which may prove defective to the Hearing; but this cauſe cannot make an abſolute deafneſs, becauſe there is an open way from the interior cavity to the Palate, by which the ſound is carried; as you may obſerve by thoſe that are hard of hearing, for they are ſubject to hold open their mouths, that ſo they may hear the better, and you may prove it by this example: Hold a ſtick between your Teeth, with which ſtrike the ſtrings of a muſical Inſtrument, ſtopping your Ears, and you may hear the ſound as well or better than with your open Ears. The interior Cavity is ſometimes obſtructed by Flegmatick and Cholerick humors, and ſometimes by blood. Sometimes humors from all parts of the body are ſent to this Cavity, as it happeneth ſometimes in Feavers. Sometimes the Tympane may be relaxed, ſometimes by exceſs of moiſt humors, and ſometimes by ſome violent and ſudden noiſe, ſometimes it is ſtretched or dryed after ſome violent Diſeaſe, accompanied with watching or faſting; ſometimes it may be broken by a violent motion, or corroded by a ſharp humor. Sometimes Narcoticks adminiſtred overmuch: ſometimes a cold diſtemper, or cold water got into the Ear, or ſometimes the inſtruments of hearing hurt by ſome ſtroke or fall, or the like, may be the cauſe of this diſeaſe.

Though it be hard to diſtinguiſh all theſe by their proper ſigns, yet you may by Art and Conjecture come near it. If the diſtemper comes from a diſtemper of the Brain; either there is an appearance of ſome diſeaſe in the head, as the Head-ach, Apoplexy, &c. or ſome of the other Senſes are hurt. If the external cavity of the Ears be

ob-

obſtructed by excrementitious humors, or ſomething fallen in, it may be diſcovered by the Eye. If the interior Cavity be obſtructed by ſome humor; the humor may be known by ſome preſent or preceding diſeaſe, or by the conſtitution of the body: the looſneſs or moiſtneſs of the Tympane may be conjectured by ſome preceding moiſt diſtemper, the drineſs of the ſame part, by the drineſs of the whole body. The Tympane cannot be broken, unleſs there hath ſome violent cauſe which might break it, preceded.

If Deafneſs be abſolute, and of long continuance, or if the Patient was born ſo, it is incurable. If it proceed from a ſharp or continual Feaver, the cure of the Feaver is the remedy. The Tympane broken, the deafneſs is incurable: if it increaſe and decreaſe, it proceedeth from a moveable humor, and is curable; if it hath its original from a diſtemper of the Brain, it is eaſier cured, than if it comes from a proper diſtemper of the ear.

For the Cure, you muſt conſider what humour is the cauſe of the defect, and you muſt purge the Body, and particularly the Head; you muſt uſe Revulſions, as Cauteries, Veſicatories, Gargariſms and Maſticatories: to be brief, theſe and other Remedies effectual againſt this Diſtemper, may be ſought out of the Chapter treating of cold diſtempers of the Brain: Sulphurous and Bituminous Baths are very profitable, eſpecially if the Patient wear a Cap made of Spunge, and the water pumped upon his head. It is good alſo to make Fomentations of theſe following Herbs, *viz.*

Mallows, Marjerom, Hyſop, Centaury, Mints, Camomil, Roſemary, Pennyroyal, Sage; boyl them in White-wine, and foment the Ear: if you would have it ſtronger, add a dram of the pulp of *Coloquintida*, and as much white *Hellebore* to the fomentation; a fumigation made with a Funnel of the ſame decoction, doth wonderfully pierce the Cavity of the Ear. Or make a Loaf of Bread, and mix with the Meal a good quantity of *Caraway-ſeeds, Bay-berries, Juniper-berries, Nutmegs*, and *Cloves*, and when it is baked, cut it in the middle, and apply it hot to the Ear affected, or to both if need be, and if you think it not of ſufficient force, dip it firſt into the Spirit of Wine; this will ſerve inſtead of a fomentation. After which, you muſt put ſome Oyl or Liquors proper to the Cure into the Ear, as Oyl of *Bitter Almonds, Caſtor, Rae*, &c. *the Chymical Oyls of Roſemary, Marjerom, Sage, Fennel, Spike* and *Cloves*, which are too hot to be uſed alone, but may with good ſucceſs be mixed with other Oyls and applied. *Take the water of an Aſh, (that runneth out at the end, the other being in the fire) one ounce: The dripping of a ſilver Eel, (roſted upon a Spit) as much, a ſcruple of any of the before-named Chymical Oyls, or a dram of the other*; mix them and drop it into the Ear. Obſerve

this

this General Rule, that you drop nothing cold into the ear, and that you ſtop the ear afterwards with Wool or Cotton, and a little Musk into it.

Sometimes the Senſe of Hearing is prejudiced by a preternatural noiſe in the ears, the cauſes of which are many, but chiefly a wind or vapor ſent thither from other parts, or bred there.

It cometh from all parts of the Body, when it happeneth in a Feaver, and this (according to *Hippocrates*) is deadly. Sometimes it cometh from the Stomach, Liver, Spleen, Midriff and Womb: witneſs Vomiting, Hypocondriack Melancholy, and fits of the Mother, which for the moſt part are attended with a noiſe in the ears. Sometimes it is cauſed by Flegm contained in the ear, for they that are thick of hearing are ſeldom free from a noiſe in the head: a blow, great ſound, or an ulcer in the head may cauſe a noiſe in the head: a hot diſtemper in the head filleth the Arteries of the ear with much ſpirit, and cauſeth a noiſe. If the noiſe hath been of long continuance, it is hardly cured; if it proceed from Flegm, obſtructing the paſſage, it is doubtful that it will end in deafneſs. If you judge it curable, you may finde the Cure in this Chapter, for it differeth not in cure from dulneſs of hearing in ſome caſes, and agreeth with the cure of the pain of the ears in others: But this remember, that if it come by conſent of the Stomach, Liver, *&c.* take away the cauſe and the effect ceaſeth.

Pain in the Ears is called in Greek ὠταλγία, and is cauſed by cold winds, cold baths, or the like, or by a hot diſtemper, ſo it be accompanied with a defluxion of humors, otherwiſe heat is friendly to thoſe Nervous and Membranous parts.

The cold matter which cauſeth pain is Flegm, water or cold wind, either coming from without, or from ſome inferiour part within.

The hot matter is choler or Blood.

There may be other evident cauſes of pain, as Wounds, Contuſions, Ulcers, or breaking of an Impoſtume, or any hard or pricking thing got into the Ear. You may judge the Diſtemper to be from cold, if a cold cauſe hath preceded, and hot Medicines profit; the contrary declareth a hot diſtemper: If Flegm cauſe the pain, the ear and head will be heavy, ſome Rheume falleth upon ſome other part: the Diſtemper is taken in cold weather, or the patient is old. If wind be the cauſe, the pain is without heavineſs, nor is it conſtant. If water cauſe the pain, the Patient is troubled with a ſharp defluxion upon the Teeth, Eyes, Breaſt, *&c.* If it come from Choler, the pain is ſharp and pricking, cold things give eaſe, the Body is Cholerick, *&c.* an Inflammation is accompanied with a great beating pain, the parts adjacent are very red, and there is joyned a

Feaver.

Feaver. A Wound maketh it ſelf known by blood iſſuing out at the Ear, and an ulcer by filth. But ſometimes there iſſueth filth from an Impoſtume in the Brain, but this may be diſtinguiſhed by head-ach preceding, and other ſigns of Impoſtume: the filth cometh away in great abundance at firſt, and decreaſeth by degrees. If an ulcer follow an Inpoſtume in the Ear, the ſymptoms of an Impoſtum going before declareth. If the ulcer come by defluxion, there is a burning and ſhooting pain, and the matter iſſueth forth by little and conſtantly. If the ulcer be in the bone, the matter is thin and yellow, and hath continued long; the deeper the ulcer is, the more matter iſſueth; the fouler it is, the more and thicker is the matter; if it be Virulent, the matter is thin: if putrid, it ſtinketh much: if it corrode, blood accompanieth the matter: if it continue very long, it groweth Fiſtulous, and then the matter is virulent and the fleſh groweth hard.

If the Diſtemper proceed from a cold cauſe, with or without matter, you muſt uſe the Medicines preſcribed for the cure of deafneſs, eſpecially Fomentations and Fumes, with warm Oyls dropt into the Ear; and if it be with watry, you muſt evacuate and purge the humor. If the Diſtemper come from a hot cauſe without matter, uſe cooling Topicks; if it hath a cholerick matter, you muſt revel the humor by Phlebotomy, and with cooling Drinks and Juleps allay the preternatural heat of the Liver; but this having dependencie to the diſeaſes of the head, proceeding from a hot cauſe, alſo to the inflammation of the Ear, I leave the Ingenious there to ſeek the Cure.

The inflammation of the Ear is cured by making revulſion (after the adminiſtration of an Emollient Clyſter) by blood-letting; and this muſt be done in as great a quantity as the violentneſs of the diſeaſe requireth, and the ſtrength, age, and conſtitution of the Patient permitteth: open the Head-vein on the ſame ſide the inflammation is, if the ſtoppage of the Terms hath been prejudicial, open the Saphæna, or the Hæmorrhoids if you ſee occaſion. Revulſions by Frictions and Ligatures of the Arms and thighs, cupping the Shoulders and Back with or without ſcarrification, are often ſucceſsful: a Cupping glaſs fixed behind the Ears with ſcarrification, hath been attended with admirable ſucceſs; and Horſleeches applied to the ſame place, hath been no leſs effectual.

If you finde the Cure difficult, the opening of the Arteries in the Temple is good to prevent hot and windy blood, which doth much feed the inflammation, you muſt often purge Choler, and temper the humors with cooling Juleps thus: *Take of Lettuce, Purſlain, and Sorrel-water, of each two ounces; the water of Plantane and Succory, of each*

each three ounces, of ſyrup of Lemmons two ounces, the ſyrup of Erratick Poppies one ounce, mix them, and make a Julep, take four ſpoonfuls Morning and Evening.

You may foment the ear with the decoction of cooling and piercing herbs, and let the Patient receive the ſame with a Funnel: then come to the uſe of Topicks which have power to mitigate pain thus: *Take of Breaſt-milk two ounces, the Oyl of Roſes and Water-Lillies, of each one ounce and an half; the water of an Aſhen-ſtick before-mentioned, one ounce, the White of an Egg beaten to water half an ounce, mix them, and drop ſome into the Ear, after you have fomented and fumed it.*

If you would have it repelling, add Vinegar of Roſes to it, but uſe it with moderation, leſt you drive the humors to the Brain.

If the vehemency of the pain conſtrain you to make uſe of ſtupefactive Medicines, mix a ſcruple of Opium, or an ounce of Oyl of Poppy-ſeeds, with your former Medicine; but be careful alſo in the uſe of this, leſt you offend the Brain.

If you ſee occaſion for reſolving Medicines, the Oyls of Camomel, Dill, ſweet Almonds and Violets; all or either of them may be mixed with your aforeſaid Medicine.

If after all this you finde that the Impoſtume will come to ſuppuration, you muſt help Nature therein thus: *Take the leaves of Mallows, Nightſhade, Camomel and Dill, of each one handful; bruiſe them well in a Stone-Mortar, boyl them in a quart of milk to the conſumption of half, and the Muſilage of Line-ſeed, Fleabane and Fenugreek-ſeeds, of each one ounce, Ducks and Hens-greaſe, of each one ounce, the Oyl of Camomel, Roſes and Violets, of each one ounce, with the crum of White-bread, as much as is ſufficient, make a Cataplaſm and apply it.* After the Impoſtume is broken, and the matter run out, you muſt apply cleanſing Medicines, *viz. Mix Barly-water, and honey of Roſes, and drop it into the Ear.*

If the Humor be ſharp, and cauſe an Ulcer, you muſt after the uſe of needful Purgings, neceſſary bleeding, and all requiſite Evacuations, make uſe of cleanſing and drying Topicks: *Take of the juyce of Beets and Sow-bread, of each one ounce, Horehound, Smallage and Wormwood, of each half an ounce, Myrrh and Frankincenſe, of each half a dram, Saffron and Verdegreece, of each one ſcruple, White-wine and Honey, of each four ounces, boyl it, and ſcum it till the Wine be conſumed, then drop of it into the Ear two or three times in a day.*

After you have well cleanſed it, you muſt come to cicatrize it: *Take of the powder of Galls and burnt-Allum, of each one dram, Frankincenſe and Myrrh, of each half a dram, Gum of Juniper and Sarcocol, of each one ſcruple:* make them into fine Powder, and mix them with White-wine, and drop it into the Ear.

If

If you finde that it is fed by defluxion, you muſt labour to divert the defluxion, as you are taught in the Ninth Chapter of this Book.

If the Ulcer be very foul, you muſt mix *unguentum Ægyptiacum*, and the ruſt of Iron powdered with White-wine, and drop it into the Ear. If the humor be ſharp, and you finde ſharp Medicines diſagreeing to it, make uſe of the Oyls and Yelks of Eggs, of ſweet and bitter Almonds.

If any thing be fallen into the Ear, you muſt endeavour to get it out with an Ear-picker, but beware leſt you thruſt it further. If you cannot prevail ſo, inject Oyl into the Ear to relax it, that it may the eaſier come out, and anoint the Ear-picker with Birdlime, and ſee if by that means you can draw it out: provoke ſneezing, with the Mouth and Noſtrils ſhut, and by that means it may be forced out. If a Flea be gotten into the Ear, procure pain and trouble to the Patient, make a little Ball of Dogs-hair, and put it into the Ear, and the Flea will come into it. If by ſwimming or waſhing the Head, water getteth into the Ear, and is the cauſe of pain, hop on the contrary foot to that ſide, and hold your ear downwards, or put in a dry Spunge into the ear, and as it groweth moiſt, take it out, and put in more till you be freed.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of the Diſeaſes of the Noſtrils.

AS God and Nature hath wiſely inſtituted and ordained this Member, as needful and official to the ſervice of the Body, ſo the corruption of Nature (by our Fall) hath brought many Diſtempers therein, *viz.* the Ulcer of the Noſtrils, and Ozæna, Sarcoma, and Polypus, the loſs of Smelling in the Noſe, the Coryza, Sneezing and bleeding; the laſt of which I ſhall treat of in a Chapter by it ſelf, and ſpeak briefly of the reſt in this Chapter. And firſt of the Ulcer of the Noſtrils, which whileſt it is new, is called the ſimple Ulcer of the Noſtrils: when it is old it is called Ozæna. The cauſe of the ſimple Ulcer is either internal or external; internal, when a ſharp or ſalt humor floweth to the part: External, either by a Wound or Contuſion. The cauſe of Ozæna, is a malignant and acrimonious humor, or the other Ulcer neglected: they are eaſily known and diſtinguiſhed one from the other, the ſimple Ulcer cauſeth but little pain, ſometimes ſends forth blood, and ſometimes caſteth forth a Scab.

The Ozæna is more painful, foul and ſtinking, anoying not only the Patient, but all that come near him.

If it turn to a Cancer, it eateth the Griſtle of the Noſe, and deſtroyeth the Palate; and for the moſt part hath its original from the *French Pox*, or *Elephantiaſis*.

The new Ulcer may be eaſily cured; the old one hardly. If it turn to a Cancer it is never cured: If it hath its original from the *French Pox*, or *Elephantiaſis*, it cannot be cured, till the Diſeaſe be cured.

For the Cure, you muſt uſe convenient Evacuations, Purging and Bleeding, Revulſions and Derivations by Cupping, Veſicatories, or Cauſticks applied to the hinder parts; and then ſtrengthen the Head, and withal appoint a good Diet, which may hinder and aſſwage the ſharpneſs of the humor. This being done, if the Ulcer be covered with a Scab, you muſt endeavour to take it off gently, and not raſhly for fear of a Defluxion of Humors; and to that end you muſt mollifie the Scab with Oyl of ſweet Almonds, or freſh Butter, and warm Water. Then you muſt cleanſe it, by waſhing it with Barley Water, and if you mix a little Oyl of Roſes with it, it will not be the worſe: then apply Medicines, which are aſtringent, as the Oyntment of Tutty, the white Oyntment, more commonly known by the Latine Name, *Unguentum Album*, the Oyl of the yelks of Eggs; the Oyntment of Tobacco is good, being carefully applied.

Ozæna muſt be carefully cleanſed, *Take of Smiths water half a pint, Barly-water four ounces; the juyce of Plantane and Wormwood, of each two Ounces: boil them together, till half be conſumed, and ſcum it carefully: then put in four Ounces of Honey of Roſes, let the diſeaſed often ſnuff it up into his Noſtrils wherein the ulcer is.* You may make an Oyntment more powerful for this purpoſe thus: *Take of the juyce of unripe Grapes half an ounce, the Peels and Flowers of Pomegranates, of each three drachms; of Myrrh, Allum, and Laudanum, of each two drams; Aloes, Chalcitis, and Frankincenſe; of each one drachm; the Oyl of Roſes, and Myrtles, of each two Ounces, with red wax as much as ſufficeth to make an Unguent, which apply to the ulcer.* Or you may waſh it with Allum-Water; and if it want cleanſing, mix a little *Ægyptiacum* with it.

The ſublimate Water doth dry and cleanſe wonderfully, and you may prepare it thus: *Take of Crude Sublimate in Powder twelve Grains, put it into four ounces of Plantane water, and boil it to the conſumption of half.*

Now and then touch it with this Water; When it is throughly cleanſed, you muſt prepare Medicines, which are powerful to dry it up.

Rondeletius commendeth the ſmoke of a Wax Candle taken up into the Noſe often: or you may make a Fume thus:

Take of Labdanum, Benjamin, Hypociſtis, Maſtich, Myrrh, red Storax,

and

and Calamint, Sandarach, Frankincenſe Bark, and red Arſenick, of each three drams, with Turpentine ſufficient to make Troches, of which let the Patient take the Fume Morning and Evening.

Sarcoma and Polypus is a preternatural Tumor, or Excreſcency of Fleſh in the Noſe: The firſt groweth without ſhape, like proud fleſh; but Polypus ſpringeth as it were from ſmall Roots, and hangeth down to the lower part of the Noſe, and ſometimes out of the Noſe.

If it be rooted high, it ſometimes falleth into the paſſage that goeth into the Palate. It is a ſpongy ſoft fleſh, white, red, or blew, and it is fuller at the full of the Moon, than at the Change.

The cauſe of both is a groſs Humour coming from the Brain, mixed with blood.

The firſt for the moſt part, is eaſily cured. The ſecond with more difficulty: The lower it is rooted in the Noſtril, the eaſier may the Cure be effected: If it be ſoft, white, or red, it is more eaſily cured: but if hard and blew, it is dangerous. You muſt preſcribe a dry and attenuating Diet: you muſt purge the Humour you ſee abound; you muſt revel and repel the Humours, and ſtrengthen the Head, as you are taught in the aforegoing Chapters.

Then you muſt apply ſuch Medicines to the Tumour as are drying and aſtringent: If it may not thus be cured, it muſt be taken off by a Cauſtick, or by Inciſion.

But apply the mildeſt Medicines firſt; *Take the Juyce of three ſorts of Pomegranates; boyl it to the thickneſs of Honey; apply it often to the Excreſcencie.*

Then make uſe of this Sublimate Water ſpoken of before in the Ulcer. This following water is commended by *Weckerus. Take of unripe Grapes three pound, Pomegranate Peels and Flowers, and Sumach, of each two pound, macerate them in Vinegar, and diſtil them: then add to the water thus diſtilled, Allum one pound, Vitriol three Ounces: Diſtil them again, and with this water often touch the Tumor, for it hath a great power to dry and conſume it.*

You may make it ſtronger, if you ſee occaſion, by adding red Arſenick and Sandarach to it: Mercury precipitate, and applied with Honey of Roſes with a Tent, is good. You may make an Oyntment thus: *Take of Litharge of Silver one dram, Ceruſs three drams, Pomegranate Peels and Allum, of each two drams, Verdegreeſe, and Orpiment, of each one dram: powder them, and in good white wine, boyl them to the thickneſs of Hony: put in a little Oyl or Myrrh, and reſerve it in a Leiden Box, and uſe it as the forenamed Medicines.*

The ſence of Smelling is either diminiſhed, aboliſhed, or depraved; either by Obſtruction, or Aſtriction. Cold, Moiſt, and Flegmatick Diſtempers, may either dull or aboliſh the Senſe of Smelling:

Hence Defluxions upon thoſe parts do hinder the ſence. Flegm obſtructs and hindereth the ſenſible paſſages, *viz*: the Noſtrils, and the Pores of the Brain, the inſenſible Paſſages, and the Proceſſus Mamillares; or Sarcoma, and Polypus, may hinder the ſence by obſtructing the Noſtrils. Smelling is hindred by Aſtriction, when Flegm gathered in the Fore-part of the Brain, doth compreſs the Mamillares, as was ſaid before in the compreſſion of the Optick Nerves. Sometimes this Sence is depraved by ſome putrefaction, or ulcer in the Noſe, or the Menings, or ſome of the parts official to this Sence, and thereby hindereth it: or ſome ſtinking vapour ariſing from ſome other part of the Body, may hinder the exerciſe of this Office: as the Tongue is depraved by Choler, & maketh all things that are taſted ſeem bitter, the ſigns are theſe: Slimy Flegm coming from the Brain, and cold and moiſture oppreſſing the Brain, ſhew Flegm to be the cauſe. If it be from Sarcoma, or Polypus, it is eaſily diſcovered. If the matter cauſing the obſtruction be contained in the Noſtrils, the ſpeech is hurt alſo: but it is not ſo, if it be in the Mamillares, or the fore-part of the Brain. The Cure is divers, according to the diverſity of cauſes: I ſhall ſay nothing to it, only give you this general Rule: If it come from a Defluxion, you muſt proceed, as you are inſtructed in the cure of a cold Catarrh. If from obſtruction, or compreſſion of the Mamillares, I ſhall refer you to the Chapter, treating of the cold diſtemper of the Brain for the Cure.

In the 9th Chapter of this Book, treating of a defluxion, I told you if it fell into the Noſe, it is a cold Coryza: I think it not amiſs, if I here ſpeak a word or two of the nature and cauſe of it. This Defluxion is cauſed either by overmuch heat, which doth diſſolve the crude Humours gathered in the fore-Ventricles of the Brain; or elſe by cold, which doth compreſs and ſqueez the aforeſaid Humours. This is eaſily known by the Humours flowing through the Noſe; and of all Catarrhs, it is the moſt eaſie to cure. For the Cure repair to the 9th Chapter: to which add the Vapour of Marjerom, and red Roſe-Leaves boiled in Vinegar taken into the Noſe. If the Diſtemper be cold, *Take Frankinceuſe, Maſtich, Nigella, and the like, thrown upon a Chafindiſh of Burning Coals, and do as before.*

I ſhall now ſpeak a word or two of Neeſing (vulgarly Sneezing) which, though it be looked upon but as a ſlight effect, not worth mentioning, hath (by reaſon of a ſharp Defluxion) proved not onely troubleſome, but dangerous: And hence came the Cuſtome of ſaying, *God bleſs you, God ſave you*, or *Chriſt help you*, when a man ſneezeth. Sneezing is a ſwift motion of the Brain, by which the Breath is drawn up unto the brain, to force out that which doth offend: for Sneezing belongs to the Natural Expulſive Faculty of the Brain,

and

and its Membranes: as it is with the Cough which doth by its natural motion, free the Arteries of the Lungs from Flegm, which obstructeth them. But the proper cause of Sneezing, is a sharp Humor, which doth provoke the inside of the Nostrils, (as 'tis verified, by snuffing up sharp things into the Nostrils) which Humour cometh from the Brain, or some inferiour parts: sometimes the coldness of the Air doth Act upon and compress the Brain, and causeth a sharp Humour to fall into the Nostrils, which provoketh Sternutation. The knowledge of this Disease is manifest: outward causes appear, and by the signs of the parts affected.

As to the Prognostick, it is naturally and essentially without danger, accidentally it may prove hurtful; namely in the beginning of Coryza, it hindereth the concoction of the Humours by its violent motion: sometimes in Feavers it is violent, and causeth bleeding, and is prejudicial to the Patients strength. In the Pleurisie, and all Diseases of the Lungs it is bad; because it violently pulleth those parts, and causeth a greater inflammation. Yet if there be flegm got into the Gristles of the Lungs which a Cough cannot get out, then is Sneezing helpful. For the most part it is friendly to healthy people, and promiseth health in Feavers. It is good in Apoplexies, and always welcome to Women in Travel, or troubled with fits of the Mother.

If Sternutation become Symptomical, you must remove the external cause, or internal, from whence it cometh by Evacuations Derivations, Revulsions, and Discussions: and if you see cause you must bleed, use Frictions, Ligatures, and Cupping. In the mean time, you must labour to take away the sharpness which provoketh to Sternutation: Let your patient snuff up warm milk, warm water, or warm water and Butter mingled, the Oyls of Roses, sweet Almonds, and Violets, which will afford much comfort to the diseased.

CHAP. XIX.

Of bleeding at the Nose.

THis Disease is called *Hæmorragia*, and it is either organical or common; the organical is either the opening of the Vessels called in *Greek* ἀναστόμωσις; or the rarefaction of them called διαπύησις. The common disease is also twofold; either the breaking of the Vessels, called ῥῆσις; or the Erosion called διάβρωσις: Blood offending either in quantity or quality is the cause of these distempers. Sometimes external causes concur, as wounds, strokes, falls, vehement

exercise, drunkenness, long staying in the Sun. It is also either Critical or Symptomatical: Critical, when Nature dischargeth her self of superfluous blood, sometimes in health, sometimes in Feavers, and sometimes from an inflammation of the Liver or Spleen. Symptomatical is, when filthy blood, caused by the weakness of the Liver, (in a Cronical distemper) is let go by reason of the debility of the retentive faculty; or by the strength of the expulsive faculty expelled, as unprofitable and unnecessary. If the blood flowes by reason of the vein broken, the blood is thick, and floweth continually; if the vein be only opened, the blood is thinner, and floweth by fits. If the veins be eroded or gnawn asunder, the Patient hath had a salt Catarrh, or Ulcer or *Cacochymia*. The causes are easily distinguished by their signs, *viz.* A red face and eyes with heavines signifieth plenty of blood. If Choler or Melancholy be the cause, the blood is corrupt and their proper signs appear in the body. If the weakness of the retentive faculty let it go, the body is weak, the face is pale, or some disease hath preceded, which hath weakned the Liver. If it cometh from an Artery, it cometh with great force, hot, pure and fresh; if from a vein, the contrary appeareth. If it come from the Liver, Spleen, &c. pains, extensions or inflammations in those parts will declare it. If blood issue out of the Nose upon a judicial or critical day, it is a good sign, and is not to be stopped, if it flow not immoderately. But if it happen in the beginning of a Disease, it is symptomatical and dangerous. If the Liver be affected, and the blood issue out at the right Nostril, it is good; and if the Spleen be affected, if the left Nostril bleed it is good: the contrary to any of these happening is bad. If the *Hæmorrhagy* continue long, it cooleth the Liver, and causeth a Dropsie: Likewise bleeding is very hurtful to Melancholy and Flegmatick people, as also to such who have a Quartan Feaver.

For the Cure, you must consider whether the *Hæmorrhagy* be Critical or Symptomatical: If it be Symptomatical, you must endeavour suddenly to stop it. If it be Critical, immoderate, and the constitution not able to endure it without prejudice, you must do the like: you must begin with revulsions, of which blood-letting is the chief; you must open a vein on the Arm, on the same side the Nostril is that bleedeth: you may draw as much blood as the strength of the Patient will bear. Apply Cupping-glasses behind to the Shoulders and Arms, to the *Hypochondria*: but make use of this, after sufficient blood-letting, for fear of an inflammation of the Liver.

Forestus commendeth the application of Cupping-glasses to the Feet, others commend actual Cautery. Throw cold water into the face on a sudden, which doth repel the Blood. It is good to put a cloath dipt in Vinegar to the Neck behind, another to the Cods, and

to

to snuff up Vinegar and water into the Nose, and hold the mouth full of it, as long as any thing is snuffed up: take up the fume of Vinegar thrown upon an hot Iron. Foment the Forehead and Temples with water and Vinegar cold: Vinegar put into the Ear on the same side, on which the bleeding Nostril is, is good. Then apply a Cataplasme made with the juice of Plantane, Nightshade, Vinegar, of all a like quantity, and Bole-armenick sufficient to make a Cataplasme, which must be laid to the Forehead, from Temple to Temple. Or thus, *Take of Sanguis Draconis, Terra Sigillata, and Bole-armenick, of each a dram, Rose Vinegar, and the juice of Nightshade, of each one ounce; the Whites of two Eggs, with the distilled water of Red Roses, & Plantane, make a Cataplasme;* and apply it as before. If you perceive that the veins of your Forehead are swelled, bind a six-pence, or a dry Bean slit upon the root of the Nose between the Eye-brows. Also the powder of Hoggs-dung blown into the Nose, or mixed with the juice of Nettles, and a Tent dipped in it, and put up into the Nose, hath an excellent property to stop bleeding.

Others commend the Powder of a dried Toad, put in fine red Sarsnet, and put under the Arm-pits, or held in the hand.

It is convenient likewise to make use of those things, which have a faculty to close and glutinate the Veins, *Take of Bole-armenick, Sanguis Draconis, Aloes and Cobwebs of each two scruples, white Vitriol, burnt Eggshels and Paper, of each one scruple,* powder them finely, and blow it up into the Nostrils. To prevent its coming into the mouth, hold the mouth full of cold water and vinegar; or els you may mix it with the whites of Eggs beaten to water, and the juice of Plantane, and dip a Tent in it and apply it. If hitherto you are successless, you must make use of Escharotick Medicines, of which burnt Vitriol claims the preheminency, powdered and used as before: but if you fear to use it alone, add the same quantity of *Dragons blood, Bole-armenick,* and *Frankincense.* A dram of the powder of Spicknard drunk in the morning in broth is very good. If the Disease doth often invade the Patient, let him make use of inward Medicines, which have power to coagulate, thicken, cool, bind and retain its motion: *Take of dryed Knotgass, Fumitory, and Bistort root, of each half an ounce; the Troches of Spodium and Amber, Terra Sigillata, and Sal-prunella, of each half a dram; Coral, burnt Harts-horn, and Bloodstone, of each one scruple, powder them; Conserve of Roses, and Quinces, of each two ounces, with the Syrup of the juice of Plantane, make an Opiate,* of which let the Patient take the quantity of a Nutmeg, five or six times in a day. To conclude, if it be inveterate let the peccant humor be diligently evacuated; and if it hath its original from the disaffection of any other

part, as the Liver, Spleen, Womb, Kidneys, &c. let that be conſidered and their Cures ſought in their proper Chapters.

CHAP. XX.

Of the Diſeaſes of the Tongue.

THe Tongue being the chief inſtrument of ſpeech and taſt, a very neceſſary (though unruly) member, it is not amiſs if we conſider, and briefly treat of the diſtempers incident to it, by which the actions are hindered. This member is ſubject to inflammation and Tumors, which have their original either from pure Cholerick, Flegmatick, or Melancholy blood. If pure blood cauſe the inflammation, there is pain felt with heat and redneſs of the Tongue and Face, and this is a true Flegmon. If the Tumor hath its original from Choler, then it is called *Eriſipilas*: if from Flegm, *Oedema*: if from Melancholy, *Schirrhus*: All which may be diſcovered by the humor predominate, and ſhall be more plainly diſcovered in the next Book, where I ſhall treat of Tumors and their kinds. Theſe Tumors are ſometimes onely troubleſome, but do not oftentimes endanger life, except they grow ſo big, that the body is endangered by ſuffocation, or a malignant melancholy humor, do breed a Cancer, which may be diſcovered by its hardneſs, blewneſs, and pricking pain: you muſt begin the Cure with blood-letting, and (if you can come at it) open the vein under the Tongue; afterwards if you ſee occaſion, open a Vein in the Arm, and draw away as much blood as the Patient's ſtrength will permit. You muſt purge the humour with convenient Purgatives, or adminiſter a ſharp Clyſter: Some do draw back the humors by Cupping-glaſſes faſtened to the ſhoulders, or a little one under the Chin. Cooling and repelling Gargariſms muſt be uſed, and you may prepare them thus: *Take of diſtilled water or decoction of Plantane, Nightſhade, and Sorrel, of each four ounces; the ſyrups of Mulberries, Pomegranats, and Lemmons, of each one ounce*; let the Patient often waſh his Tongue. *Zacutus Luſitanus* commendeth the application of Horſeleeches to the Tongue. If you find it inclineable to ſuppuration, you muſt help Nature, for which purpoſe this Gargariſm is good: *Take Violet leaves, Mallows and Parſly, of each one handful, whole Barley four ounces, Figs, and Raiſins ſtoned, of each three ounces; the ſeed of flax, and Fenu-greek, of each one ounce: Spring water a quart, boyl it to the Conſumption of half, ſtrain it, and add four ounces of the Syrup of Jujubes; uſe it as the other before.* When the humors

mors are ſuppurate, if it break not, make inciſion, then cleanſe it with Plantane-water, and Honey of Roſes.

There is another Tumor under the Tongue, called by the Greeks Βάτραχος, by the Latines *Ranula*, becauſe it repreſenteth the hinder part of a Frog, alſo becauſe they are thus affected, when they ſpeak, do Croak like a Frog. This humor is a looſe and ſoft carnoſity under the Tongue, the tumor therein contained is ſometimes hot, though for the moſt part it is cold, ſlimy, and pituitous matter, which when it is opened, is like the white of an Egg, ſometimes mixed with yellow. This Diſeaſe is not (for the moſt part) accounted dangerous, unleſs it be in a Child, or the humour be Cancrous. If nothing prohibit, you muſt begin the Cure with blood-letting, that ſo the humors may be the more obedient: you muſt likewiſe purge the peccant humors with diſcretion: Then you may endeavour to diſſolve and diſcuſs the humor, thus, *Take of green Mugwort, and Hyſſop, of each one handful, Common Salt, and Salt Armoniack, of each two drams: Galls one dram, beat them well together, rub the place often with it.* But if it ſubmit not to this way of Cure (as it ſeldom doth) you muſt open it with a large Orifice, and if you open it on both ſides, it will be the better: Some commend a Cautery of iron; after you have opened it, ſqueeze out the matter with your finger, then waſh it with white-Wine and Honey of Roſes: Or thus, *Take of White-wine and Plantane water, of each two ounces; diſſolve a dram of Allum, then add twenty drops of the Oyl of Sulphur, with an ounce of ſyrup of Mulberries; make a Lotion, and waſh the place till it be whole.* Sometimes the Tongue ſuffereth a Palſie, by which it is deprived of its motion. Sometimes it followeth an Apoplexy, and ſometimes it is joyned with a Palſie, which afflicts half the body; ſometimes it is only in the Tongue, when its Nerves and moving Muſcles are prejudiced by ſome moiſt or pituitous matter.

Sometimes thoſe Nerves may be cut, and the Palſie may follow; *Avicen* confirmeth this Opinion, by an Example in his time, of a certain man being cupped, and ſcarrified, by which the ſmall Nerve was cut, and cauſed a relaxation of the Tongue.

If this Palſie follow an Apoplexy, and the other parts of the body be affected, and the Patient be old, it is incurable.

If you have hopes of recovery, you muſt take away the Antecedent cauſe lodging in the Brain; and you muſt diſſolve and diſcuſs the conjunct cauſe, *viz.* the humors which obſtruct the Nerves, and hinder the motion of the Tongue.

If you ſee occaſion, you may make uſe of Phlebotomy; it profiteth much to open a Vein under the Tongue: you may purge with Pills, or Cephalick Apozems, you may rarifie the humours by ſweating

drinks; cuppings, veſicatories, Cauteries may be applied: for diſcuſſing and drawing forth of the humor, let Gargariſms, Maſticatories, and Errhines be followed, for ſtrengthening the Brain, and diſperſing offending humors therein contained; make uſe of Fumigations, Powders, and Quilts for the head; for the making and application of which, I refer you to the Second Chapter of this Book.

CHAP. XXI.

Of the Diſeaſes of the Teeth.

THE Teeth alſo are ſubject to Diſtempers, *viz.* the ache, and foulneſs, and rottenneſs: The Tooth-ache is cauſed by a Flux of Humours either hot or cold, which flow to the Membrane, Nerves, or to the ſubſtance of the Teeth: Sometimes Worms are bred in hollow and rotten Teeth, of an Excrementitious Humor, which cauſeth pain: ſometimes Wind contained between the Cavity and the Nerve, doth cauſe pain.

The External Cauſes are cold Air and South Winds: Likewiſe the debility of the part, as hollowneſs, or rottenneſs of the Teeth do ſometimes cauſe pain.

Every cauſe is known by its proper ſign; for if a hot humor falling upon the part be the cauſe, the pain is more violent, the Patient is ſenſible of heat, about the Teeth and Gums; hot Medicines encreaſe pain.

Signs contrary to theſe do declare the Humor peccant to be cold.

If the cauſe be Worms, the pain is with intermiſſion, and their motion may be felt. If Wind cauſe the pain, it is exceeding violent with ſenſible extenſion, yet quickly ending, after the uſe of diſcuſſing Medicines.

If it be a hot Humor, that cauſeth the Tooth-ach, it is good to open a Vein on the ſame ſide, by which the Humors are revelled; and though the humor be cold, yet Phlebotomy may be needful to revel the Defluxion, but it muſt be regulated according to the age and ſtrength of the Patient.

The next day you may purge the Humor that principally offendeth; Cupping is ſometimes requiſite, and for the moſt part Veſicatories to the Neck and behind the Ears are ſucceſsful to draw back the humours.

Aſtringent Medicines to the Temples are good to hinder the Defluxion; of Plaiſters theſe are good, *Emplaſtrum de Maſtiche, ad Herniam*, and *Gum Elemi* ſpread and applied to the Temples, and behind the Ears:

Riverius

Rivtrius commendeth the Root of Comfry, bruiſed and applied as before, to hinder the Defluxion.

Riverius, Phyſitian to *Henry* the Great commendeth this Plaiſter; *Take of Cypreſs Nuts, red Roſes, Maſtard ſeed torrified, Maſtich, and Terra Sigillata, of each one dram and an half: Steep them in Vinegar of Roſes twenty four hours, and then dry them; Opium three drams, diſſolved in Aqua-vitæ; Pitch and Colophonia, of each one dram; Yellow Wax, melted in the expreſſed Oyl of Henbane, and white Poppy, as much as is ſufficient to make an Emplaiſter, which muſt be applied as before.*

The Oyl of Bitter Almonds, or Vinegar, put into the Ear, is good to ſtay the Defluxion, if it proceed from a hot Cauſe.

If the Humors be cold, put the Oyl of Rue, or a Clove of Garlick into the Ear, and waſh the Teeth with Red Wine, wherein is boiled the Roots of Biſtort, Cinquefoil, Tormentil, the Leaves of Vervain, Penny-royal, and Galls, and anoint the Cheeks, or the Cheek on the ſame ſide, with the Oyls of Camomil, Rue or Roſes, to aſſwage the pain.

If the Tooth-ach come from a hot cauſe, boil the Leaves of Henbane, ſpotted Arſmart, Houſleek, and Nettle-Roots in Vinegar, and waſh the Teeth: and to aſſwage pain, anoint the Cheeks with the Oyl of Lillies, Roſes, ſweet Almonds: Or you may make a Cataplaſm with Barley and Bean-meal, the juyce of Houſleek and Milk, and the aforeſaid Oyls; and if you add a ſmall quantity of Opium to it, it will not be amiſs.

But take this Caution, That if the Cheeks be ſwelled, beware how you apply Cataplaſms, leſt the Humors be repelled, and do fall into the Throat.

Many find eaſe by Maſticatories, by which they draw much Rheum from the Teeth; Take of Maſtich, and Pellitory of Spain, of each a dram; the ſeed of Henbane, Staveſacre and Pepper, of each half a dram: Powder them, and ſew them up in Linnen Bags, like little Balls, and chew them.

If the Teeth be hollow, the Oyls of Cloves, Camphire, Tobacco, Box, and Hazel-Nuts, are good, if a little Lint dipt in any of them, be put into the hollow Tooth.

If the pain ceaſe not, add Laudanum and Opium; for ſometimes Narcoticks by ſtupefaction do give eaſe, when other means have failed. Sometimes all Medicines can do no good, till the Nerve in the hollow Tooth be burned with an actual Cautery. This may be done with *Aqua fortis*, or ſafer with Oyl of Vitriol: but be well adviſed, before you operate with things of this Nature.

If Worms be in the hollow Tooth, *Take of Aloes two ſcruples, Camphire one ſcruple, Aqua-Vitæ one ſcruple, the Oyl of Vitriol, and Tobacco*

Tobacco, of each three drops: mix them, and with Lint dipped in it, apply it.

If all the Medicines preſcribed take not away the pain of the hollow Teeth, you muſt draw it out; but beware of drawing Teeth, when the Defluxion is great, the Head aketh, or the Gums ſwell: Draw not a Tooth violently, leſt you injure the Jaw-bone, or cauſe a Flux of blood, which may prove dangerous: but if ſuch a thing ſhould happen, and the blood not eaſie to be ſtenched, you muſt apply Burnt Vitriol to the Gum, and dip Lint in Vinegar, and lay thereon; or if you ſee cauſe, you muſt burn the Nerve with an actual Cautery.

Many people have their Teeth disfigured, by black or yellow Humours cleaving to them, which in time make them rotten: this is cauſed ſometimes by a Defluxion of humors into the Teeth, by Diſtempers of the Stomach, and evil nouriſhment thence ariſing.

Sometimes the Scurvy is the cauſe: For the Cure, it is requiſite, that the antecedent cauſe be removed by purging and other Remedies; and that things that corrupt the Teeth be abſtained from, eſpecially things that are ſweet. Many are the Medicines preſcribed to make the Teeth white; as Coral White and Red poudered, Tobacco Aſhes, and the Aſhes of Vine Branches burnt, burnt Allum, and many more: That which I have found to be the moſt excellent, is the Oyl of Vitriol, mixed with Spring-Water, and the Teeth waſhed therewith: Some ſay the Oyl of Sulphur hath the ſame vertue.

CHAP. XXII.

Of the Diſeaſes of the Gums.

SOmetimes ſharp and corroding humors, flowing from the Brain, or occaſioned by ſome Diſeaſe of the Stomach, Liver, or Spleen, may cauſe an Eroſion or exulceration of the Gums: This Diſeaſe is eaſily known, you muſt purge the humor offending, and if the cauſe be in the Liver, Spleen, &c. you muſt endeavour to remove it: the Flux muſt be diverted from the part affected by convenient Revulſions. Then you muſt apply Topical Medicines, that are aſtringent and drying: *Take of Acorn cups, Galls and Allum, of each one dram: Sanguis Draconis, Burnt Hurts-horn, Red Roſes, of each two ſcruples; Sugar-Candy, Tobacco-Aſhes, and Myrrh, of each one ſcruple, pouder them all: the white of one Egg beaten to water, with as much honey as ſufficeth to make it into the form of a ſoft Oyntment*; ſpread it upon a Rag, and apply it. The Oyl of Vitriol, or Sulphur, mentioned in the former Chapter,

Chapter, may be here applied, as is there deſcribed; or a few drops mixed with the aforegoing Medicine.

Sometimes a fleſhy excreſcence is generated upon the Gum, and in time groweth ſo big, that it hindereth the ſpeech. *Fernelius* ſaith, That it hath its original from an Ulcer not well healed: See *Fern. lib.* 7. *pag.* 340. Sometimes it groweth to a Cancer, It muſt be taken off by a careful and well-skilled Chyrurgion, and afterwards burnt with a Cautery, or the Oyl of Vitriol.

Some cure it thus, after purging, and ſufficient revulſions to divert the defluxion of humors, they tie a double thread about it, cloſe to the Gum ſo ſtreight, that in time it falleth off; then uſe your Cautery as before to prevent its growth again.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of the Ulcers of the Mouth.

IN the upper part of the Mouth, there are certain Ulcers bred, called by the Greeks Ἀφθῶν, we call it *Truſh*, vulgarly *Thruſh*; it is moſt common to Children preſently after they are born, cauſed by the ſharpneſs of the milk, or by reaſon of the milk corrupting in the Stomach, for want of good digeſture; ſometimes they happen to men of ripe years: they are more or leſs dangerous, as they exceed in quantity or quality: their bigneſs may be diſcovered by the Eye; alſo how deep and putrid they be: their colour declareth the quality of the humor, which is the cauſe of them. If Flegm be the cauſe, the Truſh is white, and eaſily cured. If yellow, Choler is the cauſe, and 'tis harder to cure. If red, blood predominateth. If black, Melancholy is the cauſe, and 'tis the worſt and hardeſt to cure. It cometh ſometimes by reaſon of a foul Diſeaſe in the body, or when the Patient hath got the *French Pox*.

For the Cure, if it be in Children, you muſt waſh the mouth often with Plantane water, and Syrup of Mulberries, or dried Roſes: if you find that too weak, and ſome Allum to it: Let the Nurſe eat ſuch things as are cooling and drying; as Pears, Medlars, and Services, Marmalade of Quinces is very good in this caſe; let her likewiſe make uſe of Lettuce, Purſlane, and other cooling herbs: and if need require, let her bleed and Purge. If your Patient be a man, and the Diſeaſe be ſtronger, and more violent, after the uſe of mild Medicines, you muſt proceed higher: If he hath the *French Pox*, he muſt be freed from that, or elſe you labour in vain. Generally, you muſt conſider what humor offendeth, and purge that; you muſt bleed, and

uſe

use such revulsions as necessity calls for. Then you must make a decoction of Plantane, Bramble, Violet, and Strawberry-leaves, Pomegranate-flowers, *&c.* add Allum, and the Syrups before mentioned, and wash the mouth with it; if you find that it healeth not, dip a little Lint in Oyl of Vitriol, and often touch it. If there be an inflammation, add to the before-mentioned decoction, the juyce of Purslane, Horsleek, and Nightshade; or the Mucilage of Quince-seeds, or the emulsion of the cold seeds. If you find an extraordinary defluxion, and your Patient want sleep, administer Laudanum, the Dose regulated according to the age and strength of your Patient.

CHAP. XXIV.

Of a loose Columella, *and the inflammation thereof, and diseases of the Tonsils.*

THe *Columella*, or the *Uvula* is relaxed or loosened by a watrish humor falling upon it, which doth so moisten and soften it, that it is extended to the upper part of the Wezand, and causeth a Nauciousnes, and the Patient often striveth to swallow it, by which it may be known, as also by looking into the mouth. You must make use of such Evacuations, Revulsions, Derivers and Repellers, as are prescribed in the Ninth Chapter of a Catarrh. And you must make use of Gargarisms which restrain and dry: *Take of Plantane, Purslane, and Shepherds Purse, of each one handful; Cypress-Nuts, Pomegranate flowers, and red Roses, of each one ounce; Galls and Allum, of each one dram: boyl them in a quart of Spring-water, to the consumption of half: strain it out, and add to it Bole-armenick a dram; Syrup of Mulberries, and Honey of Roses, of each one ounce; gargarise the mouth therewith.* Powders are better, which have an astringent and drying property: *Take the roots of Bistort, Flower-de-luce and Tormentil, the Flowers of Pomegranates, and Red Roses, of each half an ounce; Burnt Allum, and long Pepper, of each one scruple*: make them into fine powder, and (depressing the Tongue) blow it upon the *Uvula*. If this doth not perfect the cure, the superfluity must be cut off; this operation must be performed very warily; for if you cut too much, it will be prejudial to the speech: if there be an inflammation in the *Columella*, you must extenuate such accidents before you cut it, lest a greater inflammation follow, or a Flux of Blood: If the *Uvula* be greater at the bottom than it is at the top, than it is fitter and safer to cut. If the *Uvula* be only inflamed, you must make use of such Medicines as are prescribed for the cure of the inflammation of the Tongue.

There

There are other diſtempers of the Throat, *viz.* the Inflammation and Ulcers of the Tonſils or Almonds of the Throat occaſioned by a defluxion of crude phlegmatick and viſcid humors mixed with blood, or by exceſſive drinking of Wine or ſtrong Liquors, or by a greedy devouring of meat: they who are thus afflicted, ſwallow with much difficulty and pain, and many times have a Feaver. For the cure, adminiſter a cooling Clyſter, open the Vein under the tongue, and if blood abound, open the Cephalick Vein in the Arm: uſe all other convenient Revulſions, then make a Cataplaſm of Barley-meal, the Seed of Flax and Fenugreek, and the leaves of Mallows bruiſed, with new Milk ſufficient, and apply it to the Throat, then uſe aſtringent Gargariſms; you have examples enough in the foregoing Chapters. If the Inflammation increaſeth and the pain be ſharp and vehement in the Evening, then expect ſuppuration; then you muſt further it by gargariſing with a decoction made of Hyſop, Figs, and the ſeeds of Marſh-mallows, or with Aquamulſa. When it is perfectly rotten, ſqueeze it gently that the matter may run forth, or elſe open it with a ſharp Inſtrument, and let the Patient hold his head down, that the matter may the better run out, then waſh it again with Aquamulſa till it be healed. For the cure of the Ulcers of the Tonſils, you muſt obſerve the ſame rules preſcribed for the cure of the Ulcers of the mouth.

CHAP. XXV.

Of the Quinzie.

ANgina, or the Quinzy is a diſeaſe of the Jaws and Throat, by which breathing and ſwallowing are hindred, without defect of the Breaſt and Lungs: there are two ſorts of Quinzies, Legitimate and Baſtard; Legitimate Quinzy is accompanied with a Feaver and inflammation of the part, which *Galen* and the ancient Greeks have divided into four ſorts; the firſt they called κυνάγχη, when the inflammation is in the inward and proper Muſcles of the Larynx: the ſecond they called συνάγχη, and the outward Muſcles of the Larynx are inflamed: the third, they called παραχυνάγχη, and the interiour Muſcles of the Larynx are inflamed; the laſt, they called παραστυνάγχη, becauſe the exteriour Muſcles of the Jaws are inflamed: A Baſtard Angina or Quinzy cometh without a Feaver.

The cauſe of the firſt is blood, either pure or mixed with Choler, Flegm or Melancholly, flowing from the Head to the jugular Veins. The cauſe of the Baſtard Angina is cauſed by much flegm falling into

into the jugular Veins, and by its glewineſs obſtructing the paſſage of the Spirits; or by a Tumor in the Vertebræ of the Neck, cauſed by a defluxion of cold flegm removing the Vertebræ from its proper ſeat, or cauſing a luxation thereof by looſening their Nerves and making them ſlippery between the Joynts. Or laſtly, this may happen by ſome fall or ſtroke, or ſome external cauſe.

The legitimate Quinzy may be known by the difficult ſwallowing and breathing, without fault of the Breaſt or Lungs, pain about the Jaws and Throat, redneſs, heat and a feaver; their ſorts may be diſtinguiſhed by their proper ſigns. In the firſt, there is great hindrance of reſpiration, the patient is almoſt ſtrangled, cannot breath except he open his mouth and hold his Neck ſtreight. In the ſecond, there is leſs difficulty of breathing but greater of ſwallowing, eſpecially of drink which flyeth out at the Noſe. In the third, there is ſome red Tumor about the Jaws, leſs difficulty of breathing than in the firſt, but more than in the ſecond. The laſt doth hinder the breath but little, or not at all, the outward parts of the Neck are red and painful.

The baſtard *Anginæ* may be known by the abundance of flegm, and humors flowing to the mouth: If it comes by Luxation, the motion of the Head and Neck is hurt, and a preternatural cavity appeareth in the Neck: I ſhall not need to ſpend time to ſhew the ſign of every diſtinct humor predominating, reaſon or other parts of this Book will inform you.

A Legitimate Quinzy is an acute Diſeaſe and very dangerous, for want of freedom in reſpiration; therefore the firſt is worſt, and the Patient in moſt danger of ſtrangling: the other are more or leſs dangerous as they more or leſs hinder reſpiration. If the matter fall upon the Lungs, or the ſwelling vaniſh away, without critical or artificial Evacuation, it is very dangerous, and for the moſt part deadly. If the Patient foam at the mouth, it is a ſign of death ſaith *Hippocrates* in his 43 Aphoriſm, becauſe it is a ſign of ſtreightneſs and violent heat about the heart, which ſqueezeth the moiſture out of the Lungs and ſendeth it to the mouth in a foam.

Every Quinzy requireth a haſty and ſpeedy cure, for it ſometimes killeth in one day, read *Fernelius*, *Lib.* 5. *pag.* 284. Let the Phyſician open the Cephalick Vein, and if the body be naturally Plethorick, and blood the cauſe of the diſeaſe, draw as much as the Patients ſtrength will bear, and reiterate Phlebotomy according as neceſſity requireth: give a Clyſter firſt, or after, or both, or as often as need requireth: you muſt ſpeedily make uſe of other Revulſions, as Cupping-glaſſes with ſcarrification to the Shoulders, Veſicatories, Frictions and Ligatures to the lower parts, Purges muſt be adminiſtred, and if

you

you finde the caſe deſperate, you need not queſtion the time of the day. *Trallianus* reporteth that he was forced to open a Vein, and to purge the ſame day, or elſe his Patient had been ſtrangled. To derive the humour from the part, it is good to open the Veins under the Tongue called *Ramulæ*. If the caſe be deſperate, open the jugular Vein, and if the blood cannot be ſtopped, make uſe of *Galens* Emplaiſter againſt a flux of blood. You muſt make uſe of Gargariſms which have power to allay the inflammation, and ſomewhat to repel: *Take the leaves of Plantane, Nightſhade, woodbine, Strawberry and Cinquefoil, of each one handful; the flowers of red Roſes and Pomegranates, of each one Pugil; boyl them in a quart of running water to a pint, ſtrain it and add four ounces of ſyrup of Mulberries.* But beware leſt repelling Medicines drive the matter to the Lungs. The Oyl of Vitriol mixed with water, ſufficient to allay its ſharpneſs, often taken is good to allay the inflammation of the Stomach, liver and Veins, alſo the parts inflamed in this diſtemper: then you muſt apply looſening and reſolving Liniments, adding ſuch things as eaſe pain: *Take of the juyce of Mallows, Camomel and Orpine, of each two ounces: the oyl of Camomel, ſweet Almonds, and Lillies, of each one ounce; Hens-greaſe and freſh Butter, of each three ounces: boyl it to the conſumption of the Juyces and make a Liniment.* You muſt apply ſuch things as have power to diſſolve, among thoſe which have a peculiar property againſt the Quinzy, as *Riverius* teacheth: *Take of a Swallows-Neſt and Album græcum, of each half a dram, powder them: Flower-de-luce and Camomel, of each half a dram: Hens-greaſe, and Oyl of Lillies, of each one ounce: ye llow wax a little, make a Liniment.* Orpine hath a peculiar faculty againſt the Quinzy, if the bruiſed Herb be outwardly applied, and the juyce ſweetned with Honey often ſwallowed. Let us not forget the old and vulgar Medicine, *viz.* Album græcum and Honey mixed, and adminiſtred like a Lohock. For ſqueemiſh ſtomachs, or ſuch as delight in dearer Medicines, you may prepare this Lohock; *Take of Species Diatragacanthum frigidum, and Diapenidion, of each one ounce, Lohock Epinis, & Sanum & Expertum, of each half an ounce, mix them, and with the Syrups of Mulberries and Jujubes ſufficient, make a Lohock, and take as before.* If it tend to Suppuration, make uſe of the firſt Liniment preſcribed in this Chapter: Caſſia newly drawn, held in the mouth and gently ſwallowed, eaſeth pain, and maturateth the humors; when it is ripe and will not eaſily break, you muſt open it with a crooked Inciſion-knife, or drop a little Oyl of Vitriol upon it, when it is open, let the Patient hold down his head that the matter may run forth, then waſh it often with Barley-water and honey of Roſes,

CHAP.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of the Asthma.

ASthma is a difficulty and shortness of breathing, which cometh from the stuffing of the Lungs, and the obstruction of the Bronchion gristles of the wind-pipe, and is naturally without a Feaver; yet sometimes it may be joyned therewith. This Disease is divided into three sorts, the first is called in Greek Δυσπνοία: this is a difficulty of breathing; caused by the stuffing of the substance of the Lungs, and not the Gristles, and is not accompanied with snorting, and this is the least of the three. The second is called Ἄσθμα, when the Bronchia of the Lungs are filled with flegm and do make a great noise with snorting and wheezing, in which the Diaphragma and the Intercostal Muscles between the Ribs and the Abdomen are violently moved. The third is called ὀρθόπνοια, in which the Patient fetcheth his breath with much difficulty, with his Neck stretched upright; the aforesaid Muscles, together with the Muscles of the Breast and shoulders violently moved. This Disease is caused for the most part from flegm, which falleth from the Head into the Lungs, and obstructeth the Wind-pipe: sometimes humors brought thither by Arteria Venosa, flow to the Bronchia, and causeth Asthma with snorting, but if they fall into the substance themselves, or into the smooth Arteries, it causeth an Asthma without snorting. There needeth no more signs for the discovery of this Disease, than what may be gathered from its description. As to the Prognostick, I say, that this Disease is Chronical and hard to be cured, unless the Patient be young and of a strong constitution: if a Child hath this disease, if it be not speedily removed, it dieth of a Catarrh. In men it ends in Cachexia or the Dropsie, if it turn to a Pleurisie or Peripneumonia, it is deadly.

You may begin the Cure with blood-letting if the body be plethorick or corpulent, for when the Veins are empty of blood the respiration is free. But you must beware of Phlebotomy in such bodies where you fear diminishing the natural heat, lest flegm increase. You may open the Saphæna or Ancle-vein without danger; you must in the next place purge the head of phlegmatick humors, which are prescribed in the second Chapter of this Book. It oftentimes hath been proved that vomiting is good in this case, that the stomach may be emptied of flegm and thick vapours, which puffing up the stomach compresseth the Diaphragma, and causeth difficulty of breathing: one Ounce of Tobacco-water sweetned with Sugar, will cleanse the stomach

ſtomach by vomit: let the Phyſician be careful how he adminiſtreth vomits to weak people. Sharp Cliſters are good in this diſeaſe, for revulſion; but let them be given in ſmall quantities, leſt the fulneſs of the Bowels compreſs the Diaphragma. The Patient muſt make uſe of ſuch things as extenuate and make thin the humors, *Take of Coltsfoot-water two ounces, Cinnamon-water, one ounce; with an ounce of Oxymel Simplex, and take it in the morning.* Then let him make uſe of ſuch as have an expectorating quality: *Take of the powder Diatragacanthum Frigidum, the powder of Liquoriſh and Colts-foots of each one dram: the roots of Elecampane and Marſh-mallows candied, Conſerve of Roſes and Violets, of each half a dram, the flour of Brimſtone, and Sugar-Candy, of each a ſcruple; with Oyl of ſweet Almonds, (newly drawn) and Syrup of Maidenhair, make a Lohock.* And let the Patient take the quantity of a Nutmeg Morning and Evening, and half ſo much every two hours: this I have often given with good ſucceſs. In the extremity of the Fit, rub the Breaſt with a Cloth to open the pores, and then anoint it with this following Oyntment. *Take of the Oyl of Chamomil, Dil, Rue, and ſweet Almonds, of each two drams; the Roots of Elecampane, and Flower-de-luce in powder, of each one dram; the meal of Flax ſeed and Fenugreek a dram, Saffron one ſcruple, with wax ſufficient, make an Oyntment.* Out of the Fit, to perfect the Cure, you muſt endeavor to ſtop the defluxion, and to cleanſe the Lungs. For the firſt, you may find ſufficient Remedies in the ninth Chapter of this Book, adding ſuch which reſpect the Breaſt to them: Let your Medicines not be too drying, leſt they thicken the humors, and encreaſe the Diſeaſe. Then you muſt endeavour to unſtuff and cleanſe the Lungs and wind-pipe, with the beforenamed Lohock, or of the like nature. I could inſert many, which I omit for brevity-ſake. *Quercetanus* his Syrup of Tobacco is very good: the Tincture of dried Tobacco as much as a peaſe held in the mouth, and ſwallowed by degrees, draweth abundance of flegm out of the ſtomach and Lungs: or if you take Tobacco in a pipe, it is good. The juyce of red Coleworts made up into a Syrup, and a little Spirit of Sulphur added to it, may be taken an ounce in the Morning. Or you may make Tablets of great vertue thus: *Take of the Roots of Elecampane and Liquoriſh, of each one ounce; the leaves of Colts-foots, Maidenhair, Scabious, and woodbetony, of each a dram, Lac Sulphuris two drams, Saffron two ſcruples; make them all into fine powder; and with the Mucilage of Gum Traganth made with Colts-foot water, make Tablets, which let the Patient hold in his mouth often.* Plateras highly commendeth the preparation of a Cock thus, *Take an old Cock, kill, pull and draw him; ſtuff him with theſe things following, Fox Lungs waſh, & prepared, one ounce, Raiſins ſtoned and figs, of each two ounces;*

Elecampane one dram, Hyssop, Savory, Horehound, Thyme, Calaminth, Penyroyal dryed, of each one dram: the Seeds of Fennel and Anise, of each one dram; Carthamus Seeds bruised, and the Roots of Polypody, of each half an ounce, White Tartar one dram, Salt half an ounce, the Yelks of two Eggs, fresh Butter half an ounce; Cut and bruise them according to the precepts of Pharmacy, and sew them up into the Belly of the Cock, boyl him (in a large Vessel, and so much water as will cover him, and no more) till his flesh come off from his bones; strain it, and add to every ten Pints, one pound of Honey, that it may not quickly corrupt: Let the Asthmatick person take a Porrenger full every morning, in which dissolve of Manna and Cassia newly drwan, of each half an ounce. It will be the better, if presently after he take a dram of Venus Turpentine with Penids, in form of a Bolus, or otherwise. The Patient may continue taking this Cock-Broth a moneth, or longer.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of the Pleurisie and inflammation of the Lungs.

A Pleurisie is an inflammation of the Membrane Pleura, and the internal intercostal muscles, girding the sides within; the Greeks call it Πλευρῖτις, and the Latins also *Pluritis*. the matter causing this Disease, for the most part is Cholerick Blood, which doth easily penetrate the Membrane, but seeing other humors may cause it; it is either Sanguineous, Cholerick, Phlegmatick or Melancholick: but what ever the humor offending be, Choler, it hath for its Vehicle. The signs of a Plurisie (according to *Galen*) are five: First, a pricking pain of the side, caused by a Cholerick humor in the Membrane, extending it self either towards the throat, or the Hypochondria. Secondly, a continual sharp Feaver, which is either Symptomatical, coming from some Sanguineous Tumor about the parts; or essential, that is, when a Feaver first invadeth the Patient, and the boiling blood is expelled to those parts. Thirdly, difficulty of breathing, because the heart being inflamed as well as the rest, greedily desireth refreshment; and the parts inflamed cannot sufficiently distend themselves to draw in the cold air. Fourthly, a hard Pulse like a Saw; which is caused by the stretching out of the Membrane, by which defect the Arteries are distended. Fifthly and lastly, an often and troublesome Cough; because nature doth strive to expel those troublesome humors from the part affected; also some of the matter sweateth from thence into the Lungs, which causeth a

Cough

Cough. I might add here another ſign, *viz.* ſpitting of blood or bloody matter; but becauſe it happeneth not in all Pleuriſies, nor at all times, I omit it. You may partly judge of the humor peccant by the conſtitution of the Patient, and ſeaſon of the Year. The particular ſigns are firſt of blood, bloody ſpittle, ſtretching and pricking pains, full veins, eſpecially about the Temples, red Urine, and the like. Signs of Choler are, yellow ſpittle, a burning Feaver, a hard and quick pulſe, the pain more acute and pricking, reſtleſneſs, bitterneſs of the mouth, and yellow Urine. The ſigns that ſhew Phlegm, are much ſweet and frothy Spittle, the Feaver remiſs, little thirſt, the pain heavy, but not violent, the pulſe not ſo hard, the Urine white and thick, the Spittle black and tough, the pain and Feaver moderate, a dry Cough, the tongue black and rough; the belly bound, the Urine red and dark, are ſigns of Melancholly. As to the Prognoſtick I ſay, This diſeaſe afflicting old men, women with child, Aſthmatical perſons, or ſuch as have had it often, is dangerous. If the Feaver being violent, the breath fetched with difficulty, the Cough raiſeth up no matter, or the Spittle very bloody, or very white, and glutinating, green, ruſtick black, much Spitting, and yet the pain abates not; the ſpitting ceaſe, and the pain continue; all theſe are dangerous ſigns. On the contrary, plentiful vomiting, Choler in the beginning of the diſeaſe; blood or Choler mixed with the ſpittle, &c. are good ſigns.

The Cure of a Pleuriſie, conſiſts in the revelling, deriving, diſcuſſing, digeſting, maturating, and expectorating the peccant humors: If the Feaver be eſſential, ſeek its cure in its proper place: Bleeding is a very natural remedy for a Pleuriſie, which you muſt moderate, according to the conſtitution and ſtrength of your Patient, and the violent or remiſs ſymptomes. If your Patient ſpit freely, forbear blood letting, leſt his ſpitting be ſtayed, and his life endangered. Twice or thrice in a day, or oftener, as you ſee occaſion, adminiſter cooling Juleps, to reſtrain the heat of the boiling humors: make a Julep of Poppy-water and Syrup of Violets. After bleeding prepare a fomentation. *Take of Mallows, Violet leaves, Chamomil, Pellitory* of the wall, of each one handful, the roots of Marſh mallows, and Lillies of each four ounces, the ſeeds of Flax, Commin and Fenugreek, of each one dram; boyl them well, and put them with the liquor into a Hogs bladder, and foment the ſide, afterwards anoint it with this following Liniment: Take of freſh butter and Hens greaſe, of each two ounces, the Oyls of Chamomile, Lillies, Dill and ſweet Almonds, of each half an ounce: The Chymical oyl of wax a ſcruple, mix them, and make a Liniment: ſome ſlit a live Hen, and apply it: ſome the Lungs, or the paunce of

a ſheep hot: others apply hot bread out of the Oven, dipped in Butter. Then you may make an Emulſion of Blanched Almonds, and the great cold ſeeds, thus: *Take of Almonds blanched and ſteeped in* "Coltsfoot water, one ounce; the four great cold ſeeds, of each "half an ounce; the Seeds of Lettuce and white Poppy, of each one "dram: beat them in a Marble morter, powring on by degrees "the decoction of Barley, Liquoriſh and Plantane, a Pint and an half; "ſtrain it out, and diſſolve Syrup of Jujubes, two ounces; Syrup of Violets, one ounce; make an *Emulſion for three doſes*, give it Morning and Evening. If his Cough be violent, let him alwayes have in his mouth Sugar of Roſes, Sugar-Candy or Penids, or the Tablets of Diatragacanthum Frigidum, or with Syrup of Violets and Jujubes you may make it into the Form of an Eclegma or Lohock. If his ſpittle be thick and tough, add Oxymel Symplex, or the Syrups of Liquoriſh or Coltsfoot. Let his conſtant drink be Barly-water, boyl it in Currans, Borrage and Buglos Flowers, Hartshorn, Maiden-hair, Coltsfoot, Liquoriſh, and ſuch like, give it warm. You muſt not purge in the Diſeaſe, till the declination thereof, and then uſe a gentle potion. Many Medicines there are proper and ſpecial for a Pleuriſie: as Stone-horſe dung, or White-hens dung, ſoaked in Carduus water, and ſtrained, give a quarter of a pint; this hath a piercing and diſcuſſing quality, (by reaſon of the volatile ſalt in it) and doth wonderfully diſperſe the humours in the Pleuriſie. An Apple made hollow, and a dram of Frankincenſe put therein and roſted given to the Sick, drinking three ounces of Carduus Water after it, and laid to ſweat, is good, ſaith *Quercetan*. Goats Blood alſo is good. If the Sick fall into a loofneſs in the height of this Diſeaſe it is very dangerous: in the declination it is good; but if it ſo happen, give him the Syrup of Myrtles; and do as you are taught in the Cure of Diarrhæa.

Περιπνευμονία, Or

The inflammation of the Lungs is a diſeaſe not much different in the cauſes or ſigns from a Pleuriſie, but only in the part affected. Sometimes this Peripneumonia cometh alone, and ſometimes followeth another Diſeaſe, as the Quinzy or Pleuriſie, which is a dangerous Symptome: on the contrary, if a Pleuriſie follow the inflammation of the Lungs, it is a hopeful Symptome. This Diſeaſe is more dangerous than a Pleuriſie, and for the moſt part deadly, by reaſon of want of reſpiration, and the nearneſs of the heart. The cure is the ſame with the Pleuriſie, therefore I ſhall ſay no more of it.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of Empyema.

EMpyema, (ἐμπύημα) or a Collection of matter in the Cavity of the Thorax, is a Diſeaſe, which for the moſt part followeth a Pleuriſie and Peripneumonia, and ſometimes a Quinzy, when they are not carefully cured, and the inflammation cometh to Suppuration; and when the Impoſthume breaketh, the matter falleth into the Cavity of the Breaſt. Sometimes blood falling into the Thorax, by the breaking or wounding of a Vein may come to Suppuration, or rather Corruption. Sometimes flegm falleth from the Head and other parts in the Breaſt, and there putrifying, begetteth matter like quitter. The ſigns of Suppuration beginning, according to *Hippocrates*, are theſe: Firſt, the Pleuriſie being not purged, the Feaver increaſeth while the matter is turning into *Pus*.

Secondly, the ſharpneſs of the matter touching the Membranes cauſeth quaking: the Third, is weight and ſenſe of heavineſs in the part. To theſe we may add the difficulty of breathing; for although when the Impoſthume is broken, the Diaphragma, and the Muſcles of the Thorax move more freely; yet the Lungs are oppreſſed by the matter lying about them. But an old and confirmed Empyema is known, by a lingring, putrid and partly Hectick Feaver, more violent towards night and much ſweating, a conſtant troubleſome Cough, the Cheeks grow red, the Eyes hollow, the Legs ſwell, Puſtles break out on the Breaſt. If the Suppuration break, and the Feaver continueth, are thirſty, want appetite, the *Pus* greer, livid or frothy, brought up with much difficulty, and a looſe belly; all theſe are ſigns of Death, or of long Sickneſs: the contrary are the ſigns of Recovery. They who in this condition do lift up the whole Breaſt, when they breath, by reaſon of the matter contained, are quickly choaked.

If the matter be not ſpit forth in forty dayes, it turneth to a Conſumption, and death followeth. The Suppuration on both ſides is more dangerous than that of one: that on the left ſide the worſt, by reaſon of the left Ventricle of the heart. If the matter flow plentifully by Stool and Urin, and the Patient ſtrong and hearty, it is a ſign of recovery.

For the Cure: you muſt endeavour to help nature in ſuppurating the humors; if Suppuration cannot be hindred by this or the like Cataplaſm: Take of Chamomel, Melilot and Mallows, of each one "handful, the Roots of Althæa, one handful: Figs and Raiſins

" ſtoned, of each four ounces: after due boiling, beat and ſtrain " them, adding to the Liquor, the Oyls of ſweet Almonds, Lillies, " and Freſh Butter, of each one ounce, with the Meal of Wheat, " Fenugreek and Flax Seed ſufficient, make a Cataplaſm, and apply it. In the mean time, let the Patient take of this Lohock: *Take of* " *the Conſerve of the Flower* of Bugloſs, Violets and Roſes, of each " one ounce; Maidenhair, Liquoriſh and Coltsfoot, of each one " ounce: Oyl of ſweet almonds, newly drawn, one ounce, Sugar- " Candy, one ounce, powder what is to be powdered, and with Syrup " of Liquoriſh, or Coltsfoot ſufficient make a Lohock; and let the Patient take thereof often. Venice Turpentine waſhed, and with Liquoriſh powder made up into Pills, are good to maturate, diſcuſs and cleanſe: give three drams in the Morning. But if the matter will not be ſpit up, you muſt open it between the fourth and fifth Rib; and apply a Plaiſter to draw out the matter, giving the Patient a Wound-drink in the mean time: If you deſire particular direction herein, read *Hieronymus Fabricius ab aqua pendente, in Libro de operationibus Chyrurgicis.*

CHAP. XXIX.

Of ſpitting of Blood.

Sputum Sanguinis or ſpitting of Blood, called in Greek αἱμόπτωσις, is an unnatural Flux of Blood from the vital parts, *viz.* the Breaſt, Lungs, and Aſpera Arteria. The immediate cauſe Organical or common; the Organical twofold, either the opening of the Veſſels called in Greek ἀνασόμωσις or Rarefaction, called διαπήδησις. The common Diſeaſe is twofold alſo, as the breaking of the Veſſels called ῥῆξις, or the Eroſion of them called διάβρωσις. Blood offending in quantity or quality may be the cauſe of opening, rarifying, breaking or Corroding of the Veſſels. To be further ſatisfied therein, I pray you have recourſe to the nineteenth Chapter, of Bleeding at the Noſe. Some external cauſe, as Fall, Wound, or the like, may be the cauſe of *Hæmoptoſis*: Immoderate cold may be the cauſe, by hardening the Tunicles that they cannot be extended. It is very difficult to judge of the part from whence it cometh: If it comes from the head, it is caſt forth by Coughing, Hawking, and there is a tickling in the Palate, as in a Catarrh. That which comes from the Breaſt and Lungs, cauſeth Coughing; that which comes from the Lungs is Frothy; that which comes from the Breaſt is Blackiſh, and cometh up with pain; That which comes from the Gullet and Stomach,

mach, is known by Vomiting; from the Jaws and Wezand, by Hawking; from the Mouth, by ſimple ſpitting. Sometimes the Blood is ſent from ſome other part to the Lungs, and ſpit forth: but this may be known by pain, or ſome hurt happened there. You muſt judge of the ſigns from the quantity or quality of the Blood; the Nineteenth Chapter will inſtruct you.

To the Prognoſtick; *Hippocrates* ſaith, That what kind of Blood ſoever is ſpit from any of the inferiour parts is evil, for every opening of a Veſſel, which letteth out Blood is dangerous, eſpecially in the Lungs. But ſometimes it happeneth without hurt, when nature critically doth evacuate ſuperfluous Blood that way: as it is ſeen ſometimes in women, who have their courſes ſtopt.

You muſt begin the Cure with Blood-letting; open a Vein on the ſame ſide you judge the diſtemper to be. If there be obſtruction of the Terms, open the Saphæna: If your Patient is ſubject to the Hemorrhoids, bleed with Leeches. Cupping, or other Revulſions you may uſe, if occaſion be. Then purge Choller, which cauſeth the Blood to be thin and fluid, with Rubarb, Mirobalans, and the like: Then give Medicines aſtringent to cloſe the Orifice of the Veſſels: but at the firſt give ſuch things with them which have an expectorating quality, leſt Blood in the Breaſt, or other parts, out of the proper Veſſels ſhould be coagulated: Take of Conſerve of Roſes, and the "juyce of Purſlane, of each two ounces, Sugar of Roſes one ounce. "red Coral, Blood-ſtone, Bolearmenick, and Terra Sigillata, of each "half a dram: Troches of Amber, a ſcruple: the Oyl of Vitriol "ſix drops; with the Whites of Eggs beaten to Water, make a Lohock, of which let the Patient lick often, eſpecially Night and Morning. *Quercetan* preſcribeth a Water, excellent againſt ſpitting of Blood; ſee the fourth part of this Treatiſe, among Diſtilled Waters. The Chymical Oyl of Amber, two or three drops, hath an excellent aſtringent quality, take it in the Diſtilled Water of Knotgraſs or Plantane, or the like: ſo you may take, or give half a dram of Sanguis Draconis; or the Blood-ſtone alone finely powdered: or two ſcruples of Opium, Laudanum, Philonium Romanum and Perſicum: Theſe and ſuch like may be given, provided, the doſe be regulated by an able brain: the juice of Nettles drunk four or five ounces in the morning hath prevailed, when all other have failed, ſaith *Amatus Luſitanus*. If by the uſe of aſtringent Medicines, your Patient be cauſtive, give a Clyſter or purge, that leaves an Aſtringency behind it; and if the uſe of Aſtringents hinder ſpitting, mix thoſe things which do not only ſtop Blood, but mollifie the Breaſt alſo; ſuch are the juyces of Plantane, Purſlane; the Syrups of dryed Roſes, Quinces, Myrtles, and of Jujubes, Gum Ara-

bick, Traganth and Starch, and such like. If blood be congealed in the Breast, indeavour to dissolve it, by administring six ounces of Oxycrate, three times a day; if it cause Coughing, sweeten it with Sugar or Sugar Candy. Apply this cooling Epithem, to allay the heat of the Liver, if you see occasion: "Take of the Water of "Roses, Plantane and Succory, of each four ounces: Vinegar of Ro-"ses two ounces: of the powder called Diatrion, Santalon, a dram "and an half; Camphire one scruple, make an *Epitheme*, and apply it warm to the Liver: afterwards anoint with Unguentum Rosarum, and Rose-Vinegar. Anoint the reins with Oyl of Roses, and Water Lillies: and the Testicles with Oxycrate. If a Defluxion of sharp humours, from the head unto the Lungs, be the cause of the Disease, seek the cure in the ninth Chapter. When the Blood is stanched, let your Patient avoid all things that may cause a return thereof; as Salt, and spiced meats, rich Wines, great heat, anger, and violent exercise. If you judge him inclinable to the Distemper, by reason of thin Cholerick humors, mixed with blood, purge those humors at the Spring and Fall.

CHAP. XXXI.

Of the Consumption or Ptisick.

THis Disease is called in Latine *Tabes*, and in Greek φθίσις; which although it signifieth every Consumption, yet is most properly taken for the extenuation of the whole Body, caused by an Ulcer in the Lungs. An Ulcer in the Lungs, by reason of its nearness to the heart, afflicts it with putrid vapours; the heart disperseth it into all parts: hence cometh a Feaver hectick joyned with a putrid, and by its unnatural heat, does hinder the well concocting of nourishment, hence the whole Body decayeth. Sometimes sharp corroding and Salt humors falling from the Head, or the suppurated humours from the Pleurisie or Empyema, which humours putrifying upon the lungs may ulcerate them. Many times the cause is in the lungs themselves, which have a vitious, hereditary constitution, naturally tender, and disposed to corruption. Sometimes a Pustule is bred in the Lungs, and never breaketh, but groweth till it stopp the passage of the breath, and killeth the Patient. Sometimes it cometh to Suppuration, and is called the Imposthume of the Lungs: which being broken, and flowing to the Bronchia or passages in the Lungs, it may be spit up, if the body be strong, and the matter little in quantity: but many times an Ulcer remaineth, which causeth a Consumption. If the Impostumated

mated matter flow into the Ventricle of the heart, the ſick die ſuddenly; and many times inſenſible of any pain or ſickneſs: take examples from *Fernelius*, *lib.* 5. *de partium Morbis & Sympt.* Chap. 10. pag. 288. To the cauſes of this Diſeaſe here mentioned, you may add all the cauſes mentioned in the ninth Chapter *of Defluxions*. *Hippocrates* mentioneth many more kinds of Conſumptions, too tedious for me to inſert in this Volume: as thoſe proceeding from nocturnal pollutions, the running of the Reins; alſo the obſtruction of the Nerves, or the flowing of Choler to the Back; ſo want of nouriſhment, or drying cauſeth a Conſumption: likewiſe a Diſtillation from the head to the Marrow on the Back may be the cauſe, as *Hippocrates* ſaith; when a Defluxion falleth upon the Spinal Marrow, there is a ſecret and undiſcernable Conſumption. Sometimes it hath its original from hunger, and want of nouriſhment: Sometimes when the Meſeraick Veins are obſtructed, that the Chylus concocted in the Stomach cannot paſs to the Liver. In the Diagnoſtick, we muſt obſerve the ſigns of a Conſumption, beginning, begun, or confirmed. Signs of a Conſumption beginning are, a ſmall Defluxion, the Lungs not much hurt thereby, the Cough but ſmall, the Spittle ſweet, Salt or Bitter, the Body a little Feaveriſh. The Signs of a Conſumption begun, the Diſtillation is ſtronger, the Lungs pierced, by which the Lungs are exaſperated, and the Cough violent. The matter contained in the Lungs maketh the Stomach weighty, a ſharp pain before and behind from the humours ſuppurating, ſharp and heating humors fall into the Body, and ſometimes into the Veins, cauſing a Hectick Feaver, ſometimes joyned with a putrid. The Lungs by contracted filth, grows hot, by which heat, ſpittle, flegm, and other humors, good and bad are drawn from the Brain, which the Brain fetcheth from all the Body; hence comes its decay and extenuation. The Patient ſpitteth thick rotten Flegm, and doth ſweat at night as ſoon as he ſleepeth. A Conſumption confirmed, is known by theſe ſigns, the Patient ſpitteth matter it ſelf, the Feaver ſtronger, the Cough more violent, with more provocation, and leſs Evacuation; the Cough is attended with hollow ſounding, he pineth and wanteth appetite, for the mouth of the ſtomach is weakned by the Defluxion: The belly is looſe, for the Flegm falling from the Head, weakeneth the Stomach and Bowels. and the retentive faculty is deſtroyed. The Patient breatheth difficultly, for the faculty is weak. and the Bronchia ſtopped with a putrid Matter; the Hair falleth off, the Cheeks wax blue, and his Feet ſwell; the Nails of the Fingers are crooked, becauſe the fleſh on the tops of the Fingers which held them up, is decayed. Let the patient ſpit in a Baſon of fair Water: if he ſpit Matter, it ſinketh; if Flegm, it ſwimmeth.

Thus

Thus have I briefly touched upon the Cauſes and Signs of a Conſumption, a word or two of the Prognoſtick. If the Conſumption hath not long continued, and the Ulcer but newly begun, it may be cured, otherwiſe not; for thoſe things which dry the Ulcer, do hinder ſpitting, and encreaſe the Feaver, and make the Body leaner. Thoſe things which are moiſt, good againſt leanneſs and Fevers, do make the Ulcer fouler. Thoſe that have narrow and ſtreight Breaſts, and their ſhoulder-blades ſtick out like wings, are inclinable to Conſumptions, to whom it is natural, for want of natural heat. If the Conſumption came with an acute Diſeaſe, or the Sick fall into an acute Diſeaſe, it killeth ſpeedily. If the Patient ſpitteth ſtinking Matter, or cannot ſpit at all, his Belly looſe, he is very near Death.

It would take up a great deal more room than I have to ſpare, to ſet down the Cure of a Conſumption, (I mean when it is only begun, and the Patient ſtrong,) I ſhall only Epitomiſe it. Let the Sick drink Milk warm, either Aſſes, Goats, or red Cows; but above all, the Milk of a ſound Woman is the beſt. Let him uſe a cool and moiſt diet, and make uſe of ſuch things which may correct the blood. Make a decoction of China, Sanders and Guajacum: You muſt purge the humors offending, but be ſure you make uſe of ſuch purges as work very gently, as Manna, Rhubarb, Caſſia, Syrup of Roſes, and the like. To allay the Feaver, it is lawful to let blood, if your Patient be not too lean: You muſt divert the Defluxion, have recourſe to the ninth Chapter. Then you muſt give ſuch things which have a healing quality, to cure the Ulcer, of which the Milk ſpoken of before is very good, and if Sugar of Roſes be given with it, it will be much more available. Conſerve of Roſes is good, if it aſtringe too much, and the breath fail, and the Sick cannot ſpit, make uſe of Expectorating Medicines, as the Syrup of Hyſop, Colts-foot or Lohocks; the laſt Chapter will enform you. If heat be procured by the ſame means, give coolers, as the Syrups of Violets and Jujubes, the Muſilage of Fleabane, Quinces, and the cold ſeeds. The Syrup of the juyce of Grounc-Ivy is much commended by *Quercetan*, ſee the fourth Book, *Of Syrups*.

This Syrup hath admirable Virtue. *Take of the juyce of Ground-Ivy, Veronica, and Carduus Benedictus clarified, of each eight ounces, in which boyl of all the ſorts of Maidenhair, Scabious and Lettuce, of each a handful, very gently; then diſſolve in the Liquor ſtreined, a pound and half of white Sugar, and boyl it to the height of a Syrup; add in the end of the extract of Juniper three drams, of the juyce of Liquoriſh, and the Extract of Carduus, of each four ſcruples.* Let the Patient take a ſpoonful before every meal, and as much when he goeth to bed. *Forreſtus* commendeth this Powder following, *Take of white Poppy-*

Seed

Seed ten drams, Starch, Gum Arabick and Tragacanth, of each three drams, Purſlane and Mallows-Seed, of each five drams, the four great cold Seeds, of each ſix drams, Quince Seeds the like quantity; Spodium, and juyce of Liquoriſh, of each three drams; the Penids the weight of all the reſt, make it into fine powder; and give two drams in a morning, with the Syrups of Poppies or Jujubes; or you may give it in Barly-Cream, Almond-Milk, or in any other convenient liquor.

Or this Lohock is very good: *Take of Lohock de pulmone Vulpis and Sanum & Expertum, of each one ounce, Conſerve of Roſes, Diamargariton Frigidum and Diapenidion, of each half an ounce; Manus Chriſti, and Lac Sulphuris, of each three drams, with the Syrup of Comfry, make a Lobock*, of which let the Patient take the quantity of a Hazel-nut often, and twice as much night and morning. The Oyl of Vitriol is good to dry the Ulcer, if two or three drops be given in a morning, with the juyce of Plantane, or Roſe-water, and Sugar, ſaith *Claudianus*. The Balſome of Peru, is not without its virtues, for the healing of the Ulcers of the Lungs, if a drop or two be made into a Pill with Sugar, or the powder of Liquoriſh, and taken every morning; ſo you may take the Balſome of Sulphur. Fumigations may be made of Frankincenſe, Myrrh, Maſtich, Benjamin, Yellow Sanders, Amber, Storax, and the like; and taken in the Mouth or Noſe, and the room ſcented therewith. Or you may make a moiſt Fumigation of ſuch herbs which are friendly to the Lungs. *Take of Coltsfoot, Hyſſop, Horehound and Alehoof, of each two handfuls, bruiſe them, and put them in a Pipkin with a cover cloſe luted, with water ſufficient; put it into the Oven when the Bread is half baked, the Bread being baked, draw out the Pipkin*, and put a funnel into a hole which it muſt have at the top, and draw the fumes into the Mouth, and put it out at the Noſe. Many other Medicines and Precepts, I might here preſcribe, which I muſt omit for brevities ſake; only remember, that all Medicines againſt ſpitting of Blood are profitable for the Ulcer of the Lungs.

CHAP. XXXII.

Of the Palpitation of the Heart.

THe Palpitation of the Heart is an immoderate and preternatural ſhaking of the part with a great Diaſtole or vehement Syſtole, which ſometimes hath been ſo great, that the adjoyning ribs have been diſplaced, ſometimes broken: and ſometimes an Artery hath been much dilated, ſo ſaith *Fernelius lib.5.* Chap. 12. *pag.*292. The Greeks call this Diſeaſe Καρδίας πάλον, and the Latines *Palpitatio Cordis*. The cauſes of it may be referred to three heads: the firſt is a moleſtation of the heart, ſometimes a troubleſome vapour ariſing from cold and thick humors lodged near the heart, eſpecially the Pericardium, and conveyed to the Ventricles of the heart, or ſent from the Stomach, Spleen, Womb, or the like; or cauſed by the Plague, Poyſon, Worms putrified, or the Menſtrues ſtopped, and conveyed as before, may be the cauſe of Palpitation. To theſe, add exceſs in quantity or quality, of bloody, Cholerick or watry humors oppreſſing the Veins, Arteries or Ventricles of the Heart. Likewiſe Inflammation, Impoſthumation or Tumors happening in the Arteries of the Lungs near the Heart, or in the Pericardium may be the cauſe of Palpitation.

A Second cauſe is a preternatural heat, by which the Spirits are inflamed, and the motion of the Heart and Arteries is encreaſed, and this ſometimes (though ſeldome) ariſeth from an inward cauſe: often from an outward, as anger, violent exerciſe and the like.

The third cauſe is the defect of Spirits, cauſed by hunger, watching, anger, joy, fear, ſhame, or great Diſeaſes, or any thing, which diſſipateth the Spirits, which the heart labouring to recover, encreaſeth its motion, and cauſeth Palpitation. The *Diagnoſis* or knowledg of this Diſeaſe is eaſie, for it may be felt, heard or ſeen: The cauſes muſt be diſtinguiſhed by their proper ſigns, A hot diſtemper is known by often breathing, by a Feaver and heat of the Breaſt, and a deſire of cold things. If Wind be the cauſe, it is ſubject to Variation, and raiſed by a ſmall motion, the Breath is difficult; a miſt before the Eyes, and a noiſe in the Ears, *&c.* If the Diſeaſe cometh from humors in the heart or *Pericardium*, it comes not ſuddenly, nor goeth away quickly. The nature of the humor you may gather from their Symptomes. Water in the *Pericardium* is hard to be known, but we may conjecture it, by the weakneſs of the Pulſe, the Heart ſeems to be almoſt ſtiff cated in water. If Malignant and Peſtilent humors cauſe it, the Patient fainteth, a loſs of the pulſe and ſtrength, *&c.* If it come

come by conſent from other parts, their proper ſigns declare it. If a Tumor be the cauſe, the motion of the heart is different from the natural, and the pulſe is various: If the Tumor be in the *Pericardium* and hard, the diſeaſe is conſtant, and the Patient decayes without manifeſt cauſe. To the Prognoſtick I ſay, it is a dangerous Symptome, becauſe the motion of the Heart, by which life is preſerved, is hindered; and *Galen* ſaith, That they who are thus affected in youth, or middle age, live not to be old, becauſe the Vitals are weak in them. *Alph.* 41. *de loco aff. Sect.* 2. *&* 5. *Chap.* 2. If it come from a Tumor, it is incurable: if it be peculiar to the Heart, or *Pericardium*, it is incurable. If it come by conſent from other parts, the cure muſt be ſought out of their proper Chapters: but, (ſeeing not onely the cauſe ought to be removed, but alſo the Symptomes aſſwaged, by refreſhing the Heart) you muſt adminiſter Cordial medicines, which have power to ſtrengthen the Heart. If a hot diſtemper vex the heart, Take of the Conſerve of Violets, Water-Lillies, Borrage or Bugloſs-Flowers, of each one ounce; *Diamargariton Frigidum*, *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, of each two drams; Red Sanders, Coral, and Camphire, of each a dram, with the Syrups of Coral, Balm, or Citron peels, make an Opiate, of which let him take often. If cold humors cauſe the Palpitation; Take of the Conſerve of Roſes, and Roſemary flowers, of each one ounce; *Aromaticum Roſarum*, *Dianthus*, *and Diambra*, of each one dram; Cinnamon, Cloves, and Mace, of each half a dram: Confection of Alchermes, two ſcruples; Amber, Muſk, and Saffron, of each one ſcruple, with Syrup of Clove-Gilly-Flowers, make an Opiate, and give it as before. With theſe and the like ingredients the ingenious may form medicines of all ſorts, whether the diſeaſe be hot, or cold: likewiſe may Liniments, Unguents, Epithemas, and Sacculi be prepared and applied to the Region of the Heart, to ſtrengthen and abate the hot or cold diſtempers thereof. If an humor gathered near the heart cauſe the Palpitation, extenuating medicines muſt be mixed with your Cordials, and if nothing prohibit, open the inner Vein of the Arm called *Baſilica*; if that appear not, open the middle Vein; which courſe *Galen* commendeth: Alſo if you ſee occaſion, adminiſter Purging, and Carminative Clyſters.

CHAP. XXXIII.

Of Swooning, or Syncope.

Συγκοπή, or Swooning, is a ſudden, and ſwift failing of all ſtrength: for all parts having a continunal neceſſary influence upon the heart, & vital ſpirits; when they fail, all the reſt muſt ſuffer. This Diſeaſe is diſtinguiſhed from the Epilepſy, which hath a Convulſion, and this not from an Apoplexy, in which the breath is much ſtopped, and the pulſe not much abated, till near death: but here the pulſe faileth and the breath is free. In fits of the Mother, the breaſt is moſt obſtructed, the pulſe not much altered, nor the colour of the face, except it be higher; the contrary happeneth in a Syncope. The immediate cauſe of this Diſeaſe, is the defect of the Vital Spirits, in which nature is conſtrained: leſt the heart ſhould totally fail, to fetch the Spirits from other parts to the heart, by which means they loſe their functions. This defect happeneth four ways principally: Firſt they are naturally few, by fault in the faculty making of the Vital Spirits, or the matter: which fault cometh by diſeaſes proper to the heart, or by conſent from other parts. Proper to the heart, are too much conſtriction, dilation, and Solutions happening to the Ventricles of the heart, or ſuch as deſtroy the natural temper, as ſharp, Malignant, Fainting, Peſtilential, and Hectick Feavers, and the like. The faculty may be hurt by diſeaſes in thoſe parts, which have a Sympathy with the heart, as the Brain, Liver, Stomach, and Womb. The matter is faulty, when the Air or Blood, (by which the Vital Spirits are generated) is defective, or corrupted. The Air is defective, when reſpiration, and tranſpiration is hindered: But the hinderance of nutrition cauſeth a defect of the Blood. They are both corrupted, when their qualities are changed. Secondly, this Diſeaſe is cauſed when the Spirits are diſſipated and ſpent, by too great evacuations which may be done ſenſibly, or inſenſibly. Senſibly, by inordinate Phlebotomy, Bleeding of Wounds, or at the Mouth, Noſe, Womb, Belly, or Hemorrhoids: or an extraordinary diſcharging of other excrementitious humors, by Vomit, Stool, Urine, or Sweat: the breaking of an inward Impoſtume; or by *Empyema*, or by tapping the Navel in the Dropſie. Inſenſible evacuations, are cauſed by ſharp or thin humors, which rarifie the skin; or the immoderate heat of Baths or hot-houſes. To theſe add long Watchings, Faſtings, Lechery, Anger, Joy, long continuing and violent pain or ſickneſs, *&c.* may cauſe a diſſipation of the ſpirits. Thirdly, this Diſeaſe is cauſed by things which alter and corrupt the Spirits, as venemous and peſti-

lential

lential Air and ſtinks, or an evil diſpoſition of the Bowels and other parts. In a word, all things which are averſe to the Heart may corrupt the ſpirits. Or laſtly, the ſpirits may be ſuffocated or deſtroyed; which may come to paſs, by a vehement returning of Blood and Spirits to the Heart, as alſo corrupt vapours, cold and thick blood and other humours gathered about the Heart, or the adjacent parts. Theſe ſigns ſhew a Syncope, *viz.* a ſudden failing of ſtrength, a ſlow pulſe ſometimes ſtopping, a pale and bleviſh Face, the body externally cold, a cold Swear, eſpecially on the Temples, Neck, and Breaſt.

The ſigns of the Cauſes, for the moſt part, are manifeſt, as the ſorts of Feavers, and the external Cauſes, but how named, may be eaſily known. A ſharp Noſe, hollow Eyes, the Temples fallen, are ſigns of thin Humours: gnawing of the Stomach, pricking heat, and great pain, do ſhew that the Body is troubled with Choler. Abundance of crude Humors, is known by the enlarging of the Body, ſwelling of the Breaſt, the colour pale, and the pulſe ſmall, unequal, and obſcure. If ſwooning come by conſent from other parts, the Signs of thoſe parts affected will diſcover it. They who often and violently faint without manifeſt Cauſe, die ſuddenly (ſaith *Hippocrates.*)

A Syncope, which cometh from ſome evident Cauſe, as Fear, Sorrow, or immoderate Evacuations, is leſs dangerous than that which cometh from an internal Cauſe. In reſpect of various Cauſes, you muſt vary the Cure. If it come from immoderate Evacuations, you muſt endeavour to ſtop it with their proper Medicines, preſcribed in their ſeveral Chapters. If from too violent purging, give three grains of Laudanum, or two of Opium. If by too much ſweating, you muſt uſe Medicines which reſtrain ſweat. If from ſuffocation of the Spirits, call them back by Frictions, Ligatures, and Cupping. If it come from Poyſon taken, give ſomething to expel it; after Vomiting with Oyl, give Treacle: if it burn in the guts, give Milk, fat Broth, or cooling Cordials. If thinneſs of the Humors cauſe it, give things that are ſweet and thickning. If want of Food cauſe a Syncope, make uſe of a reſtoring Diet, and nouriſhing Broths. To conclude, From what Cauſe ſoever it come, in the Fit, lay your Patient upon his back, throw cold water into his Face, make him ſneeze, put *Aqua-vitæ, Cæleſtis,* or *Imperialis* into his Mouth; call him loud, ſtop his Noſtrils, wring his Fingers, pull his Hair, rub, bind, and Cup if need be.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXIV.

Of want of Appetite.

AS there are divers actions of the Stomach, ſo there are divers Diſeaſes hindering thoſe actions: *See the Fifth Chapter of the Firſt Book.* And ſeeing that the attractive faculty is the firſt in order, I ſhall begin with the want of Attraction or Appetite. It is called ἀνορεξία or ἀνωρεξία. In Latin *Inappetentia.* In Engliſh *Want of Appetite* or *Loathing of Meat.* That we may rightly judge of the Cauſes of this Diſeaſe, let us conſider the Natural Cauſes of Appetite and Hunger, by which we may the better diſcover the fault or hinderance.

The firſt cauſe of Hunger, is emptineſs of the Stomach: if there be no emptineſs, there is no Attraction, nor Appetite. Want of emptineſs is, when the parts are filled with plenty of crude Humours cauſed by Gluttony or Drunkenneſs, want of Exerciſe or uſual Evacuations, Weakneſs of the Natural Heat or a Feaver, when the Heat is buſied to concoct the matter of the Diſeaſe, or the like.

The ſecond cauſe of Appetite, is the Attraction of Nouriſhment to the Stomach, ſometimes this is depraved, though the parts are empty, when the Veins have left their ſtrength by Sickneſs, or immoderate Evacuations.

The third cauſe of Appetite, is the Attraction of the *Chilus* from the Stomach to the Liver by the Meſeraick veins; which cannot be performed if thoſe Veins are obſtructed, the Chilus ſent out by Siege, and the parts depraved of their neceſſary Nouriſhment.

Fourthly, the faculty of attracting an Appetite requireth a good diſpoſition of the Stomach, Brain, and Nerves; conſequently what ever altereth their Diſpoſitions deſtroyeth appetite: great heat and drouth diſperſing the moiſt Subſtance of the Stomach, doth cauſe a want of appetite. The like doth cold, which cauſeth a Stupefaction of the parts, and extinguiſheth the natural heat.

Flegmy and Slimy humors gathered in the ſtomach by evil concoction, or by a defluxion from the head: the ſupreſſion of the Terms, or Hemorrhoids ſmothereth the natural heat, and cauſeth want of attraction. Diſtempers of the Brain and Nerves make a man inſenſible of the attracting in the ſtomach. The ſign of the firſt cauſe is known by high feeding, repletion, want of evacuation, the body is full and the Veins ſwoln, and the like. The ſecond cauſe is evident, by ſickneſs, or immoderate evacuations. The third is known by obſtruction of the Liver, Spleen, or Meſentery. The fourth cauſe

is

is thus known: If there be a great heat in the ſtomach, drineſs, bitterneſs of the Tongue and Jaws, and a Feaver with heart-burning, and the like. All which ſignifie a hot diſtemper of the ſtomach; if it flow from ſome other part, the Signs of the Inflammation of the Liver and other parts will demonſtrate it. A cold diſtemper and much Flegm is known by coldneſs of the ſtomach, great heavineſs, and ſharp belchings. *Prog.* Want of Appetite is dangerous, for it is digreſſion from the natural eſtate. Loathing of meat for want of natural heat is far more dangerous, than when it is cauſed by abundance of evil humors. In Children want of appetite is worſe than in men, becauſe their natures require more nouriſhment. In all diſeaſes want of Appetite is an evil Symptome. If a man recovering wanteth Appetite, there is fear of a Relapſe. If want of Appetite come from a Diſeaſe of ſome other part, I refer you thither for the Cure: but if it be onely in the Stomach, you muſt conſider it as either Hot or Cold. If a hot Humour be the cauſe, purge Choler gently and often; if your Patient be eaſie to vomit, give an eaſie vomit. Alter the Humors with cooling Syrups and Julcps, mixing therewith the Spirit of Vitriol, or Sulphur; for all ſharp things allay Choler, and provoke an Appetite. After purging, Marmalade of Quinces is good: Or take this following Opiate: Take of Conſerve of Wormwood and Sorrel, of each an ounce; Conſerve of Roſes, Succory and Bugloſs, of each half an ounce; *Diamargariton Frigidum*, and *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, of each one dram; Troches of Spodium one ſcruple, with Syrup of Lemmons, make an Opiate; of which let the Paitent take the quantity of a Cheſnut, Morning, Night and Noon. To the Stomach apply a Roſe Cake ſteeped in Vinegar. Or anoint the Stomach outwardly with this Liniment: Take of Oyl of Roſes, Mirtles, and Quinces, waſhed with Vinegar of Roſes, of each two ounces; all the Sanders, red Coral, Coriander ſeed prepared, and red Roſes, of each one dram; the grains of Kermes and Spodium, of each half a dram; White Wax as much as is ſufficient to make a Liniment, and anoint the Stomach often therewith.

If a cold Diſtemper of the Stomach draws crude, flegmatick and melancholy Humors thither from other parts, you muſt amend the diſtempers of thoſe parts with Medicines laid down in their proper Chapters. Then you muſt evacuate the humors oppreſſing the Stomach, and afterwards ſtrengthen it. You muſt evacuate the humors, either by Vomit or Stool; give no Vomits but to thoſe who are eaſie to vomit. Of Purges, Pills are moſt profitable, becauſe of their long continuance in the Stomach: the laſt Book will furniſh you with purging Medicines. If the humors in the ſtomach be tough, you muſt diſſolve them with Honey of Roſes, Oxymel, and the like.

Beware how you adminiſter Pills which are ſtrong in operation, leſt they draw humors from other parts to the Stomach. If the Liver be very hot you may be let blood, otherwiſe not; and in this caſe, you muſt adminiſter ſuch things as cool the Liver. After ſufficient purging, you muſt come to ſtrengthen the Stomach internally and externally: *Take of the Syrup of Wormwood and Quinces, of each two ounces, the Syrup of Citron Peels one ounce, Cinnamon-water four ounces, the Spirit of Sulphur ten drops*: mix them, and let the Patient take a Spoonful or two Morning, Noon and Night, or often as neceſſity requireth, *Quercetanus* his Syrup of Cinnamon is very good: See the laſt Book. If the Diſeaſe be of long continuance, let the Patient make uſe of the Guajacum Drink, preſcribed in the Second Chapter of this Book: the Bath of *Bath* is profitable in this caſe.

But if a hot Liver attend a cold Stomach, as it often doth, your Medicines ought to be the more temperate. *Zechius* commendeth this Bolus: *Take of waſhed Turpentine two Drams, Powder of Maſtick half a Dram, Aromaticum Roſatum half a ſcruple*: Make a Bolus, and let the ſick take it two hours before meat. Candied Nutmegs and Ginger is good, and it is convenient for the Patient to drink his Beer warm. This Liniment is good; *Take of the Balſom of Peru three Ounces, the Oyls of Nutmegs, Wormwood and Maſtick, of each one ounce, mix them and anoint the Stomach.* Alſo with theſe and other Ingredients which have a heating and expectorating quality, you may make Unguents and Plaiſters to be applied to the Stomach.

CHAP. XXXV.

Of a depraved Appetite.

THe Appetite is depraved two ways, either in quantity or quality; if it be depraved in quantity, Nouriſhment is deſired in greater quantity than Nature would: it is called by the Greeks Βούλιμος, by the Latines *Fames Canina*, whence we call it *Dog's Appetite*: It is depraved in quality, when things which are not Food but vitious and unwholeſom, are deſired, this is called in Greek πίκα, or λίτλα and μαλακία.

Firſt, Thoſe that are troubled with the *Dog's Appetite*, do feed inſatiably, and afterwards ſome vomit like Dogs, ſome do purge, and others do digeſt it, and if they have not more preſently, are ſick. The part affected is chiefly the mouth of the ſtomach, the cauſe conſaining, is ſenſe of ſucking and vehement pulling, which ſtirs up the

Appetite,

Appetite. Vitious humours ſticking to the mouth of the ſtomach by their too much coldneſs, ſharpneſs or foundneſs do bind, wrinkle and pull the mouth of the Stomach, and ſo beget a falſe Appetite; Melancholy ſent from the Spleen to the Stomach, if it exceed and be preternatural, cauſeth an unnatural Appetite. It may be cauſed by want of Food, and Emptineſs cauſed by too great Evacuations, by which the Veins do continually ſuck.

Sometimes it cometh from Worms in the Stomach which devour the Chilus. The Hermetick Phyſitians do attribute it to a ſharp, ſalt and devouring Spirit or Faculty in the Stomach, which doth readily conſume whatever Meat is taken, as Aqua Fortis doth quickly diſſolve the fixedſt Metals, the hardeſt Stones into Liquor; and by this means doth not allow Nature a lawful and neceſſary bound of Nouriſhment. The Diſeaſe it ſelf needs no other Sign than the devouring of Meat: the ſigns of the Cauſes may be eaſily found, they which manifeſt a cold Diſtemper and ſharp humors in the Stomach, are belching and ſharp Vomiting, crude Ejections, want of Thirſt, and external cauſes of Refrigeration. If defect of Nouriſhment is the cauſe, the Patient is lean, and there are cauſes preſent or foregoing of the decay of Moiſture. If Worms be the cauſe, in the Chapter of the Worms their ſigns ſhall be ſpoken of.

Prog. If this Diſeaſe come from external Cauſes or from Worms, it is not dangerous: judge the contrary if it follow Emptineſs and great Evacuations, or if the Patient doth vomit or purge much, for then the Body (for the moſt part) falleth into a worſe Diſeaſe. To cure this Diſeaſe, you muſt purge by Vomit or Stools, (taking the Caution in the laſt Chapter) the flegmatick and melancholy humors ſticking to the Stomach, then you muſt labour to ſtrengthen the Stomach with internal and external Medicines, preſcribed in the former Chapter. Six Grains of Ambergreece taken in a reer Egg, hath a ſpecial quality to ſtrengthen the Stomach and cure the Diſeaſe. Narcotick Medicines by dulling the exquiſite Senſe do ſometimes cure the Diſeaſe, but muſt not be uſed till all other means fail, and then adviſed by an able Brain.

Hippocrates ſaith, That Wine and Aqua vitæ is good, and Experience teacheth, that Oyl and fat things are ſeldome given without ſucceſs.

Pica and *Malacia* is a depraved Appetite, by which unprofitable and hurtful things are deſired; it is cauſed by the eating of evil Meats, by which the Stomach is diſpoſed for the production of melancholy and flegmatick humors, hence divers Appetites of evil things are ingendered. Some deſire things that are ſour, ſharp, bitter and cold, as Vinegar, juyce of Lemmons and Oranges, cold Wa-

ter, Snow, Ice, unripe Fruits, and the like. Some do deſire earthly, dry and burnt things; as Nutmegs, Clove, Cinnamon and other Spices: Salt, Aſhes, Coles, Chalk, Tobacco-pipes, Lime, Oatmeal, Tar, Candles, and ſuch like. This Diſeaſe happeneth for the moſt part to Women with Child, or to Maids which have the Greenſickneſs, who having their Terms ſtopped and ſtaying corrupt in the body, and aſcending infect the Stomach, and take the Appetite from its natural condition. Sometimes (though ſeldome) Men and Boyes are thus troubled: *Fernelius* ſpeaks of a Noble-man, who having an extraordinary Appetite to Lime, did devour a piece as big as his fiſt, without offending his Stomach or Bowels. The cauſe of this Diſeaſe may be found out by the things deſired; for if they deſire Coles, Salt or the like, we may conclude, that the Diſeaſe depends upon ſalt and burnt humours.

This Diſeaſe is Chronical and of continuance, but it is ſeldom dangerous; yet ſometimes if the Stomach cannot be reduced to its former Condition, Obſtructions, evil Habits, Dropſies and Cardialgiaes are produced. The more contrary to Nature the things deſired are, the farther diſtant is the Stomach from the natural temper. If you aim at the Cure, it differeth not from the former, but you muſt conſider the variety of the bodies affected: If this Diſeaſe happen to a Man, it hath its Original from the Obſtruction of the Liver and Spleen, and you muſt ſeek the Cure in their proper Chapters. If Women with Child are thus affected, be ſparing in giving Medicines for fear of Miſcarriage; for the moſt part they are freed from it in the fourth Moneth. If the Greenſickneſs in Maids be the cauſe of this effect: ſeek the Cure in the Chapter of the Greenſickneſs.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Of the Thirſty Diſeaſe.

THis Diſeaſe is called in Greek Δίψα, in Latin *Sitis Morboſa*; The immediate Cauſe is want of moiſt Nouriſhment: Dryneſs of the Stomach and other parts, which maketh the Stomach ſenſible of their wants; it is cauſed by thoſe things which have a power to conſume and dry up the moiſture of the whole Stomach and whole body. It is cauſed alſo by propriety or ſympathy; by propriety when the moiſture of the Stomach is altered or drawn forth by a hot, dry, ſalt, ſharp or filthy humour contained in his Cavity. By Sympathy, when the whole Body or ſome particular Member having loſt its moiſture, doth ſuck moiſture from the Stomach: for the Veins having loſt

their moiſture, endeavour to recruit themſelves with the Stomachs moiſture, as it happeneth in Feavers, Inflammations of the Liver, Lungs, and a hot and dry Diſtemper of the Reins, cauſeth Diabetes or a continual Piſſing, and is accompanied with great thirſt, and therefore is called Dipſacus, The outward cauſes alſo are all ſuch things as heat and dry; the uſe of ſalt, ſharp and ſpiced Meats: exceſs of old rich Wine, Watchings or immoderate Evacuations. The Sons of *Hermes* conclude, that preternatural Thirſt is cauſed by thirſty Spirits bred of ſulphureous Excrements, whoſe thirſt cannot be ſatisfied with ordinary cooling Medicines, unleſs the ſharp Spirits of Vitriol, Sulphur or Salt be added to them.

The knowledge of the Diſeaſe is eaſie, of the Cauſe and the Part affected not difficult. Of the Diſeaſe, the Patients Complaint for want of Drink, will inform you. Likewiſe the Cauſe may be diſtinguiſhed by the Taſts, which are hot, dry, ſalt, bitter, ſharp, and the like. laſtly, the Taſts do not onely diſtinguiſh the peccant Humour, but alſo that the part affected is the Mouth of the Stomach: but if thirſt come by conſent from other parts, the Signs of thoſe Diſeaſes will be manifeſt. The Thirſt which comes from external Cauſes, is eaſily quenched with Drink; that which comes from internal Cauſes, are more or leſs dangerous, according to their differences. Thirſt accompanying Feavers ends with them, and their Cures ſhall be ſet down in their proper places. Thirſt in a Dropſie is not allayed, but rather increaſed by Drink, and is moſt dangerous. If it be cauſed by immoderate Evacuations, ſuppreſs the Evacuations, and reſtore the Empty Parts with cooling and moiſtning Medicines ſuch as are preſcribed in the Cure of the Feaver Hectick and Maraſmus.

CHAP. XXXVII.

Of evil Digeſtion.

THe Concoction of the Stomach is hurt three ways, *viz.* it may be diminiſhed, depraved or aboliſhed. Concoction diminiſhed, is called Βραδυπεψία, depraved Δυσπεψία, aboliſhed Απεψία. The fault of Concoction is either in the Organ, Object, External or Internal things. The fault in the Organ comprehendeth all Diſeaſes in the Stomach, for ſince Digeſtion is made in the Stomach by a moderate natural Heat, if it want its Moderation, the digeſtive Faculty is hurt. A cold diſtemper of the Stomach, if it be gentle, diminiſheth the Heat and weakneth Concoction; if it be greater it

aboliſhed it. A hot Diſtemper in the Stomach depraveth the Faculty, and cauſeth difficult Concoction.

Though theſe Diſtempers are ſometimes ſimple, yet many times they are joyned with Matter, as Flegm and black Humors cauſed by Hypocondriack Melancholy which cauſe Crudities, ſour Belchings, Rumblings, Winds, and the like. The fault of the Object is thus conſidered, when the Nouriſhment, which is the proper Object of the Stomach, offendeth in ſubſtance, quantity, quality or time. Nouriſhment offendeth the Stomach in ſubſtance, when it is too hard and difficult to be concocted. In quantity it offendeth the Stomach, when either too much is taken at once, that the natural Heat cannot digeſt it, but ſome part of it remaineth Crude: leſs taken than Nature requireth, becometh Crude alſo, when it is dried or burnt in a Cholerick Stomach. In quality Food offendeth, when it is either too hot or dry, or too cold, moiſt and windy for the Stomach. In reſpect of Time, Nouriſhment may offend the Stomach, If a man contrary to his order in Diet, doth eat liberally a little before he goeth to Bed, this may hurt Concoction. External or Internal Means may hurt the concoctive Faculty: Namely, an Air too hot may diſſipate the natural Heat; an Air too cold may dull it: immoderate Exerciſe, eſpeciallyafter Meat, draweth the Heat from the Stomach to the External parts, and drives the imperfect Chylus into the Guts, and ſo weakens Concoction. Coſtiveneſs of the Belly, or a Flux; immoderate Watching, or ſleep in the day-time; deep Study upon a full Stomach; Sadneſs, and other Paſſions of the Minde do hinder the actions of the Stomach. The Hermetick Phyſitians add another Cauſe, for they ſay (and not without reaſon) that a ſharp Liquor ſent from the Spleen to the Stomach, which hath a great power to diſſiolve, in its natural State cauſeth a laudable Concoction, and that Concoction is not made by Heat onely: for Meat boyled in a Pot, with a ſtrong Heat many days, is not diſſolved; and Bones in a Dogs Stomach are quickly diſſolved: Likewiſe Fiſhes do quickly diſſolve their Meat, though they have no actual Heat. Birds do quickly concoct the hardeſt Seeds, and ſmall Pebble-Stones, and they have a Spleen round about their Maw, and that there is a diſſolving Spirit inherent in the Gizzards of Birds, the Phyſical Practice doth prove, being often uſed in Medicines to help Concoction, diſſolve the Stone, and the like.

The Signes of a diminiſhed or aboliſhed Concoction is the ſame, differing onely in Degrees, *viz.* ſour Belchings, vomiting or purging forth of Food either not well, or not at all concocted, Weight, Extenſion and Inflammation of the Stomach; the Patient ſenſible of ſome cold Cauſe going before, and is worſe by taking of cold things:

ſome

the Urine thin, and pale like Water, and ſometimes thick and red. If the concoctive Faculty be depraved, the Patient is ſenſible of ſtinking Belchings, and the like Taſt in the Mouth, of Heat and Thirſt; and is prejudiced by hot things. If it come from external Cauſes, the Patient, or ſome about him will be able to demonſtrate it, if it come by conſent from other Parts, their Signes muſt be conſidered.

Concoction hurt by conſent from other Parts, is eaſier cured, than that which is proper to the Stomach, onely that which cometh from external Cauſes, is cured eaſieſt of all. Concoction diminiſhed, though it be not the worſt, yet it bringeth many inconveniencies, as the Chollick, Cachexy, and ſometimes the Dropſie. Concoction aboliſhed is worſt, becauſe all parts are fruſtrated of their Nouriſhment, and deadly Diſeaſes follow, as the Lientery, Dropſie, Atrophy, &c.

A depraved Concoction is the cauſe of many Evils likewiſe, as Obſtructions, Scabs, Feavers, &c. To cure the Diſeaſe, you muſt remove the Antecedent, Conjunct, and External cauſe: The Stomach muſt be cleanſed of the offending Humors, and then ſtrengthened, ſeek Medicines in the Chap. of *Want of Appetite*. If it come by conſent you muſt amend the parts ſending the Humours: their proper Chapters will furniſh you with means.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Of the Hiccough.

Ἄγγμὸς in Greek, and *Singultus* in Latine, in Engliſh *Hiccough*, is a depraved motion of the Stomach, by which it deſireth to expel ſomething which is hurtful. It is cauſed (according to *Hippocrates*) of Fulneſs or Emptineſs; ſometimes (ſaith *Galen*) Provocation. The matter cauſing the *Hiccough*, is either gathered in the Stomach, or is ſent from other Parts. Sharp Humours, Nouriſhment, or Medicines, or gnawing Worms in the Stomach, may cauſe Hiccough by propriety: It is cauſed by conſent, when the Liver, Spleen, Guts, or other Parts, being inflamed, ſend offenſive Vapors, or Water to the Stomach. A Tumor in the Liver (being inflamed) doth compreſs the ſtomach, and ſo provoke the expulſive Faculty; finally, ſharp Humors, ſent from all parts of the Body, in malignant Feavers may be the cauſe of the Hiccough. Diagnoſtick ſignes are, if the Diſeaſe come by Propriety, it is more laſting, and is eaſed by Vomit: the ſignes of the Humours in the Stomach, appear by the Taſt in the

Mouth, Belchings, &c. If it come from any other part of the Body, their proper Signs will declare it. Prognosticks are; if the *Hiccough* be caused by Meat, Drink, or Cold, it is not dangerous. But if it come in a malignant or great Feaver, and continue, it is deadly. The same you may judge, if the Hiccough accompanied with redness of the Eyes, in an acute Disease invade the Patient after Vomiting. *Singultus* from the inflammation of the Liver is also hurtful. For the cure, you must, (if the disease come from a cold cause,) First, administer medicines, which do cut and prepare the Humours, as Vinegar, and Oxymel of Squils, and Oxymel Simplex: then evacuate the Humours by Purge or Vomit, and then strengthen the Stomach: use the Medicines prescribed in the Chapter of *Want of Appetite*, coming of a cold Cause: if the Disease be violent, add these following: *Take of Castor and Mirrh, of each three Drams: Sal Gem, half an Ounce: Diagridium and Mastich, of each one dram: Agarick newly trochiscated three drams: Aloes, the weight of all the rest: with the juyce of Mints make them up into a Mass, and of one dram make six gelded Pills:* Let your Patient take two or three in the Morning. *Riverius.*

If Wind in the Stomach be the Cause: *Take of Dill-Seed, sweet Fennel and Annis-Seeds of each one ounce, Juniper Berries, half an ounce: Cloves, a dram: Macerate them in good wine, or Spirit of Wine, and distil it in Balneo.* If sharp and cholerick Humours be the cause of the Hiccough, you must give Oyl of Sweet Almonds, Ptisan Broth, Syrup of Apples and Quinces, and the Emulsion of the Colds Seeds: foment the Stomach with a Spunge dipt in Rose Water, or apply a cooling Ointment to the Stomach. Sneezing hath been attended with admirable success; Vomiting with little less, but have a care how you administer Vomits to weak People; Drinking of Milk from the Cow is much commended, and sometimes proves successful. Narcoticks sometimes effect the Cure by stupifying the too too Exquisite sense of the Stomach.

CHAP. XXXIX.

Of Vomiting.

Nausea, *Nausea*, and Ἔμετος *Vomiting*, differ onely in Degrees: the first is a Desire to vomit up, whatsoever troubles the Stomach, either in Quantity or Quality, but cannot, either by reason of the weakness of the Stomach, strength of the upper Orifice, or thickness or sliminess of the Matter. But Vomiting is a depraved motion of the Stomach, which shaketh it, by which the expulsive Faculty is stirred

ſtirred up, by contracting the Fibres of the Lower part, and looſening the Superior, and with violent motion caſteth forth the Matter contained therein, which was troubleſome to it. The Cauſes of Vomiting are external or internal, and is divided into Natural or Artificial: the Natural is either without or in a Diſeaſe, and thus divided, it is either Periodical, Critical, or Symptomatical, Periodical vomiting, is without a Diſeaſe, and is uſed by many twice in a year or oftener, to cleanſe the Stomach of the cholerick or phlegmatick Humours, and to prevent Diſeaſes. Critical vomiting is when Nature in a diſeaſe caſts forth her Enemy. Symptomatical vomiting, is when Nature is provoked and weakned, and is not eaſed by it, becauſe ſhe is not ſtrong enough utterly to expel it: the Matter vomited is either Excrements: as Phlegm, Choler, Melancholy, Water, Matter, Worms, and the like: or Nouriſhment, as Meat, Chylus, or Blood. Artificial Vomiting, is from an external Cauſe: as Compreſſion of the lower Belly, Stroaks, Falls, violent Exerciſe, Riding, Saying on the Sea, Poyſonous Air, or Breath, ſtinking Smells, or beholding ſome filthy thing. External Cauſes may provoke Nature, as Vomits taken; Some Nouriſhment is diſtaſtful to ſome ſtomachs, and cauſeth vomiting: *Hippocrates* reporteth that one eating Muſhroms died vomiting: Meats which are Fat and Oyly are præpoſterous to ſome Stomachs: Omitting Gluttony, which is many times the Cauſe. The whole Body in a Plethory: evil Habit, Feavers, and other Diſeaſes of the Body, may be the Cauſe: Inflammations or Obſtructions of other parts, as the Liver, Spleen, Myſentery, or Bowels, the Terms or Hemorrhoids ſtopped, a Catarrh, or the like may cauſe Vomiting. If Vomiting be cauſed by Humours offending the Stomach, or by an Organical diſeaſe therein, you may finde the ſigns thereof in the præceding Chapters of diſeaſes of the Stomach. If it come by Sympathy from other parts, their proper ſigns will inform. Make the *Prognoſtick* thus: Choler and Phlegm exquiſitely mingled and vomited up, is good. If the ſick vomit Critically, and caſt forth Choler in a cholerick Diſtemper, and phlegm in a phlegmatick, it is hopeful. Violent vomiting, and little brought up, in a Feaver is evil: for it ſhews abundance of matter, or that Nature is weak. Vomiting, after a Flux of the Belly is good, for there is a revulſion of the matter, and Nature is refreſhed. Vomiting of divers Colours is dangerous, becauſe Nature hath to do with divers Enemies. Green, blew, black, and ſtinking matter vomited, is deadly. In Feavers acute, if the Patient vomit without mixture of Humours, it is an evil ſign, becauſe that a pure Humour is not capable of Concoction. For the Cure: If the Diſeaſe come by conſent from other parts, remove the Cauſe by working their Cures. If phlegmatick, cholerick, or melancholy

melancholy Humors provoke the Stomach, caſt them forth by vomiting: prepare and cut them if they be tough and clammy. Give gentle Vomits, as warm Oyl: or white Vitriol prepared: or Salt of Vitriol made red by Calcination, for they cleanſe and diſſolve the glutinous Matter. If your Patient be weak and diſpoſed to Vomits, give often Clyſters or purge the Body with this or the like Pills. *Take de Aloe lota, three drams: yellow Myrobalans, and Rubarb in Powder, of each half a dram: red Sanders, and prepared Coral, of each one Scruple: with the Syrup of Roſes ſolutive, make them into a Maſs:* give a dram every other or third day: and if the Sick be weak, give but half ſo much. If the Vomiting be violent, give two Scruples and an half of *Cochie the leſs*, with three grains of *Laudanum* in the morning. Then you muſt ſtrengthen the Stomach with the Syrup or conſerve of Quinces, conſerve of Roſes, Maſtick in a ſmall quantity, Syrup of Mints, Plantane-water made ſour with Oyl of Vitriol, *&c.* All theſe ſtrengthen the Stomach and ſtay Vomiting, of which you may make Medicines in divers forms. Foment the Stomach with a ſpunge dipt in Plantane-water, Roſe-water, and Roſe-Vinegar. But firſt boil in the water an handful of Mints. Or apply this following Cataplaſm: *Take of Marmalade of Quinces, or Quinces boyled ſoft in Roſe-water, or Vinegar, four Ounces: the roots of Biſtort and Tormentil, of each two drams, Maſtick, Mace, and Nutmegs, of each two ſcruples: Sour Leaven half a pound: with the juyce of Mints and Vinegar make a Cataplaſm and apply it.* If your Patient vomit Blood: the Cauſes and Signes you may find in the 19 and 30 Chapt. and the Medicines preſcribed in the 30 Chapt. *Of ſpitting of Blood*: ordered by an able Head-piece, may perform the Cure.

CHAP. XL.

Of Cholera.

Χολέρα in Greek, and *Cholerica Paſſio* in Latine, is a Diſeaſe violently ſending forth by Vomit and Stool, ſharp and cholerick Humors: this Diſeaſe is a Symptome of the expulſive Faculty being hurt by Meats not well concocted, and if the retentive Faculty be alſo in fault, the Diſeaſe is the worſe and more violent. Some will have two ſorts of Choller, a moiſt and a dry; A moiſt is that which hath relation to what hath been ſaid. The dry is more rare, & cometh from a windy ſpirit, produced in the Stomach, by the fiery heat of the Part corrupting the Meat: or by Meats which are rank & windy, and this is the opinion of *Hippocrates* himſelf. *Sennertus* (from the

the Hermetical doctrine) addeth another cauſe, *viz.* Salt and aduſt Humours in the *Hypochondria*, which grow hot by the mixture of another Humour, and demonſtrateth it, by the mixing of Aqua fortis, and Oyl of Vitriol, with Salt of Tartar, which produce very flatuous Spirits. So that the immediate Cauſes of this Diſeaſe are Cholerick, Burnt, Sharp, Salt, or rotten Humours in the Stomach, Bowels, Spleen, Meſentery; or ſome Nouriſhment of an evil Quality, or ſome ſtrong Medicine, or Poyſon taken. The ſignes of this Diſeaſe are often and plentiful Evacuations of cholerick, ſharp and corrupted Humours, by Vomit and Stool: ſwelling with Wind, Thirſt, and a Gnawing of the Stomach and Guts: a Loathing, which is appeaſed a little with cold Drink which is ſoon after caſt up. The Pulſe is ſmall and unequal: Sweating, with Convulſion of the extream Parts & Swooning, and ſuch dangerous Symptomes. It is eaſily diſcovered whether the Cauſe come by ſome violent Medicine, Poyſon, or offenſive Diet. The internal Cauſes are known by the Quality of the Humours, that are objected. If there be a continual Loathing and Gnawing, the Diſeaſe is in the Stomach. If a malignant Feaver be joyned, it is in the Veins. If it hath its original from ſome evil Food, there is hopes, that when the Matter is caſt forth the Diſeaſe will end. If it be very violent, it is dangerous, (I had almoſt ſaid deſperate:) for the greater the Convulſions, Swoonings, and Coldneſs of the extream Parts be, the nearer is Death at hand.

In the beginning of the Cure, you may help forward Evacuations, with gentle, cooling, and cleanſing Clyſters, thus: *Take, of Milk, half a pint; Syrup of Violets, and Lettuce, of each one ounce: The Oyles of Roſes and Water Lillies, of each half an ounce; The yelks of two new laid Eggs well beaten, mix them and give it.* Or you may make a Clyſter with Chicken Broth or Oxycrate. It is good to open a Vein, by which means, the burnt and boyled Blood may be cooled, revelled, and aſſwaged: but do it with diſcretion, twice or thrice if the ſtrength be not impaired by the firſt. You muſt endavour to qualify the ſharpneſs of the Humours, thus: *Take, of the waters of Plantane Purſlane, and Mint of each, two Ounces; Syrup of Quinces and dried Roſes, of each one Ounce; Syrup of Vinegar, half an Ounce; mix them, and diſſolve therein two Scruples of Theriack Andromachi, and ſix drops of the Oyl of Vitriol: give now and then a Spoonful.* But if the Patient hath ſome eaſe, and the Symptomes abate, or appear not, beware leſt they ſuddenly return and deſtroy the Patient, as it ſometimes happeneth in this caſe. Therefore nouriſh him and ſtrengthen his Stomach with this reſtoring Opiate. *Take of the Gelly of Harts-horn made with Canary Wine, four Ounces: of the Conſerves of Roſes, Burrage, Bugloſs and Clove-gilliflowers, of each on Ounce: Confectio Alchermes, half an Ounce:*

Citron

Citron Barks, and Nutmegs candied, of each three drams; the essence of Cloves, Mace, Nutmegs and Cinnamon, of each three drops, with the Syrup of Clove-Gilliflowers make an Opiate: of which let the Patient take often the quantity of a Hazel-nut and more Mornings and Evenings. To conclude, the Medicines prescribed in the last Chapter against cholerick Vomitings, may be useful here.

CHAP. XLI.

Of Pain in the Stomach.

Dolor Ventriculi, or pain of the Stomach, is caused by naughty venemous and gnawing Humors contained therein: the Ancients made this distinction, *viz.* that if the upper Orifice of the Stomach, which is of exquisite sense, by reason of the great Nerve which it hath from the fifth Conjugation be affected; the pain is very sharp, which maketh the Heart (the most noble part, and near unto it) sensible of the same, from thence it is called *Cardialgia*. But if the Membranes of the Cavity, or lower Orifice (called *Pyloras*) be affected, it is called, *Dolor Ventriculi*, or *Colica Ventriculi*, especially if it comes of Wind. The cause of this Disease, is either Worms gnawing the Tunicles of the Stomach, or Wind lodged in the Cavity of the Stomach, which causeth swelling and painful distension, or sharp and malignant Humors therein contained; as salt Phlegm, green and black Choler, whose sharp vapours cause pain, corrupt matter from an Imposthume of the Liver or the Breast, Diseases of the Stomach and parts adjoyning, evil Humors from the whole Body in Feavers, Choler from the Liver, Melancholly from the Spleen, and salt Phlegm from the Head; all these may be the causes of this Evil. The external Causes may be evil, and corrupt Nourishment, or Meats that are too hot, that breed Wind or Choler; Meat taken in too great a quantity, Poyson, strong, sharp and deadly Medicines not well corrected. Diagnostick Signs are thus taken, when the pain is under the Ensiformis, it shews that the upper Orifice of the Stomach is affected; a very sharp pain, that the Patient cannot rest, and sometimes fainteth; the Vapours sometimes offend the Brain, and cause inveterate Head-ach, the Megrim, Vertigo and Epilepsy. In the other parts of the Stomach, there are not so violent Symptomes, but great pains like the Cholick: thus you may know the Causes. The Humors offending, may be known by the Excrements avoided at the Belly or Mouth; also Choler, Phlegm, Wind or Worms may be known by their proper signs. The Diseases of the Stomach or

parts

parts adjoyning, cauſing this Diſeaſe, may be known by their proper ſigns.

Prog. This Diſeaſe is more dangerous than any other Diſeaſe of the Stomach; the danger is greater, if a Feaver accompany it: if the extreme Parts be cold, Death is at hand, thus ſaith *Hippocrates*. It is leaſt dangerous if it proceed from Worms; yet ſometimes dangerous Symptoms appear, and the Patient dies; ſometimes if the cauſe of Wind cannot be removed, a dry Dropſie followeth. If it come from other parts, there begin your Cure; if it be in the Stomach properly, conſider the peccant Humour. If Wind be the Cauſe, firſt adminiſter a Clyſter, *Take of Chamomil, Penny-Royal, Mints, and Pellitory of the Wall, of each one handful; the ſeeds of Aniſe, Fennel, Cummin and Dill, of each two drams; make a decoction in white-Wine Poſſet-drink, add Benedicta Laxativa, half an ounce; the Oyls of Dill, Rue and Chamomil, of each half an ounce, the Chymical Oyl of Juniper-Berries, ten drops, make a Clyſter*, and give it or the like as often as need requireth. Make a Fomentation, with the Herbs and Seeds aforeſaid, or with others of the like nature; then anoint the Stomach with the Oyls of Sage and Cloves Chymical, Oyl of Dill, Chamomil, Rue, and the like. Then adminiſter this or the like Julep, which hath power to aſſwage pain, diſcuſs Wind, and ſtrengthen the Stomach: *Take of Wormwood, Penny-Royal, Century the leſs, and Agrimony, of each one handful; the Flowers of Chamomil, and Juniper-Berries, of each one ounce; the ſeeds of ſweet Fennel and Aniſe, of each two drams; Boyl them in a quart of white Wine, to the Conſumption of half, ſweeten it with the compound Syrups of Wormwood, and Betony, of each two ounces.* Let the Patient take a ſpoonful of this often, and ſix ſpoonfuls Night and Morning: this have I often proved with good ſucceſs, let the Cauſe be what it will. If the Diſeaſe be yet too ſtubborn to yield to ordinary Medicines, make a Bath of mollifying Herbs, and let the Patient ſit in it, giving inward diſcuſſing Medicines. In vehement pain, ſome do give a purge, and mix Narcoticks with it, to allay the pain, and this following is much commended by *Foreſtus*, *Take of Diaphœnicon, half an ounce; Philonium Romanum, two ſcruples, with Chamomil-water (in want thereof the Decoction) make a Potion.* If Choler cauſe pain, purge it, adminiſter Juleps cooling and thickning. Foment the Stomach, and apply a Cataplaſm, made of mollifying, cooling, and diſcuſſing Herbs and Seeds.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLII.

Of the Inflammation, Ulcer, and Impoſthume of the Stomach.

THe Inflammation of the Stomach, is a Tumor coming of Blood, ſent into the Stomach and its Membranes, from the *Vena porta*, by the ſmall Veins; which Blood is either pure and maketh a proper Phlegmon; or mixed with Choler and maketh an Eriſipelatous; or with Phlegm, making an Oedematous; or with Melancholly, making a Schirrhous Tumor. In a word, all things that may inflame the Blood, may be the Cauſe of this Tumor. Diagnoſtick ſigns are, Great pain, burning, pricking, diſtending, beating even to the back; you may ſee or feel the Tumor belching, and ſometimes vomiting of Blood, and the breath is fetched difficultly, and a burning Feaver. If it be only of Blood, it is ſomewhat gentler; but if it be with Choler, there are grievous Symptoms. But be careful to diſtinguiſh this Inflammation from that of the upperſide of the Liver, ſee the Chapter *Of the Inflammation of the Liver*: This Diſeaſe for the moſt part is deadly. If the Inflammation be in the upper part of the Stomach, or over the whole, or much loathing of the Stomach, or rumbling in the Belly; all theſe are deadly Symptoms. If the Inflammation kill not, & the Feaver and pain ceaſeth, and the Tumor remain, then it turns to an Impoſthume; which being broken, there remaineth an Ulcer, which is known by voiding of matter by Vomit and Stool. But an Ulcer may be bred in the Stomach from other Cauſes, as ſharp, ſalt, Cholerick Humors bred in the Stomach, or ſent thither from other parts; the breach of a Vein, which could not grow together again, a Wound not well cured, Poyſon, or corroding Medicines taken. The Signs of an Ulcer bred in the Stomach, are the ſame with the former; to which I add theſe, a conſtant lingring Feaver, ſtinking Belching, no Appetite, a pricking Pain and Burning when any thing is taken which is hot, cold, ſharp, ſalt or ſour. This Diſeaſe for the moſt part is deadly, becauſe Cleanſers encreaſe pain, and Driers cannot execute their Office, but are hindred by Meat, Drink and Chylus. The Cure of theſe Diſeaſes muſt be diverſly conſidered: purging is altogether prohibited, leſt more Humors be gathered to the Stomach, but give an emollient and cooling Clyſter every day, ſuch an one as is preſcribed in the laſt Chapter: you muſt let Blood in both Arms, as much as ſtrength will bear; bleed the Hæmorrhoids, if you ſee occaſion; cup and ſcarrifie the Shoulders, Back an Buttocks; rub and bind the extreme parts, and heat them with the Oyl of Spike, or Flower-de-luce, and the like. You muſt give

Medicines

Medicines which are altering and ſtrengthening, and with them mix ſuch which have power to diſſolve. This Julep is good, *Take of Barley-water well clarified, two ounces; Fennel and Purſlane water, of each one ounce; the Syrups of Water-Lillies and Violets, of each one ounce; the Syrup of Poppy half an ounce: Diamargariton frigidum, a dram, mix them, and make a Julep for three Doſes*; give it Morning, Noon, and Night. Foment the Stomach with the Decoction of cooling and mollifying Herbs, Roots and Flowers, and afterwards anoint it with Oyl of Roſes, Violets, and the like. Some commend Turpentine waſhed in Wormwood-water given in Pills three or four times, which will quickly diſſolve or maturate the Impoſthume.

If you find that the Impoſthume tend to ſuppuration, apply this Cataplaſm; *Take of the Roots of Cummin and Marſh-Mallows, of each one ounce; Chamomil, two handfuls; red Roſe leaves, a handful: boyl them well together, and then beat them in a ſtone Morter; then add of the Meal of Barley, Flax-ſeed and Fenugreek, of each one ounce, with Hens-Greaſe, and Oyl of Roſes and Chamomil alike quantity, ſufficient to make a Cataplaſm, which muſt be applied, and often removed.* When the Impoſthume is broken, cleanſe the Ulcer with new Milk and Sugar, or Hydromel, or *Take of Barley-water three ounces, Sugar of Roſes, and the Oyl of ſweet Almonds, of each one ounce; make a Julep, and give it.* The drinking of Mineral Water is good: Before you endeavour to heal it, you muſt endeavour to cleanſe the Stomach as well as the Ulcer. *Take of Caſſia, one ounce; powder of Rubarb, one ſcruple; diſſolve it in Whey, and drink it*: you may with this or the like Purgers (which attract not the Humors to the part) cleanſe the Stomach, as often as neceſſity requireth. Then foment the Stomach with the Decoction of Comphry-Roots, Quinces, Wormwood, Roſes, Pomegranate-flowers and Peels, Myrtles, Galls, Frankincenſe, Maſtick, and the like; then apply aſtringent Unguents, and Emplaiſters to the Stomach; and inwardly give Medicines of the ſame nature: *Take of the Conſerve of Roſes and Comphrey-roots, and of Marmalad of Quinces, of each ounce: Bolearmenick, Sanguis Draconis, Terra Sigillata, of each one dram; Gum Arabick, red Coral and Bloodſtone, of each half a dram; Hypociſtis, Sarcocol and Frankincenſe, of each one ſcruple; with Syrup of Comphrey, make an Opiate, a little of which let the Patient take often.* If his ſtomach loath the often uſe of one Medicine, let Troches be made of the powders and the Muſilage of Gum Traganth, or into any other form: How to make Troches, ſee the fourth Book. Give him for his Food, in the mean time, Chicken broth, and boil therein aſtringent Herbs, freſh Barley and China Root.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLIII.

Of the Chollick.

THe attractive and digestive Faculties are not only hurt, but the expulsive Faculty, which chiefly respects the Intestines, may also be defective, and cause many distempers in the Body, the first of which is the Chollick. This Disease took its Name from the part affected, which is the Gut, called by the Greek *Colon*, and the Disease Χωλικὴ, which is caused by excrementitious Matter retained too long, and by distending, pricking or corroding, causeth grievous pain. Sometimes it is caused through Crudities, bred by a cold Distemper of the Stomach and Intestines, which causeth Wind to afflict the Guts (being obstructed,) especially the Gut *Colon*: sometimes cold gross and phlegmatick Humors sticking to the Tunicles or Coats of the Guts, cause constriction, and divulsion, and a gnawing pain: also salt and sharp, chollerick and melancholly, sower Humors, by pricking, and twitching the Guts, cause pain. Here note, that if Wind or Humours remain onely in the Cavity of the Guts, they might be easily excluded, by evacuating, cleansing and carminative Medicines: but being (for the most part) fixed to the Coats of the Guts, they are not expelled without difficulty. There are other less usual Causes of the Chollick, *viz.* Tumors in the adjoyning parts, causing compressing of the Guts: Tumors and Inflammations in the Intestines, causing Narrowness; Knots of Worms, or Stones bred in the Guts, which stop them; sometimes a poysonous and malignant Matter engendreth a pestilent Chollick or Plague in the Guts. The external Causes are either a cold Air, which doth constringe the Belly; or an Air too hot, indurating the Excrements; Raw Fruit, Meats gross, and of hard Digestion; in a word, every thing which disturbeth the concoction of the Stomach, may here be taken for an External Cause. Diagnostick signs are, a very sharp pain sometimes moveable, sometimes in the Region of the Stomach, Liver, Spleen, Reins; sometimes above, and sometimes beneath the navel; oftentimes in the left side: so that by comparison of other signs, you must distinguish between this and the Spleen and Stone. The pain is like the boaring of an Auger, he vomiteth cholerick and phlegmatick Matter, if the Stomack consenteth. The pain is greater after Meat; the Belly (for the most part) is bound, that the Patient cannot so much as break Wind; when he voideth Excrements, they are windy, like Cow-dung, with Water on the top. The causes are also distinguished by their signs: If Phlegm be the cause, the pain is not so violent, the Sick

hath

hath uſed a phlegmatick Diet; but if Wind be joyned with it, the part ſeemeth as if it were boared through with a Wimble; the Urine is crude and white, yet ſometimes the violent pain enflameth the Spirits, and the Urine appeareth yellow or red: He is better for hot and the worſe for cold things. If cholerick Humors cauſe the Chollick, there is a violent pulling and pricking pain; the Urine is cholerick: a Diet breeding Choler went before; he is the worſe for hot Medicines; there is great Heat, Thirſt, and ſometimes a Feaver. If the Chollick proceed from Wind, there is a ſtretching pain, and the Belly ſwelleth, and the Wind rumbleth therein, he findeth eaſe when he breaketh it: If the Wind be in the Cavity, the pain is moveable, and encreaſeth and decreaſeth; if in the Coats of the Guts, the pain is fixed in reſpect of place, and conſtant. Prognoſtick ſigns are, if the Chollick be gentle, moveable, and the Belly ſoluble, it is eaſily cured: on the contrary, if the pain be great and fixed, the Belly bound, the Patient wanteth ſleep, vomiteth, and is troubled with cold Sweats, Hiccoughs, Doting, and coldneſs of the extream parts, it is alwayes dangerous, and (for the moſt part) deadly. An Epidemical and peſtilent Chollick is very dangerous; if it come of ſharp cholerick Humors, it degenerateth ſometimes into other worſe diſeaſes, as the Palſy, Falling-Sickneſs, and the Gout.

You muſt vary the Cure, according to the diverſity of Cauſes; if Phlegm and Wind be the cauſe, you muſt adminiſter an emollient, diſcuſſing and carminative Clyſter (ſee Chap. 41. *Of Pain in the Stomach*) three or four times in a day. Or make a decoction of emollient and carminative Herbs, and boyl therein three drams of Colloquintida: If two or three Clyſters provoke not to Stool, make uſe of this Suppoſitory; *Take of Honey ſodden, half an ounce; Hiera picra, one dram; Diacolo-Cynthidos, one ſcruple; ſalt Gem, half a ſcruple, mix them, and make a Suppoſitory.* It is not amiſs, if after all this, you purge the noxious Humors, mixing with your purge Narcoticks: See *Forreſtus* his Medicine preſcribed in the aforenamed Chapter. Or give an ounce and an half of Manna; of Oyl of ſweet Almonds newly drawn, two ounces; give it in Broth. Then you muſt foment, bathe, or anoint the Belly, (ſee the aforeſaid 41 Chapter) the bowels of a Wolf pulverized, and the white Dung of the ſame is much commended, if the Patient take a dram of White-wine. The Electuary of Bay-berries taken, as much as a Nutmeg, often eaſeth pain. This Medicine I have uſed with good ſucceſs: *Take of Pellitory of the wall, Mints, Parſly peart, of each one handful: the Roots of Fennel, Parſly, Marſhmallows and Butchers Broom, of each half a handful; Juniper-Berries one ounce, the Seeds of Anis, ſweet Fennel and Cummin, of each half an ounce; Bay-berries, three drams, bruiſe, ſlice,*

and powder them; infuſe them in White-wine twenty four hours, and diſtil it in Balneo: after ſufficient Evacuations, give one ounce. *Galen* much commendeth the Application of a Cupping-glaſs to the Navil, afterwards apply a Plaiſter of Tacamahacha. Alſo the decoction of Guajacum given for many days is good, and afterwards purge plegm, if there be occaſion. The cholerick Cholick is cured alſo by giving of emollient Clyſters, and ſuch as temper the Acrimony of the Humors: as the Decoction of Camomil, Violet-leaves, Endive; the Seeds of Fænugreek, Linſeed, Hens-greaſe, Gooſe-greaſe, Oyl of Roſes, Caſſia, and the like. Foment the Belly with an emollient and cooling Decoction, and anoint it with a Cataplaſm, made with the Meal of Linſeed, Fænugreek and Barley, boiled in Oyl of Camomil and Roſes. Cool the Liver outwardly by Epithems, and inwardly by Juleps made of Poppy, Lettuce, Succory, Endive, Sorrel, Violets, and the like: forget not to add a little ſpirit of Vitriol to your Juleps. If the pain be violent, uſe Narcoticks; afterwards purge the Humor with ſuch Medicines which purge gently or ſtrongly, according to the ſtrength of your Patient, and degree of his Diſtemper.

CHAP. XLIV.

Of the Iliack Paſſion.

THis Diſeaſe is called in Greek Εἰλεὸς in Latine *Iliaca Paſſio*, in Engliſh the *Iliack Paſſion*, from the Gut *Ilion*, which is chiefly affected in this Diſeaſe. But becauſe the other Guts are capable of the ſame, it is rather derived from Εἰλέω, which ſignifieth *to be rowled or girt about*, and therefore the Latines call it *Volvulus*, or *Convolvulus*. It is a præpoſterous motion of the Inteſtines, the Guts are obſtructed, nothing paſſeth downward; ſometimes the Excrements are brought up into the Stomach, and iſſue out at the mouth. The Inteſtines have a natural motion downwards, which is compared to the motion of Earth-worms, which move the parts of their Bodies ſucceſsfully; by which they carry the Fæces and Excrements downwards. The expulſive faculty of the Guts is ſometimes too vehemently ſtirred up, the paſſage being obſtructed, that by a violent motion the Excrementitious Matter is caſt upwards: ſo that not onely the Chylus and Excrements, but alſo Clyſters and Suppoſitories are violently ſnatched up and vomited. Any thing which cauſeth the obſtruction of the Guts, as hard dung long retained, groſs Vapours, Inflammations, Tumors, or the like, may be the cauſe of this Diſeaſe. Sometimes an Ulcer in the Guts may be the Cauſe, when Excre-

ments touch the part ulcerated ; it pricketh it ſo that the Faculty is provoked not to let ſo noxious a thing paſs, but driveth it upwards ; the other Guts by Sympathy aſſiſting, force it into the Stomach, which alſo by a Periſtatick inverted motion, caſteth it out by Vomit. The Diagnoſticks of this Diſeaſe, are partly common to thoſe of the Cholick, and partly proper or peculiar to it ſelf. Common ſigns are, the Belly bound and puffed up, pain in the Abdomen, loathing, vomiting, difficulty of Breathing and Piſſing, want of Reſt. The peculiar ſigns are, a violent Pain, great Diſtenſion, a hard Tumor in the Hypogaſtrium, nothing voided downwards, an irregular vomiting of Choler, Phlegm and Chylus, at laſt the Excrements are vomited up. The ſigns of the Cauſes are thus gathered ; If inflammation of the parts cauſe the Diſeaſe, it quickly cometh to the height, an intenſe Feaver, with vomiting as aforeſaid. If hard Dung in the Bowels be the cauſe, there went before Conſtriction of the Belly, it is of longer Continuance, the pain not ſo violent at firſt, nor the Feaver ſo great, if any. If Wind or Phlegm be the Cauſe, (for the moſt part) the Cholick preceded, and the ſigns thereof are laid down in the preceding Chapter. This Diſeaſe is dangerous more or leſs, according to the Cauſes and Symptoms ; that which is accompanied with the Strangury, or that irregular vomiting before-mentioned, (for the moſt part,) is deadly. If there be a remiſſion of Symptoms, and things taken at the mouth finde paſſage downwards, there is hopes of Recovery.

What belongs to the Cure of this Diſeaſe, muſt thus be conſidered, *viz.* If hard Dung obſtruct the paſſage, you muſt often inject emollient and laxative Clyſters, in the mean time give Medicines inwardly of the ſame Nature, mixing with them ſuch as ſtrengthen the Stomach and Vital parts ; having read thus far, you cannot be ignorant how to prepare them : by this means I cured one in this Condition, who went not to ſtool in ſixteen or eighteen dayes. You may likewiſe apply Fomentations, Liniments, and Cataplaſms of an emollient Nature to the Belly. If you find the Body flatuous and in much pain, adminiſter the Medicines preſcribed againſt the Cholick. If the Guts be inflamed, you muſt open a Vein, and draw as much blood as the ſtrength of the Sick will bear: Adminiſter cooling and emollient Clyſters, and other Medicines preſcribed in the 42 Chapter, for the inflammation of the Stomach. If he vomit not, give him warm Water and Oyl of Violets, for it is a good Revulſion. Let his Drink be Barley Water, and ſometimes give in a draught thereof two ounces of Oyl of ſweet Almonds, and if the pain be violent, uſe Narcoticks. Let him abſtain from Food, for it turns to no good Nouriſhment ; let him now and then take a ſpoonful of Broth,

and drink ſuch things as are before mentioned. If the Bowels fall into the Cods, and cauſe this Diſeaſe, you muſt foment the part with emollient Oyls, and relaxing Decoctions, giving emollient and carminative Clyſters, then let the Patient lye with his Heels higher than his Head, and gently thruſt them back, and keep them up with a Truſſe. If there be a Circumvolution, or Hoiſting of the Guts, *Hippocrates* preſcribeth this as the laſt Remedy, namely, to apply a pair of Bellows to the Fundament, and blow into the Belly, and afterwards to give an emollient Clyſter; this hath been proved by many able Phyſitians, and highly commended. Others have commended the taking of Quick-ſilver in a great Quantity, which hath cured when all other means have failed.

CHAP. XLV.

Of the Flux, Lientery, and Cœliack Paſſion.

Λειεντερία, Lientery is a Flux of the Belly, in which the Meat is quickly ſent through the Body undigeſted. Κοιλιακὴ, or the *Cœliack Paſſion* is, when the Meat comes forth crude and imperfectly digeſted: theſe two differ onely in degrees, and their Cures are the ſame. This Diſeaſe is not to be referred to concoction hurt onely, but to the Debility of the retentive Faculty, for the Meat is not long enough retained to be concocted; hence it appeareth, that the Diſeaſe cometh from a fault of the Stomach as well as the Guts. The Cauſes of this Diſeaſe are referred to three heads.

Firſt, a cold Diſtemper of the Stomach and Liver, which generateth flegmatick and glutinous Humors, which cover the wrinkles of the Stomach, that it cannot retain the Food. Though Retention be made by the aſtringing Quality, yet it operates by fit Inſtruments, *viz.* the Roughneſs of the inward Coat of the Stomach, which Roughneſs being taken away, and the wrinckles filled up by the Humours aforeſaid, the Retention is hurt, and the Meat ſlippeth away without Concoction.

Secondly, ſharp Humors prick and twitch the parts, by which the Stomach and Guts are provoked to ſend forth the Meat too ſoon.

Laſtly, in malignant Feavers, and other dangerous Diſeaſes, the retentive Faculty is weakned, and Nature being conquered degenerateth into a Lientery.

There is another Cauſe, peculiar to the Cœliack Paſſion, Namely, the Obſtruction of the Meſeraick Veins, which hinder the paſſage of the *Chilus* to the Liver, and therefore muſt of neceſſity be caſt forth

forth by the Belly. I need not lay down the Signs of this Diſeaſe, being obvious to the Eye. The Cauſes may be thus diſcovered. If it come from a cold Diſtemper, there are ſour Belchings, the Excrements are phlegmatick: If the humors flow from the head, the Excrements are frothy, and the Flux greater after Sleep, the ſigns of a Catarrh appear. If it come from Provocation, there is a Heat in the *Hypocondria*, ſharp and cholerick Excrements, great Thirſt, and a gnawing in the Stomach. Theſe Diſeaſes if they laſt long are very dangerous, becauſe Nature is deprived of her Nouriſhment, and the Body ſoon falleth into a Dropſie or Atrophy. If it follow other Diſeaſes, it is for the moſt part deadly. If the Diſeaſe hath its original from phlegmatick humors, covering the wrinkles of the Stomach, you muſt uſe thoſe Remedies propounded for the Cure of want of Appetite coming from a cold cauſe, with which, make uſe of thoſe things which are aſtringent to ſtay the Flux. Clyſters are of no great force, except the Flux be violent, in ſuch Caſes they muſt be aſtringent, ſuch as ſhall be preſcribed in the 47 Chapter of the *Flux Dyſentery*.

You muſt purge the peccant humors, and then ſtrengthen the Stomach with the Medicines preſcribed in the Cure of Want of Appetite: for which purpoſe *Amatus Luſitanus* highly commendeth th s following Opiate: *Take of Conſerve of Roſes ſix ounces; of the beſt Treacle ſix drams; Syrup of Quinces, ſufficient to make an Opiate*: give half an ounce in the morning, and faſt one hour. If this Flux come from Provocation by cholerick humors, do as you are taught in the Chapter of cholerick Vomiting, or you may uſe thoſe things preſcribed in the following Chapter of the Flux Diarrhæa. For that which comes from the Imbecility of the retentive Faculty, now and then give Clyſters made of Poſſet-drink, in which red Roſes have been boiled, and diſſolve Sugar therein, and the yelks of Eggs. Give inwardly ſtrengthning and aſtringent things, which are preſcribed in the following Chapter, and againſt cholerick vomiting. Anoint the Stomach and Belly with this following Oyntment: *Take of the Oyls of Maſtick, Wormwood, Mynts and Myrtles, of each two drams: the Powders of Cinnamon, Cloves, and Galingale, of each one ſcruple: the flowers of Pomegranates, and red Roſes, of each half a ſcruple; Wax ſufficient to make an Oyntment.* If this Diſeaſe depend upon the Obſtruction of the Meſeraick Veins, uſe the Remedies preſcribed for opening Obſtructions of the Liver.

CHAP. XLVI.

Of the Flux Diarrhœa.

Διάῤῥοια, *Diarrhœa* is a Flux of the Belly, or a great and copious ſending forth excrementitious humours; not of Food or Chylus, as in the Lientery or Cæliack Paſſion: nor of Blood, with Inflammation or Ulceration of the Inteſtines, as in the Dyſentery, which remaineth next to be ſpoken of.

The humors voided are either Cholerick, Flegmatick, Melancholick or Serous. The place from whence it comes, is either from the whole Body, or from the Brain, Stomach, Inteſtines, Liver, Spleen, Meſentery, Womb, and the like. The Cauſe is either Critical or Symptomatical; Internal or External. The Diſeaſe it ſelf is eaſily known, from what hath already been ſaid; the difference of the Matter and Humors ſent forth are manifeſt to the Senſes.

It is ſomewhat difficult to know from what part of the Body the Humors are ſent: If it come from the whole Body, there hath been ſome Diſeaſe which hath afflicted the whole Body, as *Cachexia*, *Leucophlegmatia*, a continual Feaver, or exceſſive Eating or Drinking. If it comes from the Head, the Excrements are froathy, and are voided more violent by Night than by Day, and there is ſome manifeſt Diſeaſe in the Head, as a Catarrh, Deafneſs, Lethargy, *&c.* If the fault be in the Stomach the Patient filled himſelf with Food apt to corrupt, or there be Signs of Concoction hurt, *viz.* If the humors be ſharp, colerick and ſtinking, the Concoction is hurt by a hot Diſtemper of the Stomach; and the expulſive Faculty laboureth to throw it out: If they be crude and phlegmatick, Concoction is hurt by a cold Diſtemper. If Worms in the Guts be the cauſe, their Signs ſeek in the Chapter of the Worms. If the Humours come from the Liver, they are cholerick, and there appeareth ſome Diſtemper of the Liver. If from the Spleen the Excrements are blackiſh and diſtempers of the Spleen and Hypocondria appear. If from the Meſentery, there is extention; but Humours there have their original from the Liver or Spleen. If from the Womb, there are the Symptoms of the Womb affected.

To the Prognoſtick: I ſay, the Flux of the Belly, which is Critical, that is eaſily endured, and is a benefit to the Patient, by which, Humours, which are burthenſome to Nature, are diſcharged, is good. On the contrary, if it be Symptomatical, painful, and weakning to Nature, it is evil. If the Excrements are thin, voided often with Pain, without Feeling when they are voided, or in an acute Diſeaſe,

all

all theſe are evil ſigns. If the Excrements voided be yellow as yelks of Eggs, green, black, blew, or of divers colours, it is evil. If this Flux afflict a Woman with Child, ſhe is in great danger of miſcarriage. If the Excrements begin to grow thicker, there is hopes of Recovery. If a Flux happeneth in the Dropſie, wherein the whole Body is affected, it cauſeth a Recovery: underſtand this where the Patient is young, ſtrong, and the Diſeaſe but begun; for if Nature be weakned by the long continuance of the Diſeaſe, and the Flux happen, the Diſeaſe and Life (hand in hand) go together.

For the Cure, If the Body abound with blood, open a Vein; if not, if the Patient hath a Feaver, it is good to let Blood. Then purge the humor offending with ſuch Purgers, that leave an Aſtringent quality behind them: If the Body be ſtrong, vomiting is good, for it revelleth and evacuateth the Matter of the Diſeaſe. Before and after purging, give cleanſing Clyſters; after the Body is ſufficiently emptied, give aſtringents; all which the next Chapter will furniſh you with. Inwardly, you may give aſtringent and ſtrengthening Medicines, preſcribed in the next Chapter. If your Patient be free from a Feaver, boyl new milk and ſcum off the Foam, and quench red hot Steel often in it, and let him drink thereof warm, which is a preſent remedy. Unripe Mulberries and Blackberries dried and beaten to powder, is good to ſtay this Flux. This Opiate is excellent; Take of the juyce of Quinces, Conſerve of Roſes, of each one ounce; *Sanguis Draconis*, *Terra Sigillata*, and fine Bole, of each one dram; Bloodſtone, and the Troches of Amber, of each half a dram; with Syrup of Comphrey, make an Opiate, and let the Patient take a little often. Take of the Powder of Rhubarb, one ounce, the Troches of Sanders, two drams, mix it, and give the Patient two drams twice a day; it evacuateth the matter and ſtrengtheneth the Bowels. Both the Syrup, Magiſtery, and Tincture of Coral availeth much; and the Decoction of Juniper-Berries in red Wine is no leſs effectual. If it continue long, and your Patient's ſtrength much decay, give Laudanum among your other Medicines. The Fume of Fleabane and Mullein taken through a hollow Chair is excellent. The Conſerve of Hips is good againſt a cholerick Flux, you may mix with it ſuch things which are aſtringent. I ſhall ſay no more of the Cure of this Diſeaſe, but refer you to the next Chapter. Only this, if the Diſeaſe come by conſent of other parts, ſeek the Cure in their proper Chapters.

CHAP. XLVII.

Of the Dyſentery, or Bloody Flux.

Δυσεντερία, is a bloody Looſneſs of the Belly, depending upon the Ulceration of the Inteſtines; but it is commonly taken for every Bloody Flux: the Latines call it *Tormina*, becauſe of the Torture the Patient endureth. *Galen* mentioneth four kinds of Fluxes, which he calleth *Dyſenteries*. The firſt is, when any uſual Evacuation of blood, as the Hemorrhoids, or at the Noſe, is omitted or impedited, or any part of the Body is hurt, and by that means the Blood is ſent to the Inteſtines, and voided by the Belly. The ſecond is, when watery Blood is voided by reaſon of the weakneſs of the Liver; of this I ſhall treat hereafter. The third is, when Blood mixed with Melancholy, and burnt by reaſon of long Retention in the Liver and Spleen, is evacuated and ſhineth. The laſt, and that which I am now to diſcourſe on, is, when Blood and Excrements are mixed together, and ſometimes alſo Matter is mixed therewith, and is evacuated with Torture to the Patient, by reaſon of Ulceration in the Gut; this is the proper Dyſentery. The internal Cauſes, are ſharp and ulcerating humors, yellow, green and black Choler; Salt Phlegm in the Head, bred by heat, or in the Belly by putrefaction, which being brought to the Guts, and ſticking to them, ulcerateth the part. The Cauſes external, are all things which make ſharp and evil humors, Meats which ſoon putrifie; Fruits which are ſoon rotten; all things unripe: The Air thus qualified; the Winter cold and dry, and the Spring very wet and full of South Winds, cauſe Dyſenteries in the Summer. Or if the Winter be wet and full of South Winds, and a dry Spring, and the North Winds blow much; ſuch a Seaſon produceth Dyſenteries. Sometimes the Aire is infected, and produceth a contagious and epidemical Dyſentery, which is ſo infectious that the Excrements of the Sick, being caſt into a Privy, infecteth all that ſit over it. The Diagnoſtick Signs are, often and bloody Evacuations, with pain in the Belly, Watching, Thirſting, Loathing of Meat, ſometimes a Feaver. if the ſmall Guts are affected, the pain is vehement like the pricking of Pins, becauſe they are of more exquiſite Senſe, they go not to Stool preſently after the pain, and the Blood is mixed with the Excrements. The contrary judge, if it be in the great Guts, the pain not ſo ſharp, they go to Stool preſently after, and the Blood ſwimmeth on the top of, or a little mixed with the Excrements. You may judge of the Humor cauſing this Diſeaſe, by the Colour of the Excrements, Age and Temperament of the Patient,

and

and ſeaſon of the year. Thus the *Prognoſticks* are made. Dyſenteries cauſed by black Choler are deadly, if it be not Critical, becauſe the Ulcer groweth cancerous: be ſure you judge aright between Melancholy and Blood congealed. If loathing of meat and a Feaver accompany it, it is dangerous. If pieces of Fleſh be voided it it deadly. Much Watching, great Thirſt, black, bloody, and ſtinking Stools without a mixture of Humors, Hiccough, Cholerick Vomitings, pain in the Liver and Midriff, are (for the moſt part) deadly Signs. If Choler or ſharp Diet be the cauſe of this Diſeaſe, it is eaſily cured; ſalt Phlegm is worſe, becauſe it ſticks longer to the Guts. If this Diſeaſe happen to one troubled with a diſeaſe in the Spleen, or the Gout, it is good (ſaith *Hippocrates*) becauſe the Matter is ſent forth: but this is rather a *Diarrhœa* than a *Dyſentery*:

To Cure, you muſt evacuate ſharp Humors, you muſt aſſwage Pain, cleanſe, conſolidate, and dry the Ulcer, and ſtop the Flux. To evacuate the humors, you muſt purge every ſecond third or fourth day according your to Patient's age, Strength, Seaſon of the year, and the like. Rubarb is exceeding good in this diſeaſe, given, a dram, or a dram and an half, or two drams: Or made into a Potion thus; Take of Liquoriſh ſcraped and ſliced, and Raiſins of the Sun, of each three drams; Tamarinds and yellow Myrabolans, of each two drams, boyl them in Barly and Plantane water to three ounces: in which ſtrained, infuſe a dram of Rubarb thin ſliced: then add one ounce of the Syrup of Roſes ſolutive, and make a Potion: if you think it not ſtrong enough, add of *Diacatholicon*, three drams; or you may give the Rubarb in powder, in the aforeſaid decoction. If the Dyſentery be accompanied with a Feaver, and Inflammation of the Bowels, open a Vein, and let the Patient bleed according to his ſtrength. Sometimes vomiting is profitable to revel the Humours, which fall from the Stomach to the Inteſtins; Omit not vomiting if you find the Stomach be very foul: Eſpecially if the Sick be inclinable to vomit, for then Nature dictates the right away, and ought to be imitated. In the mean while, you muſt give aſſwaging, mild and cleanſing Cliſters, afterwards glutinous and aſtringent, thus; *Take of the Roots of Marſhmallows, Butter-burr, of each one handful; Camomil Flowers, one Pugil; the ſeeds of Flax, and Fleabane, of each two drams: boyl them in Barly water, or Milk Chalybeated, or Mutton, Capon, or Sheeps Head Broth, to a pint; ſtrain it, and diſſolve therein the yelks of four Eggs well beaten, Oyl of Roſes, and Syrup of Quinces, of each one ounce, and make a Clyſter.* If the Ulcer want cleanſing, add Centaury and Wormwood to the former decoction: and to the ſtrained Liquor add Turpentine diſſolved in the yelk of an Egg, and the Chymical Oyl of Wax, of each one dram. When there is need of more binding

and

and glutinating, make a Cliſter thus: *Take of the Roots of Comphry, Tormentil, and Biſtort, of each one ounce; Plantane, Shepherds purſe, Knotgraſs, and Mouſe-ear, of each one handful; Pomegranate Flowers, Myrtles, Acron cups, and Cypreſs Nuts, of each one dram: parched Rice French Barley, and red Roſes, of each one Pugill: make a Decoction in Smiths water; to a pint of the ſtraining add of the Juyce of Plantane and Yarrow, of each one ounce, and the yelks of two roaſted Eggs.* Or, inſtead of the Juyces, you may add the Muſilage of Gum Tragacanth, made with Roſe or Plantane water, and the Suet of a Goat, of each one dram, which Emplaſtick Cliſters, as with a Plaiſter, cover the internal Superficies of the Guts, and preſerve the part from the gnawing of the Matter. All this while you muſt give internal Medicines of the ſame Nature, and the oftner, if the upper Guts are ulcerated. Firſt, to cleanſe, give Goats Milk; to glutinate, Cows Milk Chalybated, with it you may mix the Juyce of Plantane, Syrup of Comphry, Sugar of Roſes, the Troches of Amber, and the white Troches of Rhaſis. Let the Sick eat Rice boiled in Chalybated Milk: or the Mucilage of Gum Tragacanth and Arabick, drawn as before, in his Broth half a dram. The Body being well cleanſed, you may make an aſtringent Decoction to compleat the Cure: *Take of the Roots of Biſtort, Tormentil and Comphry, the leaves of Plantane, Yarrow, Shepherds purſe, Horſe-tayl, Mouſe-ear and Agrimony, of each one handful: the Seeds of Sorrel, Sumach, and Grape-ſtones of each one ounce, make a Decoction of four quarts of water, to the conſumption of half; Sweeten the ſtrained Liquor with the Syrup of Comphry, Quinces, dryed Roſes, Myrtles, or Coral.* From what hath been ſaid, there is light enough for the Ingenious to make Medicines in any form, to pleaſe the palate of his Patient, which I omit, being loth to be tedious; but leaſt I ſhould omit any thing neceſſary, make an Opiate thus; *Take of Conſerve of Roſes, and Quinces, of each one ounce; Conſerve of Comphry Roots half an ounce: Coral prepared, Sanguis Draconis, Bole-armenick, ſealed Earth, Acatia, Conſerve of Sloes, of each one dram: burnt Ivory and Spodium, of each one ſcruple, with any of the Syrups aforeſaid, ſufficient to make an Opiate,* and give the quantity of a Cheſnut Morning, Night, and Noon.

Narcoticks do Wonders, eſpecially if they be mixed with aſtringents and ſtrengthners: *Take of Conſerve of Roſes and Services, of each one dram: Confectio Alchermes half a ſcruple: Laudanum three grains, make a Bolus.* Anoint the Belly with the Oyls of Quinces, Mirtles, Roſes, Maſtich, Wormwood, and the like. The Oyntment called *Comitiſſa* is of wonderful Virtue.

I might here teach you to make Fomentations and Cataplaſms, for the purpoſe aforeſaid, of the aforenamed Simples; but ſeeing the Ingenious

Ingenious need it not, and the Ignorant deſerve it not, I ſhall ſave that labour, fearing my Book will ſwell to a greater Volume than I intended. What ever you do, remember to ſtrengthen the Liver, with Cataplaſms for that purpoſe made of Simples ſtrengthning the Liver. If the Dyſentery be Epidemical, and Malignant; Sudorifick medicines are of great force. As medicines made of Bezoar and Treacle-water: you muſt begin with Cordials, and proceed as you do in a malignant Feaver.

CHAP. XLVIII.

Of Tenaſmus.

TΕνασμὸς in Greek, and *Tenaſmus* in Latin, is a continual deſire to go to Stool, yet the Patient voideth nothing but Slime, and bloody Matter; it is cauſed by an Ulcer in the *Inteſtinum rectum*, or *Streight Gut*, from which filthy matter continually flowing provoketh the expulſive Faculty, hence followeth a continual deſire to go to Stool. This Diſeaſe properly belongeth to a Dyſentery; yet by cuſtom, when onely the ſtreight Gut is ulcerated, it is called *Tenaſmus*, therefore I ſhall not inſert the Cauſes, being the ſame with the former. For the Knowledge of this Diſeaſe, it is eaſie to diſtinguiſh between this and a Dyſentery. In a Tenaſmus, the deſire of going to Stool is continual; in the Dyſentery, by Fits onely. In the firſt (notwithſtanding all ſtraining) nothing is voided but Slime bloody or mattery; in the other, both Excrements and Humors are voided. (The ſigns of the Cauſes ſeek in the former Chapter.) *Tenaſmus* (for the moſt part) is eaſily cured, but is dangerous: If a melancholy humor be the cauſe, leſt it turn to an ulcerated Cancer; yet (for the moſt part) it is of long continuance, and very troubleſome. If a Woman with Child hath the Tenaſmus, it brings many Inconveniences to her, and great danger of Miſcarriage. *Hippocrates* ſaith, ſhe will Miſcarry; but I have known the contrary. True it is, a Woman ſeldom eſcapeth in that condition, for that Motion doth much diſturb the Womb; becauſe the ſame Muſcles which ſerve to caſt forth the Excrements, are employed for Delivery. If the Ulcer be near the Fundament or *Anus*, if it continue long, it turns to an incurable Fiſtula.

For the Cure, I ſhall refer you to the former Chapter, it being the ſame, both in the cauſes, and the part affected, of the ſame Nature with the other Inteſtines.

CHAP. XLIX.

Of the Flux of the Liver.

FLuxus Hepaticus, a Flux of the Liver is, when ſerous and bloody Humors are voided, much like water wherein Fleſh hath been waſhed: It is cauſed by an evil Diſpoſition, conſuming the Radical moiſture of the Liver, and deſtroyeth the natural heat thereof; this Diſpoſition cometh by burning and ſwooning Feavers, and by a hot Diſtemper of the Bowels; or by great Coldneſs, from abundance of Flegm and Melancholy which oppreſſeth the natural heat.

Outward Cauſes, are great draughts of cold Water, extraordinary eating of raw Sallets, poyſonons and too violent Purges, ſalt, ſharp and peppered Meats, which parch the ſubſtance of the Liver, may corrupt the natural heat. There is alſo a Baſtard Flux of the Liver, when the Radical moiſture is not in fault, nor the Faculty hurt, yet the Blood is impure and corrupt by the mixture of Choler, Melancholy, or ſome corrupt Matter; or by its ſtaying too long in the Liver, and the parts adjacent, by which it is made thick, burnt or rotten: or the Spleen is in default, and doth not ſuck away the droſſy blood. In this Baſtard Flux, thick and black blood, and ſometimes blood mixed with divers humors is voided. The Signes of this Diſeaſe may be gathered from what hath been ſaid, and it differeth from the Dyſentery in this, that the Stools are liquid, bloody and watry, and voided without pain. The Signes of the Cauſes muſt be conſidered: If this defect of the Liver come from a hot Diſtemper, there went before a burning Feaver, or a Feaver is preſent, green Vomits or Stools, Thirſt, Foulneſs of Body, and want of Appetite, ſtinking Evacuations. If from Cold, the Stools are not ſo ſtinking, nor is there Thirſt; the whole Body is colder and blewiſh. Moiſt and dry Cauſes produce contrary Effects; a moiſt Deſtemper cauſes more Stools and thin: a dry, fewer and thicker, and leſs in quantity, with much Thirſt. This Diſeaſe is very dangerous, becauſe a principal part is affected, and the Radical moiſture conſumed, which can ſcarcely be reſtored, and nothing but deſtruction to be hoped for: ſo much the more if the Diſeaſe come of heat. If it comes in Feavers, the whole Body melteth and putrifieth. If it come from a cold Cauſe, it laſteth the longer, and turns into an incurable Dropſie. Though a Baſtard Flux of the Liver be dangerous, yet it is far leſs than a true one, becauſe the Liver is ſound, and the Diſtemper may be taken away, if the humors which corrupt the blood be evacuated, in the Cure of this Diſeaſe, your main work is

to

to ſtrengthen the Liver, correct the Diſtemper, and ſtay the Flux. If it come from a cold Cauſe, deal with it as with a Dropſie. But if it come from a hot Cauſe (as for the moſt part it doth) you may gently evacuate the peccant humors with Rubarb, as you are taught in the Cure of the Dyſentery. Then you muſt give Medicines which ſtrengthen the Liver: *Take of the Roots of Succory, Sorrel, Bloodwort, and Monks-Rhubarb, of each one ounce, the Leaves of Plantane, Endive, Succory, Purſlane, Agrimony and Dandelion, of each one handful, Wormwood half a handful, red Sanders two drams, Coriander-ſeed prepared, a dram, red Roſes one Pugil, the ſhavings of Ivory and Spodium, of each a dram, boil them in a Barley-water to a quart, and in the ſtraining diſſolve of the Syrups of Quinces, Vinegar-ſimple and the dryed Roſes, of each two ounces, of the Oyl of Vitriol, as much as will make it moderately ſharp, and make a Julep for ſix Doſes, to be given Morning and Evening, firſt and laſt.* The Syrup of Mirtles, of Succory-ſimple or compound with Rubarb, the Syrup, Tincture or Magiſtery of Pearl is very good, and may be made uſe of as the former, or made into a Julep with Plantane, or other cooling Waters. The Liver of a Wolf is much commended, and it may be made into an Electuary, Opiate, or into any other form; with the aforenamed Ingredients. The tops of young Nettles boyled in Broth or Water are good, and the juyce taken is more powerful to ſtop the Flux and to purifie the blood. It is good to apply an Epitheme to the Region of the Liver, made of the aforenamed Ingredients, or as many of them as you think good. It is convenient that among your Medicines, which you give to ſtop the Flux, you adminiſter ſuch as are reſtorative, becauſe in this Diſeaſe the Body is much conſumed. *Riverius* much commendeth this diſtilled Water, and the truth is, it deſerveth commendation: *Take a fat Capon and a Partridge, pull and draw them, and fill their bellies with Succory, Agimony and Snails, of each one handful, Conſerve of Roſes three ounces, Plantane and Coriander-ſeeds prepared, of each two drams, Citron Mirabolans one dram, the leaves of Bloodwort half a handful, the Troches of Amber and Spodium, of each four Scruples, the powder of the Electuary de Gemmis, Triſantalon, and Diamargariton frigidum, of each one dram: ſprinkle them with Styptick Wine, and put them into the Fowls bellies, Boyl them in a Cloſe Veſſel in four pints of Water, till half be conſumed, then put them into a Glaſs-Limbeck with three ounces of good Wine, and diſtil them in Balneo:* Give a little of the Water often by it ſelf, or with other Medicines.

CHAP.

CHAP. L.

Of the Worms.

WOrms (for the moſt part) breed in the Guts, therefore I ſhall ſpeak of them here. *Galen* propounds three kinds of Worms, the firſt, are round and long, and are called *Teretes*, and are more common than the reſt, and are bred in the Guts, but do ſometimes get up into the Stomach. The ſecond are called *Aſcarides*, they are little and ſmall like threds, and they commonly lie in the lower part of the thick Inteſtines, and over againſt the Sphincture-muſcle. The third ſort are broad Worms and long, though ſeldom ſeen: ſometimes they are voided of an incredible length: they are bred of ſuch nouriſhment as eaſily putrified in the Stomach: hence it cometh to paſs that Children and ſuch as are gluttonous, who eat much Fruit and ſuch things as eaſily putrifie, eſpecially more being eaten before the former is digeſted, are troubled with Worms. The Signs of Wormes in the Guts are divers, not in all alike; a ſtinking and ſour Breath, Stools like Cow-dung, in colour gray like Potters-earth. Sometimes there is a continual Feaver, Heavineſs, Fainting, Loathing, Vomiting, unquenchable Thirſt, and ſometimes cold Sweats, an unequal Pulſe, the Cheeks are ſometimes red, ſometimes blew, the Eyes ſhine, the Noſe itcheth, the Teeth gnaſh, a dry Cough. There is pain in the Belly, ſometimes by Inflammation, and ſometimes by Diſtention, ſome ſtart in their ſleep. Sometimes the Body pineth, and the Patient hath an inſatiable Appetite, this a ſigne of flat Worms which eat up the Food. The *Aſcarides* are known by the itching of the Fundament, and the Excrements are many times full of them. Sometimes the eating away of the Gums is a ſigne of Wormes. Though to Children and older Folk Worms are common, and little feared, yet many and dangerous ſymptomes and Diſeaſes are bred by them. In the beginning of a Diſeaſe, it is evil for Worms to be voided alive or dead, eſpecially alone without Dung; if they be alive, they ſignifie great Crudity and want of Nouriſhment; if dead, great putrefaction, by which they are killed. In the declining of a Diſeaſe, Worms coming forth with the Excrements, is a good Signe. The cure of the Worms conſiſteth in giving Medicines to kill them, and to evacuate them being killed. The beſt way to kill them, or at leaſt to drive them to the lower Inteſtines, are theſe Simples which follow, *viz.* all the ſorts of Wormwood, Southernwood, Calamint, Dogs-Tooth, Centaury, Horehound, Dittany, Hyſſop, Rew, Savin, Peach-leaves, Coriander-ſeed, Harts-horn, Lupines, Mints, Garlick,

Garlick, Elecampane, and many other: Of theſe Simples may ſeveral forms of Medicines be compoſed, mixing with them ſuch things as purge, not onely to kill, but alſo carry away the cauſe of Worms, Rhubarb is much commended, becauſe it may ſafely be given, if a Feaver be preſent. *Take of Rhubarb one dram, yellow Sanders half a Scruple; infuſe them in Purſlane-water three Ounces, ſtrain them, and diſſolve the Powder of Rhubarb, and the Powder againſt the Worms (which you may have at the Apothecaries) of each one ſcruple, Syrup of Roſes one ounce; mix them, and make a Potion.* If the Feaver be not great, add Hiera Picra to your Potion, more or leſs, according to the ſtrength of your Patient, afterwards give a Clyſter, made of the Decoction of Liquoriſh, Raiſins, Figs or Chicken-broath ſweetned with Sugar and honey of Roſes; ſuch Clyſters are good to draw them down into the thick Guts. Afterwards give a Clyſter made after this manner: *Take of Wormwood, Southernwood, Centaury, of each one handful: Lupines half an ounce: the Seed of Wormwood and Coriander-ſeed prepared, of each two drams: In a half pint or pint of the ſtrained Liquor (according unto the age of the Patient) diſſolve one ounce or two of the Oyl of Wormwood and Salt, one dram and an half.* To bring them out being killed, add to the former Clyſter, Benedicta Laxativa, Hiera Picra and Caſſia newly drawn, of each three drams, or more if the Patient can bear it. *Rondeletius* doth highly commend Diacarthamum, and the Infuſion of Agarick in Oxymel, becauſe it not onely killeth Worms, but purgeth Flegm and corrupted Chyle, of which Worms breed and are nouriſhed: but this remember, they are not proper Remedies in Feavers. Therefore if the Sick hath a Feaver, you muſt be careful how you adminiſter hot Medicines; the like you muſt obſerve, if you adminiſter any thing to people of hot Natures. Women do commonly give Worm-ſeed to their Children for the Worms, mixed with ſweet things, which is a Medicine not to be deſpiſed. But leſt it ſhould hurt by its heat, infuſe it two hours in Vinegar, afterwards mix it with boyled Honey, and make an Opiate, which *Amatus Luſitanus* much commendeth. *Foreſtus* as highly commendeth burnt Harts-horn given with Raiſins. Aloes are much in uſe likewiſe, but the Pill de Aloe Roſata is much better, if half a dram be given at Night. The Juyce of Lemmons is good (if their be a Feaver) and a good Corrigent for hotter Medicines, If they have a hot Feaver, the Chymical Oyl of Juniper given one drop in Broath is excellent: and no leſs effectual is Spring-water, made ſharp with Oyl of Vitriol. Many (and thoſe very learned) Phyſicians have much commended quick-ſilver, who ſay, it may be taken in a moderate quantity with admirable ſucceſs, and without the leaſt danger to the Body; for *Dioſcorides* ſaith, that he killeth

killeth no otherwiſe but by tearing of the Guts with its great weight, therefore we fear not to give it in a ſmall quantity, becauſe its weight and roundneſs will eaſily carry it through the Body. of this opinion was *Mathiolus*, *Braſſavolus*, *Fallovius*, *Platerus*, *Fabricius*, *Hildanus*, *John Baptiſta Zappata*, *Baricellus*, *Sanctorius*, and many others, who extol the benefit of this Medicine to the Heavens for its Vertue, and ſay, they never found any inconvenience by it. Thoſe that dread the uſe of that, let them uſe *Mercurius Dulcis* well prepared; the Doſe for once taking, is from eight to ten Grains, for a Boy of ten years of age; it will be better if you mix of Diagridium, half the weight of the former, to carry it ſooner out of the Body, and to expel the Worms; if you give it to a Child younger, or to a weak Child, give it in a ſmaller quantity. Laſtly, you may make Topicks of what form you pleaſe, to apply to the Belly: *Take of the Oyls of wormwood, Mints and Bitter Almonds, of each one ounce, the juyce of wormwood and Rue, of each two ounces, wormſeed, Aloes and Elicampane in powder, of each one dram, Colloquintida ſix drams, of the Gall of an Oxe two or three ounces, with Wax, ſufficient to make an Unguent*; Or ſo much (if you pleaſe) as will make a Plaiſter, and apply it; if the Sick be looſe, leave out the Colloquintida.

CHAP. LI.

Of the immoderate Flux of the Hemorrhoids.

THough a moderate Flux of the Hemorrhoids be healthful, and preſerveth a man from many and dangerous Diſeaſes, *viz.* the Pleuriſie, Peripneumonia; Stone in the Kidneys, Madneſs, Melancholy, and from many other Diſeaſes; yet the immoderate Flux is very perillous, and brings many pernicious Diſeaſes, *viz.* Weakneſs of the whole Body, Coolneſs of the Bowels and Liver, an Atrophy, Cachexia, and Dropſie for want of natural heat, for by this Flux the blood is waſted, which is the Treaſure of Life, and Cheriſher of the whole Body. This Flux hath the ſame Cauſe that other Bleedings have, *viz.* Blood offending in quantity or quality: In quantity when plenty of blood is brought to the Hemorrhoid Veins, and dilateth and openeth the Orifices, or over-maſtereth the retentive Faculty, hence followeth a Flux. If the Blood offend in quantity, as ſharpneſs and thinneſs, it ſtirs up the expulſive Faculty, and ſendeth forth both good and bad blood. This Diſeaſe is known by weakneſs and a yellowiſh colour of the Body, coming upon a long Flux of the Hemorrhoids. If too much blood be the cauſe of the Flux, there went before

before Cauſes of increaſe of blood, and the beginning of the Flux was a refreſhment to the Patient, but the Flux continuing he grows weak: If the Flux came from ſharpneſs and thinneſs of the blood, there preceded Cauſes which breed Choler or ſharp water, the Body is of a cholerick conſtitution, the Blood floweth violently and is ſhining, whereas if it offend only in quantity, it is black and Melancholy. To perform the Cure, you muſt ſtanch or moderate the blood by revelling, deriving, thickning and aſtringing Means. Firſt, open a Vein in the Arm, and if the Patient hath not loſt much blood, but aboundeth therewith, draw blood plentifully; otherwiſe, draw little and often. Rub and bind the ſuperior parts, and Cup and Scarrifie the Shoulders that the blood may be revelled. By gentle Purges, derive the cholerick Humors, which make the blood ſo violent: Purge with ſuch things as have an aſtringent quality, as Rubarb, Myrabolans, Tamarinds ſuch as are preſcribed againſt Vomiting of blood, and bleeding at the Noſe. But beware leſt the Body be too much bound, leſt by ſtraining, the Veins will be more open; therefore after the uſe of Aſtringents, let the Patient eat ſharp French Prunes before and after Meat. Then you muſt give ſuch things as may thicken the Blood (have recourſe to the 19, 30, and 39. Chapters.) Laſtly, you muſt prepare aſtringent Fomentations and Unguents to be applied to the Hemorrhoid Veins: boyl Muſlein in Smiths-water, and foment; or you may add other Herbs of the ſame: Nature to it thus; *Take of the Roots of Biſtort half a pound, the leaves of Plantane, Muſlein, Shepherds-purſe, Bramble and Oak-leaves, of each two handfuls, Pomegranite-flowers and Peels, Galls and Sumach-berries, of each one handful, red Roſes, two Pugils, Myrtles half a dram, Allum one ounce, boyl them in three parts of Smiths-water, and one of red wine, and foment the part therewith*; But let it be moderately hot. Or with a greater quantity of the Simples, you may make a Bath for the Sick to ſit in, but let it not be hot. Or you may make an Oyntment with their Juyces and Bolearmonick, Terra Sigillata, Sanguis Draconis, Ceruſe, Vinegar, and ſuch like; Unguentum Comitiſſæ is good to anoint the Veins and the Back. The Dripping of an Eel is much commended. Or take the hairs of an Hare burnt, Spiders-Webs mixed with the White of an Egg, and apply it. Or touch the Vein with Oyl of Vitriol, and in a deſperate caſe with Aqua-fortis. If the Veins ſhould ulcerate, cleanſe the Ulcer as you are taught in divers places of this Treatiſe: But be ſure you conſider the ſtate of the Liver and Spleen; if they be hot or weak, cool and ſtrengthen them, as you are taught in their proper Chapters.

CHAP. LII.

Of the Pain of the Hemorrhoids.

THe Hemorrhoid Veins ſometimes do ſwell and cauſe very great pain; the cauſe of this differeth not from the former, for the blood offending in quantity or quality, and cannot open the ends of the Veins, cauſeth a Tumor or Inflammation. Theſe Tumors are ſometimes like Grapes, Mulberries, Warts, and ſometimes like Bladders: ſome are external, others internal. It is convenient that you make a diſtinction between the Hemorrhoids, and the Cleſts of the Fundament, which are like thoſe chops which are in the Lips, cauſed by ſharp Northerly winds: and the Tumor called Condiloma, which is in colour black, as the Hemorrhoids are in the Veins, and round. There is alſo in the Fundament ſometimes to be found a Carneus ſwelling, called Thymy, and ſometimes in the Privities of Men and Women, and they are like the Flowers of Thyme, they are little, white or reddiſh, without pain; the Hemorrhoids are for the moſt part black, greater and painful. The Piles are greater than the former, they are called *Fici*, they are blew and painful, are like the Hemorrhoids, onely they are a Carnous ſwelling, and the Hemorrhoids is a ſwelling of the Veins. The Piles are of a Malign quality, and do ſometimes ulcerate. The ſwelling of the Hemorrhoids is not dangerous, unleſs it be inflamed and Grangreen: Or if it ſuppurate and come to an Ulcer, and chance to turn to a Fiſtula, which may prove incurable. To cure, you muſt bleed, and make ſuch Revulſions, preſcribed in the former Chapter; likewiſe open the Saphæna: you muſt not uſe ſtrong Purges, leſt you draw more humors to the place, yet you muſt keep the Body ſoluble, leſt the voiding of hard Dung greatly encreaſe pain, keep the Body ſoluble by this or the like Medicine: *Take of the Leaves of Lettuce, Burrage, Bugloſs and Mallows, of each one handful, Polypody of the Oak three ounces, Liquoriſh, Raiſins ſtoned, and Currans, of each half an ounce, Bugloſs, Burrage and Violet-flowers, of each one Pugil; Boil it in running water to a pint and an half, ſtrain it, and infuſe therein an ounce of Senna (the Liquor being kept hot) ſix hours; then put in of Caſſia newly drawn, one ounce, and let it ſtand an hour, ſtrain it, and clariſie it, and ſweeten it with two ounces of Syrup of Violets, make four Potions thereof, and give it twice a day firſt and laſt.* Then you muſt apply ſuch things to them which have power to eaſe pain, *viz.* the Oyl of Peach-kernels, ſweet Almonds, Nuts Eggs, Box; or Oyls of the Seeds of Poppy or Henbane. Of theſe may divers Liniments be made good to appeaſe pain,

pain, diſcuſs the Tumor, and to dry the Ulcers: *Take of the Oyl of Eggs (made in a leaden Mortar) the Oyl of Violets and Roſes, of each one ounce, Populeon half an ounce, the Oyl of Box two Scruples, with Hens-greaſe and Goats-Suet, ſufficient to make a Liniment, and apply it: or take of the juyce of Purſlane and Honey, of each two ounces, white Diachylon mollified with the Oyl of Chamomel, two ounces, Opium ſix grains, make an Unguent.* *Horſtius* commendeth wild Flax made into an Oyntment with Hogs-greaſe: to diſcuſs the Tumor, the Balſom of Sulphur is much commended, or this Cataplaſm is good. Take of Plantane, Pilewort and Mallows, of each a like quantity; make a Decoction in Milk till the Liquor be half waſted, ſtrain out the Herbs, and make a Cataplaſm with the Crums of White bread, adding to it the Oyl of Violets, Roſes, Myrtles, and the like. Or a Cataplaſm made of the heads of Leeks, is much commended. Green Elder-leaves boyled to ſlime and applied, and often renewed, are very good: the Lungs of a ſheep or Goat taken hot, and ſome ſlices thereof applied, or if the ſick ſit upon them, it oftentimes proveth effectual. If you ſee good, you may make a Fomentation with Mullein, Mallows, Marſh-Mallows, Pellitory of the Wall, Flax and Fenugreek ſeed in Milk, Water or Oyl, or all of them; or with a great quantity make a Bath: Or a Fume made of the Powder of Darnel, Mullein, Pilewort dried and thrown upon hot coals, and the fume received: the Decoction of Yarrow, Mullein and Pilewort, is a good Medicine to take inwardly, or a Syrup made of their Juyces againſt both Hemorrhoids and Piles: If they will not open, bleed them with Leeches, or rub them till they bleed: If the Piles be ulcerated, the Balſom of Sulphur, the Oyl of Eggs ſtirred in a leaden Mortar, is good to cleanſe them. To conclude, thoſe that are ſubject to theſe Diſtempers ought to have an Iſſue in the Leg.

CHAP. LIII.

Of a hot Diſtemper of the Liver.

A Hot Diſtemper of the Liver is either with or without Matter, but for the moſt part, a hot Diſtemper of the Liver doth produce hot and cholerick humors: It is called in Greek *Συνοχωκία*, it is cauſed either by hot weather, violent exerciſe, anger, or ſuch like paſſions of the Minde: hot or ſpiced nouriſhment, drinking much Wine, or any thing that is naturally hot. This Diſtemper is known by loathing of Meat, the Body Coſtive and hot, eſpecially the Palms of the Hands, and Soles of the Feet, the whole Body grow-

eth lean; a bitterneſs of the Mouth, and for the moſt part a Feaver; if there be plenty of humors, the Patient vomiteth, or evacuateth downwards Choler; he is the worſe for hot, and the better for cold things: this Diſtemper though not very dangerous in it ſelf, yet may be the cauſe of many Diſeaſes; it is hard to cure it if the Stomach be cold, becauſe what you give to cool the Liver, increaſeth the diſtemper of the Stomach. To cure it, you muſt cool the Liver and evacuate Choler. Firſt, Give a laxative and cooling Clyſter, then open the Liver-Vein in the right Arm, and draw as much blood as the Patients ſtrength will well bear, either at once at or ſeveral times: then make an Apozeme to purge Choler thus; *Take the Roots of yellow Docks, or Munks Rubarb, Sorrel, Succory, and Licoris, of each one ounce, the Leaves of Endive, Succory, Fumitory, Dandelion and Burrage, of each one handful, of the great cold Seeds, of each three drams, of the Cordial-flowers, of each one Pugil, Tamarinds one Ounce, boyl them to a pint and an half, then add to infuſe of Rubarb and Senna, of each half an ounce, Syrup of Succory, with Rubarb and Roſes Solutive, added at the laſt, of each one ounce, and clarifie it, aromatize it with two drams of yellow Sanders.* Let the Patient take it four Mornings: let his ordinary Drink be Barley-water, and put therein the Syrup of Lemmons or Maiden-hair; or if he delight in things that are ſharper, make it ſharp with the Spirit of Sulphur or Vitriol. Whey likewiſe is very good, it is beſt if it be made by turning the Milk with Vinegar, or the juyce of Lemmons, and add ſuch things as I adviſed for the Barley-water. Likewiſe you may prepare Juleps to cool the Liver: *Take the Waters of Endive, Succory, Sorrel and Bugloſs, of each one ounce, the Syrups of Lemmons, ſweet Apples and Pomegranates, of each one ounce, of the Syrup of Coral compound, half an ounce, the Oyl of Vitriol ten drops, mix them, and make a Julep for four Doſes:* Or, *Take of the Conſerve of the Flowers of Bugloſs, Violets and Succory, of each one ounce, the Conſerve of Hips one ounce and an half, with Syrup of Lemmons make an Opiate, and take a little often.* Likewiſe you may make a Decoction of China and Hepatick Herbs, ſweetning it with the aforenamed Syrups, and taking half a Pint in the Morning. Likewiſe of the aforenamed cooling Herbs, you may make an Apozeme to cool the Liver, or you may make a Bath to cool and moiſten the Body.

CHAP. LIV.

Of the Inflammation of the Liver.

THe Inflammation of the Liver is a hot Tumor occaſioned by Blood, out of its proper Veſſels, ſent into the ſubſtance of the Liver: this Tumor ariſeth either from pure Blood, or elſe the blood is mixed with Choler, Flegm or Melancholy, ſo producing either a true Eryſipelous, Oedematous or Schirrous Phlegmon. This Tumor is ſometimes in the gibbous, or hollow part of the Liver. The Cauſes of this Diſeaſe are too much blood, or the heat, thinneſs or ſharpneſs thereof, and by its motion in the Veins it is ſometimes thrown into the Liver: For, the Liver being hot and in pain doth attract the humors to its ſelf; or by its weakneſs, is forced to receive the burden that ſtronger parts lay upon it, according to the Proverb, *The weakeſt go to the wall.* Sometimes an obſtruction of the Liver, by retaining the thick humours, which by a preternatural heat is inflamed. The external Cauſes are the ſame, which cauſe heat of the Liver: To which adds a ſtroke or fall, bruiſing the Liver, or Medicines applied to a cold Stomach, or a Cupping-glaſs faſtned to the Region of the Liver. The ſigns of the Diſeaſe, are heavineſs in the right Hypocondrion, a weighty pain ſometimes extending it ſelf to the Throat, and ſometimes to the lower Ribs, a Feaver more or leſs violent according to the nature of the Humour offending, *viz.* Choler or Flegm, and difficulty of breathing, becauſe the motion of the Diaphragma is hindred; a dry Cough, an unequal Pulſe and like a Saw, the Tongue at the beginning red, afterwards black, great thirſt, loathing of Meat, vomiting Choler, and ſometimes Flegm, a pale and yellowiſh colour of the whole Body, red and flaming urine, the Sick hath more eaſe lying upon his back, than upon either ſide; for the moſt part he is Coſtive, becauſe the heat of the Liver drieth up the moiſture of the Chylus; but if the Liver be weak alſo, the ſick is looſe, and the Excrements are like water wherein fleſh hath been waſhed. If the gibbous part of the Liver be affected, you may feel the Tumor in the right Hypocondrion, the breath is fetched with difficulty, and the pain reacheth to the right ſide of the Throat. If the cavity of the Liver be affected, the Tumor is not felt, but becauſe that part lieth upon the Stomach, there is greater loathing of Meat, vomiting, Thirſt, and ſometimes looſneſs of the Belly, by reaſon of the corruption which the diſtemper of the Liver cauſeth in the Stomach. The Signs of the Cauſes are thus known, if the Inflamma-

tion be of blood onely, the face is either red or duskish, the Pulse is great and soft, the Urine is red and thick, the Body is full of flesh, and there is sweetness in the mouth; and for the most part the Patient is young and hath fed high. If Choler cause the Inflammation, the Face is yellow, the Pulse is swift, hard and unequal, the Urine thin and yellow, the Body thin, the Eyes hollow, a bitter taste in the Mouth, and Cholerick vomiting. The Symptomes of the Inflammation of the Abdomen differ little from them of the Inflammation of the Liver, therefore let us a little consider the difference: If the Muscles of the Abdomen be inflamed, the skin is extended, and if you lay hold of it, you cannot move it, but if the Liver be inflamed, if you lay hold on the Muscles, they yield, and the Tumor appeareth deeper. If these Muscles be inflamed, the colour appeareth fresh, and in its natural colour; but if the Liver be inflamed, the colour is yellow as in the Jaundise, you must likewise distinguish between the Inflammation of the Liver and a Pleurisie. Sometimes moist and bloody Stools distinguish it: in the Pleurisie the pain will be vehement, and great towards the right Hypocondria, no change of colour, the Cough great and dry, with bloody-spittle for the most part, the Pulse hard and like a Saw: the inflammation of the Liver is manifested by the signs laid down before. If the Mesentery be inflamed, the Tumor appeareth beneath the region of the Liver, the Stools will be thin and moist, with unconcocted matter; if the party recover, the matter quickly is concocted, the colour dangerous, for the most altered.

Prog. Every Inflammation of the Liver is dangerous, for the most part deadly; if the Patient be not cured, or killed presently, the Disease ends in a Dropsie, Atrophy or Consumption. If Choler be the cause of the Inflammation, it is worse then if blood were the Cause, and the Feaver is stronger. The Hiccough in this Distemper is a very evil sign, for it shews the greater Malignity of the Inflammation, which doth disturb the Stomach. A Flux joyned with it, unless it be critical and the humors evacuated, concocted is deadly. To cure it, follow the Rules prescribed in the Forty second Chapter. *Of the Inflammation of the Stomach.* Let his Drink be Barley-water, with a little Syrup of Violets. If the Disease be stubborn to the former Medicines prescribed in the Forty second Chapter, and this following Apozeme: *Take of the Roots of Smallage, Fennel and Parsley, of each two ounces, the leaves of Agrimony, Violets, Succory and Maiden-hair, of each one handful, Polypody of the Oak four ounces, Chamomel-flowers one Ounce, the Seeds of Fennel, Gromwel and Parsley, of each one dram; boyl it to a pint and a half, and in the strained Liquor infuse an ounce of Senna, and three drams of Rubarb; afterwards add of Syrup of Violets*

lets and Vinegar ſimple, of each two ounces : Divide it into four Doſes, and let the Sick take every other Morning : then make an Epithem, Liniment, Unguent or Plaiſter thus ; *Take of the Juyce of Endive, Succory, Sorrel and Plantane, of each half an ounce, of the Oyles of Roſes, Wormwood, Camomel and Myrtles, of each one ounce, Vinegar half an ounce, boyl it to the conſumption of the Juyces, then add of the three Sanders in powder, of each one Scruple, with Wax ſufficient make an Unguent, and anoint the Region of the Liver.* If the pain and Feaver decreaſeth, you muſt add to the former Oyntment ſuch things as diſſolve & mollifie, as well as cool : as the Flowers of Camomel and Melilot, Barley-meal, the Roots of Marſh-mallows, Calamus Aromaticus and Cypreſs, the Leaves of Mallows, Violets and Agrimony, the Seeds of Annile, Fennel, Fenugreek and Flax. Or with theſe Simples you may make a Fomentation.

If the Inflammation be not diſcuſſed, as it ſeldom can, it tends to Suppuration, otherwiſe to a Gangreen. The Impoſthume for the moſt part is compleat in twenty days, it is very dangerous, and few eſcape thereof : but if it be little, and onely in one part of the Liver, and the Matter white which comes forth by Urine and Stool, the Sick eſcapeth ; if it be in the outward part of the Liver, it may be opened by an actual Cautery, and if the Matter which cometh forth be white, the Patient eſcapeth. After an Impoſthume is broken, there remaineth an Ulcer, if the Patient continueth, the Ulcer is hard to cure, and bringeth the Patient into a Dropſie or Mariſmus. But ſometimes ſharp, cholerick and corroding humours in the Liver produce an Ulcer without inflammation : This Ulcer is diſcovered by the ſigns following ; pain in the right Hypocondrion, mattery and bloody Stools, and pain in the Bowels as in the Dyſentery ; onely here the weight and pricking about the Liver maketh a diſtinction : ſometimes pieces of the Liver have been voided by Stool : If the outward part of the liver be ulcerated, the Urine is mattery, without any diſeaſe in the Bladder or Reins : the colour is yellow, ſometimes ſmall Pimples in the face, a ſtinking Breath, loathing Fleſh, and the Sick fainteth often. An Ulcer in the Liver is accompanied (for the moſt part) with an Hectick Feaver ; for the moſt part death lodgeth not far from it : that which followeth an Impoſthume and Inflammation is more dangerous than the other. If it tends to Suppuration, it is hardly cured, yet you muſt proceed thus ; *Take of the Emplaiſter of Diachilon magnum, and Melilot, of each one ounce, Gum Ammoniacum diſſolved in Vinegar half an ounce, Oyl of Wormwood and Wax, make a Plaiſter and ſpread it upon Leather in the form of an half Moon, and apply it to the region of the Liver.* Make uſe alſo of mollifying Cataplaſms. Give inwardly Chicken-broath, and boyl therein

Marſh and common Mallows, Figgs, *&c.* When the Impoſthume is broken, make uſe of the Medicines preſcribed for the cure of an Ulcer in the Stomach, give him to drink Whey, or Barley-water and Honey of Roſes: If the Suppuration be outwardly and after the opening thereof, the Matter is filthy, red and ſtinking, Death muſt perfect the Cure; but if the Matter evacuated be white and concocted, there is hopes of recovery.

CHAP. LV.

Of the Obſtruction of the Liver.

Ἔμφραξις, or the obſtruction of the Liver, is a Diſeaſe Organical, a preternatural ſtraitneſs of the Branches of the *Vena Porta*, and *Vena Cava*, as alſo the whole ſubſtance of the Liver, which hinders the diſtribution of Blood and Nouriſhment, by reaſon of a preternatural Humor which ſhutteth up the paſſages. The quantity or quality of the Humours may be the cauſe of Obſtruction: plenty of Humors cauſe Obſtruction in the Cavity of the Veſſels, which by fulneſs are ſo diſtended that they cannot contract themſelves to ſend forth the Matter. The quality of the Humors is groſs, tough and clammy Excrements ſticking to the paſſages, and are more thickned by the heat of the part, *viz.* Flegm, which eaſily groweth thick and clammy; Melancholy which is cold, thick and droſſy: Choler ſtaying long in the Liver, grows thick, and ſometimes the thickneſs of the Blood may cauſe Obſtruction, ſometimes groſs Vapours may cauſe Obſtruction, as in the Cholick. All things which make thick and clammy humours, as a cloudy and thick Air; Meats that are aſtringent, cold, of groſs juyce, hard of Concoction, being immoderately eaten, or more eaten than the Conſtitution of the Body can well diſpenſe with, as Beef, Bacon, Pork, and Fiſh dried in the Smoak; Cheeſe, Peaſe, Beans, *&c.* Pears, Quinces, Medlars, Services and Muſhroms; Bread not well baked, muddy Ale, and aſtringent Wine. A cold diſtemper of the Liver, which cannot well concoct the Chylus, but turns it into a ſalt, tartarous and mucilaginous Matter, may be the cauſe of Obſtruction. Diſtempers of the Stomach, by reaſon of which it cannot well concoct, but beget crude Chyle, which the Liver cannot well order, may be the cauſe.

Diag. In this Diſtemper the Excrements are not natural, but are moiſt, white, chylous or bloody; the Urine white, thin and watry; when the Patient walketh faſt, or up a Hill, he breatheth with difficulty, the Face pale, the whole Body lean and dull: a Senſe of weight

in

in the Hypochondria, eſpecially after Meat, and though the ſick hath eat Meat light, and little in quantity, yet he ſeemeth as if he had overgorged himſelf. Sometimes the Hypocondria is extended, and a dry Cough. The Cauſes are thus known; If the Pain be heavy, extended and fixed, groſs Humors are the cauſe; ſharper pains and more moveable declare wind: If cold Humors be the Cauſe, there is more weight, the Face is pale, no Thirſt nor Feaver; a thick and cold Diet preceded: the contrary ſigns declare hot Humors to be the cauſe, Choler maketh the Face yellow and blood-red.

Prog. An Obſtuction newly begun may be eaſily cured, but an old, hardly. If the Obſtruction of the Liver be not removed, it breeds many dangerous diſeaſes: In a word, It may be called the Mother of all diſeaſes. That which comes of crude and flegmatick Humors is worſe than that which comes of wind.

You muſt begin the Cure with univerſal Evacuations, ſuitable to the nature of the diſeaſe, the ſtrength and conſtitution of the Patient. If Blood abound, open the Liver-vein, but beware leſt you cool the Body too much: then you muſt make opening Broths thus; *Take of the roots of Smallage, Parſly, Fennel, and Aſparagus, of each one ounce, Agrimony, Maiden-hair, and Polypody of the Oak, of each one handful, the ſeeds of Annis, Parſly and Fennel, of each one dram, boyl them in Chicken or Mutton-broth, and ſtrain it:* Every Morning give the Sick a Porrenger full, diſſolving firſt therein Cream of Tartar one dram, Salt of Wormwood and Tamariſk, of each half a ſcruple: Or every other day infuſe in his Broth half an ounce of Senna, and give it as before. Baths and Fomentations made of ſoftning and opening things are good; *Take of the Roots of Marſh-mallows, Lillies, and Briony, of each two ounces, the middle Rind of Tamariſk, the Bark of Caper-roots, the Roots of Sea-holly, Cypreſs and dwarf-Elder, of each one ounce, the leaves of Marſh and common Mallows, Camomel, Mints, Germander, Fenireyal, Violets, and Wormwood, of each one handful, the Seed of Flax, Fenugreek and Juniper-Berries, of each one ounce, the Flowers of Broom, Elder, Camomel and Melilot, of each one handful, boyl them in Chalybiated water, and (if you pleaſe) add one part of White-wine, and foment the Region of the Liver; or with a greater quantity make a Bath.* Your wit (if you have any) will teach you how to make Unguents, of the ſame Ingredients to anoint the part after fomenting. It is good to have in readineſs an Opiate that openeth Obſtructions, ſtrengtheneth the Stomach, Liver and other parts; *Take of the Conſerve of Wormwood two ounces: the root of Elicampane, and Citron Pills candied, of each one ounce, Candied Nutmegs half an ounce, one Myrabolan candied, Confectio Alchermes two drams, Diarrhodon Abbatis one dram, Salt of Wormwood and Tamariſk, of each one Scruple, Saffron,*

Saffron and Amber greece, of each half a ſcruple, with Syrup of the five opening Roots make an Opiate; Of which let the Patient take the quantity of a Walnut every Morning.

In this caſe ſteel-Medicines are of excellent uſe, and well approved of by *Galeniſts* as well as *Paracelſians*: ſometimes the powder may be given alone, or of it may be made ſeveral ſorts of medicines, as ſteel-wine, Syrups, Opiats, Pills and Lozenges. Some infuſe it in white Wine or Claret, and drink thereof: many wayes are ſteeled-Wines prepared, I ſhall onely preſcribed that which my ſelf have found effectual, and leave every man to his liberty to prepare it as he ſees good. *Take the powder of Steel prepared with Vinegar, three ounces: the Roots of Dwarf-Elder, two ounces; the Root of Elicampane and Sea-Holly, of each one ounce: the yellow Sanders and Epithimum, of each one ounce: the Flowers of Chamomil, Broom and Roſemary, of each half an ounce: (it will not be worſe if you add two ounces of Senna, and half an ounce of Rubarb) the beſt white-wine, three Quarts: Let them infuſe in a Bath twelve dayes, twice a day you muſt ſhake them*: Let the Patient take two or three ounces every morning as long as need requireth. Likewiſe may Pills, Opiates, and Syrups be prepared of the infuſion and extract of Steel. But this remember, That after all medicines made of Steel, muſt much Exerciſe be uſed, to make the ſtrength of the medicine to go to the parts obſtructed. *Quercetan* commendeth the compound powder of Aron to open Obſtructions: two drams taken in a morning in ſome convenient Liquor, for ſeveral dayes: *See the Fourth Book.* But of all medicines, to open Obſtructions, thoſe made of Vitriol, Tartar, and Steel claim the preheminence; if Doctor *Dunce* have not the adminiſtring thereof.

CHAP. LVI.

Of the Schirrhus of the Liver.

THis Diſeaſe is a hard Tumor in the Liver without Pain: it is either perfect or imperfect; the perfect is without Pain or Senſe: that which is imperfect hath ſome pain. This is bred by crude, viſcous and clammy Humors ſent from other paats, or bred in the Liver by evil concoction. The imperfect Schirrus is cauſed by immoderate uſe of diſcuſſing, or repercuſſive Medicines; or things which by cooling and binding do thicken the matter, and keep it from diſſolving.

The Signs are, a Hardneſs in the right *Hypochondrion*, and a great Heavineſs

Heavineſs, eſpecially when the Breath is fetched, neither Feaver nor pain, as in the Inflammation, or at leaſt but little pain; when the *Schirrus* is imperfect, the Face is pale and greeniſh, becauſe there is no good Blood produced by it. The whole Body decayeth, becauſe there is no Sanguification, nor Diſtribution of Nouriſhment as ought to be. To the Prognoſtick, *Galen* ſaith thus; an inſenſible *Schirrus* is incurable: that which is ſenſible is cureable, though with much difficulty. A *Schirrus* turns to the Dropſie incurable; ſometimes it cauſeth the Jaundice; and ſometimes it cometh in the Jaundice, both which is very dangerous.

To cure it in the beginning of the Diſeaſe, you muſt take away the antecedent Cauſe, as you are taught in the preceding Chapter of Obſtructions, all the Medicines there mentioned are proper for this. *Riverius* much commendeth theſe Pills following: *Take of the beſt Aloes and Gum Ammoniacum diſſolved in Vinegar, ſtrained, and again made thick, of each half an ounce; Mercurius Dulcis, (well prepared) two drams; Diagridium, one dram, with Oxymel of Squills, make a Maſs for Pills,* of which, take half a dram in the morning, for twenty or thirty dayes, but ſometimes reſt, and in the intermediate dayes, make uſe of the ſteeled and other medicines, mentioned in the former Chapter. Likewiſe the Fomentation and Unguent there preſcribed may be made uſe of to mollifie this Tumor.

CHAP. LVII.

Of the Jaundice.

THe Jaundice is a ſpreading of a yellow Colour over the whole Body. There is a twofold Jaundice, the yellow and the black; the black proceeds from the Spleen, and is rare. I ſhall here ſpeak only of the yellow Jaundice. This Diſeaſe comes from three principal Cauſes:

Firſt, from an evil Diſpoſition of the Liver, as an Inflammation, Obſtruction, *Schirrus*, or Weakneſs thereof, that it cannot ſeparate the Choler from the Blood, and by that means it is carried over the whole Body.

A ſecond Cauſe is the Obſtruction of the Gall, which hinders its paſſage into the Guts, and ſo remains in the blood, with which it is carried to all parts of the Body. The Gall is obſtructed, either by groſs Phlegm, or Choler abounding, and ſometimes by little ſtones bred therein, *&c.*

The

The third Cauſe is the Malignity of the cholerick humors, which conſiſteth either in the great Quantity which Nature cannot regulate, nor ſeparate from the Blood: or fills the Bagg ſo full, that it cannot contract it ſelf to expel it. Or elſe it conſiſteth in the evil Quality of the Humor, which, by corrupting the reſt, hinders their due Evacuations, which Nature perceiving, ſtriveth ſuddenly to caſt it forth: as it ſomtimes happens in cholerick Feavers, after the taking of Poyſon, or after the biting of ſome venemous Creature.

The ſigns of the yellow Jundice are a yellowneſs of the body, eſpecially the whites of the Eyes, and the Balls of the Cheeks: cholerick Vomitings, and Hiccoughs, Lazineſs, Itching of the body, and bitterneſs of the tongue. If it come from a diſtemper of the Liver, there preceded an Inflammation, Obſtruction, &c. If from an Obſtruction of the Gall the belly is bound, and the Excrements white, the Urine yellow or reddiſh, which will dye a new piece of Linen Cloth. If it come from the malignity of the humour, both the Urine and the Excrements are high coloured, eſpecially after a putrid Feaver; now if the Feaver remain, the Jaundice is Symptomatical; If, when the Jaundice appears, the Feaver ceaſeth, the Urine and Excrements be of their natural colour, the Jaundice is critical. Poyſon taken and venemous bitings the Patient can declare. They, who in a Feaver have the Jaundice before the ſeventh or critical day, are in great danger; the contrary if it happen on a critical day. The Jaundice coming upon an Inflammation of the Liver is dangerous, becauſe the Diſeaſe commonly ends in an Impoſthume: if upon a Schirrus, it is no leſs dangerous, becauſe that ends in the Dropſie. If it come from an Obſtruction of the Gall, it is moſt eaſie to cure, becauſe the Paſſage is near the Guts, except ſtones breed in the Paſſages be the cauſe, which, by reaſon they cannot be diſſolved, are counted incurable.

For the Cure. If it come from diſtemper of the Liver, have recourſe to the aforegoing Chapters: if the Jaundice be critical it needs no Cure. If from the Obſtruction of the Gall, to cure it, take away the Obſtruction, which may be done, by the Medicines mentioned in the Chapter *Of the Obſtructions of the Liver.* Yet leſt I ſhould ſeem to omit any thing needful; I ſhall apply a Medicine or two proper to the diſeaſe. If the body be plethorick, Phleborotomy may be profitable. Afterwards evacuate the Humours with medicines that principally purge Choler: *Take of the Electuary of the Juyce of Roſes, and the Electuary of the Prunes ſolutive, of each three drams: Rhubarb in powder, one dram: Saffron half a ſcruple; with Sugar make a Bolus,* give it once or twice, as the Patient ſtands in need thereof. Then make a Decoction thus: *Take the Roots of Smallage, Nettles, and Madder, of each one handful: the Leaves of Celandine, Cleavers, Fumi-*

tory,

tory, Wormwood, Centaury, and the Tops of Saint John's-wort, of each one handful: Cinnamon, and Shavings of Ivory, of each two drams: the white dung of an Hen, and the dung of a Gooſe, of each two drams: tye it up in a Ragg, and with it a ſcruple of Saffron; make a Decoction in white Wine, (or if you pleaſe, in Fumitory, Wormwood-water, or the like) to a quart. Let the Patient take a quarter of a pint faſting, and gently exerciſe himſelf. Of theſe and Ingredients of the like Nature may any form of Medicine be prepared. Whilſt inward medicines are adminiſtred, foment or anoint the Region of the Liver, as you are taught in the foregoing Chapters.

CHAP. LVIII.

Of the Dropſie.

THere are three kinds of Dropſies, the firſt is called in Greek Ἀσκίτης *Aſcites*, the ſecond Τυμπανίτης *Tympanites*, the third Ἀνασάρκα *Anaſarca* or Λευκοφλεγματία *Leucophlegmatia*. *Aſcites* is a Swelling of the Belly, cauſed of a ſerous humour, and ſalt, (as Water it is cold, as Salt it is hot, infecting the mouth of the Stomach, hence cometh a Feaver and Thirſt,) and not onely the Belly, but ſometimes the Cods, Thighes, Legs, and Feet: and ſometimes it begins in the Legs and Feet, and aſcends upward.

It is the Opinion of moſt Phyſitians, That all Dropſies have their original from a cold diſtemper of the Liver, which cannot make Blood, but Water, Phlegm, and Wind. This Opinion is undeniably true in *Anaſarca*, but in *Aſcites* and *Tympanites* it is queſtionable, although ſometimes a cold diſtemper may be the cauſe thereof. The Experience of Modern Phyſitians hath put the buſineſs out of doubt, who have found the Liver ſound in diſſected Bodies, who dyed of the Dropſie. And if the Liver ſhould breed watry Blood, what reaſon can be given that the Water ſhould be ſent to the Cavity of the Belly onely, and not to other parts, and breed *Anaſarca*? A Dropſie may be cauſed by a hot diſtemper of the Liver cauſed of Feavers, much Wine, or hot Meats, which doth diſperſe the native heat, by which means, the Liver, Spleen, and Kidneys become leſs active, and not able to draw the Water, nor caſt it forth by the Ureters: the like may be ſaid of a cold diſtemper. Some external Cauſe may hinder the Attraction and Diſtribution of the Water, as namely, the drinking of much cold Water, or hot Wine, or any thing

that

that doth diminiſh or diſperſe the native heat.

The Dropſie *Tympanites*, hath its Name from *Tympanum* a Drum, becauſe the Belly ſoundeth like a Drum; and is much ſtretched out. This Stretching hath its original from Wind ſhut up in the Cavity of the *Abdomen*, and ſometimes in the Cavity of the Guts, as *Platerus* obſerved. This Wind is bred by crude and thick, phlegmatick or melancholy Humors, which being ſtirred by heat, and made thin, become thick and flatuous vapours, which are hard to be diſſolved. Nor doth Wind alone cauſe a Dropſie, but with it a mixture of Water, ſo that if Wind be predominant, it is called a *Tympany*: if Water, *Aſcites*. *Anaſarca* is bred of a flegmatick humour ſpread throughout the whole Body, and maketh every part to ſwell and be white: a cold diſtemper of the Liver is the cauſe; when the Liver, inſtead of making good Blood, produceth ſuch Humors. The Cauſe of this Diſeaſe may be imputed to all ſuch things as cool the Liver too much, and hinder its Concoction, as a Diet too cold and moiſt, the ſtopping of the Terms or Hæmorrhoids, all Obſtructions and Tumors in the Liver, much bleeding, or any preternatural Evacuation.

You may make the Diagnoſticks thus; In *Aſcites*, the Belly is great and broad, preſs the Sides and you may hear the Water make a Noiſe: when the Patient turneth in his Bed, his Belly ſwayeth to that ſide: the Thighs, Legs Feet and Cods ſwell, but the upper parts decay: the Urine is little in Quantity, thick in Subſtance, in colour red: In the increaſe of the diſeaſe, the Patient breatheth with much difficulty, by reaſon of the abundance of Water which lyeth upon the *Diaphragma*, eſpecially when he lyeth down; therefore the Patient (for the moſt part) is forced to ſtand and ſit: the ſalt humour ſwimming in the Stomach, cauſeth a continual Thirſt, and a lingering Feaver. In the *Tympany* the Belly ſoundeth like a Drum, is big, but leſs burthenſome; when the Patient lyeth upon his Back, his Belly remaineth hard and extended, nor doth it ſway when he turneth himſelf: the beginning of this Dropſie (for the moſt part) is accompanied with pain about the Navel and Reins. In *Anaſarca*, not only the Belly and lower parts, but the upper parts alſo ſwell; if you thruſt the Swelling with your Finger, it doth pit and leave an Impreſſion: the Fleſh is ſoft and looſe, and the Skin pale and earthy: they have a lingering Feaver, breathing difficultly, and the Urine is thin and white.

To the Prognoſtick, I ſay, Every Dropſie is hard to be cured, the older the Patient is, and the longer the diſeaſe hath continued, the more perillous. *Anaſarca* is leaſt dangerous: *Aſcites* and the *Tym-*

pany

pany are ſometimes one more dangerous than another, according to their Cauſes: *Aſcites* coming from a Tumor or Ulcer of the Liver or any of the internal parts, it is more dangerous than a *Tympany, et è contra.* If a Dropſie come upon an acute diſeaſe, it is evil. If the Liver, being full of Water, diſcharge it ſelf into the *Omentum*, the diſeaſe ends in Death. If in the beginning of a Dropſie, (the Patient being ſtrong, and free from Tumor or Ulcer in the Liver or any internal part) the Water floweth into the Belly and cauſeth a Flux, the Patient is cured, if the contrary happen, expect a contrary effect. This I gather from the Words of *Hippocrates*; *In the beginning of a Dropſie, if there come a Flux of the Belly, without want of concoction, or crudity, it is prevented*, the leſs Urine is voided the worſe, becauſe the drink runs not to the Reins, but to the Belly. It is a very hopeful ſign, when the Patient voideth more Urine than he drinketh, and the Belly groweth leſs. Impoſthumes or ſpots in the Legs of Hydropical men, are for the moſt part fore-runners of death. If a man who hath been cured of the Dropſie fall into the ſame again, it is very dangerous. If a melancholy body have a Tympany, he ſeldome eſcapes; eſpecially if he piſs by drops. If the Hydropical perſon eat his meat and digeſt it well, and be not ſick after, have no cough nor pain, his tongue not rough nor thirſty: if he be in a natural order without phyſick, and medicines work eaſily with him: if he be not faint, and his Urine change according to his diet, he may eaſily be cured.

For the Cure, you muſt conſider if the diſeaſe hath its original from Obſtructions, Tumors &c. And ſeek the beginning of your Cure out of their proper Chapters. Afterwards you muſt labour to evacuate the matter, whether it be in the *Abdomen* or whole Body, firſt make an Apozem thus: *Take of the roots of Parſly, Smallage, Fennel, Elicampane, Bruſcus, Dane-wort, and Madder, of each one ounce: The Leaves of Agrimony, Wormwood, Maiden-hair, the tops of St. Johns-wort, and Centaury, of each one handful: the inward bark of the roots of Capers, Aſh and Tamariſk, of each four drams; Liquoriſh one ounce: the ſeeds of Fennel, Parſly and Juniper berries, of each half an ounce: the flowers of Broom, Beans and Elder, of each one pugil: Jalap roots, two drams; boyl them in a ſufficient quantity of water, wherein ſteel hath been quenched, to a pint and a half: ſtrain it, and add to the Liquor one ounce of Senna, cover it and let it infuſe ſix hours, ſtrain it and diſſolve therein of the ſyrup of Harts-tongue one ounce: and the ſyrup of Succory, with Rhubarb three ounces: Clarifie it with the whites of* Eggs, *and aromatize it with two drams of Cinnamon, or yellow Saunders; give it four mornings.* Afterwards once a week give this powder, *Take of Senna, Jalap, Mechoacan, Turbith, Gum, and Hermodactils, of each one dram;*

Cream

Cream of Tartar, and Salt of Wormwood, of each two drams ʒ. Cambugia half a dram; Diamber, Diarrhodon abbatis, and Fennel ſeeds, of each two ſcruples: make a fine powder, and infuſe one dram in a quarter of a pint of White-wine all Night, and let the Patient take it in the morning. Of theſe and ſuch like may be prepared medicines of all forms. Some commend the juyce of Flower-de-luce roots, taken with Honey or Manna, the doſe is three ounces, and *Platerus* in his Obſervations doth highly extol it. Chymiſts do much commend the extract of black Hellebore, *Mercurius vitæ* and *Diaphoreticus*, *Mercurius dulcis*, *Antimonium Diaphoreticum*, and ſuch like: but let the Phyſitian beware how he gives medicines of this nature, except his Patient be ſtrong; the like Caution let him obſerve in giving of purging medicines, eſpecially ſuch as purge with violence. But rather let him (if his Patient be weak) give diſcuſſive and Diuretick Clyſters, thus, *Take of Mallows, Marſh-mallows, Chamomel, Pellitory of the Wall, and Mercury, of each one handful: the ſeeds of Anais, Sweet Fennel, Caraway, Dill, and Bay-berries, of each two drams: the flowers of Broom and Melilot, of each one pugil, boyl them in Poſſet-drink or Mutton broth to a pint, diſſolve in the ſtrained Liquor, Oyl of Chamomel, Dill and Rue, of each one ounce: Diacatholicon (or Diaphœnicon) of each one ounce: (and if you ſee good, and half an ounce of Benedicta Laxativa) and make a Cliſter.* You muſt principally give ſuch Medicines which purge by Urine: the ſteeled-wine preſcribed in the 55. Chapter is very good; in the preparing of it, you may add (if you ſee occaſion) any of the aforementioned ingredients, which provoke Urine. The Spirit of Vitriol, Tartar and Salt is much commended, if it be adminiſtred in ſome Diuretick decoction. The Salt of Wormwood and Juniper profiteth much. Or you may make a Lee of the Aſhes of Juniper and White-wine, giving five or ſix ounces thereof, which Lee alone hath cured ſome Dropſies ſaith *Mathiolus*; the ſame I have known my ſelf. Bleeding is prohibited, and upon good grounds too, unleſs the diſeaſe come from ſtoppage of the Terms or Hemorrhoids, bleed not then, unleſs it be in the beginning of the diſeaſe, and the Liver in its natural conditions. Iſſues, Bliſters, and Sarrifications are likewiſe forbidden, becauſe they Gangrene for the moſt part: yet in the beginning of a Dropſie, the lower parts being exceedingly ſwelled, I made an Iſſue in the Leg, out of which an incredible quantity of Water iſſued, and the Patient perfectly Cured. Among Evacuations, Sweatings are not the leaſt proficable, eſpecially in *Anaſarca*; but in *Aſcites* and *Tympanites* the Liver being dry, beſides the difficulty of procuring it, it rather hurteth then profiteth. All the time of the Cure forget not to ſtrengthen the Liver, that you may hinder the encreaſe of water, as well as purge it; have recourſe to the

the 55 Chapter, of the Obſtruction of the Liver. *Hollerius* commendeth this Opiate: *Take of Currance cleanſed, half a pound; boyl them in Sack till they be as thick as a pultis, beat and ſtrain them, then add of the Conſerve of Roſemary-flowers, Citron peels Candied, and Cinnamon, of each one dram: the powder Aromaticum Roſatum, Diamargariton Calidum, and Diatrionpimon, of each two ſcruples: Lignum Aloes, half a dram; Saffron half a ſcruple, mix them and make a ſoft Electuary.* Then make a fomentation for the Belly with theſe, or Herbs of the like nature: Agrimony, Danewort, Camomel, Calamint, Elder, Mallows, and Marſh-Mallows, Marjerom, Melilot, Broom, Penny-royal, Rue, Snake-weed, Southernwood, Tamariſk, Wormwood, and the like, the ſeeds of Parſly, Dill, Cummin, Fennel, Bay, and Juniper-berries: foment the Belly with Spunges dipt in the decoction of theſe, or lay the herbs themſelves in a bag hot to the Belly: Afterwards anoint the belly with the Oyl of Dill, Camomel, Rue, Flower-deluce, and the like. Or you may make Unguents, Cataplaſms, or Emplaſters. This harmleſs Cataplaſm I have found profit much; *Take of Wormwood, Chamomel, Mayweed and Danewort, of each two handfuls, bruiſe them in a ſtone Mortar, then boyl them in Vinegar and Honey, thicken with Bean and Barley-meal, and Cow-dung dried, of each a like quantity, make a Cataplaſm.*

Galen commendeth a Cataplaſm of Snails bruiſed with their ſhells, and laid upon the Navel, and there keep it till it falls off of its own accord. Radiſhes bruiſed and laid to the Belly and Reins, work by Stool and Urine.

To conclude, If the body be ſtrong, you may uſe ſtrong purgers in your Cataplaſms; but if the body be weak forbear. In *Anaſarca* you may often and ſtrongly purge watry and flegmatick humors: In *Aſcites* and *Tympanites* more ſeldom and gentle. In *Aſcites*, order your internal and external medicines principally to purge water: In *Tympanites* let them be Carminative and diſcuſſive. In every of them have a ſpecial reſpect to the Liver; and if it be too hot (as it ſometimes happeneth) give cold things mixed with warm openers; Let their meat be of the drieſt, and let them ſhun ſweet-meats as a Plague. For drink, let them abſtain from it as much as can be, and drink none but what is made with Wormwood, Tamariſk, Elecampane, Juniper, *&c.* or let them only hold it in the mouth to cool and aſſwage their Thirſt; let them chew Maſtick, for it draweth water from the Stomach.

CHAP. LIX.

Of the Obſtruction, Inflammation, and Tumor of the Spleen.

THe Spleen is ſubject to Obſtruction as well as the Liver, or rather more, becauſe it draweth cruder blood. when thick humors ſtick in the ſubſtance of the Spleen, it maketh an Inflammation and Tumor. If the humors grow thick and hard, it breeds a *Schirrus*. If the Tumor be flegmatick, it is called *Oedema*, which chanceth to them, who live upon cold and moiſt food, or live in a moiſt Ayr. But if it be ſoft, looſe and puffed up, it is called an Inflammation or puffing of the Spleen. The cauſes of the Obſtruction, Inflammation, and Tumor of the Spleen, are the ſame with them of the Liver: Sometimes the affect ſeizeth on both together.

They are diſtinguiſhed by their ſigns: the Obſtruction of the Spleen is diſtinguiſhed from the Obſtruction of the Liver, by the ſcituation of the part. If the Spleen be obſtructed, there is heavineſs and pain in the left *Hypochondrion*, eſpecially after running, riding, or any more than ordinary exerciſe; if you handle the *Hypochondrion*, there is reſiſtance, the face is blewiſh, and ſigns of melancholy appear, the diſeaſe is of long continuance, and if it be not ſpeedily cured, it turns to a *Schirrus*. The Cure is performed the ſame way as the Obſtruction of the Liver is; only you muſt add things, which particularly reſpect the Spleen, and purge the Melancholy humor.

The Inflammation of the Spleen likewiſe hath the ſame conjunct and antecedent cauſe, only it is eſpecially cauſed by melancholy Blood. The Diagnoſtick ſigns are different, *viz.* the Patient hath ſwelling, pain, heavineſs, and beating on the left ſide under the ribs, thirſt, blackneſs of the Tongue, loathing of meat, a conſtant Feaver, troubleſome lying on either ſide, eſpecially the right, ſometimes the Tumor is in the ſhape of the Spleen: Sometimes fills the left *Hypochondrion*, and if the adjacent parts be inflamed alſo, it extendeth below the Navel. If only Melancholy Blood cauſe the Inflammation, the Tumor is harder, the colour black, and many times the Urine: If choler be mixed with melancholy blood, the Thirſt is greater, the Feaver ſtronger, and worſe every third day; the mouth bitter, and the Urine red. great want of ſleep and doting. If flegm be mixed, the former ſymptoms are leſſened.

The Prognoſtick is the ſame with the Inflammation of the Liver, only it is leſs dangerous, for as much as the Liver is the nobler part. If it endeth not in death, it endeth by ſome critical Evacuation, as

by

by Stool, Urine or Bleeding at the left Noſtril, or elſe it grows hard, and turns to a Schirrhus. Which may be known by the cauſes and ſigns laid down in the Chapter of the Schirrhus Of the Liver, only it appeareth on the contrary ſide. The Cure of this and the former may be performed by the Medicines laid down in the Chapters of the Inflammation, Obſtruction, and Schirrhus of the Liver, only make uſe of ſome things that eſpecially reſpect the ſpleen, and purge melancholy, as I hinted before.

Sometimes the ſpleen is much pained by wind, which ſtretcheth the ſpleen and its membranes, but is without feaver or hardneſs. It is eaſily diſtinguiſhed from the former griefs, but hardly from the Cholick by reaſon of the nearneſs of the Gut *Colon*; but you may diſtinguiſh them thus, the pain of the Spleen is weighty and in one place, but of the Cholick is ſtretching, ſharp, moveable, and runs over the whole Belly. The Cure muſt be wrought by Medicines carminative, emollient and diſcuſſive, given internally, or Clyſters of the ſame Nature, with Fomentations and Liniments made of the Oyls of Wormwood, Lillies, Chamomil, Capers, and ſuch like, adding a little of the Oyl of Spike: and if the pain ceaſe not, ſome commend the Application of a Cupping-Glaſs; but we well adviſed firſt whether there be no Defluxion or Inflammation.

CHAP. LX.

Of Hypocondriack Melancholy.

THis Diſeaſe hath its Original from melancholy and aduſt Humors, which are bred by the Diſtemper of the Spleen or Stomach, which, by reaſon of their Crudity, ſtay long in the Veins, Arteries, and other Paſſages, which cauſe great and grievous Fermentations or Workings, from whence noyſome Vapours aſcend to the Brain, Heart and Midriff, which cauſe divers Symptoms, which I ſhall mention hereafter. The antecedent Cauſes are, all Meats of evil Juyce, and of hard Digeſtion; long continued Paſſions and Sadneſs, becauſe they diſperſe the Spirits, and hinder Concoction, and cauſe Crudities; which being burnt by heat, turn to Melancholy. Much Study, Watching, and want of Exerciſe may be the Cauſe, by reaſon of much Retention of Excrements; hence it is, that learned men, and ſuch who ſit much, are troubled with this Diſeaſe. The Stoppage of the Terms or Hæmorrhoids may be the Cauſe.

The Diagnoſtick ſigns of this Diſeaſe are many according to the parts affected: Sometimes the Patient ſpitteth or vomiteth much, be-

cauſe the ſtomach concocteth ill, and turneth the Nouriſhment into watry, ſharp, ſowr, or clammy ſubſtance, which not being drawn away by the Guts, lie in the ſtomach, and ſometimes diſcharge themſelves as aforeſaid. Sometimes the boyling of theſe Humors in the ſtomach cauſeth flatuous Vapours, which ſtretch the Stomach, and afflict the Heart, and cauſe ſwouning: Theſe Vapours cauſe a Noiſe beneath the Ribs, hence it hath been called the Windy Diſeaſe. Sometimes the Wind reacheth to the Kidneys, and cauſeth great pain there, which make the Patient thinketh he hath the ſtone. He is often coſtive, becauſe the clammy humors (bred by evil Concoction) ſtick to the Guts: ſometimes the ſharpneſs of the Humors cauſeth the Belly to be ſoluble. There is great heat in the Hypocondria: ſo that the Face will grow red and hot from thoſe Vapours. Sometimes the Urine is thin, becauſe thick and tartarous Humors ſtop the paſſages; ſometimes thick, red and troubled, and hath a thick tartarous Sediment, and ſometimes ſtick to the bottom of the Urinal like ſand, which cauſeth a ſuſpition of the Stone; but this diſſolves between the Fingers like Salt, and that which is bred in the Reins is hard. The Vapours aſcending produce many ſymptoms, as Palpitation of the Heart, a diſtempered pulſe; if they aſcend to the Tongue and Palate, it cauſeth great Thirſt; if to the Lungs, difficulty of the breathing; if to the Membranes of the Brain, Head-ach; if to the Brain it ſelf, Dimneſs of ſight, Noiſe in the Ears, Giddineſs, Fear, and Melancholy Phantaſies; if they be very ſharp, they ſometimes cauſe the Falling-ſickneſs, and if they ſettle in the Nerves, Convulſion: if they be ſtupifying, they cauſe Numneſs, the Palſy, Apoplexy, *&c.* If the Vapours be hot and dry, they dry the Brain, and cauſe Watchings, troubleſome Sleep, and frightful Dreams. Note that all theſe ſymptoms are not to be expected in one and the ſame Patient, but more or fewer, according to the variety of the peccant Humors.

Prognoſticks are; A continual pain and giddineſs of the Head in a Hypocondry doth threaten an Epilepſy, Apoplexy or Blindneſs, and the like. Thick Urine is better than thin, for thin Urine is a ſign that thick Humors are detained in the Body. Vomiting Flux of the Belly or Hæmorrhoids, if it be moderate and continue not long, is a hopeful ſign; judge the contrary if it continue long. For the moſt part, this Diſeaſe is of long continuance, and ſeldom cured; therefore it hath been called the Scourge and Diſgrace of Phyſitians.

The Cure of this Diſeaſe conſiſteth in four things: Firſt, in opening Obſtructions: Secondly, in amending the Diſtempers of the Bowels: Thirdly, in evacuating the peccant Humors: And laſtly, in ſtrengthening the affected and vital parts. But to forbear tediouſneſs, and to avoid needleſs Repetitions, I refer you to the Chapters aforegoing, eſpecially

eſpecially *Of the Obſtruction of the Liver and Spleen.* Take this general Rule, keep the Body alwayes ſoluble, by Medicines which the Patient may uſe before Meat, charging them often; as often as need ſhall require let the Patient be purged, let him make uſe of Broths, Decoctions, and Drinks that have a Faculty to open Obſtructions; as the Juyce of Wormwood, or Wormwood-Wine, adding thereto Tamarisk, Agrimony, Borrage and Bugloſs, Burnet, Sanders, Roſe-mary-Flowers, and the like. *Montanus* much commendeth *Venice Turpentine*, becauſe it looſeneth the Belly, cleanſeth and warmeth the Stomach, provoketh Urine, openeth the Obſtructions of the Liver, cleanſeth, and doth not heat it. Steel-Wine, and other Medicines made of Steel, which you may find in the Chapter *Of the Obſtruction of the Liver*, powerfully openeth Obſtructions, eſpecially the Extract of Steel; in the Adminiſtration of which, I have found more than ordinary Succeſs; but let Medicines of this Nature be adminiſtred by a skilful and careful Phyſitian: The Decoction or Infuſion of *Lignum Nephriticum* doth open Obſtructions ſafely and pleaſantly. And ſome do much commend the Decoction of the Root of ſweet Bryer for the Patient's ordinary Drink: Whileſt you uſe internal Medicines, Externals are not to be neglected, *viz.* Fomentations, Oyntments, *&c.* ſuch as are preſcribed for the Obſtruction of the Liver and Spleen; chooſe the cooleſt of them, and apply them to the Hypochondria. And becauſe in this Diſeaſe the Stomach alwayes ſuffereth, ſeek the Remedy in its proper place. Or if the Vapours aſcending from the Hypochondria trouble the Heart or Brain, and cauſe Swooning, Palpitation, Trembling, Convulſions, Head-ach, or the like, have recourſe to the Chapters preceding, which treat of thoſe Diſeaſes.

CHAP. LXI.

Of the Scurvy.

THe Scurvy is nothing elſe but an Hypocondriack Diſeaſe, but having a peculiar degree of Malignity ariſing from the Putrefaction of Melancholy, it hath more Symptomes than in the Hypocondriack Diſeaſe.

Diag. All the Symptomes mentioned in the aforegoing Chapter, are common to the Scurvy. Peculiar Symptoms are theſe, Redneſs, Itching, Putrefaction, bleeding and ſtinking of the Gums, Mouth and Teeth, which are alſo (ſomtimes) black and looſe. Spots in the Legs, firſt red, afterwards purple, black or blew. Straitneſs of the Breaſt, and ſhortneſs of the Breath, occaſioned by thick Vapours ari-

ſing from the Hypochondria to the Midriff, or to the Sweet-Bread, cauſing a Swelling or Tumor, and conſequently compreſſing the Diaphragma. The body is heavy and lazy, eſpecially the Legs, and grievous pain there and in other parts; as in the Toes, Fingers, Soals of the Feet, Ancles, Thighs, Belly, Arms, Shoulders, and the like. The urine is various, as in the Hypocondriack Melancholy: The Pulſe is weak and unequal: Some have the Head-ach, and a Feavoriſh heat in the Night, which vaniſheth by a Morning Sweat. Some have the Tooth-Ach without manifeſt Cauſe: Sometimes the Vapours aſcending (being aſtringent) contract the Gullet, and the Patient feareth ſtrangling: A ſtinking breath is common to *Scorbutick* perſons. Tumors in divers parts, ſometimes hard, ſometimes ſoft like Bladders, and ſometimes like the ſtinging of Nettles. And laſtly, an *Atrophy*, Conſumption and general decay of the whole body.

That I may more perfectly diſcover the Symptomes of this Diſeaſe, I ſhall here lay down ſome other, which are common to other Diſeaſes, and ſhew you how to diſtinguiſh them. Sometimes the Scurvy cauſeth pains in the Joynts, which muſt be diſtinguiſhed from the pains cauſed by the French-Pox thus: In the French-Pox, the pains are between the Joynts, and by long continuance cauſe Knots there; the Symptomes of the Pox appear, as Running of the Reins, Bubo, &c. or the Patient hath acted with ſome unclean Woman. But in the Scurvy, ſome of the preceding Symptoms appear, or at leaſt the Patient is of a melancholy Conſtitution. This muſt be diſtinguiſhed alſo from the *Arthritis*, or Joynt-Gout, which is fixed, or at leaſt ſeldome changeth the place; but in the Scurvy it is very moveable, running from one Joynt to another, and ſometimes for a while vaniſheth. In the ſame manner is the Baſtard-Palſy (which the Scurvy cauſeth) diſtinguiſhed from a true one, which is conſtant; but in the *Scorbutical* Palſy, he that in one day could not walk or ſtand at all, can the next day walk with little or no help. Sometimes it cauſeth a Flux of the Belly, like a *Diarrhœa*, but differeth from it in this, that the Excrements are thicker than in the former and in greater quantity, exceeding the quantity of the Meat taken. Sometimes the Excrements are mixed with blood, but differeth from the *Dyſentery*, becauſe there is no pain of the belly, and the blood is thick, ſent thither by the Meſeraick Veins. Sometimes the *Scorbutick* pains are in the ſides imitating the Pleuriſie, but is much different, becauſe the Feaver (if any) is weaker; there is no difficulty of Breathing, no Cough, Spitting, nor conſtant pain. Laſtly, you muſt diſtinguiſh theſe pains from the pains of the Stone: for the urine is ſometimes red, like Blood; as if the Kidneys were wounded by the Stone, and ſometimes black both which come from a Scurvy ſalt Matter in the ſpleen, or parts adjacent.

Prog.

Prog. This Diſeaſe is very hard to be cured, becauſe the Melancholy Humor is ſo far predominant. Many times it is very dangerous, becauſe it bringeth the Dropſy, Conſumption, *&c.* And ſometimes acute Diſeaſes, as the Apoplexy, Swoonings, and the like, which produce ſudden deaths.

In the Cure of the Scurvy, you muſt follow the method preſcribed in the Cure of Obſtruction of the Liver and Spleen, beginning with the weakeſt firſt, with which you muſt make uſe of ſpecifical Medicines for the Scurvy; of which the chief are, Dutch and Sea Scurvy-graſs, Water-Creſſes, Brook-Lime, Horſe-Radiſhes, Fumitory, Wormwood, Celandine the leſs, *&c.* Thoſe which are of leſs Efficacy, and have a faculty to corect and prepare the melancholy Humor, are theſe which follow, Agrimony, Aſarum, Betony, Burrage, Bugloſs, Carduus, Ceterach, Elicampane, Germander, Hyſſop, Maidenhair of all ſorts, Polypody of the Oak, the Bark of Aſh, Capers, and Tamarisk; the Flowers of Elder, Dodder of Time, and Tamarisk. Obſerve this general Rule, if the Patient be feavouriſh, or ſubject to heats, you muſt give the hotteſt of them in a ſmaller quantity; and add Endive, Sorrel, Succory, the Juyce of Citrons, Lemmons and Oranges, and the ſpirit of Sulphur and Vitriol. Of theſe and ſuch like may ſeveral ſorts of Medicines be formed, which (for brevity ſake) I omit.

CHAP. LXII.

Of the Stone in the Kidneys.

THe material Cauſe of the Stone in the Kidneys, is a phlegmatick, feculent, thick, ſlimy, and tartarous Humour in the Urine: the efficient Cauſe is heat, which drieth and hardneth the Matter, and at length turneth it into a ſtone; this is the Opinion of *Hypocrates* and *Galen*, and moſt modern Phyſicians. The Hermetick Phyſicians have found a certain Juyce, which they call *Succus Lapidiſcens*, which is a certain Humour, naturally proper to turn to a ſtone, and this they ſay is the material Cauſe of the ſtone; and the efficient Cauſe to be *Spiritus Lapidiſcens*, a ſtone-making ſpirit. So that if a man eat or drink any thing wherein the ſtony Juyce is, that Juyce is turned into a ſtone, if the Reins have a ſtone-making ſpirit. But if the Reins be free from this ſpirit, a ſtone is not bred, unleſs the ſtony Juyce be very predominate: on the contrary, if the Reins have this ſtony faculty, and the Food be free from this Juyce, the ſtone is ſcarcely engendered, unleſs the ſtone-making faculty be very predo-

minate. Many Hiſtories ſhew, that ſtones come from a ſtone-making ſpirit, or breath out of the Earth, which hath turned the bodies of Men, beaſts, and other things into ſtone: *Riverius* upon this ſubject (in his laſt Edition) quoted *Aventius Annal. Bavar. lib. 7. An.* 1343. who ſaith, That above fifty men, with many Cows, were turned into Stone. *Ortelius* tells the ſame ſtory of whole heards in *Ruſſia*. And *Camerarius* reporteth, That in the Province of *Chilo* in *Armenia*, at the blaſt of a South Wind (which happeneth four times in a year) whole Troops of horſe have been turned into Statues of ſtone, ſtanding in the warlike poſture, in which they were before. The Antecedent Cauſes are many, the ſtomach being not able to Concoct well ſendeth a crude Chyle to the Liver: A hot Liver doth bake the chilous Matter, or a cold Liver maketh crude Blood; the Spleen weak or obſtructed doth not ſufficiently purge the droſſy blood; theſe do cauſe even the blood, or crude Juyces fit to make a ſtone. Likewiſe the Reins, beſides their conjunct Cauſe, may be an Antecedent Cauſe in two reſpects, *viz.* their temper and Form: Firſt, their Temper being hot doth violently draw the Crude Matter, and thicken it. In reſpect of their Form, the emulgent Veins may be looſe, and fit to receive the tartarous Matter into the Reins; and the Uretors ſo narrow, that the thick Matter hath no paſſage from the Kidneys. Laſtly, all Food that produceth crude, thick and ſlimy Nouriſhment, doth afford Matter for the Stone, as Fleſh or Fiſh that is very ſalt, or dryed in the ſmoak, Pulſe, Cheeſe, and all Milk-Meats, hard Eggs, Cheſnuts, Pears, Quinces, Medlars, Rice, Wine thick and not well purged, ſtanding Waters; all things which make the Liver and Reins too hot, as old ſtrong Wine, Garlick, Onions, Pepper and Ginger; too ſtrong Diureticks, which carry crude Matter too violently to the Reins; violent Exerciſe after Meat, inordinate Lechery, too much fulneſs or emptineſs, and the like.

The ſignes of the Stone of the Kidneys are many, *viz.* a conſtant pain about the Loyns; whileſt it is in the hollow of the Kidneys, the pain is heavy; when it gets into the head of the uretors, ſharp and pricking, and ſo continueth, unleſs it get back again, or fall into the Cavity of the Bladder. The urine is ſometimes bloody, by reaſon of the opening Corroſion of the Veins, or cutting of the tender Fleſh of the Kidneys; ſometimes it is thin, and little in quantity. Voyding of Sand and Stones is an evident ſign of the Stone; but if the Patient voydeth gravel without ſtones, be not too haſty in your Judgment, but take the Caution given you in the 60 Chapter, *Of the Hypochondriack Melancholy*. The Thigh on the ſame ſide the Back is pained, become numb, becauſe the ſtone doth oppreſs the Nerve, which is in the Muſcles of the Loyns under the Reins, and goeth to

the

the Hip for its motion. The Sick loatheth and vomiteth often, by reason of the Connexion of the Kidneys with the Stomach; the Stomach (ſympathetically ſenſible) endeavoureth to exclude that hurtful Companion. Be ſure you make a diſtinction between the ſtone in the Kidneys, and the Chollick; have recourſe to the 43 Chapter, where I have left a few rules.

This Diſeaſe is very dangerous, and bringeth many and ſad Symptoms, as Inflammation, Exulcerations, great pains, long Watchings, Weakneſs, Feavers, ſuppreſſion of urine, and Death it ſelf. It is difficult to cure (if not incurable) in old men, ſaith *Hippocrates*, with whom *Experience* agreeth. If the pain hath continued long and violent, and the Sick grow externally cold with cold and faint ſweats, Death is at hand. If the Stone be accompanied with an Ulcer of the Kidneys, it is incurable, becauſe thoſe things which do break the ſtone, do exaſperate the Ulcer.

The Cure of the Stone in the Kidneys conſiſteth in mollifying, enlarging or relaxing, and throwing the ſtone out of the uretors, to break the ſtone if it be to big for the paſſage; to take away the antecedent Cauſe, and to eaſe the pain, which you muſt do thus: firſt open the Liver-vein on the ſame ſide that is moſt grieved, draw as much blood as the Conſtitution of the Patient can well ſpare; then adminiſter a mollifying and laxative Clyſter: *Take of Cummin and Marſh-mallows, Camomil, Penny-royal, Pellitory of the wall, and Violet-leaves, of each one handful; the ſeeds of ſweet-Fennel, Flax and Fenugreek, of each half an ounce, boyl it in Poſſet-drink to a pint, ſtrain it, and diſſolve therein Caſſia, Catholicon and Diaphænicon, of each three drams; the Oyls of Rue and Scorpions, of each one ounce; make a Clyſter, and adminiſter it.* Likewiſe the Oyls of ſweet Almonds, Camomil, Dill, Lillies and Violets are good to be uſed in Clyſters of this Nature. This Clyſter, or one of the ſame Nature, you muſt give twice or thrice in a week; and, in the days between, foment the Region of the Kidneys with a fomentation made of the aforenamed ſimples, or others of the like Nature, which I ſhall treat of, before I put an end to this Chapter. Afterwards aroint the part with the Oyls aforenamed: Or you may make a Cataplaſm of white Bread ſodden in white-Wine; and if you add any of the aforeſaid Oyls, it will be the better. Afterwards lay a Plaiſter to the place; *Take of the Oyl of Camomil and Rue, of each half an ounce; of Dill and ſweet Almonds, of each two drams; Gooſe and Hens-greaſe, of each one dram, with Wax and the Compound Melilot plaiſter, as much as ſufficeth make a plaiſter, and apply it.* In the mean time, you muſt not forget inward Medicines, which have a faculty to break the ſtone, to eaſe pain, and mollify and enlarge the uretors. The ſimples following are approved of, *viz.* the Roots of Aſparagus,

Birth-

Birthwort, Fennel, Butchers-broom, Filipendula, Couch-graſs, Garden and Horſe-radiſh, Madder, Marſh and common Mallows, Liquoriſh, Onions, Parſly, Knot-graſs, ; the *Leaves* of Betony, Camomil, Penny-royal, Marſh-mallows, Pellitory of the Wall, Maiden-hair, Parſly peart, Filipendula,, Saxifrage, Savin, Burner, Goats-Thorne, Kidney-wort, Melilot, Golden-rod; the ſeeds of Nettles, Parſly, Gromwel, Burdock, Winter-cherries, Bay, Ivy, and Juniper-berries, the four cold ſeeds, the ſtones of Hips, Haws, Medlars, &c. Of theſe you may make Decoctions, Powders, or diſtilled Waters, and the like, the Deſcription of which (for brevity ſake) I will omit. *Quercetanus*, in his Diſpenſatory commendeth this following Powder; *Take of the inward ſkins of Hen's Gizzards, and their white Dung, of each half an ounce; the inward skins of Eggſhels dryed and powdered, two ounces and an half; Rupture-wort and Cinnamon, of each four Scruples; the Stones of Medlars, two drams; the Seeds of Annis and Fennel, of each one ounce, powder them, and give half a dram, or a dram in white-wine.* Goats blood prepared is excellent, and the Waters diſtilled from it in Balneo Mariæ doth Wonders. And ſome do commend the Vrine of a Goat, taken out whilſt he is alive, and drunk, and the Entrails applyed. Chymiſts do highly extol their Salts, and Experience tells us, that if they be well prepared, and carefully adminiſtred, they work no ſmall effects, *viz.* the ſalt of Bean Cods, or ſtalks of Camomil, Tartar vitriolate, Oyl of Vitriol, the ſpirit of Salt, Mercurius Dulcis, &c. *Zacutus Luſitanus* commendeth the natural Balſom, a few drops thereof taken with Oyl of ſweet Almonds. *Crato* had as good an Opinion of Filberts eaten, and confirms his opinion by Experience. Mineral Waters are good, for they do not only diſſolve the ſlimy Tartarous matter, which breeds the ſtone; but alſo allay the hot Diſtemper of the Liver and Reins. Of all *Diuretick* medicines, Turpentine is the ſafeſt, given the quantity of a Nut with Sugar every Morning; *Diureticks* taken very often (for the moſt part) hurt, by carrying the Humors from other parts to the Reins; but Turpentine ſeldom or never worketh any evil effect. You may uſe it thus, *Take of Venice Turpentine, waſhed with Saxifrage water, half an ounce; Caſſia newly drawn, ſix drams; Rhubarb and Liquoriſh in powder, of each half a dram; mix them, and make a Bolus.* To conclude, give Clyſters often, or, if you ſee it more convenient, purge the Body between your Diuretick Potions, for the reaſon before given: your beſt Purgations are Caſſia Diaphœnicon, Rhubarb, and ſuch like. If the Liver and Reins are diſtempered by heat, make uſe of thoſe medicines preſcribed againſt the hot Diſtemper of the Liver. If Crudities in the ſtomach be the Cauſe, ſeek medicines out of the Chapters which treat of the Diſeaſes of the ſtomach.

mach. If you do carefully conſider the Cauſe, or from what part of the Body the Reins fetch their ſtony Materials, and order your Medicines accordingly, with prudence and reaſon, by the bleſſing of God, you may find the Cure of the Stone not to be ſo difficult, as it is commonly adjudged. For my part, I have Cured ſeveral people, who have, been grievouſly vexed with this Grief; for which Mercy I do and ſhall praiſe God.

CHAP. LXIII.

Of the Stone in the Bladder.

I Shall ſpeak nothing of the Cauſe of the Stone in the Bladder; the material and efficient Cauſe being the ſame with that of the Reins. This Diſeaſe happeneth to Children, oftner than to people of riper age, who are more ſubject to the *Stone* in the Reins, becauſe Children eating much and often, their Vrine is thick, and the expulſive faculty in the Reins is ſtronger in them than in men, and ſendeth the Vrine ſpeedily to the Bladder; where (being long kept by reaſon of much ſleep or play) the Vrine ſetleth, and is retained till it by heat becometh a Stone, for the paſſage is narrow in Children, and the Vrine not being very ſhap, doth not powerfully provoke the expulſive Faculty. *Fernelius* was of Opinion, that the Stone in the Bladder was alwayes firſt bred in the Reins, and falling from thence into the Bladder, and getting freſh Matter, there encreaſeth, *Fern. lib. 6. cap.* 13. *page.* 317. Many times it ſo happeneth; but daily experience teacheth that many have the *Stone* in the Bladder, who never had pain in the Reins, eſpecially Children.

The Knowledge of this Diſeaſe in the beginning is difficult; but when the Stone is grown great, is evident enough to the Patient's ſorrow. The firſt ſigne is pain in the Neck of the Bladder, reaching to the end of the Yard, eſpeciall after piſſing. The Yard itcheth, and the Patient handleth it often: He feeleth a great weight about the Neck of the Bladder, when the Stone is grown great, the Vrine ſuddenly ſtoppeth, and he is in pain like a Woman in travel; his Yard ſtandeth often, and he maketh Water with moſt eaſe lying upon his back, becauſe then the Stone falleth out of the Neck of the Bladder. When he hath need to make Water, he is alſo much provoked to go to ſtool, by reaſon of the conſent of the Sphincter Muſcles of the Anus and Bladder, being moved by the Branches of the ſame Nerve. Many ſigns more I might inſert, but theſe I think ſufficient for the ingenious; To be fully ſatisfied, the beſt way is to make uſe of the *Catheter*.

This

This Diſeaſe is alwayes exceeding painful, and no leſs dangerous; if the Stone be like Flint, it can never be diſſolved; if ſoft or brittle, it may be diſſolved by the long uſe of ſtrong Medicines: but few there are that have patience enough to make uſe of ſo many Medicines. The Cure is not altogether ſo difficult in Women as in Men, becauſe the paſſage in them is wider. In the year 1656. I cured a Woman, who was a long time grieved with the Stone, and intended to venture upon the laſt and terrible Cure by Cutting: within the ſpace of a Moneth (having firſt diſſolved part of the ſtone by Medicines) ſhe voided a ſtone (without the help of manual Operation) in bigneſs two Inches, in length an Inch and an half, without prejudice to the uretory parts: ſhe was then Aged 63. and lived ſeveral years after to praiſe God for ſo good a deliverance.

For to perfect the Cure, you muſt do as you are taught in the foregoing Chapter, ſo that I need not here repeat any thing, only lay down the Medicine ſo much commended by *Horatius Augenius*; it is thus prepared, *Take of Sows or Wood-lice prepared, a dram or four ſcruples; Aqua vitæ, two ſcruples; the Broth of red Cicers, nine or ten ounces; take it in the Morning faſting.* *Sennertus* alſo commends it, and this Medicine likewiſe, *Take of Salt of white Tartar one ounce; Parſly-water, one pint; mix them, and ſtrain them with a brown Paper.* If, after the uſe of Medicines, you find the Neck of the Bladder wounded, or much pained by the roughneſs of the ſtone, make a Decoction thus; *Take of the Roots of Marſh-Mallows, Fennel, Couch-graſs and Cammock, of each one ounce; Liquoriſh, two drams; Camomel and Saxifrage, of each one Pugil; Winter-Cherries, twenty; red Cicers, four ounces; Raiſins of the Sun, two ounces; the four great cold Seeds, a dram and an half; French-barley, four ounces; boyl them gently in the diſtilled Water of Saxifrage, Cammock and Parſly, of each half a pint; when it hath boyled a while, add half a pint of white-wine, and let it boil till half be conſumed: to the ſtraining, add ſix ounces of the Syrup of Marſh-mallows; drink three or four ounces in the morning.* To the Region of the Bladder muſt be applyed mollifying and aſſwaging Fomentations: If all Medicines fail, and the Patients pains unſupportable, neceſſity requireth the dangerous Operation of Cutting. Let the Phyſician prepare the Patients body by purging, Bleeding and Diet, according to the Conſtitution and Condition of the Patients body; and let the Patient prepare his Soul for God.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXIV.

Of the Inflammation of the Reins and Bladder.

THis Diſeaſe is a Tumor in thoſe parts, cauſed by the flowing of Blood or Choler unto them; the Cauſes of this Inflammation are natural, unnatural or preternatural; Natural, when there is a natural hereditary Infirmity in the parts, or great heat originally, which violently draw the Humors thither. Cauſes not natural, are Gluttony, Drunkenneſs, much Venery, great paſſions of the Minde, violent Exerciſe, Stoppage of ſome uſual Evacuation, as the Terms or Hemorrhoids, all things which cauſe Repletion or evil Concoction, and drive the Humors to the inward Bowels. Things preternatural may be the cauſe, as a Stroak, Wound, or Bruiſe upon the Reins or Bladder, conſtant Feavers: the matter of the Pleuriſie or Empyema carried away by the urine: heat or ſtoppage of the urine, the Stone, or Exulceration of the part may cauſe an Inflammation.

The Inflammation of the Reins is known by theſe ſigns, a weighty and beating pain about the part, which extendeth it ſelf to the adjacent parts, the Patient cannot help himſelf, nor lie otherwiſe than upon his back; if he doth ſneez or move his body the pain increaſeth, he hath a Numneſs in his Leg on the ſame ſide, he maketh water with difficulty, he hath a conſtant ſharp Feaver, with Watchings, Dotings, and dangerous Symptomes: he vomiteth Choler, Flegm and other Humors; the urine is firſt thin and yellow, afterwards thick and red.

If the Bladder be inflamed, the Patient is vexed with a ſharp Feaver, Watching, Vomiting, *&c.* as aforeſaid. The Share becometh hard, and hath vehement pain, he hath (almoſt) continual provocation to go to Stool, as in the Diſeaſe *Tenaſmus*.

Prog. The Inflammation of theſe parts do threaten continual danger of Death; Convulſions, Dotage, Watchings, cold Sweats, are the Meſſengers of Death. If the Inflammation ſuppurate, and the Impoſthume break, and the Matter be evacuated by the urine, there is hopes. If the Hemorrhoids bleed, there is hopes that the Inflammation will ceaſe.

You muſt begin the Cure with a mollifying and cooling Clyſter; to the Decoction for the Clyſter (*preſcribed in the Chapter of the Stone in the Reins*) *add of Caſſia and Diaprunes Lenitive, of each half an ounce, Syrup of Violets one ounce, the Oyl of Violets two ounces*: Make a Clyſter, then open the Liver-vein on the ſame ſide the Inflammation is; if the Bladder be inflamed, open the Liver-vein on the right Arm,

Arm, draw as much blood as your Patients ſtrength will bear; and if you open the inferiour Veins, it is a good derivation: then give the Clyſter again, and as often as need requireth; but remember to give it in a ſmall quantity, leaſt it oppreſs the Tumor. Uſe Cupping and Scarrifying Frictions and ligatures to the extream parts, to draw the Humors outwards. You muſt allay the heat of the blood by cooling Juleps, in which uſe no *Diuretick* Simple, leſt it carry humors to the part and increaſe the inflammation: in the declination of the Diſeaſe, *Diuretick* Medicines may be given; you may make a cooling Julep thus: *Take of the Diſtilled water of Endive, Lettuce, Plantane and Purſlane, of each four ounces, Syrup of Pomegranats two ounces, the Syrup of water-lillies and Violets, of each one ounce, Oyl of Vitriol as much as ſufficeth to give it a grateful reliſh; mix them for four Mornings and Evenings Draughts.* Or you may make an Emulſion of the Seeds of Sorrel, Lettuce, Purſlane, Poppy, Almonds, Pine Nuts, and the like. The great cold Seeds are Diuretick, and muſt not be uſed in the beginning of the Diſeaſe, for the reaſon before given. Nor ought you at firſt to purge till the Declination, then you may profitably purge with Medicines which are gentle, as Manna, Caſſia, Rhubarb, Tamarinds, Diaprunes lenitive, Syrup of Roſes, &c, Outwardly you may apply Cataplaſmes, Liniments, unguents that are cooling, repelling, and (if the Inflammation be in the Bladder) aſtringing, when the Defluxion is ſtopped uſe Softners and Diſſolvers. If the ſtrangury, or any other dangerous Symptome appear, converſe with their proper Chapters. If the Tumor tend to Suppuration, which you may know by the increaſe of the Feaver and Symptomes, trembling and vomiting, you muſt help Nature with mollifying Cataplaſms, the Chapters of Inflammations of other parts will adviſe you. If the Tumor appear outwardly, you muſt open it with a Cautery, or Inciſion-knife: if it break, and the Matter fall into the *Abdomen*, it brings ſudden death, or a Hectick Feaver. If the Tumor grow hard and the Feaver gone, it breeds the Dropſie, evil Habit, or ſome ſuch Diſeaſe, and is incureable, for the moſt part; you muſt deal with it as with the Schirrhus of the Liver.

CHAP. LXV.

Of the ulcer of the Reins and Bladder.

THis Diſeaſe is cauſed either from an Impoſthume broken there from ſharpneſs of the humors, or from a Stone which doth corrode them.

This

This Diſeaſe is known by the voiding of much Matter with the Urine. To know whether the Reins or the Bladder be diſeaſed, take a few Rules; If the Ulcer be in the Reins, the pain is there, the Matter is more concocted, more in quantity, and more mixed with the Urine, making it appear like Milk, which ſtanding, ſettleth to the bottom; ſometimes much blood is voided, and pieces of fleſh, which ſometimes ſtops the paſſage. When the Ulcer is in the Bladder, contrary ſigns appear, the pain is near the Privities, the Matter is leſs in quantity, and not well concoct, but of divers colours, and ſtinketh; ſometimes Matter is voided without Urine: if the Ulcers be old, callous and hard, ſnotty Flegm is voided, ſuch as is voided, if there be a Stone in the Bladder; for the moſt part little skins, like Scales or Bran, are voided.

As all inward Ulcers are dangerous, ſo are theſe much more, becauſe the continual Flux of Humors, with the urine, to the part, doth nouriſh the ulcer. The violence of the pain cauſeth Watching, and a Conſumption of the whole Body. If the ulcer be taken in time, and the Patient young, it may be cured, elſe not.

The Cure muſt be performed by evacuating the peccant Humors, by cleanſing, drying, and healing the ulcer. You muſt purge the humors which flow to the part affected with gentle Medicines, ſuch as are preſcribed in the Chapter afore-going. If there be Repletion or Inflammation in the part, let Phlebotomy be uſed: Evacuate the humors by gentle Purgers, mentioned in the Chapters afore-going. *Mercurius Dulcis*, doth cleanſe and heal the ulcer. Turpentine is a good cleanſer; it is good for the Patient to vomit often. After due Evacuations, you muſt uſe Cleanſers, as the Milk of Cows, Goats or Aſſes, which are very good, and Cleanſe with their wheyiſh part, and heal with their cheezy, but give it not in a Feaver. Let the Patient drink Water and Sugar, thin Hydromel, or Barley-water: In the Hydromel if there be a Feaver, boyl the cold Seeds, Mallows, Liquoriſh, *&c.* Waters that ſpring from Allum and Iron Mines are good, for they correct the heat, and cleanſe the ulcer. The Decoction of China, Guajacum, Sarſaparilla, and the like, is good to dry up the Humors, to purge the crude Matter in them that have the French Pox, and have no Feaver nor Flux of blood: But leſt the Bowels ſhould be inflamed, give cooling Broaths at Night. After the uſe of Cleanſers, (you may ſee by the urine when the ulcer is cleanſed, *viz.* when it appeareth white and cleane without any dreggy or filthy Matter,) then you muſt give aſtringing, glutinating and healing Medicines: *Take of Conſerve of Roſes four ounces, Bolearmonick, Terra Sigillata, red Coral, and Sanguis Draconis, of each two drams, the Seeds of Lettuce, Purſlane and Plantane, of each one dram, red Roſes and*

ſhavings

shavings of Ivory, of each two scruples, with Syrup of Comphry make an Opiate. Or you may make of it a Mass for Pills with Venice Turpentine, or (if that cause pain) with Juyce of Liquorish. Chymists do much commend *Antimonium Diaphoreticum, Mercurius Dulcis, & Diaphoreticus.* To allay the vehemency of the pain, you must sometimes mix Anodines with your Medicines, as *Laudanum*, the Syrup of Poppies, and the Emultion of the cold Seeds. Outwardly foment the Region of the Kidneys, thus: *Take of Camomel, Mallows, Melilot, Pellitory of the Wall, and Violets, of each one handful: the Roots of Marsh-mallows, and water-Lillies, of each two ounces: the Seeds of Flax, Fenugreek, and winter-Cherries, of each three drams: make a Decoction and Foment the part.* Then apply this Liniment, *Take of the Oyl of Violets and sweet Almonds, of each one ounce and an half: Oyl of Roses one ounce; of the Mucilage made of the Seeds of Marsh-mallows and Fenugreek, of each two ounces: Saffron one Scruple, make a Liniment.* If the Ulcer be in the Bladder, you must make an Injection twice in a day, with new Milk Whey, Hydromel, or Barley Water with Honey of Roses, to cleanse; afterwards add Astringents and Driers, as the *white Troches of Rhasis or of Gordonius*: or boyl in Whey or Barley-water the Roots of Comphry, Allum, Mirrh, Tragacanth, and the like.

CHAP. LXVI.

Of extraordinary Pissing.

Διαβήτης, *Diabetes* is a quick and plentiful making of Water, after which followeth violent Thirst, and a wasting of the whole Body. The Cause of this Disease is a hot Distemper of the Reins, which draweth Water violently from the Veins, which causeth a great Thirst after drink which as soon as it is taken, is carried to the Reins; where burthening the retentive Faculty, and provoking the expulsive, it is soon sent to the Bladder. Some attribute it to cholerick, sharp, and salt Humors in the Kidneys, which draw Water thither; as such humors which stick to the Tunicles of the Stomach in Feavers, cause Thirst. Others will not admit of this Opinion, because the Kidneys onely suffer in this Disease; and that Choler, and other burnt humors, are first bred in the Liver, They say there is a venemous Quality bred in the Kidneys. *Galen* himself is of this opinion, that divers kinds of Poysons may breed in the Body of Man. In *Lybia* there is a Serpent, called in Greek Δίψαχος, *Dipsacos*, (which name the Greeks gave this Disease, from the unquenchable Thirsts

Thirſt, with which it is accompanied) which Serpent, if he biteth any man, infecteth him with ſuch a Poyſon, as begets an unquenchable Thirſt.

The Signs of this Diſeaſe are clear from what hath been ſaid, *viz.* An unquenchable Thirſt, an extraordinary Piſſing, and voiding the Drink as ſoon (almoſt) as it is drunk; and a decay of the whole Body.

This Diſeaſe is deadly, if it be not taken in the beginning, and the Patient young, for it brings a Conſumption.

If you judge the Patient curable, you muſt labour to allay the hot Diſtemper of the Kidneys; to correct their poyſonous Quality, to thicken the humors which flow to them, and to ſtrengthen them. Firſt, give mollifying and aſſwaging Clyſters, and purge, if you ſee occaſion, as you are taught in the Chapter *Of the Inflammation of the Kidneys*. Gentle Vomits do evacuate and draw the humours from the Ureters. If nothing forbid, open a Vein in the Arm.

To correct the diſtemper and thicken the humours, make a Julep, thus: Take of the diſtilled water (or the Decoction) of Plantane, four ounces; of Lettuce, Poppy, and Purſlane, of each two ounces: the Syrup of Mirtles, Comphry and Quinces, of each one ounce: the Syrup of Poppies, half an ounce: the Spirit of Vitriol, twenty drops; mix them and make a Julep. If you will have a medicine more aſtringent or binding, thus: Take of the ſeeds of Plantane, Purſlane, and Coriander prepared, of each one ounce: the Flowers of red Roſes, Pomegranates, and yellow Mirabolans, of each half an ounce; Nutmegs half a dram: Coral and Pearl prepared, burnt Harts-Horn, Bole-armenick, and the Roots of Tormentil, of each one ſcruple: make them into powder. Or, if you pleaſe, make them into a ſoft Electuary, with the Syrup of Myrtles, Comphry, or Quinces. The milk of Aſſes, Cows, Goats or Sheep is good, eſpecially if Flints be often quenched therein.

Sweating is a good Remedy, if it be provoked by outward means, or with China, Sarſa, and ſuch mild Medicines, for it drives the watry humour outward: but beware of ſtrong Medicines, leſt they purge by Urine, and increaſe the Diſtemper. Outwardly foment the Loyns with things which cool and bind; as the roots of Sorrel, Plantane, Pomegranate-Peels, Sumach ſeeds, *&c.* boiled in Vinegar, afterwards anoint with the Unguent of Roſes, Sanders, and *Comitiſſa*.

CHAP. LXVII.

Of involuntary Piſſing.

THis Diſeaſe conſiſteth in the hurting of the retentive Action of the Bladder. Some are ſubject to this Diſtemper, while they are awake, which is the worſt. Others are ſubject to it ſleeping only, which is not ſo bad, becauſe then the animal Functions are leſs exerciſed. There are two cauſes of this Diſtemper; Firſt, the Weakneſs and Looſneſs of the Sphincter Muſcle of the Bladder. Or Secondly, the exquiſite Senſe of the Bladder, and the ſharpneſs of the Urine, (which ſtirreth up the expulſive Faculty) with conſent of the Will. The firſt Cauſe is apparent in ſucking Children, weak people, and ſuch whoſe vital Heat is decayed, and the Body oppreſſed with cold and moiſt humors. The other Cauſe you may diſcover in thoſe, whoſe Bladder nor Sphincter is no ways diſtempered; but they imagine (when the quantity and ſharpneſs of the Urine ſtirreth up the expulſive Faculty) that they are piſſing againſt the Wall, and ſo get a cuſtome of it, which cannot be cured by Medicines. The Sphincter Muſcle may become weak or looſe by Youth, old Age, decay of vital Heat, by the Palſie; in Women, from Diſeaſes of the Womb, or hard Labour, cutting for the Stone, or any Wound there, or deep Ulcer.

This Diſeaſe is eaſily known, and the cauſe thereof is as eaſily diſcovered; if it come by Wound, Ulcer, old Age, or the like, it is apparent. If it come by conſent of the other parts, Diſeaſes of thoſe parts are obvious as the original: If neither of them appear, conſider the cold and moiſt Temper of the part, which is known by the internal and external cauſes, and the Effects upon them depending, as Softneſs of the Body, Whiteneſs, and Looſneſs of the Nerves about the privities, Childhood, Age, evil phlegmatick Concoction, and ſuch like.

In old Men this Diſeaſe is incurable, becauſe the vital Heat cannot be repaired. In Children Nature worketh the Cure, when they grow elder, by drying up the ſuperfluous Humidity, and knitting the Muſcle; but if a man continue ſo till the Age of twenty or twenty five, he is incurable. If involuntary Piſſing come to a man ſick of an acute Feaver, Death is at hand.

If this Diſeaſe come by a Wound or Ulcer, or any other manifeſt Diſeaſe, the Cure Depends upon the removing of them; otherwiſe the Cure is wrought by amending the cold and moiſt Diſtemper, and the looſneſs of the Sphincter Muſcle. Firſt, you muſt purge the cold and flegmatick humors; add to your phlegm-Purgers ſuch Medicines, which

which purge and leave a binding Quality behind, as Rubarb, Myrabolans, and the like. Then give Medicines that knit the parts and dry the humors: *Take of the Roots of Comphry, and Cypress, of each half an ounce; Cypress-Nuts, and Myrtles dryed, of each two drams: Coriander-seed prepared, Red Coral, Amber, and Shavings of Ivory, of each one dram: the seeds of Plantane, Rue, and Acorn Cups, of each two scruples; powder them, and with the Syrup of Comphry make an Opiate, and give the Quantity of a Chesnut Morning and Evening; or drink half a dram of the powder in red Wine.* Sweating Medicines are much commended. Things proper for the cure of this Disease are, the Brain and Stones of a Hare burnt: the Throat of a Cock; Snails and Egg-shells; Mice fried or dried to powder; Hogs-Hoofs powdered; Agrimony and the Gizzards of Hens in powder. Apply Medicines to the Privities that are hot, strengthning and astringing. Let him drink the Decoction of the inward Bark of an Oak, of Sloes, and such like; and let him avoid drink to bedward. You must allay the Symptoms which may accompany this Disease, as Feavers, Thirst, Watchings, Consumptions, *&c.* by the Remedies laid down in their proper Chapters.

CHAP. LXVIII.

Of the Stoppage of the Urine and Strangury.

THe Stoppage of Urine and the Strangury, are Diseases, which differ only in degree; the first is called by the Greeks Ἰσχουρία; the other Στραγγουρία. *Iscuria* is when the Urine is totally stopped: when little is voided, then it is called *Stranguria*. The first is caused by an Obstruction in the Nerve, which helpeth the expulsive Faculty of the Bladder, by the Palsie, or some sleepy or stupifying Disease. A cold Distemper of the Bladder, dulling the Sense thereof, may be the Cause. Sometimes an Inflammation or Tumor in the Muscle of the Bladder may stop the passage, the Stone, some thick humor, clod of Blood, or the like. Sometimes by long holding of Water, by which the Bladder is so stretched that it cannot contract it self to open the passage. Sometimes the Bladder is empty, and no Urine cometh to it, this is called a bastard *Iscuria*, and may be caused by some hurt in the attractive or expulsive Faculty of the Reins. The attractive Faculty is hurt by some Stoppage in the Reins, or emulgent Veins. The Reins may be obstructed by the Stone, thick Flegm, or the like; the emulgent Veins, by abundance of Blood or

Water. Sometimes the watry humour is ſpent, as in Feavers: or ent to ſome other part, as in the Dropſie; by which means the attractive Faculty of the Reins is hindred. The expulſive Faculty of the Reins is hindred by the Stone, Flegm, or clods of Blood.

Diag. The Diſeaſe is eaſily known; the Cauſes thereof may be obtained. If it come by long holding the Urine, the Patient is able to inform you. If there be a ſtoppage in the part, the uſe of the Catheter or ſearing-Candle, and the ingenuity of the Artiſt will diſcover the Nature of the ſtoppage. If the paſſage be ſtopped by the Stone, the Symptoms of the Stone have gone before: If a Caruncle, there hath gone before a *Gonorrhœa*, or an ulcer in the paſſage of the Yard. If clods of Blood ſtop the paſſage; the Patient hath formerly voided blood, and clotted blood will ſtick to the Catheter.

The *Strangury* is thus known, There is neither Weight, Tumor, or Extenſion about the Privities, but rather an Emptineſs: the attractive or expulſive Faculty of the Reins is obſtructed as aforeſaid.

Prognoſticks are thus made; This Diſeaſe is ever dangerous, if it continue above ſeven days, it is deadly. The ſame judge, if the Patient hath Hiccough or *Tenaſmus* accompanying this Diſeaſe: or if it came by a Wound or Blow upon the Back-bone; or if his Breath ſtink of Piſs.

The Cure of both theſe conſiſteth in removing the Cauſes. If it proceed from the fulneſs of the emulgent Veins, bleeding is good: If from Diſeaſes of the Reins or Ureters, ſeek the Cure out of the Chapters that treat of the Pain, Inflammation, or Stone in the Kidneys. If it depend upon the Inflammation of the Bladder, ſee the 64 Chapter. If upon the Stone faſtned in the Neck of the Bladder, lay the Patient upon his back with his Thighs lifted up, move him hither and thither till the Stone fall out of the paſſage: If that will not do, make uſe of the *Catheter*. If the Stone lieth in the paſſage of the Yard, bathe the Yard in warm Milk or Oyl, and labour to get it out with your fingers: if it will not come out, bind the Yard on each ſide, and make an Inciſion on the upper-ſide of the Yard. If a Caruncle ſtop the paſſage, Medicines which are proper to take it away, muſt be conveyed to the part with a Wax-Candle. If Phlegm obſtruct, purge it with medicines convenient, and when you ſee occaſion, give ſuch as provoke Urine. The Chapters of the Stone of the Bladder or Kidneys will direct you how to prepare them, as alſo Clyſters, Fomentations, unguents, and the like.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXIX.

Of the Scalding of the Urine.

Δυσουρία. *Dyſuria* in Greek, is a Diſeaſe, which Modern Writers call, *Scalding of the urine*: it differs from *Stranguria* in this, That more Water is made, and with far more pain. Any thing that can wound the Sphincter-Muſcle, or paſſage of the Bladder, may be the Cauſe. The uſual Cauſe is either a mixture of ſharp Humors with the urine, or ſometimes the ſharpneſs of the urine, cauſed by the eating of hot and ſharp Meats, or by the hot diſtemper of the Bowels, Liver, or other parts: or from evil Concoction in the Stomach or Liver, by which the Blood is not freed from ſalt and tartarous Humours, which being ſucked to the Kidneys, is ſent to the Bladder, and cauſeth pain. Filthy Matter coming from an ulcer in the Reins or Bladder may be the Cauſe; he who is troubled with a *Gonorrhœa* or *Running of the Reins*, is ſeldome free from ſcalding urine. To conclude, the Stone or large Gravel may be the Cauſe.

The Knowledge of this Diſeaſe is evident, the Signs of the Cauſes are eaſily gathered. If it be cauſed by the Stone, Inflammation, or *Gonorrhœa*, it is known by their proper Signs. If from ſharpneſs of urine, by the mixture of Humours, the urine will be thin, and high coloured; or in it will appear a mixture of Choler, Phlegm, or Matter; the Patient hath eaten hot things, or elſe hath ſome hot Diſtemper.

This Diſeaſe is not very dangerous unleſs it continue long, and ulcerateth the Neck of the Bladder: Sometimes it is hard to be cured, eſpecially if the Patient be old.

The Cure muſt be wrought by taking away the Cauſe: If a mixture of ſharp humors make the Urine ſharp, firſt make uſe of Phlebotomy, which is good to correct the hot diſtemper of the Liver and other parts, make uſe of this Evacuation as often as the Patient's Conſtitution will bear, and the Diſtemper require; then, to derive it from the part affected, open the lower Veins. Then purge with Caſſia, Manna, Rhubarb, Mirabolans, Tamarinds, and ſuch things which purge gently: if you give it with the Decoction of Plantane, Mallows, Lettuce, Purſlane, and the like, it will be the better. A gentle Vomit is much commended as a good Revulſion. Cooling Cliſters are good. Inwardly the Whey of Goats milk, or Mineral Waters that cool, are good for ordinary drink. Or this Julep: *Take of the Roots of Marſh and common Mallows, of each one ounce; Lettuce, Endive, Purſlane, and Violet leaves, of each one handful: Jujubes and*

Sebestens, of each one ounce: of the four great cold Seeds, a dram: the flowers of Violets, Roses, and Water-Lillies, of each one Pugil: boyl them in Spring-water to a pint and an half; strain it, and add of Jujubes, Violets, and Poppies, of each one Ounce and an half; Oyl of Vitriol twenty drops: make a Julep for four Doses, to be taken Morning and Evening. If there be no Feaver, give Milk by it self. The Troches of Winter-Cherries is good. If the pain be very great, let the Patient, when he maketh water, put his Yard into warm milk, or a Decoction of Mallows, and other cooling Herbs. Or inject Milk. Plantane-Water, or an Emulsion of the cold Seeds into the passage. Baths and Fomentations made of cool Herbs are good; and if the Privities be anointed with *Unguentum Populeon*, the Oyl or Unguent of Roses, Oyl of Lillies, and the like, it profiteth. If the Liver, Reins, or other parts by their Heat be the Cause, use Medicines that are good to cool them. If the Liver be too hot, bleed the Hæmorrhoids, or make an Issue in the right Leg. If it come from the Stone, Inflammation, or Ulcer of the Bladder or Kidneys, cure them according to the Rules in their proper Chapters; but the cooling Medicines before mentioned are good to allay the Symptomes.

CHAP. LXX.

Of Pissing of Blood.

THough Blood may come from divers parts of the Body to the passages of the Urine, yet I shall here speak only of that Bloody Urine, which is made from the defect of the Reins or Bladder.

The usual Causes are, much sharp blood which corrodeth the Veins, or plenty of blood which bursteth them: Sometimes a Stone in the Reins or Bladder, being moved by Riding or violent Exercise, by its roughness teareth the part. A Fall or Stroak, vehement Motion, lifting or carrying may break a Vein. Sometimes the Weakness of the Reins being not able to divide the urine from the blood, may cause this Disease.

This Disease is apparent to the Senses, for when blood is mixed with the urine, it appeareth like Water wherein Flesh hath been washed, with Clods of blood at the bottom: if it stayes too long in the Bladder, it looks black. The place that is pained shews the part affected. If it come from the Reins, it is more mixed with the urine, than if it come from the Bladder. If it come from the Bladder, it is in a lesser quantity. If it come from the Stone in the Kidneys, or

Bladder,

Bladder, the Signs mentioned in their proper Chapters will appear. If it come from Repletion or Sharpneſs of Humors, the Abundance of Blood, Choler, Melancholy, or ſuch Humours appear in the Body. If it come by a Blow, Fall, violent Exerciſe, *&c.* the Patient is able to inform.

This Diſeaſe, if it be violent and continue long, is very dangerous; for ſometimes the Patient falleth into a Conſumption, ſometimes into the Dropſie: Sometimes it cauſeth a ſtoppage of urine, and ſometimes an Ulcer breedeth in the place from whence the Blood floweth.

If Blood or ſharp Humours abound, begin the Cure with blood-letting; after a while, for derivation, let the Hæmorrhoids and the *Sephæna* or Ancle-Vein be opened. Then purge the cholerick Humours with thoſe medicines that are preſcribed in the 30 Chapter *Of Spitting of Blood.* After you have purged ſufficiently, give things that knit the Veins and ſtop blood. For this purpoſe give four or five ounces of the Juyce of Plantane, and a ſcruple of the Troches of Amber, or of Gordonius, Morning and Evening. *Foreſtus* in his Obſervations doth much commend Sheeps-milk, ſix ounces, with one dram of Bole-armenick, is the Doſe. The Decoction of Knot graſs, Purſlane, Horſe-tail, and Comphry Roots, Plantane, Pomegranates, Quinces, and the like. Likewiſe the powder of red Coral, Blood-ſtone, *Sanguis Draconis*, *Terra Sigillata*, given with the water or juice of Plantane is good. Give Julcps to allay the Heat of the Blood. Apply ſuch things to the Loins as cool and aſtringe, thus: *Take of the Roots of Biſtort, Comphry, and Clowns-Wound-Wort, of each one Ounce; Horſe-tail, Plantane, Purſlane, Knat-graſs, and Shepherds purſe, of each one handful: Pomegranate-peels half an ounce; Sumach, Myrtle-Berries, and Hypociſtis, of each two drams: Acorn-cups, red and yellow Sanders, of each one dram; red Roſes, three pugils: boyl them in Smiths-water, and Vinegar, therewith foment the Reins.* Then anoint the Loins with *Unguentum Comitiſſæ*, and *Refrigerans Galeni*; and if you would have it bind more, add the juyce of Plantane, or ſuch like, *Sanguis Draconis, &c.* Then wear a thin plate of Lead about the Reins, pricked full of holes. Let the Patient's ordinary drink be Beer, in which is tunned Maſtich-wood ſliced and cut ſmall, Plantane, and the Herbs before-named. If the Liver be diſtempered with Heat, confer with the 53 Chapter. If the Stone or Gravel be the Cauſe, uſe no ſtrong *Diuretick*s, becauſe they provoke the Flux, but that which I have known very effectual in this caſe, I ſhall here commend, and put an end to the Chapter: *Take of the four greater and leſſer cold Seeds, of each one dram; Quince-ſeeds half a dram: the ſeeds of Marſh-*

Mallows, white Poppy and Winter-Cherries, of each one ſcruple; make an Emulſion with the Decoction of Marſh-Mallows, and give two, three, or four ſpoonfuls in the Morning; and if you add a little Oyl of Vitriol, it will be the better. Venice Turpentine made into Pills with the powder of Rubarb half a dram taken in the Morning doth gently cleanſe the Reins.

CHAP. LXXI.

Of the Green-Sickneſs.

THis Diſeaſe is called by ſome, the Virgins-Diſeaſe, the White-Feaver, the white Jaundice, but vulgarly the Green-Sickneſs. It is an evil habit of the Body, proceeding from the Obſtruction of the Veins about the Womb, Liver, Spleen, and Meſentery, cauſing a heavineſs and unweildineſs of the whole Body, difficulty of Breathing, panting of the Heart, and Head-Ach, a deſire after Food that is evil, and a loathing of good. The Veins about the Womb being obſtructed, that Blood which Nature hath ordained to go thither, having not free paſſage, runs upwards, and oppreſſeth the Heart, Liver, Spleen, Diaphragma, ſtops the Veſſels, and deſtroys the natural Heat; hence it cometh to paſs, that the Stomach and Bowels cannot concoct well as they ought to do, ſo Crudities are diſperſed throughout the body, and make an evil habit. Sometimes, by this means, the *Hypocondria* is ſwelled, which depreſſing the *Diaphragma*, cauſeth ſhortneſs of Breath. This groſs blood being carried in the great Artery to the Heart, which, leſt it ſhould be ſuffocated by it, labours for its deliverance, and often moving of its Arteries cauſeth a Palpitation and beating of the Temples. The Stomach, by this means being filled with Crudities and Excrementitious humours, cauſeth a Loathing of Food, and deſire after ſuch things which ought not to be eaten, as Salt, Chalk, Coals, Aſhes, Oat-meal, Wheat, Tobacco-Pipes, *&c.* which Diſeaſe is called *Pica Malacia*, and we have ſpoken of it in the 35 Chapter of this Book. This Obſtruction is cauſed many wayes, as drinking of cold drink to Bedward; eating raw or unripe Fruits. Some go to Feaſts, and upon a full Stomach dancing and ſporting all Night, diſturb the natural Frame of the body, and want Reſt: others ſleep too much, and ſit long at their work, as Seamſters, Bonelace-makers, and the like. By theſe and the like means, Concoction is hurt, the natural Heat is extinguiſhed, and the Body filled with crude Excrements, and thick ſlimy Humors, which cauſe Obſtructions.

This

This Diſeaſe is eaſily known, and you may know the diſeaſed, if you do but view their Faces, which are pale and white, ſometimes of a Lead-colour, blew or green, the Face and Eye-lids, the Legs and Feet ſwelled: The whole Body is unweildy and lazy. When the Body is ſtirred by Exerciſe or Walking, eſpecially going up a hill or ſteep place, there followeth Palpitation of the Heart and ſhortneſs of Breath, beating in the Temples, and great Head-ach: behind, if the Womb be obſtructed: before, if the Hypocondria be afflicted; there is great loathing of wholeſome Meat, and deſiring the contrary: the Pulſe is ſwift and quick, as in a Feaver, and when the Diſeaſe comes to the height, the Terms are ſtopped.

This Diſeaſe continueth a long time, yet is ſeldome dangerous; ſometimes, by long continuance, it breeds Corruption in the natural parts, Dropſies, Feavers, Conſumptions, which end in Death. If the Veins of the Womb onely are obſtructed, a Husband will cure her. Women, that have a long time been in this condition, bring forth weak and ſickly Children, and ſometimes they are barren.

This Diſeaſe is cured by opening the Obſtructions, evacuating the filthy Humors, and ſtrengthening of the parts. The Obſtructions are opened, by ſuch Medicines as are mentioned in the cure of the Obſtructions of the Liver and Spleen; you may add to them ſuch things which reſpect the Womb; as Mugwort, Fetherfew, Penny-royal, *&c.* If the Spleen be obſtructed, and ſuch things which are proper for that, as Caper-bark, Ceterach, Spleen-wort, *&c.* Open the *Saphæna* or Ancle-vein; but firſt, if the Maid be full of Blood, open a Vein in the Arm. Then purge often with ſuch Medicines as are preſcribed in the Cure aforenamed: and make uſe of ſuch Medicines as powerfully open Obſtructions there preſcribed. *Zacutus Luſitanus* doth much commend the Conſerve of Mugwort given thirty dayes together, drinking after it a little of the diſtilled Water of Savin, in which Rhubard hath been infuſed. The Salt of Mugwort is very good, and *Fæcula Brioniæ* mixed with the Conſerve, hath an effectual and powerful operation. If the Obſtructions are ſtubborn, and not eaſily opened, make a Bath thus; *Take of the Roots of Marſh-mallows, Briony, Elder, and Lillies, of each two pound; Balm, Fetherfew, Mallows, Mercury, Madder, Mugwort, Nep, Penny-royal and Violets, of each three handfuls; the Seeds of Flax and Fenugreek, of each two ounces; boyl them in a ſufficient quantity of Water, and let the Patient bathe her ſelf in the morning and Evening two dayes, and let the Decoction be renewed the ſecond day.* The next day open the Vein under the Ancle, if the Terms be ſtopped, (as for the moſt part they are in this Diſeaſe) then give Medicines that powerfully open Obſtuctions: when you find that the Obſtructions are opened, which you may eaſily perceive by the decay of the

afore-

aforenamed Symptomes, then you muſt diſcuſs the peccant Humours that remain in the Veins and other parts of the Body, by Sweats; for which you muſt uſe the Decoction of Guajacum in cold conſtitutions; or of China and Sarſa in thoſe that are hot. In the mean while every fourth or fifth day, give a purge to cleanſe the Body of the crude Humors, which cannot be ſent forth by Sweat.

CHAP. LXXII.

Of the Stoppage of the Terms.

Menſium Suppreſſio, or the Terms ſtopped, is when a Woman of ripe Age hath little or no Evacuation of Blood by the Womb, once in a moneth; yet gives not ſuck, nor is with Child. Divers Diſeaſes of the Womb may cauſe this Suppreſſion, *viz.* A cold and dry Diſtemper, which thickneth and bindeth the Womb. A hot and dry Diſtemper dryeth the part: Inflammation, Tumor, Ulcer or Eroſion of the mouths of the Veſſels in Abortion; or Tumor in the adjacent parts by compreſſion, may cauſe this Stoppage. The Veſſels of the Womb may be obſtructed by thick and phlegmatick Humors, or they may be compreſſed by a Tumor in the parts adjacent. The cauſe may be in the Blood, when it offends in Quantity, Quality or Motion; in Quantity, when there is too much Blood, which doth ſo dilate the Veſſels, that they cannot contract to expel it; too little, when the Body hath not enough for its Nouriſhment. It offendeth in Quality, when the Blood is thick, ſlimy and viſcous, by ſome cold Diſtemper of the Liver, or by the mixture of ſuch Humors with the Blood. It offends in Motion, when it flows ſome other way; as by the Hæmorrhoids, by urine, the Noſe, Vomiting, and by Spitting, and many other wayes. *Riverius* ſaith, that he ſaw a Maid which had a ſore Head, which opened once a moneth, and bled plentifully; and I knew a Maid in the ſame Condition at the time of writing hereof.

External cauſes are, taking Cold in the time of the Flux, eating things of a very hot Nature, by which the ſubſtance of the Liver is dryed, or Food that is cold, thick and aſtringent, eſpecially at the time of Purgation, eating too much or too little, by too long retaining of Excrements; by bleeding at the Noſe, or any unnatural Evacuation by Vomit, Seige, urine or Sweat. To theſe add the external Cauſes mentioned in the Chapter aforegoing, *Of the Green-Sickneſſe*.

This Diſeaſe is known by the Patient's Relation, but it is convenient

ent to diſtinguiſh between this kind of Suppreſſion, and that which is common to Women with Child. They who have their Menſtrues thus ſtopped are pale and more diſcoloured than thoſe who are with Child. They who are in this Condition, the longer it continues, the more the Symptomes encreaſe; the contrary you ſhall find in Women with Child. They are likewiſe more ſad and melancholy than thoſe who are with Child: In thoſe the lower Belly, though it ſwell, yet it is not ſo hard nor proportionable to the Womb. And laſtly, an expert Midwife may diſtinguiſh it by the mouth of the Womb; for in theſe the mouth of the Womb is not ſo cloſe ſhut as in a Woman with Child, but rather hard and painful.

More particularly, the Stoppage of the Veſſels of the Womb are known by a pain in the Loins, eſpecially when the Terms ſhould flow; and if any thing iſſueth, it will be white, or blackiſh and ſlimy. If the parts adjacent be obſtructed, the Veins in the Thighs and Arms, by abundance of blood are ſwollen; eſpecially if the Woman be fleſhy, plethorick, and hath fed high. Or elſe the Woman wanteth blood: Or the blood is corrupted, which you may perceive by the evil habit of the body, and ſome Diſeaſe of the Liver. If the blood hath a preposterous motion, or flow ſome other way, it is manifeſt.

The Stoppage of the Terms is very dangerous, and many (I had almoſt ſaid all) Diſeaſes may come thereof. It is leaſt dangerous, if it come by reaſon of too much blood. It is worſt, which cometh by ſtreightneſs of the Veſſels, or crude and ſlimy Humours, which obſtruct them.

The Cure conſiſteth in this generally; If too much blood be the cauſe, abate the quantity by Phlebotomy, firſt in the Arm, then in the lower Veins. Then, by Fomentations, ſoften and relax the parts about the Womb, and give ſuch purges as do properly provoke the Terms. If you find that want of blood is the cauſe of the Obſtruction, uſe Reſtoratives in the firſt place, and whatever you find to be the cauſe of Extenuation, let that be removed; and if you find a preposterous motion of the blood, labour to expel it, and drive it to the paſſage of the Womb. But ſeeing that (for the moſt part) this Obſtruction is in the Veins of the Womb, you may follow the ſame Rule in cure, preſcribed in the Chap. *Of the Green-Sickneſs*, adding ſuch things which more eſpecially reſpect the Womb. Purge thus, *Take of Aloes, three drams; the Miſs of Cochy Pills, one dram; with the Juyce of Savin (or Syrup of Mugwort) make twenty Pills; and give three in the morning every third day:* Emollient Clyſters are likewiſe of great uſe. After Phlebotomy, and ſufficient purging, give ſuch things as powerfully open Obſtructions, ſuch as are preſcribed in the Cure of Obſtructions of the Liver and Spleen; to theſe add Medicines made

made of the Roots of Aſparagus, Parſly, Fennel, Smallage, Madder, Elicampane, Birth-wort, Angelica, Cyperus: the leaves of Wormwood, Calamint, Camomil, Origan, Southern-wood, Mugwort, Penny-royal, Hyſſop, Hore-Hound, Rue, Motherwort, Sage, Fetherfew, Maiden-hair, Nep and Savin: the ſeeds of Smallage, Parſly, Fennel, Juniper, Bayes, Annis, Cummin, Nettles, and ſuch like; of theſe may be made Decoctions, or diſtilled Waters, Syrups, and the like, which I omit, fearing my Book will ſwell to a far bigger Volume then I intended. Of theſe, and ſuch like, you may make a Bath for the Patient to ſit in, afterwards anoint the Share and parts about the Privities, with the Oyl of Dill, Rue, Lillies, *&c.* You may, likewiſe, make dry Suffumigations, with Caſtor, Storax, Galbanum, Cinnamon, Frankincenſe, Bdellium, Benzoin, Lignum Aloes, Cloves and Mace. Or you may make Peſſaries with the maſs of Cochy pills and Honey, and the Juyce of Mercury. Or with Hiera Picra, and Benedicta Laxativa, with the Honey and Juyce aforeſaid: but this remember, that Peſſaries muſt be applied to married Women only. If the Diſeaſe be inveterate, let iſſues be made in the Legs, and after the Menſtrual Flux is obtained, let them be dried up again.

CHAP. LXXIII.

Of the Immoderate Menſtrual Flux.

Menſium Fluxus Immodicus, is when the monthly Terms do exceed in quantity, come too often, or ſtay too long. This is cauſed by an opening of the Veins, either by Abundance, Heat, ſharpneſs or thinneſs of the Blood, or by ſome Blow, Fall or Wound: to underſtand the Cauſe more fully, have recourſe to the 19 and 30 Chapters, *Of bleeding at the Noſe, and ſpitting of Blood*. This Diſeaſe it ſelf may be known by the Patient's information, and the ſymptomes which follow, *viz.* decay of Strength and Appetite, an ill habit of the Body, by reaſon of ill Digeſtion, ſwelling of the Legs and a leady coloured Complexion. To know the Cauſes, obſerve that a thin habit of the Body, with a Diet which doth encreaſe thin and wheyiſh blood, or you may perceive the thin & wheyiſh Humors in the blood, which cometh from the Patient: this ſheweth that the blood ſoaketh through the Veins. If the Coats or Ends of the Veins be broken, the Patient hath had ſome Wound, Bruiſe or Fall, or uſed ſome immoderate Labour, Exerciſe or Venery; hath endured too great Heat or Cold: or ſhe hath had a bargain in Child-birth, a Miſcarriage, or been handled by an unskilful *Mid*wife. If there be an Exulceration in the Womb,

Womb, by which the Veins are eaten thorough, the blood droppeth by little and little, with pain and ſharpneſs: the Patient's Body is afflicted with ſharp and cholerick Humors; the blood which iſſueth is at firſt matteriſh, wheyiſh, blackiſh or yellow: If it increaſe, the ends of the Veins come with the blood, and the Flux encreaſeth, and is hard to be ſtopped.

Prognoſticks are: All long and laſting Iſſues of blood are dangerous, eſpecially thoſe of the womb: that which comes by ſoaking thorough the Veins, though it continueth longer, yet the blood and Spirits do not ſo much decay, therefore it is not ſo dangerous. On the contrary, the breaking of the Veins cauſe more danger, becauſe of the ſudden iſſuing of blood, yet is ſooner cured, becauſe the Patient hath ſtrength and ſtore of blood. But of all the other, that which comes from Exulceration is moſt dangerous, becauſe ſome part of the Veins is periſhed, which letteth out the blood in great abundance, and is very difficult to be cured. If ſhe grow weaker, and the Iſſue more violent, there is danger of death: in elderly Women it is hard to be cured.

Since the Cure muſt be performed in the ſame manner (almoſt) as is preſcribed in the 51 Chapter, *Of the Immoderate Flux of the Hæmorrhoids*, I ſhall ſay the leſs. Firſt open a Vein in the Arm, and let her bleed much by degrees. Uſe Frictions and Ligatures, and faſten Cupping-Glaſſes to her dugs, as *Hipocrates* adviſeth: Purge with the ſame medicines preſcribed in the Chapter aforegoing. Alſo Vomits are good, for they draw the blood upwards; and *Hypocrates* treating of Womens Diſeaſes, doth much commend them. Then make uſe of this Powder, much commended by *Johannes Michael Paſchalius*, and is thus prepared: *Take the ſhells of two new laid Eggs burnt: Frankincenſe, Maſtich, of each half an ounce: Pearls and red Coral prepared, and Amber, of each two drams: Hæmatites and Emerald of each half a ſcruple: Barley-meal fine ſifted, two pugils: the whites of four Eggs, and chalybated water, enough to make the powder into two Cakes: bake them in an Oven ſo hard, that they may be beaten to powder: give of this powder half a dram, or a dram in the morning in Broth made of Sheeps-feet, or Calves-feet.* The Juyce of Plantane, Yarrow, Nettles, Shepherds-Purſe, Knot-graſs, Comphry and Horſe-tale, is very good, or a Syrup made of all or either of them is much, and upon good grounds commended. Milk, in which red hot Steel hath been quenched, allayeth the ſharpneſs of the Humors, and ſtayeth the Flux. Spicknard in fine powder inwardly taken, or applyed to the womb upon a little Lint, hath been much approved of. Mineral waters, which receive their Tincture from Vitriol, Iron or Allum, do remove the Cauſe, and ſtrengthen the part. The Chymiſts do much commend the

the Tincture of Coral and vitriolated Steel. Before you go farther, take this neceſſary Caution, that you do not altogether give ſtrong aſtringents, but ſometimes Medicines which ſtrengthen the Liver, and ſomewhat bind. Outwardly foment upon her Loins, ſhare, and about the Privities, with a fomentation made of the aforegoing Herbs. Then anoint the parts aforeſaid with the Oyl of Myrtles, Maſtick and Quinces; or make an Oyntment more aſtringent, adding Frankincenſe, Dragon's Blood, ſealed Earth, Bolearmenick, and the like. *Unguentum Comitiſſæ* is very powerful in this Diſtemper: Afterwards apply a Plaiſter to the Navel and Loins, Emplaſtrum ad Herniam, Hyſtericum, or Emplaſtrum de Maſtich, either of theſe, or all three are very effectual. Likewiſe dry Fumes, Peſſaries and Injections for the womb may be prepared of the aforenamed Herbs, and other aſtringent Simples. When ſhe is cured, you muſt endeavour to prevent the Diſeaſe for the future, by the Rules preſcribed in the 51 Chapter, *Of the Immoderate Flux of the Hemorrhoids.*

CHAP. LXXIV.

Of the whites.

THis Diſeaſe is called the Flux of the Womb, the Womans Flux, and the Whites; and it is an Excrementitious Humor flowing from the womb; ſometimes white, and ſometimes watery, ſometimes mixed with yellow, green or black, according to the nature of the Humor. Women are ſubject principally to this Diſtemper, and ſometimes Maids, though ſome have affirmed the contrary, and condemned them as unchaſt; yet according to the Opinion of the wiſeſt Phyſitians, the pureſt Virgins may have this Infirmity, and their opinion is confirmed daily by Experience. Theſe Humors are bred in the whole Body, or in ſome particular part, or in the womb it ſelf. They are bred in the whole Body, either by ill Diet, or a vitious habitual Diſtemper. The particular parts may be in the Brain, Stomach, Liver or Spleen: Theſe Humors may be bred in the womb, by a cold or hot Diſtemper therein; the cold maketh it unable to digeſt its Nouriſhment, and the hot Diſtemper corrupteth it; hence cometh this Excrementitious Humor. Child bearing, Abortion, Contuſion, Inflammation, Impoſthume, or Ulcer in the womb may weaken the part, and diſpoſe it to breed and receive ſuch Humors.

This Diſeaſe is known by the relation of the patient; from what part it cometh, is thus known: If the whole Body ſend this Humor to the womb, the whole Body appeareth in an evil ſtate, is weary and

and heavy, as if the Patient were weary with hard labour, and by this Flux her body is at preſent refreſhed; the Hands and Feet are puffed up with great itching and ſtinging, if the humour be cholerick. If it come from ſome peculiar part, the Symptoms and Excrements proper to that part appear. If it come only from the womb, ſomething hath happened, which hurt the womb, as a Fall or Blow upon the Back or Belly, immoderate carnal Embracement, eſpecially if the woman be young, or any Diſeaſe of the womb. Signs that diſtinguiſh between this Diſeaſe and an Ulcer in the womb or Gonorrhæa, are theſe; If there be an Ulcer in the womb, that which floweth is more digeſted, mattery, mixed with blood and ſtringy, and cometh with pain; and the woman admits not of Copulation without pain. In the Gonorrhæa, the Matter comes in a ſmall quantity, and ſeldom, and is of a ſhining whiteneſs. But if it be a Gonorrhæa, which is gotten by acting with an unclean perſon, then is the Womb ulcerated, the Urine ſharp, and many other malignant Symptoms.

This Diſeaſe is not dangerous, but it is hard to be cured; for it is hard to divert the humours from this Channel, it being the Sink of the Body, through which the ſuperfluous humours of a healthy body are every moneth evacuated. That which is blewiſh, green, black and ſtinking, is worſe than that which is pale, white, and doth not ſtink. This Diſeaſe is ſeldom cured in old Women, becauſe they abound in phlegm. Laſtly, by its continuance it may breed great Evils, as Barrenneſs, Falling out of the womb, evil habit in the whole body, and Conſumption.

To Cure the Humour offended, it muſt be purged with convenient Medicines; and becauſe phlegm for the moſt part is the humour peccant, purge with ſuch Medicines as principally purge phlegm, with which mix ſuch as purge the humour mixed. Vomits (if the patient be ſtrong) are good, becauſe they empty the Stomach of excrementitious humours, and do powerfully revel the humours from the womb. After ſufficient Evacuations, let the Patient take ſweating Decoctions made of *Lignum Vitæ* and *Saxafras*, if the patient be phlegmatick: of *China* and *Sarſa*, if he be cholerick or melancholy. Alſo Sweat procured by ſulphurous Baths, is kind. Milk wherein ſteel hath been quenched is very good, and it will be more powerful if a little Bolearmenick, Sanguis Draconis, and Terra Sigillata be given with it. Among a multiplicity of Medicines which are aſtringent and proper for this Diſeaſe, I ſhall inſert but one or two. *Zecheus* doth highly commend this following Electuary: *Take of Gum Arabick, and Gum Traganth, of each two drams: Coral of both ſorts, Egg-ſhells burnt, Harts-horn, Dill-ſeeds, Amber, of each four ſcruples: Honey of Roſes, as much as will make it into an Electuary: give half an ounce in the morning*

Morning, and fast two hours after it. This Julep I have found of great virtue: *Take of the distilled water of Plantane, red Roses, Oak leaves, and Knot-grass, of each four ounces; infuse therein a whole Night, of the Flowers of Compiny, Bugloss, and red Roses, of each one pugil, strain them out, and make it sharp with Oyl of Vitriol; with the Syrup of Compiny and red Roses, make a Julep for four or five Mornings Draughts.* Whatever part sendeth phlegmatick Matter to the Womb, you must seek its Cure from its proper Chapter. To conclude, the Medicines prescribed in the former Chapter are good in this Distemper: Outward Remedies, as Fomentations, unguents, Fumes, Pessaries and Injections, such as are prescribed in the Chapter aforesaid, are useful here.

CHAP. LXXV.

Of the Mother.

THis Disease is Called the Hysterical Passion, *utri Strangulatio*, by the Greeks, Πνῖξ ὑστερικὴ we call it the *Mother* and *Strangling of the Womb.* It is caused by the Seed, menstrual Blood, or other excrementitious Humors retained besides the intent of nature in the Womb, and there putrefied and corrupted breedeth venemous and malignant Vapours, which arising, doth afflict divers parts of the Body. Now these Vapours do not alwayes afflict, but when they are stirred up by some Causes; (the most noted are, sweet odours, sweet meats eaten, anger, terror, and grievous passions of the mind): these and such like bring Women subject to this Infirmity into their Fits, wherein their breathing is impaired, sometimes (to appearance) abolished, the body becomes cold, their Speech gone, and pulse intercepted, so that they lie for dead, and sometimes have been laid out for burial, and yet have revived. Sometimes these Choaking Fits are not so extream, yet it is accompanied with other hysterical Symptoms; as Vomitings, Ravings, Convulsions, Swoonings, and the like. Sometimes the Patient feeleth her self, as it were, choaked by an halter or rope; this is caused by abundance of Vapours and Winds ascending from the Womb (sometimes seconded by hypocondriack Melancholly) which Vapours compressing the Diaphragma and Lungs, hinder Respiration, and the patient feeleth her self as it were strangled. Others will have it proceed from the nature of the malignant Vapours, whose property is to cause Suffocation. Sometimes she loseth her Breath without pain or sence of Strangling, by reason of the stupefactive power of these Vapours which taketh away the vital Action from

from the Heart, and ſo hindreth Reſpiration: For Nature having ordained the drawing of breath to cool the heart, and the heart is extreamly cooled by theſe venemous Vapours, having no need of the cold Air, breathing ceaſeth: for the vital Spirits being deſtroyed, the Animal, which are made of them muſt needs loſe their function; We may alſo ſay, that theſe venemous and ſtupifying Vapours do fly and aſſault the Brain, and hinder the Influx of the animal Spirits, whereby the motion of the Diaphragma and the Muſcles which ſerve for Reſpiration are hindered. Likewiſe the Womb being filled with theſe flatuous Vapours, doth aſcend towards the upper-parts, as it were, by a convulſive Motion, which cauſeth a Compreſſion of the Midriff and Muſcles of Reſpiration. Sometimes theſe ſharp and Malignant Vapours aſcend to the Head, and diſperſe themſelves into the membranous parts, and cauſe divers pains, pricking and ſmarting, and ſometimes ſtretching and ſwelling; ſometimes they cauſe pains beating like the pulſe. Sometimes the Falling-Sickneſs cometh from the Womb, by reaſon of ſharp and malignant Vapours, which having gotten a powerful Acrimony, do ſharply ſmite the nervous parts. Theſe Vapours aſſaulting the Heart, the Heart laboureth to expel them; hence ariſeth Palpitation: Likewiſe it cauſeth a great Pulſation in the Back. The Stomach doth oftentimes ſuffer much by this Diſtemper according to the nature of the humours afflicting, or part of the Stomach it gets poſſeſſion of; as want of Appetite, or a depraved Appetite, that is, deſiring Food which Nature diſdains, as Coals, Chalk, *&c.* Loathing of Meat, Vomiting, Belching, Hiccough, and pain in the Stomach. If in the Womb menſtrual Blood is retained, it floweth back by the Veins into the Liver, from thence ſhed abroad into the whole Body; hence commeth ſwelling, Feavers, and other Diſeaſes. If it flows back to the Spleen, Swelling, Stopping, Melancholy and hypochondrical Diſeaſes are bred. Laſtly, Women have pains in their Loins, Thighs, and other parts, which are cauſed by theſe Vapours conveyed from the Womb. Therefore, to know this from other pains, mark well the ſigns of this Diſeaſe.

Much may be gathered from what hath already been ſaid, remembring this, you muſt not expect all the Symptoms in one, but ſome in one, and ſome in another; the Breathing faileth, ſenſe of Strangling, coldneſs of the Body, the Pulſe ceaſeth, and the like, which I have mentioned before. There goeth before the Fit a Noiſe in the Belly below the Navil, Belching, inclination to Vomit, Wearineſs, Strengthning, the Face pale and wan. As it gathers ſtrength, it bringeth Suffocation or Choaking; afterwards the vital and animal Actions are depraved, diminiſhed, and as it were aboliſhed; the Womb may be felt in divers parts of the lower Belly gathered round like a

Ball, tossing and tumbling to and fro. When the Fit begins to be over, a moist Humor floweth out of the Womb, the body beginneth to be warm, they have a colour in their face, they open their eyes, they sigh, they begin to move, and so by degrees are freed from the Fit.

Signs of the Causes are thus known; If the Seed corrupting in the Womb hath been the Cause, there hath preceded those things which might gather together or encrease Seed, and corrupt it in the Womb; as flourishing age, high-keeping, and an idle life, Sanguine Complexion, and ripe for Generation; or one formerly accustomed to the Actions of Generation, and left it of: if any such fall into this Disease, and have their monethly purgation well, you may judge that Corruption of Seed is the Cause. If it come from the putrifaction of menstruous blood, the Menstrues are stopped, or come not down well, and the Woman wanteth no carnal Embracements. If evil humours be the Cause, the Woman enjoyeth carnal Exercise and hath her monethly purgation, but her body is full of evil humors.

Prognosticks we make thus: This Disease is seldom mortal, but of long continuance; the Patient is in great danger, if it continue long, because Respiration being so often hurt, there is danger that the native heat be suffocated. Young Women when they come to bear Children for the most part they are cured; old women are seldom or never cured. To women with Child it is very dangerous, and threatneth miscarriage: To Women lying in, as dangerous by reason of their weakness. It is good for a Woman to sneeze in the Fits, for it signifieth strength of the Brain, and it disperseth the Vapours from the Brain.

I shall lay down a few Rules: First, to give present ease in the Fit: Secondly, to give perfect Cure. First, lay her down in such a posture, that her Neck and Shoulders may lie high, her Thighs and Privities low, shooting downwards, that so the Womb may be the better reduced. Let her lower parts be rubbed, and bound so hard as to cause pain. And if her Fit be inveterate, apply Cupping-Glasses to her Hips and Share: If she swoon, tub the bottoms of her feet with Vinegar and Salt, and course Clothes. Hollow in her Ears, and bend her Fingers, and if need require, apply Epispastick Cataplasms to her feet. Put strong and stinking things under her Nose, as Leather and Feathers burnt, Brimstone fired, Assafœtida, Castoreum, & the like. But take this caution, carefully to distinguish between this Disease and the Falling-sickness, for in the latter such smells are hurtful. The Warts that grow upon a Horses legs being dried and powdered, and a Fume made thereof under the Patient's Nose is very good in the time of the Fit. The smoke of Tobacco blown into the Mouth and Nostrils is likewise of great efficacy to free the Woman from the fit. Whilst you do this,

this, you must apply Musk or Civet wrapped up in cotton-wool to the Womb. Then blow this powder into her Nose; *Take of white Pepper, Mustard-seed, Pellitory and Castor, of each one scruple; make it into a very fine Powder, and blow some up her Nose: if you judge it not strong enough, add a little white Hellebore or Euphorbium*: Or let her Nose be anointed with Oyl of Amber. If the fit be of long continuance, give her a laxative, carminative or wind-expelling Clyster: if one doth it not, give another. Afterwards give another made of Vinegar and Water, and let her drink a little Vinegar and water. Apply Emplastrum Hystericum to the Navel, or a plaister made of Galbanum, Caranna, Assafætida & Tachamahacca. If you find the sick troubled with plenty of Wind and Vapours, bathe and foment the belly with Fomentations made of emollient, carminative and discussing herbs and seeds. If the Sick be a married Woman, let her have carnal Conjunction with her Husband as soon as ever the Fit is over. If that cannot be had, that is, if she be a Maid or Widow, let a Midwife tickle the Neck of the womb with her finger, anointed with the Oyl of Musk, Cloves, or the like, that so the offensive Sperm may be avoided. You may in the Fit, give Pills made of Assafætida, Castor, Fæcula Brioniæ, Myrrh, and the like; and if the fit be violent, give Pillulæ Fætidæ. Oyl of Amber given three or four drops in some convenient Waters are very good. The After-Birth of a Woman that lieth in of her first Child, dried and powdered, and a dram given in some convenient Liquor, is excellent. *Quercitanus* his powder made of Elder-berries, taken a dram in Wine, is very good.

For the Cure, you must consider whether the Woman be with Child or not, and be careful how you administer stinking Medicines for fear of Abortion, but rather outward medicines than inward. Whatever part of the body suffer by this Disease, either Brain, Heart, liver, *&c.* take care to free and strengthen the part, seek the means in their proper Chapters. The Patient must once in a month be purged with such medicines as principally regard the humor offending, adding thereto things that are hysterical. If the body be full of blood, open a Vein, or bleed the Hæmorrhoids, if Nature requireth it. After general Evacuation, make use of swearing Decoctions, or let the Patient frequent sulphurous Baths. These Pills are much commended: *Take of the Troches of Agarick, one dram and an half; Hiera of Colloquintida, one dram; the Seeds of Carrots and Agnus Castus, of each one scruple; Myrrh, Castoreum and Diagridium, of each half a scruple; Venice Turpentine, as much as will suffice to make all into a Mass, let her take half a dram, or two scruples twice or thrice in a Moneth.* Or Pillulæ Fætidæ taken half a dram once in a moneth doth very much cleanse the Womb. Then make use of this Syrup, much com-

mended by *Mercatus*: *Take of the Juyce of Mercury, and the cream of Carthamus seeds, of each six ounces; the Water of Scorzonera, seven ounces; Sugar, as much as will make it into a syrup, while it boyls, add of Confectio de Hyacintho, of Alchermes, and a Powder of the Electuary de Gemmis, of each two drams; let the Dose be two or three ounces.* Assafœtida and Castor made into Pills with Honey, have a peculiar property against these fits: many use the former with good success, tied up in a thin ragg or sarcenet, and hung about the Neck: and for this purpose the Liver or Flesh of a Wolf, or the pizzil or stones of a Fox dried and hung about the Neck with a string, resting upon the Navel; vitriolated Steel, or the salt thereof, given with Sugar, from two to twenty grains, according to the strength of the Patient, is much commended for opening Obstructions, and cooling the Womb. Eight dayes before she expect her monthly purgation, let the Woman sit in a mollifying and resolving Bath, that so the humours may be resolved, and flow forth with her Courses. Lastly, Issues made in the Thighs are good, for they derive and turn aside evil humours from the Womb.

CHAP. LXXVI.

Of the Inflammation, ulcer, and hard swelling of the Womb.

THis Disease is a swelling of the Womb, which is caused by blood mixed with Choler, or other humors flowing to the part, vehement Exercise, or immoderate Copulation; some blow or fall upon the part: Meats that are sharp and fretting, or such things as naturally offend the part, as Cantharides or Pessaries that are of a sharp nature, Abortion, hard labour in Child-bed, or a violent handling by an unskilful Midwife.

The signs of this disease are Swelling, heat and pain about the Region of the Womb, the body feaverish. If the inflammation be in the Neck of the Womb, the pain is felt towards the Groin; If in the former side, the Bladder suffereth: if in the hinder side, the strait Gut will be sensible thereof, and the pain is violently felt about the Loyns. If either side of the Womb be inflamed, the Thigh and Groin on the same side will be heavy and pained. If you consider the Constitution and present Temper of the Patient, you may easily guess what Humour offends. If it be purely blood, the Symptoms are more mild; if Choler be mixed it is more vehement; if Phlegm or Melancholy, the Distemper is more fixed and lasting, but the pain is not so vehement. If the Inflammation imposthumate, and

gather

gather Matter, the pain and Feaver encreaſeth, and the Patient hath ſhaking Fits, and moſt of all about the Evening. Sometimes it turns to an Ulcer, which is known by avoiding of ſnotty Matter or Quitter out of the Womb. If it be party coloured, greeniſh or lead coloured, ſtinking, and cometh away with great pain, it is the worſe. If it depend upon the French Pox, or Gonorrhæa, their Symptoms will declare the ſame: Sometimes the Inflammation turns not to an Impoſthume nor Ulcer, but to a painleſs hard ſwelling, called a *Schirrhus*, which is thus known; the Feaver and pain ceaſeth, and the Swelling remaineth: there is hardneſs, heavineſs, and ſenſe of Weight, bearing down when the woman ſtandeth.

As to the Prognoſtick, I ſhall ſay a word or two to either of them: An Inflammation of the Womb is a dangerous and deadly Symptome, eſpecially if the whole Womb be inflamed. If a Woman with Child ſuffer Inflammation of the Womb, the Child dieth, and probably the Mother followeth. Ravings, Hiccoughs, Coldneſs of the Hands and Feet, and cold Sweats, are the Meſſengers of Death. If it impoſthumate, and turn to an Ulcer, it ought not to be ſlighted, becauſe the Womb is of exquiſite ſenſe, and hath a fellow-feeling with the paincipal parts of the Body. If the ulcer turns cancerous, hollow, or fiſtulous, it is ſeldom or never cured, but vexeth the Patient miſerably all her life-time. An ulcer in the neck of the Womb is moſt eaſily cured, becauſe Medicines may be applied to them immediately. A *Scirrhus*, or inſenſible hard Swelling is ſeldom cured, becauſe the natural heat is ſo weak in that part, that it can hardly diſcuſs ſuch an hard and almoſt ſtony-Subſtance: If it be not cured, it ſoon brings a Dropſie; and if it be tampered with with over-and moiſt Medicines, it turns to a Cancer.

The Cure you muſt proſecute thus: Firſt, in the Inflammation of the Womb give a cooling Clyſter, then open the Baſilick Vein on the ſame ſide the Womb is inflamed; if all the Womb be inflamed, repeat your Phlebotomy, afterwards open the lower Veins. Rubbings and Bindings are good, and Cupping Glaſſes faſtened to the Loins and Back. Purge the Humour offending with ſuch things as purge gently: Then give cooling Juleps or Emulſions to allay the heat and ſharpneſs of the Humours; mix therewith Narcoticks to give eaſe and reſt; if the Patient be tired out, apply cooling Liniments and Cataplaſms: In Liniments, uſe the Oyl and Oyntment of Roſes, *Galen*'s cooling Oyntment, Ceratum Santalinum, and ſuch like; and with the Oyl of Roſes, white Bread and Milk, make Cataplaſms, adding the Juyce of Henbane, Night-ſhade, Plantane and Sorrel; and inſtead of the white Bread, the Meal of Barley,

Flax and Fenugreek-Seed: Of such cool Herbs make Injections and Pessaries. But use not cooling and repelling too long, lest the Tumor be fixed and hardned; but rather use softning and discussing Medicines with repelling, such as these, *viz.* Marsh and common Mallows, Mugwort, Melilot, Camomil, Fenugreek. If the Patient be subject to be costive, give gentle purgers, or mollifying and cooling Clysters. If the pain be very violent, make Injections with new milk, and a little Opium: and make Pessaries of Philonium Romanum, and a little Cotton, and apply it. If it tends to Suppuration, apply a Cataplasm made of the aforenamed softning Herbs, fat Figs, yelks of Eggs, Saffron, Oyl of Lillies and fresh Butter. When it is broken, we must endeavour to purge out the Quitter, and cleanse the Ulcer. You must often purge with gentle medicines as Senna, Rhubarb, Tamarinds, Mirabolans, Agarick, Catholicon, and such like, that the evil Humours may be delivered from the Womb; for such who are easie to Vomit, a gentle Vomit is very profitable. Make a vulnerary Drink to cleanse and heal the Ulcer: *Take of Agrimony, Burnet, Mugwort, Knot-Grass, Plantane and Yarrow, of each one handful: China-root half an ounce, Rha-Ponticum one ounce, Currance and French Barley, of each two ounces; boyl them in Chicken-Broth, and let the Patient take somewhat more than a quarter of a Pint Morning and Evening.* Venice-Turpentine washed in Mugwort-water, or in the Water of any other Herb respecting the Ulcer, is good to cleanse and heal it. If the humors be sharp and painful, inject the Emulsion of the cold Seeds, Goats-milk, or (for want thereof) Cows-milk, with the juyce of Shepherds-purse, or any of the herbs aforenamed. To dry and fill up the Ulcer, make a Decoction of the aforenamed herbs, or of the like nature, made in Water wherein steel hath been quenched, or in Plantane-water: add thereto Acacia, Hypocistis, Sanguis Draconis, Bolearmonick, fine Starch, Aristolochia retunda, great Comphry, &c. Vnguentum Egyptiacum, de Plumbo, de Ceruse, and de Apio, are very good in Injections; and the Oyl of the yelks of Eggs stirred in a leaden Mortar is much more commended. If the Ulcer in the Womb come by reason of the French Pox, a Fumigation made of Cinnabaris or Minium, taken into the Cavity of the Womb, hath a peculiar property to cleanse and heal the Ulcer; the same vertue hath Quick-silver Oyntments.

If it come to a Scirrhous Tumor; you must purge the melancholy and rebellious humors, and give steeled and such Medicines, which powerfully open Obstructions of the Womb or other parts. Then you must prepare emollient and resolving Medicaments to be applied outwardly; as the Fomentation, and Cataplasm mentioned in the 56 Chap. *Of the Schirrhus of the Liver.* Likewise the Liniment there prescribed,

ſcribed, may ſerve here for an injection. To conclude, you muſt uſe a great deal of care, diligence and induſtry in this Cure, leſt that the Tumor become harder, or (which is moſt dangerous) degenerate into a Cancer.

CHAP. LXXVII.

Of the Womb ſwelled by Wind or Water.

THere is a twofold Dropſy of the Womb, one from Wind, which is like that ſort, called *Tympanites*; the other from a watry and wheyiſh humor, anſwering to *Aſcites*. Some add a third anſwering to *Leucophlegmatia*, which is ſeldom ſeen. This Wind or Water is contained in the Cavity of the Womb, or in the Membranes thereof, or in certain Bladders. It is cauſed by the weakneſs of natural heat in the Liver or Spleen, from which parts, Wind, Phlegm, or wheyiſh humors are ſent to the Womb; or by the weakneſs of the Womb, thoſe humours are collected. Cauſes which weaken the natural heat of the womb are many, *viz.* cold air heedleſly taken into the womb, or ſtaying in the cold, or padling in cold water whilſt the Courſes flow, the uſe of cold meats and drinks; add to theſe, abortion, hard labour, immoderate flux of the Terms; all diſeaſes proper to the Womb.

This Diſeaſe is beſt diſcovered by ſigns which diſtinguiſh between this and the univerſal Dropſie of the Belly. The Womb-Dropſy cauſeth a ſwelling, chiefly in the lower Belly; in the other Dropſie, the ſwelling is in all parts: in this the Body decays not, nor there is not ſuch a Thirſt and Drineſs of the Tongue as in the other; and Wind and Water ſometimes burſteth out at the mouth of the womb. Secondly, to diſtinguiſh between the ſorts of theſe Dropſies, conſider, if Wind be the Cauſe, the lower part of the Belly being ſtruck, giveth a Sound, thence is a pricking pain in the Belly, which reacheth to the Diaphragma: the Womb riſeth like a Globe towards the Stomach, Wind burſteth out of its Neck, and the Patient is ſubject to belching, and when ſhe breaketh Wind, ſhe findeth ſome eaſe. If a watry wheyiſh humor be the Cauſe, the part appeareth ſoft and flaggy, with a noiſe of Water, and great heavineſs. If from Phlegm, it will be more ſoft; and the parts adjacent, as well as the womb, have a phlegmatick Swelling. Thirdly, you ought to conſider, whether this Diſeaſe hath its original in the womb, or by conſent of other parts thus; if there appear Symptoms of the whole Body, or ſome part thereof to be misaffected, *viz.* if there be long Feavers, or a Flux of Blood, Diſtillations from the Head, weakneſs of the Stomach,

Swelling of the Liver and Spleen, and other ſtubborn Diſeaſes in thoſe parts, judge that the Womb receives its Diſtemper from ſome of theſe parts. On the contrary, if the Body and all the parts are in good health, ſaving ſome particular Diſeaſe of the Womb, then judge that the diſeaſe hath its original in the Womb. Fourthly, to know whether the Wind or watry Humour be in the Cavity of the Womb, or in little Bladders; take theſe two Rules, that if it be in the Cavity of the womb, it maketh a greater Swelling, and more water flows out at the Neck of the Womb. Secondly, if little Bladders of Water come forth, it is an evident ſign that the Water or Wind is not contained in the Cavity of the Womb. Fifthly, this Womb-Dropſie is eaſily diſtinguiſhed from the Tumors of the Womb cauſed of Blood or Choler, becauſe there is no Feaver, nor pain in the touching of it: it differeth likewiſe from a Schirrous Tumor, for it it not ſo hard as not to yield to the finger. Sixthly, it is very convenient to diſtinguiſh between this Diſeaſe and a woman's being with Child: when a woman begins to be big with Child, the bigneſs of the Belly buncheth out, in this Diſeaſe it is depreſſed and flat: in the firſt, the Woman's Dugs do ſwell, in the latter they become extenuated and ſmaller. Women with Child, after a while grow better and better: but in this diſeaſe they grow worſe and worſe: Again, the Child is manifeſtly perceived to ſtir. Laſtly, you muſt diſtinguiſh between this diſeaſe and the falſe Conception *Mola*, thus; in *Mola* Women find a great heavineſs in their Wombs, and when they turn to lie on either ſide, it rouls like a ſtone to that ſide: again they that have conceiv'd with *Mola* (for the moſt part) have a violent flux of their terms, every third or fourth month; and laſtly the Dugs ſwell, and ſometimes have milk in them, which things never happen in this Womb-dropſie.

Sometimes this diſeaſe cometh not to the height, but proveth an inflation: if it continueth, if the humour be void of putrifaction, though it continueth long, yet it is curable; nay, ſometimes it flow-eth out of its own accord. If wind or water be in the cavity, it is evacuated with more eaſe, than if it be ſhut up in Bladders. If the humor be malignant and ſharp, it produceth the like Symptoms, and is dangerous, for the moſt part deadly.

You muſt begin the Cure with Phlebotomy, if the diſeaſe hath its original from the Terms, and the Body be plethorick, otherwiſe it will much hurt, becauſe natural heat is much weakned thereby. Then you muſt give ſuch things as have power to purge, open, provoke Sweat, and move the Courſes: you need go no farther than to the 58 and 71 Chapters, treating *Of the Dropſy and Green-ſickneſs*. Give a gentle Vomit twice a week, if the Woman be eaſie to vomit. The heat of the Stomach muſt be cheriſhed and maintained by

by Medicines preſcribed in the Chapters treating of the Diſeaſes of that part; and the womb muſt be ſtrengthned, and the peccant Humors diſcuſſed by Fomentations or Baths, made of the Decoction of the Roots of Briony, wild Cucumber, and horſe Radiſh: the Leaves of Dwarf-Elder, Mercury, common Elder, Origanum, Calamint, Rue, Sage, Worm-wood, Marjerom, Mugwort, Penny-royal, Thime: the ſeeds of Annis, Fennel, Broom, Carrots, Cummin, Bay, and Juniper: the Flowers of Camomil, Melilot, and Roſemary. If it be a windy Dropſie, a dry Fomentation will be much better. Afterwards anoint with the Oyl of Nard, Rue, Worm-wood, Dill, and Southern-wood. Give frequent Cliſters, and Injections to evacuate the humors contained in the womb: then make Peſſaries of Coloquintida, Elaterium, Mechoacan, and ſuch like, with Honey, and apply it. Nitrous and Sulphurous Baths do profit much, and if the Diſeaſe proceed from humors falling to the part, let Iſſues be made in the Thighs.

CHAP. LXXVIII.

Of the Falling down of the Womb.

SOmetimes the Womb loſeth its natural Scituation, and falleth down to the water-gate, ſometimes out to the very Thigh. All things that may cauſe a Rupture or Relaxation of the Ligaments of the womb, may be a cauſe of this grief, as a Blow, Fall, dancing, leaping, lifting, carrying, violent ſneezing, or coughing, (eſpecially in Child-bed, or being big with Child) Tenaſmus, hard Travel, a violent drawing the Child out of the womb, or of the after-birth, or the expulſive Faculty of the womb, being violently provoked to expel a dead Child, after-birth, or the Mole, and many ſuch like Accidents may be the cauſe of the breaking of the Ligaments, and falling out of the womb. A Relaxation of the Ligaments may be cauſed by a long Defluxion, by Crudities, the Whites: external Cauſes may be prevalent, as bathing in cold water; the Southern or moiſt Air being received into the womb, ſoon after a lying in, Meat of a cold and moiſt Nature: to conclude, all meats, drinks, and actions, which will breed Flegm, or cauſe its Deflux into the womb.

This Diſeaſe needs no Signs to diſcover it by, it being apparent to the Senſe: The Cauſes may be thus diſtinguiſhed. If it come by Looſneſs of the Ligaments, it cometh by little and little, the pain is leſs, Cauſes, moyſtening the womb have preceded. If it come by Rupture, there is a violent pain; ſometimes blood ſtarteth out, and

ſuch

ſuch cauſes, which have been able to break the Ligaments, have preceded.

If the womb fall down by a Rupture of the ligaments, it is incureable. That which comes by a Relaxation of the ligaments is not very dangerous, but troubleſome to the Patient, it hinders her walking, conception, and monethly Purgation. In young Women it is eaſier reſtored to its place, than in elderly. The womb coming not far out, and if taken in time, the Cure is far more eaſie than if the contrary happen. Sometimes grievous and violent pains do attend it, and threaten Death. Sometimes the Air corrupteth the womb, and it becomes gangrenated, ſo that there is a Neceſſity that it be cut off.

You muſt begin the Cure with ſuch Medicines that may diſcharge the Guts and Bladder of their Excrements, that they may not hinder the Reduction of the womb. Then let her lye upon her Back with her Thighs wide aſunder, and draw up her Knees, and let her with her own hands, or by the help of a Midwife thruſt the womb inwards, or (that you may drive it in farther and hurt leſs) make a Peſſary of linnen cloaths, and with it thruſt up the womb; firſt anoint it with the Oyl of Lillies, and if it be ſwelled, uſe a Fomentation of *Althæa*, common Mallows, Fenugreek, and the like. Before you repoſe the womb to its place, anoint it with the Muſilage of Comphry Roots, or Infuſion of Gum Tragacanth, or any thing that is of a glewing Nature. When it is up, let the woman lye with one Thigh over the other, and put up toward the Neck of the womb, a little wooll wetted in red Wine or Roſe-water, wherein *Acatia* and *Hypociſtis* hath been diſſolved. *Rodericus à Caſtro* adviſeth the Phyſitian to come with a red hot Iron, and to make as if he would thruſt it into the womb. *Avenzoar*, and *Zacutus Luſitanus*, after the uſe of all means and devices, by this Stratagem reduced the womb: that is, having laid her down as before ſaid, and one held down her Thighs, and another her Breaſt, then put her into a great fright, by ſetting Mice or Frogs to run up her Legs and Thighs; by this fright the womb hath been reduced into its proper place, for by this means, Nature contracteth her ſelf for fear, and draweth the womb with her. Then lay a plaiſter againſt Ruptures, on the Region of the womb and Groins: and have a care that you keep the Body that it be not coſtive nor too ſoluble. To conclude, all the Medicines external and internal preſcribed againſt the immoderate flowing of the Menſtrues are here good: but beware you uſe them not when the Courſes ſhould flow; and, leſt by the frequent uſe of ſuch medicines, they ſhould be hindred, your Patient being young, and having her Courſes monethly, be ſparing in the uſe of them; but rather let her wear a Truſs.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXXIX.

Of Barrenneſs.

BArrenneſs or Sterility is an impotency of Conception; the principal cauſes thereof are four; Firſt, when the Woman doth not conveniently receive the Man's Sperm into her womb; and this happeneth by divers cauſes, *viz.* if the woman be too young, and the Neck of the womb too ſtrait for the man's Yard; the ſame happens to elderly Virgins, becauſe not exerciſed in actions tending to Generation, their genital parts become flaggy, withered, and ſo ſtreight that they cannot eaſily admit of the man's Yard; ſome are lame and crooked that they cannot lye in a fit poſture; ſome have a cold Diſtemper in the Womb, that they are dull and have no delight in the act: or Others are very fat, which cauſeth a Streightneſs in the paſſage; or their Bellies being big hinder their due conjunction with the man. Want of love between a man and his wife is a great cauſe. Diſeaſes in the womb or the adjacent parts hinder the Reception of the Seed.

The ſecond Cauſe of Barrenneſs is when the woman doth not retain the Seed of the man in her womb, for ſometimes the womb is moiſt and ſlippery, and full of Excrementitious Humours, by which means the Sperm doth eaſily ſlide back again; and the Orifice of the womb is ſo looſe and flaggy, that it cannot contract it ſelf to hold the Seed: or it may be ſo ſlack, that it cannot contract to do its Office; and the ſlackneſs may be occaſioned by a breaking of the Fibres of the womb one from another in hard Labour, or Abortion: To ſay all, the Whites or any moiſt Diſtemper of the womb may be the cauſe of Barrenneſs.

Thirdly, want of ſufficient Nouriſhment of the womb to cheriſh the Seed may be the cauſe of Barrenneſs; and this comes to paſs by any Diſtemper of the womb that doth corrupt the Seed: a cold Diſtemper extinguiſheth; a hot Diſtemper diſſipateth the Spirits in the Seed: a moiſt Diſtemper hindreth the Seeds coming to its due Thickneſs; and a dry Diſtemper conſumes and drinks up the moyſture of the Seed. Some ſay, Witchcraft and Charmes may be the cauſe: certain Meats and Poyſons, many things are antipathetical to Fæcundity, as Vinegar, Mints, Water-Creſſes, Beans, and ſuch like: Jet, Glow-worms, Saphires, Smaragds, the Matrix of a Goat or Mule, malignant Diſeaſes may corrupt Seed and hinder Conception, as ſtinking Ulcers, the *French-Pox*, Leprous Infections, and the like.

The

The fourth thing that hinders Conception is when the woman wants fit materials for the formation of the Embrio, and to augment the ſame; and this chiefly dependeth upon want of ſeed and menſtruous blood; and this defect happeneth to thoſe that are too young or too old, the determined and approved age is from 14 to 50. Likewiſe the materials may be *ill* diſpoſed through evil diet, which cannot breed blood or good Seed: Diſeaſes weakening Nature may cauſe the ſame. Add to all theſe Cauſes a diſproportion or unſuitableneſs between the man's Sperm and the woman's, that is, when the man and the woman are of one Complexion, by which means the ſeed of either of them partake of the ſame exceſs; that is, that they are either too hot or too cold: hence it cometh to paſs, that the ſame Woman who could never have a Child by her Husband, after his Death hath Children by another man, and a man by another woman. Sometimes a man and woman live ten year or more together, and have no Children, and afterwards the woman conceiveth and bringeth forth, and this cometh to paſs by the change of Temperature cauſed by years.

I ſhould now lay down the Signes of all theſe cauſes, but moſt of them are evident to the Senſes; and the reſt, he who cannot diſcover, hath not a Head befitting a Phyſitian: therefore, to abbreviate the work, I ſhall leave it to the ſearch of the Ingenious, and trouble the Reader with a few Rules, left by the Ancients, to try whether a woman be naturally barren or no, *Hypocrates* adviſeth to wrap the woman cloſe in Blankets, and burn ſome Perfume under her, and if the Smell proceed through her Body, to her Mouth or Noſtrils, then certainly ſhe is fruitful. The ſame Author adviſeth to put a Clove of Garlick peeled into her womb, or Galbanum, and if the ſmell come to her Head or Mouth, judge that ſhe is fruitful. *Amatus Luſitanus* to try whether a woman be fruitful or no, giveth a Dram of Hares Runnet diſolved in warm water to the woman, being in a Bath of hot water, faſting; and if the woman findeth pains in her belly, he judgeth her fruitful; and if ſhe hath no pain, he judgeth her barren. Some ſteep Barly in the Urine, and if it ſhoot within ten dayes, they judge the woman fruitful.

Before you try theſe uncertain Concluſions upon the Woman, examine the Man, and ſee if the fault be not in him. It is known thus, If the Man be unable to raiſe his Yard; if he want Sperm; if he hath a ſwelling in his Stones; or if he have the Running of the Reins, he is not fit for *Venus*'s School. If the man be of an effeminate ſpirit, if he have no Beard, if he be long caſting out his Seed, and taketh little delight in the act, and the woman in the act feeleth his Seed cold, be ſure the man is unfruitful; Or Cauſes, which may make the Seed unfruitful, have preceded.

Prog.

Prog. Thoſe that conceive not by reaſon of tenderneſs of age have great hopes to live to have better ſucceſs: but if ſhe live above forty and never conceived, ſhe hath little reaſon to hope. If Barrenneſs be cauſed by Fatneſs, or any Diſtemper or Diſeaſe whatſoever, if the Woman can procure Leanneſs, or have her Diſtemper removed, ſhe may conceive. But if Barrenneſs be cauſed by evil ſhape of the Members, it is likely to continue.

In the Cure, you muſt endeavour that whatſoever hindreth may be removed. If tenderneſs of age be the cauſe, let her wait the time; in the mean while, let her refuſe carnal Embracements, leſt her genital Members be ſpoiled. If it be cauſed by age, that is incurable by weakneſs of Nature, you may endeavour to ſtrengthen the Body and revive the Spirits, but it is difficult. If the Body be too corpulent or too manly, you muſt extenuate, moiſten, and cool. If any Diſtemper of the womb hinder Conception, labour to remove the Diſtemper. If a hot diſtemper be the cauſe, cure it as a hot Diſtemper of the Liver. If drineſs be the cauſe, uſe a reſtorative Diet, ſuch as is preſcribed in the Chapter *Of the Hectick Feaver*. If it be cauſed by witchcraft, next to fervent and devout prayers to God, and a confident deſpiſing and ſlighting of Charms and witch-crafts, let the woman wear the Pizzle of a Wolf about her, or the Adamant or Hyacinth Stone, which are much commended againſt Faſcination; likewiſe Sea-Onions, Sea-Holly, Sagapenum, Rue, and St. John's-Wort, (which ſome call the *Devil-Driver*) are of great efficacy. But for the moſt part a cold and moiſt Diſtemper of the womb and of the Body, being accompanied with the Whites, is the cauſe, whoſe particular Cure you may find in its proper Chapter. You muſt purge the cold Flegmatick Humors, you muſt make Iſſues in the Arm, Neck, or Thighs, and give ſuch things as ſtrengthen the womb. Some things there are, which have a peculiar vertue to cauſe Fæcundity and remove Barrenneſs, *viz.* The After Birth of a woman dried and beaten to powder, and given to the quantity of a dram. The Stones of a Boar-Pig and the Liver, which was farrowed alone without any more in that Litter. Half a Pint of the Juyce of Sage taken a quarter of an hour before the woman enjoy her Huſband, it is beſt for her to take it ſoon after ſhe hath had her monethly Purgation. Rejecting the multiplicity of Medicines which I might here inſert, I ſhall content my ſelf and the Reader with one or two of the beſt of them, and firſt, an excellent Electuary may be made thus: *Take of the Roots of Eringo, and Dogs Stones called Satyrion candied or preſerved, of each one ounce: Green-ginger candied, half an ounce: Pin and Filbert kernels, and Piſtachios, of each ſix drams: one preſerved Nutmeg: the Seeds of Rocket and Water-Creſſes, of each*

two

two drams: Aſhes of a Bulls Pizzle, the Reins of the Sea-Scinkos, and Shavings of Ivory, of each one dram: Confection of Alchermes, three drams: the Powders Diambra and Diamoſchu Dulce of each one ounce and an half: Ambergreece half a dram: with Syrup of preſerved Citrons, make an Electuary: and let the woman take the quantity of a Cheſnut to Bedward, twice or thrice in a week, and drink a glaſs of Sack after it. Quercetanus doth much commend this Decoction following: *Take of the Stones of a Ram prepared with Wine and dryed: the Matrix of a Hare, prepared in the ſame manner: Mace, Cinnamon, Cloves, white Ginger, and Seeds of Ammeos, of each two drams: Saffron a dram and an half: Hazel-nut kernels, and Piſtachios, of each three drams: boyl them in a quart of Muſcadine, till a third part be conſumed: then let her take three or four ounces of it, for three dayes together, three hours before Meat, then let her upon the fourth day have Genial Embracements with her Husband.* Likewiſe external medicines, as Peſſaries, Injections, Fumigations, ſuch as have powes to cleanſe, dry and ſtrengthen the Womb, may be applyed: the afore-going Chapters will direct you.

CHAP. LXXX.

Of Miſcarriage.

A Bortion or Miſcarriage is the bringing forth of a Child, either dead or alive, having not attained to the juſt Term of growth, which it ought to have had. The Cauſes are either external or internal: the external Cauſes do either kill the Child, deprive it of its natural Nouriſhment, or looſen the bands, by which the Child is faſtened in the womb. Things that kill the Child are, the Stink of a Candle, or ſuch abominable Smells, ſuch things as are antipathetical to the Womb, and provoke the Courſes, ſtrong Purges, or the Child may be killed by violent Commotions of the Mind, as Anger, Sadneſs, Terror, *&c.* and many times things longed for and not obtained, kill the Child. If the Mother undergo Penury or Famine, or loſe much blood, the Child wanteth Nouriſhment. The Bands by which the Child is faſtened to the Womb, may be looſned by violent Exerciſe, dancing, running, riding, being jumbled in a Cart or Coach, by ſome fall, lifting, or carrying: any thing which cauſeth a violent motion of the Belly, as Coughing, Sneezing, Vomiting, Convulſions, *&c.* or immoderate Copulation. Internal cauſes of Abortion may be attributed to the Humors, to the Child, to the womb. Humors offend in exceſs or defect; in exceſs, in a plethorick and

and full conſtitution, when more blood flows to the womb, than is requiſite to nouriſh the Child, and flows to the Veins, ſo the Courſes flowing provoke the expulſive Faculty, and drive forth the Child. Defect of Humors fit to nouriſh ſpring from ſuch cauſes which deſtroy the Nouriſhment, or draw it from the Child, as long faſting, loathing, and vomiting up of all Food, immoderate bleeding at the Noſe, Womb, or Hemorrhoids, or a Looſeneſs, or any thing that makes the Body lean or weak.

The Cauſes attributed to the Child are, if the Child be over great, if there be more than one, for the womb over-laden doth exclude the Child before the fit time: Likewiſe if the Child be dead, Nature deſires to be rid of it. In reſpect of the womb, if it be any diſeaſed or defective, that it cannot open as the Child groweth bigger: or if it be moiſt or ſlack, it cannot contain the Child, but Abortion muſt neceſſarily follow.

Abortion when it happens is known: there are ſigns preceding it, which do foretel Abortion to follow: her Breaſts grow little and flaggy, ſhe feels a heavineſs about the Loins and Hips, ſhe hath no appetite to eat, nor deſire to ſtir, ſhe hath a ſhivering by Fits, ſhe hath Streightneſs of the Sides and Belly above the Navel, and a pain in her head: plenty of Milk flowing from the Dugs, ſhews that the Child is weak, and danger of Abortion. If pains about the Reins, Loins, and Share torment the woman, then know that Abortion is hard at hand: The ſame judge, if blood or water burſt out and flow, and the Scituation of the Child is changed from the middle of the Belly to the bottom. If any of theſe or the like Symptomes befal a woman with child after any external cauſe of Abortion, as Blow, Fall, &c. let the woman betake her ſelf to her bed, and take ſuch Medicines which prevent Abortion.

Prognoſticks of Abortion are thus made: Women are more endangered by Abortion, than by a natural and timely Birth, becauſe in a timely birth the Veſſels & Ligaments are looſned and opened of their own accord, but in Miſcarriage they are broken aſunder: the like you may perceive between the ſtalk of ripe and unripe fruit. Woman many times become barren by Miſcarriage, becauſe the womb is rent, and its natural diſpoſition much altered. Much bleeding ſeconded with Convulſions, Raving and Fainting is always deadly. If an Inflammation of the Womb follow Abortion, it is deadly, In young Women, who never bore Child before, it is worſt, becauſe the paſſage is narrower, and they more unaccuſtomed to pains. The bigger the Child is, the more the danger. Women who have moiſt and ſlippery wombs, do often miſcarry and with little danger.

To prevent Miſcarriage, you muſt before and after ſhe is with Child, endeavour to remove all evil diſpoſitions of the Body or womb, that may cauſe Miſcarriage; if Blood abound upon a Vein, purge the peccant humours, ſtrengthen the womb: but if the woman be with Child, beware how you bleed, except it be in the firſt moneth, and the body full of blood: and in this caſe, let purges be gentle, and often reiterated. To conclude, to ſtrengthen the womb, fetch Medicines from the 73 Chapter.

CHAP. LXXXI.

Of hard Travel in Child-birth.

HArd Labour is when more vehement Pains and dangerous Symptomes happen to Women in travel, and continue a longer time. There are divers Cauſes, ſome whereof may be aſſigned to the weakneſs of the womans Body, Leanneſs or Drineſs as well as Fatneſs of the body, her age, or Sickneſſes, as the Stone or preternatural Tumor in the bladder, or any Diſeaſe of the womb. Other Cauſes may be aſſigned to the Child, when its body or head is too big, when there are two, or when the Child is dead: or when it endeavours to come forth with his Feet, Hands, Back, Belly, or Breech forwards, &c. A cold and dry Air, and Northern-wind ſtrengtheneth the Body, and driveth the Spirits inward, and is obnoxious to the Child's firſt entrance into the world. If the Air be more hot than ordinary, it is as bad as the former, for it diſſipates the Spirits, exhauſts the ſtrength, and introduceth feavouriſh Diſtempers into the Bodies of Mother and Child. Meats of a hard digeſture or aſtringing quality taken a little before the time of Delivery; Sleepineſs and Sottiſhneſs; the Retention of Excrements; all vehement Paſſions of the Mind, want of an Expert Midwife, and women to aſſiſt the labouring woman, may be cauſes of hard Labour.

Hard Labour is eaſily known to the Woman her ſelf, to the Midwife, and the Aſſiſtants. The time of a natural Birth ought to be accompliſhed in the ſpace of twenty four hours; if the Woman continue a longer time, it is hard Labour. If her pains be weak and long before they return, and more about her Back than Privities, the cauſes may eaſily be known; many you may gather from the Relation of the woman in Travel, her Leanneſs, Weakneſs, Fatneſs, and Age, is perceived. Diſeaſes of the womb and Bladder may be known by their proper Signs. The bigneſs and diſorderly Poſture of the Child is ſoon ſeen by an Expert Midwife. If the Child be dead, you may know

know it by theſe Signs, The Breaſts of the woman become flat and flaggy, her Eyes hollow and troubled, her Face and Lips are of a pale and leaden colour, her Belly is cold, and there is a Senſe of Weight: there is no motion felt, though you apply ſomething wetted in the Decoction of Tanſie warm to her Navel. When the Woman turns, the Child ſways that way like Lead. If the After-birth come away before the Child, it is a Sign of the death of the Child. And if the Child cometh not away, it ſoon putrifieth and ſtinketh; and ſtinking moiſture floweth from the womb, and her breath ſtinketh.

Hard Labour is dangerous, for ſometimes the Mother, ſometimes the Child, and ſometimes both do loſe their lives. Sleepy Diſeaſes and Convulſions, if they befal a Woman in Travel, death is at hand. If the woman be in Travel above three dayes, It is likely the Child will die. If the woman fall a ſneezing in her Travel it is good, ſaith *Hypocrates*. If the Child be dead, the danger is exceeding great, eſpecially, if it be not brought ſoon away, for it will cauſe Feavers, Faintings, Convulſions, dead Sleeps, and Death it ſelf.

In difficult Labour, firſt all cauſes which hinder the Birth muſt be removed, if it be poſſible; then ſuch things as further the birth muſt be adminiſtred. An ounce of Oyl of ſweet Almonds, and a dram of *Confectio Alchermes* given in Broth is good. Burn white Wine with a little Saffron and Cinnamon, afterwards diſſolve a little Alchermes, this I have found very powerful to haſten the Birth. If you find this Medicine too gentle, make a Julep of more efficacy, thus *Take of the Water of Mugwort and Vervain, of each two ounces: The Syrup of Maiden-hair, one ounce: Confectio Alchermes, half a dram: Dittany of Creet, and both Birth-worts, of each one ſcruple: Oyl of Cinnamon, five Drops, mix them, and make a Potion.* Oyl of Amber fifteen drops, or the Extract of Saffron five grains may be either of them mixed inſtead of the Oyl of Cinnamon. Provoke ſneeſing, and open the lower Veins if need be. Then let the Midwife anoint the mouth of the womb with the Oyl of Lillies and ſweet Almonds, and the like; and foment the Belly with a mollifying Decoction: and in a dangerous caſe give a ſharp Clyſter.

Some things have a peculiar property to help the Birth, as the Stone Ætites, Loadſtone, and Storax held near the Privities; the Eyes of a Hare taken out in the moneth of *March* and dried, uſe it as the Stones, and when the woman is delivered, take them away, leſt it draw out the womb. Some commend the Gall of an Hen, applied to the Navel.

If the Child be dead, give the ſame things before-mentioned; but it is convenient to make them ſtronger by adding Savin water and the Leaves of Savin dried, the Troches of Myrrh and Caſtor. Then

foment the Privities and Share with a mollifying Decoction, to which add Briony Roots, and the Roots of wild Cucumer, round Birthwort, and the like. And put up a Peſſary made in this manner: *Take of the Roots of round Birth-wort, Orris, black Hellebore, Coloquintida and Myrrh, of each one dram: Galbanum, Opopanax, of each half a dram, with Ox-Gall, make a Peſſary and apply it.* If all this will not do, you muſt implore the help of the Chyrurgion.

If the After-birth be retained, you muſt endeavour to expel it by ſuch medicines as expel the dead Child: to which add theſe which are ſaid to have a ſpecifick property, the Stones of a gelded Horſe, dried and poudered, and given as much as will lie on a three pence, two or three times as need requireth, is commended by *Geſnerus* and *Augenius.* Some commend the juyce of an Onyon given in Wine, or an Onyon held in the Womans mouth between her Teeth, and the juyce ſqueezed out and ſwallowed, and a Draught of White-wine drunk after it: Or 20 or 30 drops of the Oyl of Juniper drunk in Wine; or the juyce of Lovage taken in Rheniſh Wine.

If her Purgations flow immoderately, that you fear the death of the woman; or in caſe her Purgations be ſuppreſſed, which may cauſe dangerous Symptoms, have recourſe to the Chapters treating of thoſe Maladies.

Many women are much troubled with after-pains, which do much affl & them, and theſe pains are cauſed either by the Thickneſs, or Sharpneſs of the Blood, or by Wind. If the Blood be thick, you may know it by its clotting: if thin, by its Tenuity or yellow colour: If the blood be thick, give this Julep: *Mugwort-water two ounces; Syrup of Violets, and oyl of ſweet Almonds, of each half an ounce.* If the Blood be ſharp, add to the former the Muſilage of Quince-Seeds drawn with Violet-Water, half an ounce. If Wind be the cauſe of theſe Pains, which you may know by its motion from one part of the Belly to the other, then give inwardly and apply outwardly carminative Medicines; *Take of the Seeds of Carrots, one dram; of Annis, Nutmeg, and Cinamon, of each a ſcruple, make them into fine Powder, and give it half at one time in wine.* Foment her Belly with the Decoction of Bawm, Bay-Leaves, Camomel, Calamint, Mugwort; and the Seeds of Carrots, Carawsy and Cummin, and lay on a Pultis made of boyled Onions, Camomel Flowers, the Seeds of Flax and Cummin beaten, and Barley-meal.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXXXII.

Of the Gout and Sciatica.

Ἀρθρῖτις, *Arthritis* in Greek, in Latine *Articularis Morbus*, is the Joynt-Sickneſs, cauſed by an Influx of Humours into them, which cauſeth pain in the Membranes, Tendons and Nerves, Authors do commonly make four ſorts of Gouts, according to the diverſity of the Joynts affected, as Χειράγρα, *Chiragra* the Hand-Gout, of Χείρ, a Hand; Γόνάγρα, *Gonagra* when it is in the Knees, of Γόνυ the Knee; Ποδάγρα *Podagra*, when it is in the Foot, becauſe the Greeks call the Foot Πούς; Ἰσχίας, *Iſchias*, the Hip-Gout or Sciatica, of the word Ἰσχίον, the Hip. The immediate cauſe of the Gout is a wheyiſh Humor flowing to the Joynts, and by its Quantity ſtretcheth the ſenſible parts, or by its Sharpneſs twitcheth them, and this Humour floweth not only from the Brain and Head, but from all parts of the Body. The cauſe may be attributed to all meats, which encreaſe raw and wheyiſh Humors; Meats of a groſs Subſtance hard to be digeſted, and ſuch as afford plenty of Excrements; Gluttony, Drunkenneſs, immoderate Venery, (therefore the Gout is called the daughter of *Bacchus* and *Venus*,) long ſleep and unſeaſonable Watchings, Fear, Sadneſs, continual care, and intermiſſion of ſuch Exerciſes or Evacuations as men have been accuſtomed to, and the like.

The beginning of the Gout is known thus; There is more exquiſite and quick Senſe in the Joynts than formerly: they are eaſily hurt, as by a new ſhooe, walking, the leaſt touch againſt any hard thing. Commonly a Feaver uſhers it in: and at its approach there is a kind of unuſual heat felt in the Joynts, and a motion, as if ſome living Creature were therein: after which, followeth a tormenting pain in the Joynts, for the moſt part beginning in the great Toe and attended with Redneſs and Swelling.

The ſigns of the Cauſes or the Humours which are mixed with the wheyiſh Humors, are thus conſidered. If Choler be mixed with the wheyiſh humor, the Urine is thin, yelloviſh or red, the pain great and violent, the Feaver comes to the height, the part is ſwelled, is red or pale, but very hot, the application of cold things giveth eaſe. If Phlegm be mixed, there is a ſoft and loſe ſwelling of the part, the pain not ſo violent; the Urine is thick and troubled, little or no heat; and hot things give eaſe. If Melancholy be the humour mixed, the Temper of the Body inclineth to Melancholy, there is a wearineſs felt all over, the part is of an obſcure colour like Lead,

the pain deep, and the Urine thick and melancholy.

The Gout is no dangerous Diſeaſe, but it continueth long, and is attended with violent pain, for the moſt part to the end of a man's life, and ſometimes it is a means of long life; becauſe Nature doth drive the vitious humors to the Joynts, which if they ſhould fall upon the more noble parts, would be a means of great Diſeaſes, if not death it ſelf. But in weak Bodies that are decayed by Sickneſs or Age, that Nature cannot expel theſe humours to the Joynts, many dangerous Diſeaſes are ingendered. He that hath no knots in his Joynts, is inclinable to Labour, and is for the moſt part ſoluble, by a skilful Phyſician may be cured. An hæreditary Gout is ſeldom or never cured. If the Veins of a Goury perſon do ſwell with black blood, there is hopes that the Gout leaves him. If the Gout doth not return at its ſeaſon it is dangerous, unleſs the matter be taken away by medicines, for it is an argument that Nature is weak, and cannot expel it.

The Cure of the Gout is to be performed by ſtopping the Flux of the humors into the Joynts, by removing the humors in the Joynts, & to abate the ſharpneſs of the pain. If the Patient be full of blood and ſtrong, let him bleed in a great quantity, or let him bleed often, till the plenitude of blood be ſufficiently abated. Then let him be purged with ſtrong Medicaments, which may evacuate the ſtirred Humour, and turn the cauſe from the Joynts. Whilſt you are purging, let Oyntments or Plaiſters be applied to the Joynt above the part affected of an aſtringing and drying property, by which the humors may be intercepted, that they may not ſo much nor ſo forcibly fall into the Joynt. Let your Oyntments be made of the Roots of Snake-weed and Formentil, Bole-armenick, Sanguis Draconis, Pomegranate Rinds, Balauſtins, red Roſes, the Whites of Eggs, Vinegar, Oyl of Roſes, of unripe Olives, and the like. If the Patient be ſtrong and eaſie to vomit, give a gentle Vomit to carry away the humours in and about the Stomach; ſoon after vomiting purge ſtrongly. Sweating medicines are very good to diſcuſs the wheyiſh Matter; if a Feaver be preſent, give Harts-horn with *Cardus*-water. In a Gout without a Feaver, the Decoction of Saxafras, Salſa, and China, may be given; it is not amiſs if the heat thereof be allayed, by boyling with it Endive, Succory, Sorrel, Burrage, Bugloſs, and the like. The Waters of *Bath* do provoke Sweat, and do readily and profitably diſcuſs the Matter contained in the Joynts.

Foreſtus commendeth the Decoction of the Root of the great Burdock, for this purpoſe. Likewiſe a Decoction of Elder, Bay-leaves, Sage, Roſemary, and ſuch like, receiving the Vapour in a ſweating Tub: Afterwards come to local medicines.

Amatus

Amatus Luſitanus doth commend the milk of a Goat milked warm upon the part affected; or you may make a Cataplaſm with it and white bread, and the Muſilage of the Roots of Marſh-Mallows, the Leaves of Henbane, Violets, and the like; and if the pulp of Caſſia, and Venice-Treacle be added, it will be much more effectual. The diſtilled Water of Frogs Spawn is very good againſt the pains of the hot Gout, if the part be bathed therewith: with it you may mingle the Oyl of Calves-feet, or with the Flowers of Camomel, Melilot, Roſes, Mullein, Mallows beaten, you may bring it into the form of a Pultis. Green Tobacco-leaves are much commended, and ſo is a living Whelp laid to the gouty part. When the pain rageth violently, uſe Narcoticks: as Plantane, Lettuce, Henbane, Houſleek, Nightſhade, Mandrakes, Purſlane, and Poppy-heads; but be ſure you let them not lie on too long, for they are inimical to the natural heat, and to the Nerves.

Some do commend this Fomentation; *Take Spirit of Wine well tinctured with Saffron, four ounces: Campire one ſcruple: boyl them a little, and diſſolve one dram of Opium, and bathe the pained part.* The Oyl of Wax is good to eaſe the Gout, and the Oyl of mans Bones is preferred before all other, and it is thus made: *Take the Bones of a man freſh and unburied, break them ſmall, and let them lie in Oyl till they have drunk up as much as they can, then diſtil them in a Retort.* The Root of Briony and Cuckow-pintle bruiſed and mingled with Cow-dung, is an excellent Cataplaſm.

I might here fill a Volume with Receipts againſt the Gout; but paſſing by all, I ſhall only inſert one or two out of *Quercetanus* his Diſpenſatory: *Take Brine, Salt, and the Urine of a Boy, of each, equal parts; diſtil them, and dip linnen cloaths in the water, and apply them to the place affected, changing them often. Take green Elder-Leaves and Flowers, of each one pound: beat them in a Mortar, and macerate them in Aqua-vitæ, three days, then diſtil them till all be dry, uſe it as before. Take of rectified Spirit of Wine, two pound; of the beſt Hony, one pound: diſtil them in Balneo Roris, from which will come two Liquors, the firſt wateriſh; the ſecond ſtrong and ſulphurous: keep them by themſelves. To the Fæces add of oriental Saffron whole, one ounce and an half; Venice Turpentine two ounces: Caſtor ſix drams: Tartar calcined white, half a pound: Salt diſſolved, one ounce: Phlegm of Vitriol not ſeparated from the Spirit, four ounces: Lye made of the Aſhes of Vine-Branches, two pound: macerate them twenty four hours, then diſtil them till all be dry, keep this alſo by it ſelf. To the Dregs remaining pour on the former water, which you kept, macerate and diſtil as before. Laſtly, put all theſe waters together, and diſtil them in Balneo Roris, wet linnen Cloths therein, and apply it to the gouty place.*

Riverius, lib. 10. *Chap.* 1. *p.* 378. preſcribeth another, which he accounts inferior to none, which penetrates into the Roots of the Diſeaſe, and reſolveth and attenuateth the ſalt, tartarous and ſtony matter in the Joynts; and he ſuppoſeth it to be that which the aforeſaid *Quercetanus* reſerves to himſelf, as his Maſter-piece to brag of; it is thus made: *Take of unſlaked Lime, four pound, ſlake it in River water as much as is convenient, and let it ſtand in a Wine-Cellar the ſpace of three dayes, that the Salt may be extracted the better: afterwards boyl it a little and ſtrain it through* Hypocrates *Sleeve. In twenty Pints of this Liquor quench firſt Plates of Steel, then of Copper made red hot, ſeven or nine times; thirdly, ten ounces of Vitriol calcined till it be white; fourthly, half a pound of Antimony melted in a crucible; fifthly, half a pound of Litharge or Ceruſe, heated in a Crucible; ſixthly, white Precipitate once waſhed, one ounce and an half: laſtly, Braſs burnt and finely poudered, half an ounce: after all this, let the Water ſtand in a Cellar the ſpace of* 10 *dayes, afterwards boyl it and ſtrain it, and apply it with linnen Rags.* To raiſe Bliſters upon the part, hath been found by experience to be very effectual. In the uſe of all Medicines, take ſpecial notice which do harm or hurt, for the Nature and Complexions of men are divers, and the Excrements bred in ſeveral men are of divers kinds. Hence it is, that the ſame Diſeaſe doth much differ in ſeveral perſons; and what cures one; doth prejudice another: Therefore the Phyſitian ought to have ſeveral Medicines in readineſs, and uſe thoſe that Reaſon and Experience doth approve of.

To prevent its return, let the Patient bleed twice in a year, *viz.* at Spring and Fall; and purge four times in a year, and make uſe of ſweating Drinks, and frequent ſulphurous and nitrous Baths.

The Sciatica differeth not from the other Gout only in its Scituation, which is in the Hip, extending the pain to the top of the Buttock, the Loins, and *Os ſacrum*, and reacheth down to the Hip and Leg even to the Foot.

This peculiar Prediction belongeth to this Diſeaſe, that if it continue long, it putteth the Hip out of Joynt.

The Cure is performed almoſt in the ſame manner with the other Gout. Firſt open the Vein in the Arm on the ſame Side, afterwards open the lower Veins on the ſame ſide, *viz. Vena Poplitea* about the Knee, or the Vein near the outward Ancle called the Sciatica Vein; if you open the Vein on the contrary ſide, it will not do amiſs: bleeding the Hemorrhoid Veins by Leeches doth wonderfully help thoſe that are Hip-gouty, for there is a great conſent between thoſe Veins. But be not too forward to let Blood, unleſs you find blood to abound. Then let the Humours be purged ſtrongly by *Pilulæ Fœtidæ*, or *Hermodactyls*, or the Powder of *Hermodactyl.* compound,

but

but beware how you give the latter except to ſtrong Bodies. *Mercurius Dulcis* with Scammony is much commended, and the Chymiſts do much eſteem of Mercurial and Antimonial Purges; and many prefer Vomits before all. Then apply reſolving Decoctions made of the Roots of Briony, Dane-wort, the Leaves of Ground-Pine, Mint, Marjerom, Sage, Savin, Rue, Roſemary, Pennyroyal, *&c.* the Flowers of Camomel, Melilot, and Mallows; the Seeds of Flax, Fenugreek, Bay and Juniper-berries, and ſuch like, and foment the part therewith. Alſo Juniper-berries fried in a pan, (being firſt beaten) with Salt and Bran, and moiſtned with Canary Wine, and put in a Bag, and applied warm, with the aforenamed Ingredients Cataplaſms may be made; and with the Oyls following let the part be anointed, *viz.* Oyl of Camomel, Dill, Nard, Orris, Rue, Scorpions, Tiles, Turpentine of Foxes, and the like: the Oyntment of Marſhmallows and Spaniſh Soap diſſolved in Spirit of Wine.

This is much commended; *Take a good quantity of Snails, bruiſe them well in a Mortar, then make Paſte with them and Rye Flower, adding a little Spirit of Wine, and faſten it to a ſpit and roaſt it; a Liquor will drop from it, with which anoint the part, for it is of excellent vertue.* Then lay on this Plaiſter: *Take of Ship-Pitch and Roſin, of each two ounces; Gum Ammoniacum diſſolved in Vinegar, and Emplaſtrum Diachylon cum Gummis, of each one ounce; Brimſtone and Hermodactyls poudered, of each three drams; Turpentine three drams, and Wax ſufficient: make a Plaiſter.*

If the Diſeaſe do ſtill continue, proceed to a Veſicatory; add to the former Maſs for a Plaiſter, Cantharides their Wings taken off, Staves-acre, and Muſtard-ſeed, of each one dram. In the whole courſe of the Cure, let not frequent Clyſters be neglected. And if the Diſeaſe be old, make an iſſue in the Leg on the ſame ſide, on the outſide of the Leg. If you find Symptoms of a Catarrh; which may occaſion the Sciatica by a Defluxion of Humors, make an Iſſue in the hinder part of the Head, and uſe other means to correct the Diſtempers of the Brain. *See Chap. 9.* By this means hath the Sciatica been cured, when all other means failed. Sometimes the Matter cauſing the Sciatica, doth Impoſthumate; and after it is opened, there remains a filthy Ulcer, which, for the moſt part, pineth the Patient away, and brings him into a Conſumption; the Cure whereof belongeth to an expert Chyrurgion.

CHAP. LXXXIII.

Of one day Feaver.

THis Diſeaſe is called in Greek Ἐφήμερος, *Ephemera*, in Latine *Diaria Febris*, in Engliſh *One day Feaver*, becauſe for the moſt part it finiſheth in one day of its own Nature. It is cauſed by ſome internal cauſe, as ſome hot fiery Swelling on ſome part of the Body, or when ſome hot Excrements ſhut up in ſome part, do offend the Heart, by Retention of Excrements and Obſtruction of the Veſſels, by which the Pores of the Skin are ſhut, and Tranſpiration is hindered.

Or ſecondly, it is cauſed by external cauſes, as vehement motions of the Body or Mind, by which the Spirits are inflamed by being heated with the Sun or fire, by Surfetting, Drunkenneſs, eſpecially with Meats and Drinks of a hot Nature.

By what hath gone before, you may know this Feaver; the Pulſe is ſwift and great, and ſo he fetcheth his Breath; he is very hot, and his head aketh. He hath no ſhivering Cold, nor Wearineſs, unleſs it came by the heat of the Sun, or by cold.

You muſt give the Sick ſuch things as are cooling and moiſtning, as cooling Broths, Barly Cream, Ptiſan Drink, ſmall Beer and Sugar, Water and Sugar, or mix Syrup of Violets, Lemmons, or Maiden-hair, with his Drink.

If the Diſeaſe was cauſed by the heat of the Sun, give him cooling things, and lay him in a cooling Lodging, and anoint his Temples with Vinegar of Roſes.

If he took his Feaver being in the cold, provoke Sweat: the like obſerve if the Pores be obſtructed. If it come by over-eating and drinking, let him take a Cliſter; if evil humors abound in the Blood and Body, open a Vein and purge; if putrified humors lodge in the Stomach, vomit. If it continue above three dayes, it degenerates into a ſimple Synochus, putrid or Hectick Feaver.

CHAP. LXXXIV.

Of the Feaver Synochus non-putrida.

IF the Feaver aforesaid light upon a plethorick Body, or one who is gross and thick skinned, it turns to a simple Synochus.

It is known by the corpulent and swelling habit of the Body, high colour of the Face. He breaths with difficulty, he is much pained in his Head, and his Temples beat strongly: the Pulse is orderly, but quick and full. The Urine little differeth from its natural colour, yet a little thick and red, and the heat is not very violent. It lasteth to the fourth, and sometimes to the seventh day; if it ends not then, it degenerates into a putrid Feaver.

The Cure is to be performed by blood-letting, by cooling, and by opening the pores of the Body. Before blood-letting, if the Patient be costive, and his Body foul, give an emollient and laxative Clyster. Then give cooling Juleps, made of the Decoction of Barley and cool Herbs, or with their distilled Waters, as of Endive, Succory, Sorrel, Bugloss, Borrage, and the like, with Syrups of Succory, Lemmons, Vinegar, Violets, Pomgranates, and the like, adding some drops of Oyl of Vitriol; or boil in the distilled Waters, Trisantalon, or Diamargariton frigidum, lest the Waters encrease Crudities by their Rawness. Or you may make an Emulsion of Almonds, the great cold Seeds, and white Poppy-seeds with Barley-water, or the distilled Water of the aforegoing cooling Herbs. *Galen* adviseth to give the Patient cold water in great abundance: till his colour fade, but beware this Cure, unless the Patient be strong, corpulent and not full of ill Humors, and that he take it in the height of the Fit. I confess I have seen many so cured, and have experimented it upon my own Body, but durst not advise it. Anoint the Liver and Loyns with *Unguentum Rosatum, Refrigerans Galeni*, or *Ceratum Santalinum*. Or make an Epithem of the distilled Waters of Endive, Succory, Sorrel, *&c.* the three Sanders, and Powder of Diamargariton frigidum. If the Disease end not quickly after bleeding, purge with gentle things that do not heat, nor much stirr the Humors, as Rhubarb, Cassia, Manna, Tamarinds, Syrup of Roses, Catholicon, and such like.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXXXV.

Of continual Putrid Feavers.

I Shall describe the Causes and Cure of all putrid Feavers in one Chapter; for though there are divers sorts, yet the Cure is almost the same in all: therefore, laying aside particular precepts, let the Judgement and Dexterity of every Physitian put a difference between them. I shall likewise wave many Nice Descriptions and Definitions of Feavers: First, as not beneficial to the young Student in Physick: secondly, as not befitting this Volume.

Synochus putrida is engendred of the same Causes as the simple Synochus, as the shutting up of the Pores of the skin, and Obstruction of the Vessels by much Blood, or clammy Humors; by which means the Transpiration of fuliginous Vapours is hindred, and putrifaction is bred in the Blood.

A continual Tertian doth every third day afflict the Patient more than ordinary, and is caused by cholerick Humors putrifying in the *Vena Cava*. And it is caused by all things that may breed Choller, as violent Exercise, hot and dry Ayr, Fasting, Watching, Meats hot and dry, and a hot and dry Distemper of the Liver.

A Quotidian continuing, is a putrifying of phlegmatick Humors in the Veins; and afflicts the Patient more than ordinary every day. and doth for the most part assail phlegmatick persons; and because phlegm is not easily putrifyed, this kind of Feaver is seldome seen.

The continual Quartane is that which hath its Exacerbations or Fits every fourth day, and it is caused by the putrefaction of Melancholy in the *Vena Cava*, and is caused of any thing that breeds Melancholy and causeth it to putrify.

Of these Feavers, there are accidental differences raised from their distinct Symptoms. First, *Febris ardens*, or a burning Feaver which is accompanied with these Symptomes, *viz.* an ardent burning Heat, and unquenchable Thirst; which is also divided into two sorts, a Legitimate, or bastard burning Feaver, a *Synochus ardens*, and *Ardens periodica*, and they differ one from another, only as the Choller causing them is more or less sharp, and nearer or farther from the heart. A second sort is, *Febris Colliquans*, a melting Feaver, which in regard of the greatness of the heat doth melt the fat and flesh, and sometimes the Blood, and dissolveth it by insensible Transpiration, Sweat, Urine or Stool. It is caused by a sharp, thin and cholerick Matter vehemently inflamed, unto which is joyned many times a malignant

and

and peſtilent quality. The third ſort is called *Febris Horrifica*, in which the Patient is troubled with ſhaking Fits; and it is cauſed by cholerick and phlegmatick Humors mingled together, which being unequally moved, ſtirreth up quaking; either becauſe the thin and ſharp humors do twitch the ſenſible membranous parts, or the inflamed Choller putrifying puts in motion the Crudities; or elſe Nature doth ſeek to ſhake off the Crude undigeſted humors, by this means the heat being driven back to the Center, the extream parts of the body become cold; and afterwards the heat coming forth again, they grow hot. Fourthly, there is another kind called *Aſſades Febris*, in which the Patient is very unquiet, troubled, and toſſeth, and is ſick in his Stomach and vomiteth. The fifth ſort is called *Alodes*, in which the Patient, by reaſon of putrifaction and malignity of humors, continually ſweateth, by which the ſubſtance of the Body is waſted. The ſixth ſort is *Febris Syncopalis*, becauſe the Patient often ſwoons and faints away, and is cauſed by thin, ſharp and venemous Choller, or by phlegm, or abundance of Crudities, together with a weakneſs of the Stomach. The laſt ſort is *Epiala Febris*, in which the Patient is ſenſible of heat and cold at one and the ſame time; and this is cauſed by glaſſy phlegm mingled with bitter Choller, the phlegm cauſeth a ſence of cold, and the Choler of heat: or elſe it is cauſed by glaſſy phlegm alone, partly putrified, and partly void of putrefaction. For glaſſy and tough phlegm doth not quickly putrify, but by degrees, and that which is not putrified following that which is putrefied; hence comes a ſenſe of cold from the firſt, and heat from the latter.

There are yet other ſorts of accidental differences of continual Feavers, which are called Symptomatick Feavers, which ariſe from the Inflammation and putrefaction of the humors in ſome of the Bowels, and of this kind are thoſe Feavers which accompany the Frenzy, the Pleuriſie, Quinzy, the Inflammation of the Lungs or Liver, and other Inflammations, Ulcers, or Impoſthumes of the internal parts, and may be known by the defects of the parts which cauſe them. Yet take this Caution, that all theſe Feavers which accompany theſe Diſeaſes are not Symptomatical, but ſometimes eſſential, and preceed the Diſeaſe, as is commonly ſeen, that one may be ſick three or four dayes of a continual Feaver, before any pain in the ſide, or Symptome of the Pleuriſie appear, the ſame you may find preceding the other Diſeaſes, and is an Obſervation worth Note, and of great Moment in the practice of Phyſick.

There are other peculiar and extraordinary Cauſes which many times happen, of which *Zechius* propoundeth an extraordinary Example, of a certain Infant, ſcarce two years old, who had a continual

Feaver

Feaver, attended with grievous Symptomes, *viz.* Unquietneſs, Convulſions and Vomitings; the external parts were cold, and the internal parts burned with heat; for which cauſe they judged that ſome Malignity was joyned to the Feaver, which is ſeldome accompanied with ſuch Symptomes: at length the cauſe was found to ariſe from Blood putrifying in the ſtomach; for the Infant being Tongue-tied, & a little before cut by a Chyrurgion, the Veins being cut, ſhed blood, which, for want of care, fell into the Stomach: after the taking of Oyl of ſweet Almonds, it vomited clotted blood, then by the help of a Clyſter, it voided more downwards, and the Feaver and its Symptomes ceaſed.

Theſe Feavers are known to be continual by their Continuity, and the putrefaction is known by a more ſharp and biting heat than ordinary; the pulſe is great, quick and unequal, the *Syſtole* is quicker than the *Diaſtole*, becauſe Nature doth more ſtrive to expel the ſooty Vapours, than to draw in cold Air. The Fit beginneth with a cold ſhaking, or ſome of theſe Symptomes, *viz.* Wearineſs, Watching, troubled Sleeps, difficult Breathing, pain of the Head and Stomach, plenty of Excrements, Yawning and Retching: when it comes to the height, theſe ſymptomes are heightned, and ſeconded with Giddineſs, Ravings, Hiccoughs, Heat-burning, Thirſt, and Blackneſs, and Roughneſs of the Tongue: particular ſigns demonſtrate peculiar differences. The *Synochus putrida* hath the ſame ſigns, which are proper to *Synochus ſimplex*, but more vehement. Signs of a Feaver from Choller, are burning pain, the pulſe ſwift and quick, and fiery and crude Urine, without Sediment at the beginning, cholerick Vomits and Stools, Thirſt and Bitterneſs of the Mouth, Drineſs and Blackneſs of the Tongue, want of ſleep, raving, and the like, A *Synochus putrida* differs from a *Synochus bilioſa* in this, that the Frſt hath Fits every third day, the other keeps the ſame Tenor.

A continual Quotidian is known by theſe ſigns, the heat at firſt is more mild, afterwards more ſharp: the Pulſe is not ſo quick nor great as in the former, the Urine is at firſt white and troubled, afterwards red and thick; little Thirſt, no ſweat unleſs ſalt phlegm abound, the Face is ſwelled, bloat, and of a red colour, and all ſigns of phlegm appear.

A continual Quartane is known by this, that the ſymptomes are not ſo violent as in the cholerick Feaver, and ſharper than in the phlegmatick or quotidian. An appearance of cold, dry, melancholy ſymptomes, and the Fits invade the Patient more than ordinary every fourth day.

The burning Feaver is known by the ſigns of a Feaver proceeding from Choller.

A

A melting Feaver is known by fat and oyly Urine cholerick, fat, clammy, and ſtinking Stools, the Noſe ſharp, and a ſudden Conſumption of the whole Body.

I need not tell you how ſhivering, or tumbling and toſſing Feavers are known.

Elodes is known by inordinate Sweats, abundance of Urine, and thick by reaſon of putrefaction; the ſtools ſhew an apparent waſting and the loſs of ſtrength doth manifeſt the ſame.

Syncopalis Febris is known by the ſwooning Fits: *Epiala*, by heat and cold felt together; and Symptomatick Feavers, from the Diſeaſes from which they proceed.

Signa Prognoſtica: *Synochus putrida* is not without danger. If ſigns of Concoction appear about the fourth day, the Diſeaſe will terminate about the ſeventh day. If Concoction appear not, and the Patient's Face is ſwelled, it will continue long. The redder the Urine is, the better, if Concoction appear; but with ſigns of Crudity it threatens death: white Urine is worſt, and threatens death. Cholerick Feavers are acute and dangerous, and ſo much the more as the ſymptoms are violent and encreaſed above the natural Temper of the Patient. A continual Quotidian continueth long for the moſt part, becauſe of the thickneſs of the humors, the more Evacuations the better; beware leſt it degenerate into a Cachexy or Dropſy. A continual Quartane is rare: ſometimes the Quartane Ague degenerates thereunto, and is deadly for the moſt part. The melting, ſweating, ſhaking, tumbling, ſwooning Feavers, are dangerous. Symptomatick Feavers are to be judged from the excellency of the part affected, the Nature of the Diſtemper, and the Validity of the Patient's ſtrength.

Medicines in a cholerick Feaver ought to be cooling and moiſtning, in plegmatick and melancholy more warm and attenuate. Let the Air be cold and moiſt, let cool Water be ſprinkled upon the ground, with Herbs and Flowers, let the covering of his Bed be light and thin. Let his Diet (if he eat any thing) be very ſharp, thin and ſlender. Let his Drink be Barley water, and his Meat Barley Broths, Panadoes, and ſuch like. If the Feaver be of long continuance, let the ſick make uſe of a fuller Diet, *viz.* of the Broth or Fleſh of Chickens, Hens, Capons, Partridges, Veal, Mutton, or Jellyes made with them. In his Drink or Barley water let cool herbs be boiled, and give it a grateful relliſh with Spirit of Vitriol. If the Feaver ariſe from hot and thick Choller, or if there be a Conſumption of the Lungs, Inflammation of the ſtomach, bloody Flux, Ulcers of Kidneys and Bladder, or piſſing of Blood; ſharp things are not good, but rather ſuch things as gently thicken, as Barley water with Syrup of Violets, or of dryed Roſes. Sleep is very good, and watching hurtful, yet

over

overmuch sleep doth overwhelm the natural Heat, and hinder Evacuation: which ought to be made, and nothing to be retained, which ought naturally to be expelled. First, Blood-letting doth diminish plenitude of the Body and Veins, pulls back the Humors which cause Obstruction, cools the Body, and makes it perspicable, keeps back Putrefaction, and furthers Concoction. Therefore after the Patient hath had a Stool by a Clyster or otherwise, open a Vein, and bleed the Patient according to his strength and present state. But this observe, that you bleed not in the extremity of the Fit: when weakness or age will not permit a Vein to be opened, Cupping-Glasses must be applyed: Frictions must not be used, but in swooning Feavers. After you have let Blood once, twice or thrice, if you see occasion, come to purge the morbinck Matter: the Medicines for this intent must be Cassia, Manna, Tamarinds, Catholicum, Electuarium lenitivum, Diaprunum simplex, Syrup of Roses, and of Succory with Rhubarb. Some object against Rhubarb for its heat, Manna and Syrup of Roses, because it is sweet, and soon turned into Choller; but being mingled with cool things, or given in cool Waters, they can do no hurt. If the Stomach is much afflicted, and the Patient is troubled with Vomiting, you must understand that Nature endeavours to cast out her enemy that way, and she ought to be assisted by a Vomit. The gentler sort, and such as are to be chosen for weak people, is the Oyl of Almonds or common Oyl given in Barley-water; you must give a pint at the least, or else it will hardly work the effect: Syrup of Vinegar or Oxymel given in the Decoction of Radishes, every day or every other day, give an emollient and refrigerating Clyster, such as Barley, Mallows, Violet-leaves and Mercury, Flowers of Camomil and Melilot, seeds of Dill and Fennel, *&c.* cooling Herbs are, Lettuce, Endive, Succory, Housleek a blade or two, Water lillies; dissolve therein Cassia, Catholicon, Diaprunum simplex, the Honey of Violets and Mercury, Oyl of Water-lillies, Violets, *&c.*

If the Disease spring from Phlegm, leave out the cooling Herbs and dissolve in Hiera Picra, Diaphœnicon, Honey of Roses and Mercury, Oyl of Camomil, Dill, or common Oyl. No absolute and perfect Purgation ought to be administred, till the morbifick cause be ripened and digested, which must be done by Juleps, thus: *Take of the distilled waters of Endive, Succory and Sorrel, of each two ounces; Syrup of Lemmons and Violets, of each one ounce and an half; a little Oyl of Vitriol to sharpen it; make a Julep, and let the Sick take a spoonful or two often.* Or you may make a Decoction of the Roots of Sorrel, Succory, Maiden-hair, Endive, Dandelion, Tamarinds, and such like, and make a Julep with the aforesaid Syrups, or Syrup of Vine-

gar

gar and Pomgranates. If the Choller by its ſharpneſs cauſe a Flux, make Juleps which have a thickning quality: *Take of the Waters of Lettuce, Purſlane and Plantane, of each three ounces: the Syrups of Violets and Water-Lillies, of each one ounce: of red Poppies half an ounce, mix them, and make a Julep.* If the Feaver comes from a phlegmatick cauſe, you muſt give things more cutting and attenuating; as a Decoction of Agrimony, Maiden-hair, Betony, Carduus Benedictus, and the five opening Roots, Liquoriſh, and Raiſins, ſuch like; and the Syrups of Vinegar, Maidon-hair, and Bizantius, and Spirit of Vitriol. If it proceed from Melancholy, make a Decoction of Ceterach, Burrage and Bugloſs, Maiden-hair, Fumitory, Dodder, ſcordium, the bark of Aſh, Capars, Tamarisk, and with any of their Syrups, *viz.* Fumitory, Bugloſs, *&c.* make a Julep. Or with ſuch like Ingredients, (according to the Nature of the peccant Humor) you may make phyſical Broths, or Emulſions, and Almond Milks. Likewiſe of the aforeſaid Ingredients you may make Epithems, Oyntments, and ſuch like, to cool and well temper the Liver. Altering and preparing Humors uſed for ſome dayes together, you may make bold to purge with Scammoniate Medicines, as Diaphœnicon, Diaprunum ſolutivum, Electuarium de ſucco Roſarum, and Diacarthamum, and ſuch like, whoſe Doſes you ſhall find in the laſt Book. To ſtrengthen dejected Nature, make uſe of the Conſerve of Bugloſs Roots, the leaves of Sorrel and Wood-ſorrel, the ſtalks of Lettuce, the Flowers of Burrage, Bugloſs, Violets, Succory, Roſes, Pulp of Citrons. Theſe powders are good, of Coral, Pearls, Ivory, Harts-horn, Diamargariton frigidum, Diatriaſantalon, Diarrhodon Abbatis, Confectio Alchermes & de Hyacintho; with theſe may the Ingenious make Electuaries, or other Compoſitions according to Art.

CHAP. LXXXVI.

Of the Hectick Feaver.

AN Hectick Feaver occupies the ſolid parts of the Body, as well as the Spirits; it is an unnatural heat, of which the Patient is ſcarce ſenſible. This Feaver is either primary, and begins of it ſelf, or ſecundary and followeth ſome other Feaver. Some begin at the heart, and ſome at other parts; as, the Lungs, Liver, Spleen, Kidneys Womb, or other parts inflamed. The Cauſes of this Feaver are external or internal; External Cauſes are all that may occaſion any of the other Feavers. The Internal Cauſes are burning and peſtilential Feavers, which do ſpeedily conſume the moiſture of the heart, or

ſome

ſome lingring Feaver. An Inflammation, Ulcer, Putrifaction of any of the inward parts, may cauſe an Hectick Feaver.

An Hectick Feaver is known eaſily, becauſe it is continual, without encreaſing or decreaſing, ſaving a little after Meat; the Pulſe is little frequent and quick, the Arteries are hotter than the other parts; the Urine appeareth as of a healthy man, but after long continuance there is an Oyl ſwims on the top, and a Sediment like to Meal, which ſignifieth the waſting of the body.

An Hectick Feaver may be cured, unleſs it be neglected till it come to the height, that is, when the Eyes are hollow, dry with dry Excrements, the Bones ſtick out, and the colour of the Face is gon, the Skin is dry, and the Midriff ſo contracted, as if the Patient had no Guts, then it is incurable.

If the Hectick Feaver depend upon the Diſeaſe of any other part, the Cure muſt be directed to that Diſeaſe; and if it be joyned with any other Diſeaſe, reſpect muſt be had to that Diſeaſe. The Cure of the Hectick conſiſteth more in due obſervance of Diet, than in Medicines. His Diet muſt be cool and moiſten, and ſoon nouriſh; as Chicken Broths, or Broths made of Hens, Capons, Veal, Kid, Mutton, in which boyl French-barley, Lettuce, Endive, Succory, Sorrel, Burrage, Purſlane, and ſuch like. The fleſh of young Hares, Pheaſants, and young Partridges are good; Panadoes, Water-gruel, Barley-cream, Rice-pottage with Almonds, or the cold Seeds. Boyled meat is better than roaſted, and if the Patient eateth roaſted meat, let Oranges and Lemmons be his Sauce. For his Diet likewiſe may be prepared, Jellyes made of Capons, Knuckles of Veal and Mutton, Calves-feet, Sheeps-feet, and ſuch like, adding Herbs, or other Ingredients that are cooling, moiſtning and cordial. New laid Eggs boyled rear, are good; and of Fruit, Apples are much commended, eſpecially Pippins, becauſe they breed cold blood. For his drink, let him uſe Barley-water, with cooling Syrups. *Galen* approveth of cold water, with which he ſaith, he hath ſaved many from the *Maraſmos* which is the Conſumption of the radical moiſture of the body, which commonly followeth this diſeaſe. Great care is to be uſed in the giving of cold water to decayed people, leſt the heat of the Patient ſhould be wholly extinguiſhed. Motion and much ſtirring and labour is not good, yet a little Exerciſe before Meat may be allowed of: but above all Exerciſes, let him beware of the Under-ſheet. Let his ſleep be moderated; if he be coſtive, provoke a ſtool by a Suppoſitory, or gentle Clyſters. Purges are not to be allowed of, becauſe the Body hath more need of repairing than weakning: yet if the body be full of Excrements, you may venture to give gentle Purgers, as Caſſia, Manna, *&c.* Cooling and altering Juleps, ſuch as are preſcribed in the

Chapter

Chapter before going, the Patient make uſe of; but let him beware of the too frequent uſe of them, leſt they diminiſh his heat too much. Such Epithems, Unguents, or Oyls mentioned in the aforegoing Chapter, are good to temper the heat of the Liver. Laſtly, ſuch Medicines mentioned in the former Chapter, as ſtrengthen Nature, and revive the Spirits may be uſed, and there is need enough thereof. The worſt Symptome that can attend this Diſeaſe, is a Looſeneſs; if it ſo happen, give Goats or Cows Milk wherein ſteel hath been quenched or Rice boiled in it, or Syrup of Quinces given with the Decoction of French Barley parched, or ſuch like.

CHAP. LXXXVII.

Of the Tertian Ague.

THis Diſeaſe is divided into an Exquiſite and baſtard Tertian; the exquiſite is terminated in 12 hours, but a baſtard laſteth longer: if it exceed twenty four hours, it is called *Tertiana extenſa*, a Tertian extended.

The Tertian Ague is Simple, double or triple; the ſimple is that which cometh every other day; the double Tertian cometh every day, and ſhall be diſtinguiſhed from the quotidian in its proper place; and ſometimes the Patient hath two Fits in one day. The triple Tertian is when the Patient hath three Fits in two dayes.

Choller, and ſuch things as engender it, are the cauſe of this Diſeaſe, *viz.* a hot and dry Diſtemper of the Spleen, youthful Age, hot Air, Watchings, Cares, Anger, Faſtings, uſe of hot Meats, and overmuch Exerciſe. Thoſe that have hot Livers, that eat and drink liberally, and ſuch things as breed Crudities, Phlegm, and melancholly Humors, are ſubject to baſtard Tertians, by reaſon of the mixture of Choller with the Crudities.

The exquiſite Tertian doth alwayes begin with ſhaking, the Quotidian begins with a light ſhivering or coldneſs. After the cold Fit followeth great heat, ſharp biting and intolerable Thirſt, and ſometimes all the Symptomes of a putrid Tertian Feaver. In the Baſtard Tertian all the aforegoing ſigns appear, but more remiſs, and more vehement than a quotidian; according as more or leſs Phlegm is mingled with the Choller, this Diſeaſe cometh nearer to a Quotidian, or exquiſite Tertian.

A Legitimate Tertian ſeldome laſteth above ſeven dayes, and is not dangerous, unleſs ſome malignity be joyned with it; and the Patient be of a healthy Conſtitution, & temperate in eating and drinking;

judg the contrary, if the Patient is otherwiſe qualified. If the Patient's Lips break out with Scabs, or if he fall into a Looſneſs, theſe are good ſignes; for Nature is turning out the enemy.

To work the Cure, a cooling Diet muſt be appointed, and withal moiſtning, ſuch as hath been preſcribed in the Cure of continual Feavers; the ſame you muſt obſerve in the double Tertian. But in the Baſtard and ſingle Tertian, a fuller Diet is to be obſerved. What ever the Patient eateth, let him eat nothing before the Fit two or three hours, that there may be a digeſture; but it is good, if he go to ſtool before the Fit; to help the ſame, give a Clyſter.

Clyſters, in an exquiſite Tertian, muſt be made of emollient and cooling Decoction, adding Caſſia, Catholicon, Diaprunum lenitive and ſolutive, *&c.*

In a baſtard Tertian, let the Decoction be emollient and cutting, and diſſolve in it Diaphænicon, Honey of Roſes, *&c.* Purgatives ought to be the ſame for the exquiſite Tertian, as for the continual Feavers. In the Baſtard, add Agarick, Catholicon, Diaphænicon, Senna, and ſuch as the judicious Phyſitian ſhall judge ſuitable, in reſpect of the Patient's Conſtitution, and the Humors offending. But to every Medicine cream of Tartar may be added, for it openeth, cleanſeth and cools. If the Patient be ſubject to Vomit, go that way to work as I ſaid in the Chapter. Open a Vein, and draw blood as often, or as much as you ſee occaſion. Prepare the Humors with Juleps, as you are taught in the laſt Chapter, then Purge. If the humors be ſtubborn, and the Fit continue, make a Decoction of Wormwood and Centaury with cool Herbs to qualifie the heat; it is much commended, after the uſe of that purge again. If there be a Diſtenſion under the ſhort Ribs, apply an emollient, attenuating, and ſtrengthening Fomentation. What ever part of the body is ill diſpoſed, have a regard to that in all your Medicines. The Spirit of Sulphur is much magnified, for extinguiſhing the heat of Feavers; and if the humors be thin, it ſends them forth by Sweat; give them from half a ſcruple to a ſcruple in four ounces of Purſlane water. Or you may give it thus, *Take of Salt of Wormwood half a dram, Spirit of Sulphur a ſcruple, Carduus water four ounces; mix them, and give the Patient to drink when the Fit approacheth, and lay him to ſweat.* Thoſe things which are uſually laid to the Wriſts by the common people, are not to be deſpiſed: I ſhall not inſert them, nor more Receipts for the Cure of the Ague. Firſt, it being my chiefeſt end to deſcribe the Cauſes and Signs of Diſeaſes: Secondly, almoſt every womans Head is full of medicines againſt an Ague.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXXXVIII.

Of the Quotidian, or every day Ague.

THis Ague is cauſed by Phlegm putrifying in the Region of the Body; therefore all things that breed Phlegm in the body may be the cauſe thereof.

The Diagnoſtick ſigns are ſuch as teſtify phlegm to abound in the body, as white colour, pale, dull Sence, Softneſs and Fatneſs, profoundneſs of Sleep, and dreaming of Water. It comes with a cold ſhivering, little or no ſhaking; and for the moſt part it comes in the night. After the cold Fit, the Patient feels heat but mildly not ſcorching, little Thirſt; the Pulſe ſmall, ſeldome and ſlow; there is a Diſtention about the ſhort Ribs: the Fits appear more intenſe or remiſs, laſt longer or ſhorter, as the phlegm is ſimple, or mingledwith other Humors: the Fit commonly laſteth twelve hours, and then leaveth a feavouriſh Fit behind it. Sometimes it laſteth twenty four hours, and is almoſt like a continual Feaver. There is a difference found in reſpect of the Nature of the phlegm, for ſalt phlegm makes the Patient thirſty, ſharp phlegm hungry, ſweet phlegm ſleepy: if the phlegm have no taſt, it makes him without Appetite. Acid or Glaſſy phlegm (by reaſon of its coldneſs) cauſeth ſhaking. This Diſeaſe for the moſt part continueth long, and is not without danger, becauſe it ſometimes degenerates into a Cachexia, Dropſy or Lethargy.

The Diet and Medicines muſt be ſuch as have an extenuating, cutting and dividing quality. The Cure muſt be performed almoſt in the ſame manner as the baſtard Tertian: *Zacutus Luſitanus* doth much commend the Decoction of Roman Worm-wood and Camomel Flowers, if five or ſix ounces be adminiſtred. And the Decoction of China and Guajacum for many dayes, but beware it dry not too much.

CHAP. LXXXIX.

Of the Quartane Ague.

AN intermitting Quartane is cauſed of Melancholy putrifying in the Body.

There are two ſorts of Quartane Agues, *viz.* A Legitimate and a Baſtard Quartane: a Legitimate is bred of natural Melancholy, which is the earthly part of our Nouriſhment, in quality cold and dry. The

baſtard Quartane is bred of preternatural Melancholy, which is bred of aduſt Choller, and is hot and dry, or by Melancholy mixed with aduſt Choller. A quartane Ague is either ſingle, double or triple; the ſingle is that which comes every fourth day. The double is when two Fits happen upon two dayes one after another, and the third day none. Triple quartane is when Fits come every day, as in a quotidian and double tertian,

Diagnoſtick ſigns of a quartane are, the Ague coming every fourth day, and Melancholy abounding in the body: it begins with gaping and ſtretching, the heavineſs of the body; ſhivering and ſhaking follows, as if it would break the Patient's bones. The pulſe is ſeldom and ſlow, the Urine watry, thin and white, after a while it is higher coloured and thicker. The baſtard quartane (for the moſt part) follows other Feavers or Agues, by which aduſtion of Humors is made; and in it the Feaver, Heat and Thirſt, is more violent, and all the Symptomes are greater, becauſe the Humors are thinner. A double quartane is known by the courſe of the Fits: A triple quartane is diſtinguiſhed from a double Tertian or quotidian, by Melancholy abounding; and by the courſe of the Fit: and chiefly in this, that at firſt it was a ſimple or double quartane.

Prognoſticks are thus made: This of all Agues is the longeſt of Continuance; ſome continue half a year, ſome a year, and ſome longer. It is good in this Ague for the Patient to void black Urine. The Baſtard quartane is not of ſo long continuance as the Legitimate, becauſe it proceeds from thinner Humors than the other. The Legitimate it not ſo dangerous as the other, which hath many times dangerous Symptomes, eſpecially if the Liver, Spleen, or any of the inferiour parts be damnified, becauſe it is ſometimes degenerated into a Dropſie. If any aged above ſixty fall into the quartane Ague, it proveth mortal. If the intermitting quartane degenerate into a continual, it is for the moſt part deadly. To bleed at the Noſe in a a quartane Ague is but a bad ſign, becauſe the Morbifick Humors are too thick for ſuch an Evacuation.

If a bloody Flux come upon a quartane Ague, and continue but a while, it is good.

A baſtard quartane is cured almoſt with the ſame Medicines, which have been preſcribed for the Cure of the Tertian: to them adding ſuch Medicines as regard Melancholy, and free the Spleen from Diſaffection.

Seeing the Legitimate quartane is cauſed of Humors that are cold and dry, thick and earthly, we muſt uſe Medicines that heat, moiſten, and attenuate. Let the Patient's Diet be heating and moiſtning,

moiſtning, of good juyce, eaſie of digeſture, and of thin ſubſtance; as rear Eggs, young Animals, and Birds of Mountains, Fiſhes of ſtony Rivers; among Herbs, Borrage, Bugloſs, Spinach, Fennel, Parſly and Turneps: *Crato* doth much commend the Broth of Turneps; of Fruits, Almonds, Apples, ſtewed Prunes, Figgs, Raiſins, Dates and Pine-kernels. Let him abſtain from all Meats which are of a clammy ſubſtance, and of hard digeſture: let him drink ſmall Ale or Beer, let him eat moderately, and on the Fit day ſix hours before the Fit cometh let him be very moderate in drinking, for much drink fills the Spleen, and makes the Diſeaſe rebellious. Having thus ordered his Diet, give him a gentle purgation by Clyſter: *Take of Mallows, Camomel, Mercury and Beets, of each one handful: Polypody of the Oak an ounce and an half, Epithymum half an ounce, of the four great cold ſeeds, and of Anais and of Fennel, of each two drams: boil it in Poſſet-drink to a pint, ſtrain it, diſſolve therein Catholicon and Honey of Roſes, of each one ounce: the Oyls of Violets and Camomel, of each one ounce and an half, mix all, and make a Clyſter.* Then purge the Melancholy humor by ſome gentle Medicine: beware of a ſtrong purge in the beginning before Concoction, leſt you inflame the humors, and turn the Diſeaſe to a continual or at leaſt to a double or triple quartane. Make a gentle purgation thus: *Take of Fumitory, Bugloſs, and Maiden-hair, of each one handful: Polypody of the Oak, Liquoriſh, and ſweet Fenel-ſeed, of each half an ounce: boyl them, when they are boyled, infuſe, or gently boil half an ounce of Senna, till the Liquor come to three or four ounces: diſſolve therein Manna and Syrup of Roſes, of each one ounce for a Potion: give it the next day after the Clyſter.* After purging, open a Vein in the left Arm, unleſs you find the Liver out of order, then you muſt open a Vein in the right Arm: if the blood be black and impure draw the more. Moſt do let blood upon the wel-day, ſome will have it done on the Fit day, before the Fit, beauſe the humors then begin to ſtir: *Zacutus Luſitanus* will have it done when the Moon is at the full, becauſe by the Moons Influence, the earthly and melancholy humor is made more fluid, and apt to come away. It is good to open the Hæmorrhoids, if your Patient hath been inclinable to that Evacuation: if your Patient be a Woman, provoke the Menſtrues if they be ſtopped, and open the *Saphæna*. The opening of the *Vena Salvatella* is much approved of: Likewiſe you muſt make Decoctions, Broths or Juleps to prepare and concoct the Humors: for which purpoſe theſe Simples are good, *viz.* the five opening Roots, and the Root of Succory, Liquoriſh and Bugloſs, bark of Tamariſk: the Leaves of Burrage, Bugloſs, Ceterach, Maiden hair, Fumitory, Germander, Groundpine, Worm-wood and Centaury, the three Cordial-flowers: of theſe

you may make Decoctions, and ſweeten them with Sirrupus Bizantius, or Syrup of Maiden-hair. After the uſe of theſe preparatives purge the melancholy Humor; and between the dayes you purge, give a Clyſter, this obſerving, that you often change your Medicines, and continue in the courſe a long time; for the melancholy humor is not ſoon evacuated, and that is the reaſon that ſo few are cured of this Diſeaſe, becauſe few will obſerve the Rule of the Phyſitian, or have patience to take his Medicines.

Vomits in the beginning of this Feaver, are commended by all; of Aſarum, a dram given in White-wine, is of an excellent faculty. In the declination of this diſeaſe, Diaphoreticks may be given to diſcuſs the reliques of the Diſeaſe, the Decoction of the Roots of China and Sarſa are good, and Venice-Treacle hath a great vertue. You may anoint the Back-bone with a Liniment made of ſome of theſe Oyls, *viz.* of Dill, Camomel, Orris, Coſtus, Rue, Bayes, and Spike in a ſmall quantity; mixing with them Treacle, Cloves, Muſtard-ſeed, Caſtoreum, and the like; of theſe an ingenious Man may compound a Liniment to anoint the Back-bone, one hour before the Fit; then lay him to bed, and lay hot Tyles wrapt in clothes to his feet and hands, and lay him in a Swear. To conclude, great care ought to be had of the Spleen; for in this Diſeaſe the Spleen is diſaffected and obſtructed: The 59 Chapter will furniſh you with ſuch Medicines.

CHAP. XC.

Of the Peſtilence.

HAving briefly treated of moſt Diſeaſes that the body of Man is incident to, I though it convenient to write a word or two of the Peſtilence. But conſidering how many larger Treatiſes thereof are at this day extant, I could have willingly omitted it; but hoping my Mite will not only be acceptable, but beneficial, I thought good to Epitomize this as well as the reſt.

This Diſeaſe afflicteth Nature not onely by a bare Diſtemper or Heat ariſing from putrefaction, but alſo by a malignant and venemous quality; by which means it becomes popular and epidemical. Before we go any farther, know that thoſe feavers which we call malignant or peſtilential, vulgarly ſpotted feavers, are of the ſame kind with the peſtilence, and are cured by the ſame means. The cauſes of the Peſtilence are either internal or external; the internal cauſes are immediate or mediate: the immediate Cauſe is a Corruption of

the

the humors with Putrefaction, the venemous quality is bred of Corruption, and from putrefaction the Feaver is bred. The Mediate cauſes are, fulneſs of blood which Nature cannot maſter, but eaſily turns to putrefaction: Abundance of evil Humors is eaſily corrupted and putrefied; to theſe joyn Obſtructions, which is a great means to breed ſuch Diſeaſes; for ſuch humors cloſe ſhut up the body, & having no Evacuation nor Tranſpiration muſt of neceſſity putrify. But Obſtruction is not a principal cauſe of this Diſeaſe, for the venemous quality is received by drawing in of the Air, by which Venome the Humors are changed from their natural Condition, and of their own accord putrify. The External cauſes are, Firſt the Air, which becomes hurtful to men; firſt, if it be not blown through with wholſome winds, as *Hypocrates* obſerveth, ſpeaking of a grievous peſtilential year, that in that year there were few winds. Secondly, the Air may be vitious by putrid Exhalations, as of Lakes, Pools, Fiſh-ponds, or other ſtanding waters, or from bodies unburied, which have been ſlain in Battail. Thirdly, the Air may become hurtful by Exceſs, or the preposterous Condition of the firſt qualities; as Exceſs of Heat, Cold, Drithe or Moiſture, of which I could lay down manifold Examples, which befit not my ſmall Volume. Inequalities of Seaſons muſt be acknowledged as a cauſe, when it is ſometimes hot, and ſometimes cold, ſometime dry, and ſuddenly moiſture follows; one while vehemently hot, and ſuddenly very cold; or after a violent wet and moiſt time, a ſudden and extream Drouth: a hot Winter, and a cold Summer. Next to a vitious Air, is a bad Aliment and Diet, when the Fruits of the Earth, by a bad Temperature of the Air, are corrupted; or when by reaſon of Scarcity, the Poor are fain to feed on unwholeſome Diet, (whence the proverb came, the Plague followeth the Famine) or a great Plenty following a Famine, when the poor gorge themſelves, which for want of heat, and a good Diſpoſition of body, cannot be digeſted, but turns to putrefaction. Add to theſe the malignant Influence of *Saturn*, *Jupiter* and *Mars* in humane Signs, by which the Conſtitution of the Air and the bodies of Men are changed and corrupted: for all Philoſophers by common conſent acknowledge, that inferiour bodies are governed by the heavenly Conſtellations: To this kind we muſt add the defects and Eclipſes of the Sun and Moon, and unuſual Meteors, eſpecially blazing Stars. Above all Cauſes, let us not be unmindful of the ſtrict and ſevere Judgement of God for the Sins of Mankind: For many times he is pleaſed to puniſh our Sins and Offences by this Judgement; as the Scriptures do frequently prove. To theſe non-natural Cauſes aforementioned, we muſt add the Retention of Womans Courſes, the Hæmorrhoids in Men, or ſome uſuall Evacuation, Idleneſſe, or

too much Sleep, Anger, Sadneſs, or other paſſions of the mind.

Signs that ſhew the Peſtilence approaching, are taken from the preſence of Cauſes before-mentioned. Thoſe Bodies are diſpoſed to receive peſtilential Infection, which have collected evil Juyces and Diet, and have a præpoſterous uſe of the non-natural things afore ſpecified. The chief ſigns which ſhew the Body to be infected; the heart is much afflicted, Cardialgia, and heart-burning, and pain about the mouth of the Stomach: ſometimes great Thirſt, exceeding the Meaſure of the Patient's heat; ſometimes want of Thirſt, yet a vehement Feaver and drineſs of the Tongue: Want of Appetite and abhorring of all Meat, and vomiting up whatever food, drink, Juleps, or Emulſions is given, and their Thirſt continue, and the Tongue black: A frequent and inordinate ſhivering, which comes divers times in a day, wearineſs and heavines of the whole Body, pains of the Head, Watchings and Ravings: Some are very drouſy and ſleepy, then judge that the Brain is full of phlegmatick Excrements. To ſome there happen cholerick Fluxes, which ſtink very much: frequent Sweats, ſmall, ſhort and unprofitable do break forth; the heat is mild and gentle to the feet, becauſe the Diſeaſe is cauſed rather by a malignant and venemous quality, than by putrifaction. Redneſs of the Eyes, and ſometimes a frowning or a furious look: Sometimes abundance of Worms are voided, which ſhew a great putrifaction. The Urine is ſometimes like the urine of a ſound man, if a malignant quality doth rather offend than putrifaction: ſometimes it appeareth thick, troubled, and high coloured, and hath a thick, red, and ſcattered Sediment. On ſome purple Spots, like flea-bitings, Carbuncles, and Riſings in the Groin, behind the Ears, and under the Arm-pits. Thoſe Spots upon the Bodies of the dead, which are of a lead-colour or black, do eſpecially denote the Peſtilence.

No certain Prognoſtick can be drawn of this Diſeaſe, therefore the diſcreet Phyſician ought to ſuſpend his Judgment of the iſſue thereof: for many have died, notwithſtanding many hopes and teſtimonies of Recovery; and, on the contrary, many have eſcaped with moſt mortal ſignes. Yet it is lawful for the Phyſician to give his Conjecture thus; If the pulſe keep a Tenor and equality there is ſome hopes; on the contrary, if it be inordinate, unequal and contracted, it is dangerous. If the pulſe be like the pulſe of an healthy perſon, it is dangerous; becauſe it is a ſign that Nature doth not labour to concoct the Humours for her deliverance. Raving is not dangerous, if it be leſſened by Sleep; but if it turn to dotage, and continue, there is little hope. Contractions, convulſive and trembling Motions are deadly; for it ſhews that the Brain is mortally

wounded

wounded, and that Nature is overcome by the Diſeaſe. Deafneſs at the beginning is dangerous: but in the ſtate of the Diſeaſe it is not ſo, for many times health follows. Sneezing is laudable. Heart-burnings, Hiccoughs, and extream Loathing do portend danger, and that the Stomach is over-maſtered by the malignant quality of the humors. Suppreſſion of all Evacuations in the beginning and ſtate of the Diſeaſe, is good; provided, that the malignity doth not ſettle in the head, or near any principal part. The Urine that is like the Urine of a healthy perſon is bad; the ſame judge, if they be thin, thick, confuſed or troubled. Urines which have a laudable ſediment, and well concoct are good, and ſhew a ſtrong natural Faculty to expel the Venom. An Urine black or blew, fat and oyly, with a black or blewiſh ſettling ſhews a waſting of the body, and is a deadly Sign. Sweats ſeldom portend good, though it happens on a critical day, unleſs it doth much diminiſh the Feaver. Sometimes a Looſneſs of the Belly at the beginning is good, and ſometimes it is a deadly Sign. Spots, the more laudable the colour is, the better; if they be black, or Lead-colour, and go in again it is dangerous. Carbuncles and Buboes, the farther from the Heart the better, and the ſooner they ripen, the ſafer.

The Cure ought to be two-fold, firſt, to preſerve thoſe from it who have it not; ſecondly, in healing thoſe that have it. Firſt, to preſerve, take away the cauſes both internal and external. If the body be phlethorick, let Phlebotomy abate it: If full of evil humors let them be purged: If obſtructed, let means be uſed to open Obſtructions. If the body be in a good ſtate, labour to keep it ſo. If it be too moiſt, labour to dry it, and avoid all moiſt Nouriſhments, and much drinking, eat no Fiſh, Meats made of milk, nor Herbs; walk not in the South Air, or near Lakes, nor in the Night, ſleep not too much. If the Body be weak uſe a reſtorative Diet. If the Air be too hot, labour to cool it, as we taught you, in continual Feavers. If it be too moiſt, correct it by fires and fumes; as alſo to conſume and diſſipate the infection of the Air, make fires and fumes of ſweet Woods, and other ſweet ſcented Ingredients, as Cypreſs, Wood of Aloes, Juniper, Storax, Laudanum, Myrrh, Benjamin, yellow Sanders, Ireos, Frankincenſe, Cinnamon, Cloves, Red-Roſe-leaves, Calamint, Bays, Roſemary, and ſuch like. Let the common ſort of people, and the poorer ſort, carry Rue and Angelica to ſmell to, and take in the morning faſting, and when they go abroad, *Mithridates*'s medicine; Mithridate, Venice-Treacle, and ſuch like. Let the Rich man uſe of this Pomander: *Take of Labdanum, and of the Rinds of Citrons, of each one dram: of the three kinds of Sanders, of each half a dram; wood of Aloes, flowers of Bugloſs, Nenuphar, Roſe-leaves, of each two Scruples, Alipta Muſcatæ,*

Muſcatæ, half a ſcruple; Cloves and Marjerom, of each one ſcruple Zedoary-root one ſcruple, Benjamin one dram, Storax Calamita one dram and an half, Campbir half a dram: Musk and Ambergreece, of each four Grains; Pouder them, and with the Muſilage of Gum-Dragant made in Roſe-water, make a Pomander. And let him make uſe of this Preſervative: *Take of Bole-Armeniack prepared half an ounce, of Cinnamon three drams, of white Dittany, the roots of Angelica, Gentian, and Tormentil, of each two drams, the root of Zedoary, red Roſes, of all the Sanders, Harts-horn, the Leaves of Scabious, and Flowers of Bugloſs, of each one dram, of Juniper-berries, Nutmegs, and bone of a Stags Heart, of each half a dram; of Pearls prepared two Scruples, of Saphir, Jacinth, Emerauld, Ruby and Granate prepared, and leaf Gold, of each one ſcruple; pouder them all, and with Syrup of Vinegar or Lemmons, make an Electuary, and take a ſcruple or two in the Morning.*

For the cure of thoſe that are ſick, let the ſame courſe of Diet be obſerved, as was preſcribed in continual Feavers; and if the body be plethorick, open a Vein; How much blood to take away, and how often to bleed, let prudence be your director. If you judge it neceſſary, apply Cupping-glaſſes to the ſhoulders, back, and hips; and veſicatories applied to the neck and Arm-pits, and Groyns, are ſeldome without admirable ſucceſs; and a Cataplaſme of Snails, or Radiſhes, laid to the feet are good. Firſt, altering Juleps are good to prepare the humors, made of ſuch things as are preſcribed for the Cure of continual Feavers; to which add Antidotes, which are a ſpecifick property to fight againſt the venemous quality: as the roots of Tormentil, Cinkfoil, Scorzonera, white Thiſtle; the leaves of Scordium, Carduus, Scabious, Meddow-ſweet, Flowers of Marigolds; Lemons and Citrons, Odoriferous Apples, Harts-horn; the juyce or Syrup of Lemons, Pomegranats, Citrons, Vinegar, the Spirit of Sulphur and Vitriol. In the whole courſe of the cure, Antidotes muſt be given, of which there are four ſorts or degrees, the firſt reſiſt the venemous quality, and beſides are cold, dry and aſtringent, by which they ſtrengthen the Heart, hinder putrifaction, and the venom from ſpreading over the Body: of this ſort are Bolearmenick, Terra Sigillata, the roots of Biſtort, Cinkfoil, Tormentil, &c. The ſecond ſort, by their coldneſs and tenuity do reſiſt putrifaction, and reſtrain the venemous quality: as the juyce of Lemons, Spirit of Sulphur and Vitriol, and all other acid things. The third ſort are ſuch as are hot and Diaphoretick, which expel the venome from the Center to the Circumference, from the Heart to the outward parts, by ſweat; and of this ſort are Angelica, Zedoary, Dictamnus, Meddow-ſweet, Scordium, Carduus, Scabious, Treacle, Methridate, Treacle-water. The laſt ſort are ſuch, as by a ſpecial quality without exceſs, do oppoſe

the

the venemous quality, as Bezoar-stone, Harts horn, Unicorns-horn, Troches or Vipers, and such like. Of these and Simples of the like nature, may many Medicines be composed, which must be diversly varied and mixed, according to the different degree of malignity, and putrifaction, according to the intension and remission of the Feaver, according to the divers Temperaments, Sex, and age of the Patient, the determination of which depends not upon any certain rules, but upon the prudence and head-piece of an able Physitian. In the Malignant and spotted Feaver, if putrefaction be greater than the venemous quality; the Medicines of the first, second, or fourth order, do best agree in the beginning and augment of the Feaver: and those of the third, *viz.* Diaphoreticks and sweating medicines in the declination; but if it be the Plague, and the venemous quality exceed the putrifaction, let Diureticks be used first: as for the form of particular medicines, let the Physitian vary them according to the different degrees of heat, putrifaction, and malignity. Let the Physitian take care to strengthen the Heart also, by outward applications of Cordial Epithems; and let the Carbuncles and Botches be suppurated, broken, and healed, by the expert Chyrurgions.

CHAP. XCI.

Of the Small Pox and Measels.

THe Feaver which attends the Small Pox and Measels, may be justly termed Pestilential, for it is epidemical, contagious and many times mortal: I need not write any thing of the difference between these two, *viz.* Pox and Measels, for every Woman knows it. There is another sort of Pustules come out upon Children like Bladders without inflammation or redness, and without a Feaver: some Physitians call it the Crystals, we call it the Blisters. The cause of the small Pox and Measels was in the Mothers Blood, with which the Child was nourished in the Womb, and is hence chiefly gathered, because among thousands of men, it is hard to find one, who once in his life hath not had these Diseases. For in the blood be it never so pure, some impurities are found, which doth communicate pollution to the parts of the Child, and defile the Mass of blood; and being provoked by some occasion (*viz.* a certain disposition of Air, proportionable to the disease) the blood boyls and putrifieth it self and the parts, and the impurity is cast forth. Understand that these impurities do not substantially remain in the body, for then they would corrupt in a little time, but an evil quality is by them imprinted upon

the

the parts. When this ebullition beginneth, the excrement is two-fold, either thin or thick; if thin, the Meaſels follow; if thick, the ſmall *Pox*. And another reaſon is this, Sometimes the Air is inclinable to the one, and ſometimes to the other. Again, the Pox is either perfective or corruptive; the perfective is when the corrupt, impure, and excrementitious part of the blood is caſt forth by nature, the reſt remaining pure, and the Patient is reſtored without Phyſick: the corruptive Pox is not onely the corrupt blood purged forth, but the moſt pure blood is corrupted, which is occaſioned by a malignant conſtitution of the Air, and ſo produceth a dangerous and Epidemical Pox: which is ſometimes a forerunner of the Plague. In reſpect of the natural conſtitution of the Body they come forth more or leſs, ſooner or later, and ſometimes they ſeize upon the internal as well as external parts, as the Throat, Lungs, Guts, Liver, Spleen, *&c.*

Signs which declare the Pox at hand, are pain in the head, and beating about the Temples, troubled and terrified in ſleep, ſometimes ravings and Convulſions, hoarſneſs, cough, and difficulty of breathing; heat and pricking all over the Body, pain of the back, ſhining before the eyes, the face red and ſwelled. If they come out ſoon and eaſily ripen, there is no danger, the ſame judge if the ſymptomes are not great; and the voice and breathing is free. If they come out red, afterwards white, round pointed, and outwardly in the skin, there is no danger. The contrary to theſe are ſigns of a deadly and dangerous Pox, *viz.* A great Feaver, which is not abated at their coming out, difficulty of breathing, great thirſt, a looſneſs, or bloody flux, becauſe the malignant humours have their recourſe inward, which is contrary to nature, a bloody Vrine, or ſtool, bleeding at the Noſe, Gums, or other parts, are commonly deadly ſigns, for they ſignifie the extreme acrimony and malignancie of the blood, that nature is forced to void it in ſuch a prepoſterous way. Pox long coming out, ſhews the contumacie of the humor, or Weakneſs of Nature, if they be many, great, double, and united, they ſhew abundance of humors: hard ones ſhew the thickneſs of the Matter: flat ones ſhew the Weakneſs of the Expulſive Faculty: if there be a black Spot in the middle, it ſhews the malignity of the humors; the like judge, if they be green, blewiſh or black, and they are all bad ſigns; but it is worſe if they ſink, go in, and the Tumor falleth, for it ſignifieth the Retirement of the humors inward, and few in this condition eſcape. If black or blew ſpots come forth among the Pox, it ſhews great Malignity; and the Patient in great danger. If the Excrements and Urine be black or livid, they ſignifie abundance of Melancholy, and great danger.

For the Cure, keep the Patient in a warm room, and if you tender his

his life, keep out the cold Air, leſt the humours be driven inward. Keep the Cloaths cloſe about him, but let them not lie too heavy. Let his Drink be Barly-water, and boyl therein Sorrel Roots and Harts-horn, and Figs, if the Feaver be not violent: let his Sleep be moderate. Phyſitians, for the moſt part, adviſe the Cure to begin with blood-letting, that is, if the Patient be full of blood, and nothing forbid it; but it muſt be done before, or juſt as they be coming forth. Purges are abſolutely forbidden; but if the body be very coſtive, move it with a Suppoſitory, but do not provoke it. Then endeavour the expulſion of the Matter, thus; *Take of the Roots of graſs, Aſparagus and Fennel, of each four ounces: Liquoris half an ounce: Wood Sorrel two handfuls: twenty Figs: the Cordial Flowers one Pugil: make a Decoction to a pint, towards the later end, put in a little Saffron; take four ounces Night and Morning.* Bezoar and Gaſcoins powder is good to ſend out the Pox; and for Children *Diaſcordium* is a familiar Medicine. We muſt endeavour to preſerve the internal parts: if you fear that the Liver, Spleen, or Guts ſhould ſuffer, to the former Decoction add husked Lentils, two drams; Gum Lac, and Tragacanth, of each one dram. You muſt defend the Eyes with the Water of Roſes and Plantane, and infuſe Camphir, Saffron; and if the Inflammation be great, infuſe Tutty. You muſt defend the Lungs with the Conſerve of Roſes and Violets, the Syrup of Violets, Jujubes, Myrtles, dried Roſes and Violets, and ſuch like. You muſt defend the Throat with a Gargle of Oxycrate, or you may make it with Plantane water, and Syrup of Mulberries or Pomegranates. To defend the Noſe, put up a *Nodulus*, made of Vinegar, Roſe-water, and the powder of Sanders and Camphir. When the Pox are out, full ripe, and begin to break, anoint them often with the Oyl of Almonds, it will be a means to prevent their pitting: and where there are likely to be holes, anoint with the Oyl of the yelks of Eggs.

The End of the Second Book.

THE

THE THIRD BOOK.

HAving in the former Book been more voluminous than I expected, I shall be briefer in this, and treat more Theorically than Practically: And leaving the Description and Cures of Wounds, Tumors, and Ulcers in particular to the Ingenious and Expert Chyrurgion; I shall run over their Causes, Signs, and Cures generally, and as briefly as may be.

CHAP. I.

Of a Green Wound.

A Wound is a breach of Continuity, fresh and bloody without Putrifaction or Matter: It is caused by a Sword, Bullet, Arrow, or such like, which the Chyrurgion may easily perceive. Wounds in the flesh, are easily cured; in the Nerves, Veins, and Arteries, they are not without danger: In the instrumental and principal parts, as the Heart, Liver, Lungs, Brain, Spleen, Midriff, Wezand, Stomach, Guts, or Bladder, they are deadly. A Feaver, Perturbation, Swooning, Convulsion, and such like Symptomes are dangerous.

The Cure must be directed, first to the cause; secondly, to the Wound it self; thirdly, to the part affected. Lastly, to the Symptomes attending. The Cause or outward thing, *viz.* a Bullet, Arrow, or such like, sticking in the Body must be drawn out by Instruments or by Medicine: What concerns the first I shall not meddle with, the medicinal part I shall briefly handle. The Simples availeable and of force for the purpose aforesaid are, *The Roots of Reeds and Birthwort, the Leaves of Dittany, Crow-foot, Misleto, Thapsia; Sagapenum, Ammoniacum, Opopanax, Quick-Lime, burnt Frogs, Galbanum, Bears-grease, the Loadstone, Mustard-seed, and such like.* Of these and such like you may prepare compound Medicines: this Unguent of *Vesalius* is much approved of: *Take of Rozin of the Pine-tree, two Ounces: Galbanum, three Ounces: of the stone cal-*

led

led Calamites, one Ounce: the Gall of an Oxe, one Ounce and an half: of Turpentine, three Ounces; new Wax, two ounces: first, ſtrain out the Wax, Rozin, and Turpentine; after, mix the Galbanum, Gall and the Powder of the Stone, and make an unguent.

This Plaiſter is likewiſe good for the ſame purpoſe: *Take of Leaven, one pound: Oyl, half a pound: the juyce of Knot-graſs, and Dittany, (or, for want of it, the Powder of the dried Herbs,) of each three ounces: Turpentine, one pound: The Bird-Lime made of Miſſeto Berries, Ammoniacum, and Galbanum diſſolved in Wine, of each one Ounce; of Wax, four Ounces: mix them upon the Fire, and make a Plaiſter.*

Having thus far proceeded, and removed all things unnatural from the Wound, then muſt the Chyrurgion, if the Solution be great, artificially joyn the gaping ſides of the Wound by Seam, Taches, or ſtitching cloths and ſuch like, which I omit, and ſhall lay down a few Rules to prevent pain, inflammation or other untoward Accidents, which may happen to the wounded part of the whole Body.

Inflammation is reſtrained by taking away the Cauſe of the fluxion: Now the humours, flowing to the part, are either drawn or ſent. They are drawn by reaſon of the pain and heat of the Member, which doth attract the humors to it ſelf. They are ſent, thus; when the whole body is full of evil humors, and every part disburtheneth it ſelf upon the weaker. The Inflammation of the part muſt be allayed with ſuch Medicines that quench heat; and the body muſt be purged, and ſuch a Courſe of Diet uſed as may ſomewhat free the Body from ſuch humors, which are offenſive and burthenſome to Nature.

But before I come to treat of the removal of ſuch Accidents and evil Symptoms; I ſhall briefly ſhew you the manner of Cure, which ought thus to be performed. After cleſing of the Wound, dreſs it with ſome agglutinative Medicine, made of ſuch Simples: viz. *Frankincenſe, Maſtich, Aloes, Bole-armenick, Sanguis Draconis, Sarcocolla, Terra Sigillata, Balauſtine, Pomegranate Rinds, Cypreſs Nuts, Galls, Horſe-Tail, Tobacco, and ſuch like.* You may make a Balm thus: *Take of Turpentine a pound: of Galbanum, Gum Elemy, Gum of Ivy, Frankincenſe, Maſtich, Myrrh, of each two ounces, Aloes, Ligaum Aloes, Galanga, Nutmegs, Cloves, Cinnamon, Cubebs, of each one ounce: Aqua-vitæ, three ounces: infuſe and diſtil them to a Balm.* After the Application of this or the like Balſome, lay on this Plaiſter: *Take of Ammoniacum diſſolved in Vinegar, two ounces: Gum Elemy three ounces: Rozin of the Pine-tree, five ounces: Turpentine of the Firr-tree, three ounces: Oyl of Roſes two ounces:* make a Plaiſter. Open it once in twenty four hours till it be whole: thus may you cure a ſimple Wound in the Fleſh.

If

If the Wound be hollow, you muſt put in Tents, twiſt them not too hard, but ſo that the Sanies may come forth. If the Wound be deep without loſs of Subſtance, you muſt conſider whether the Orifice of the Wound look upward or downward. If the Orifice look downward, and the bottom be upward, then may the Matter run freely out of the Wound, and the Cure thereof is performed as a ſimple Wound in the Fleſh. But if the Orifice of the Wound be upward, and the bottom tending to the lower parts, that there is a place for the Matter to reſt in; then if you find it needful, (as many times it is) make an Inciſion from the top to the bottom, or onely in the bottom; let Reaſon guide you where to make your Inciſion, or when to neglect it. Waſh the Wound with Wine, wherein Myrrh and Salt hath been boiled: then put in this Oyl, which is much commended, and it is made thus: *Take of Oyl of Olives three pounds: of white Wine, two pounds: of the Flowers, Leaves and Seeds of St. John's wort, one pound: of Greek Valerian, the ſpotted and common Sanicle, Saracens conſound, and Self-heal, of each half a handful; beat the Herbs in a Mortar, and infuſe them in the Wine and Oyl twenty four hours, then boyl it gently to the conſumption of almoſt half: then ſtrain it, and add thereto of Venice Turpentine, one pound and an half: Oyl of Turpentine ſix ounces: Olibanum five ounces: Myrrh three ounces: Maſtich, and Sanguis Draconis, of each one ounce: Roots of Alchemet, (firſt bruiſed and infuſed in Oyl two or three hours) boyl them gently and ſufficiently, and ſo refer it for the uſe aforeſaid.* Then lay on *Emplaſtrum Stictieam*, the receit of which you may read in the *London Diſpenſatory*: or you may buy the Plaiſter at the Apothecaries.

If the Wound be hollow with loſs of Subſtance, you muſt make uſe of ſuch Medicines which are by Nature drying and cleanſing, called Incarnatives.

This Unguent is much commended for cleanſing Putrifaction, and breeding of good Fleſh in Wounds: *Take of common Oyl and Rams ſuet, of each one pound: Stone-pitch half a pound; Græcian-pitch three ounces; wax two ounces: Maſtich, Olibanum, Galbanum, Ammoniacum, Sagapenum, Opopanax, and Turpentine, of each half an ounce: pouder thoſe that are to be poudered, and melt the reſt in Oyl, ſtir them well together on the fire; when they are ſufficiently boiled, add the Turpentine, ſtrain it, and uſe it upon occaſion.*

This plaiſter is very good to incarnate both Wounds and Ulcers; *Take of Virgins Wax eight ounces, Deers Suet four ounces and an half; Common Rozin, and Rozin of the Pine-tree, of each four ounces: Myrrh and Maſtich, of each four ounces; Honey ſix ounces: Turpentine eight ounces: white Wine one pound and an half, Dragons blood one pound: boil them (the Sanguis Draconis excepted) to the form of a Plaiſter.* Or you may

may make a leſs quantity by decreaſing each particular analogically. Take this general Rule, That according to the Dryth or moiſture of the Body or wound, you muſt make your medicines leſs or more drying; when the wound cometh to be plain, equal and filled, it muſt be Cicatrized, or covered with skin; which muſt be performed by Medicines which are aſtringent, and very much drying, becauſe it muſt conſume not onely the ſuperfluous, but alſo the natural moiſture, of which properly are the ſimples following: Galls, Balauſtines, the Rinds of Pomegranats, the white Thiſtle, Sumach, Bole-armenick, Sealed-earth, Ceruſs, Lead burnt or waſhed, Litharge, and the Bark of the Pine-tree. To which add the following, which perform it accidentally, as Braſs burnt and waſhed, the ſcales of Braſs; Allum and Vitriol burnt and waſhed, Plantane, Ariſtolochia, and ſuch like. Of theſe and ſuch like, may many forms of Medicines, *viz.* Waters, Oyls, Unguents, or Plaiſters, be made, Take this Plaiſter as an example for all: *Take of Litharge and Ceruſe, of each ſix ounces: burnt Lead, Lapis Calaminaris and Terra Sigillata, of each three ounces: Colophonia, Ship-pitch, and Rozin, of each two ounces, Sarcocolla, Laudanum, and Ireos, of each one ounce and an half: Camphir half an ounce, Leek ſeed two ounces: Oyl of Roſes, one pound and an half: white Wax four ounces: make it into a Plaiſter.*

If the Cicatrice be uncomely or deformed, it muſt be amended: if it be too tender, it muſt be thickned and hardned with Diachilon, or with Calamint, the roots of Briony and ſuch like ſodden in Oyl. If the Cicatrice be thick and hard, it ought to be attenuated with the root of wild Cucumer, ſtampt or applied, or the Oyl of Balſome-Apple. If it be deformed in reſpect of colour, you muſt labour to bring it to whiteneſs, for which this plaiſter is commended: *Take of Swines Greaſe three ounces, Litharge one ounce, Verdigreaſe and burnt Vitriol, of each two drams: make it into a Plaiſter.*

Sometimes a wound is overgrown with Fleſh: this fleſh growing too proudly muſt be dealt withall with medicines that may diminiſh, and take away the ſame, and they muſt be by Nature ſharp and drying; as Calcitis, Vitriol, burnt Allum, the roots of Aſphodels, Hermodactyls, the ſtones of Dates burnt, the ſeed of Nettles, Serpentary, the Scales of Braſs, burnt Braſs, the aſhes of a Hedg-hog, Mercury ſublimate: Of Medicines compounded, *Unguentum Apoſtolorum*, or *Unguentum Ægyptiacum* are of known validity. If theſe ſuffice not, the Chyrurgion muſt uſe his Inciſion-Knife, hot Sciſſars, or a Cautery.

CHAP. II.

Of a contuſed Wound, and a Bruiſe.

THat the Wound is contuſed appeareth by the ſwelling, pain, black or blew colour; whether it were given by a fall, or blow, the Patient can ſatisfie you. The Cure conſiſteth, firſt, in mundifying, filling the hollowneſs with Incarnative Medicines, and when it is made plain and even, cover it with Cicatrizing Medicines. And ſecondly, in removing the accident, which for the moſt part accompanieth a wound of this nature.

Firſt, to mundifie the wound, waſh it in white Wine, wherein hath been boyled Mirrh and Salt, then arm your Tents with *unguentum Apoſtolorum* or ſuch like, and lay on dry Suphs and bind it up; this do till the wound be clean; then fill it up with Incarnative Medicines, afterwards Cicatrize it; the medicines for that purpoſe in the foregoing Chapter will ſerve here.

Secondly, labour to remove the accidents incident to theſe wounds, which are either pain or ſwelling. Pain muſt be mitigated with Oyl of Dill, Camomil or Lillies. Or a Liniment made of the Oyl of Roſes, and the yelk of an Egg, and applyed with Lint. The ſwelling or Tumor is to be removed by taking away the Antecedent or conjoyned cauſe: the antecedent cauſe is the humour flowing to the wounded part; the conjoyned cauſe is the humour already contained in the part. For taking away the antecedent cauſe, you muſt conſider, whether it be blood or other humors. If it be blood, whether it comes from the whole body or ſome particular part, it muſt be evacuated by blood-letting, and a thin cooling Diet. You muſt evacuate and diſpatch it from the wounded member, either by revulſion, or repercuſſion: Revulſion muſt be made either by Phlebotomy, Cupping, Rubbing and Blinding the contrary ſide to withdraw the humor to the contrary part. Repercuſſion is to ſend the matter from the part: of this ſort are the Oyl of Roſes and Myrtles; or an Unguent made of Oyl of Myrtles, Bole-armenick, and the white of an Egg, with which the parts about the Wound are to be anointed: Afterwards lay on a Plaiſter made of the Powder of Myrtles, and the white of an Egg. If it be other humors which flow to the wound, let them be purged with ſuch medicines as are proper to the humor: The fore-going Book is full of Examples; and the laſt Book is well furniſhed. The humor which is now impact in the Wound, muſt be brought to Suppuration. This Plaiſter is good: *Take of the Roots of Marſh-mallows, and wild Cucumbers, of each one ounce: Origan and Hyſop,*

Hyſop, of each a handful: the Flowers of Camomel, and the ſeed of Flax, of each one pugil: ſix fat Figs: boyl them well, then ſtrain the liquor from them, and beat them in a Morter: add to them Mirrh, Galbanum, Styrax Liquida, and Sheeps-greaſe (ſeparated from the Wooll which growes in the Flank, and between their ſhoulders) of each one dram and an half: make a Plaiſter.

If by a fall, ſtroke or blow, clotted blood is gathered under the skin, the part is ſwelled, ſoft and eaſily preſſed, blackiſh, and many times without pain. A Bruiſe by a violent contuſion is not without danger; for ſometimes not only the part it ſelf corrupteth, but many times the whole Body. If the skin hang by, ſeparated from the fleſh, cut it away, for it is ſeldome or never joyned again.

For the Cure, in reſpect of the wounded part, obſerve the ſame rule in taking away pains and ſwelling, either by evacuation, or repercuſſion. In reſpect of the whole body, you muſt conſider whether there be clotted blood in the body; which if there be, it muſt be diſſolved and ſcattered by Medicines which diſſolve blood, and ſtrengthen the inner parts: And ſecondly, it muſt be ſcattered by Diaphoretick, or Sweating Medicines. This Powder is good to diſſolve blood; *Take of Rhubarb torrified, ſealed Earth, Bole-armenick, Mummy, and the ſeed of Creſſes torrified, of each one dram; make them into a fine powder, and give a dram in Plantane water, or the water of Shepherds-pouch.*

To provoke Sweat, boyl a handful or two of Oſmond Royal, and Horſtail in Wine, ſweeten the Decoction with Honey, give five or ſix ounces thereof, and let the Patient ſweat thereupon. If the blood be clotted under the skin, apply a Rams skin newly pulled off hot to the Body, and let the Patient ſweat in it. Then anoint it with this Unguent, *&c. Take of Bole-armenick, Frankincenſe, Rozin, Fenugreek, and Gum Traganth, of each half an ounce: Saffron one dram, the Powder of Roſes, Mirtles and Sumach, of each three drams: the Oyntment of Marſhmallows, the Oyl of Roſes, Camomil, Mirtles and Dill, of each two ounces: New Wax and Turpentine, of each one ounce; make an Unguent, and uſe it twice a day.* After you have uſed this Oyntment a while, leave out the Ingredients which are aſtringent, and uſe diſcutients only; If you find the matter will not be diſcuſſed, but is prone to Suppuration, help it forward by ſuch Medicines as are proper for the purpoſe: then procure Iſſue, and Mundifie the Ulcer, and heal it up.

Many places of this Book will furniſh you with fit Medicines.

CHAP. III.

Of a Wound biting, or ſtinging of any Creature venemous, or not.

WHat Creature inflicted the Wound, moſt people know, or whether he be venemous or not: Venemous are, a Mad-Dog, Serpent, Scorpion, Baſilisk, Dragon, Viper, Adder, Slow-Worm, Aſp, Spider, Toad, *&c.* Not venemous, are a Dog, Ape, Horſe, Sow, Cat, Waſp, Bee, and the like. If the Creature were venemous, the Symptomes are more violent, *viz.* vehement pricking, and biting pains, change of colour, and grievous anguiſhes, and ſometimes the body is aſtoniſhed, ſomtimes in a great heat, and the like.

A venemous biting is very dangerous, if it be not ſoon cured; becauſe Poyſon ayms at the deſtruction of the Heart. Some ſay if the Patient be thirſty, and yet is fearful of Drink, he is incurable. This I once ſaw verified in a Boy that was bit by a Mad-Dog. If the Patient be bit by a venemous Creature, the Cure may be begun with Cupping the wounded part with Scarrification, to draw forth the venome: ſucking of the wound is commended, inſtead thereof, apply the tail of an Hen: if the part be not full of ſinews, apply a Cautery; and if the venome be very malignant cutting is commended. External medicines muſt be attractive to draw the venome back. Of this ſort are the ſimples following, Garlick, Onions, Muſtard-ſeed, Harts-caſe, Scabius, Pennyroyal, Calamint, Gentian, Polymountain, Germander, Scordium, Dittany, Briony, Aſphodels, Ariſtolochia, Euphorbium, Galbanum, Treacle, Leven, Goats-dung, *&c.* Of theſe, you may make variety of compound medicines. On a ſuddain mix Leven and Goats-dung together; or for want of it, Leven alone, beat with it Garlick, Onions and Treacle, or any of the aforenamed ſimples, which you have in readineſs, and make a Plaiſter. This Plaiſter is good: *Take of the Powder of long Birth-wort two ounces, Aſphodels and Briony, of each one ounce, Aſſa-Fœtida, Galbanum and Mirrh, of each half an ounce, with Oyl of Bay and Wax; make a Plaiſter:* This following Unguent is commended by *Veſalius*, *Take of Galbanum and Opoponax, of each one dram: Ammoniacum, Turpentine, and Wax, of each one dram and an half: Sagapenum two drams, Pitch two drams and an half: put them over a gentle fire, and when they boyl a little, put in a ſmall quantity of Bean-flower, Litharge, Saffron and Bdellium, of each one dram: Mirrh and Olibanum, of each half a dram: Maſtich four ſcruples, Fenugreek one ſcruple; boyl them as much as you find convenient: then with the Oyl of Roſes and Seſamini, of each two drams, make an unguent.*

Then

Then you muſt labour to preſerve the Heart from the venome, by inward Medicines.

Julius Palmarius doth much commend that Powder againſt the biting of a Mad-Dog, or other venemous Creature, which Powder is called by the Colledge of Phyſitians in their Diſpenſatory, *Pulvis Antiliſſus.*

Paracelſus adviſeth to give the Patient red aſtringent Wine, wherein Steel hath been quenched, and a little Treacle with it. Or let the Patient take now and then a little of this mixture with the Wine; *Methridate two ounces, Venice Treacle one ounce, the powder of red Corals one ounce and an half, mix them.* Alſo, *Philonium Perſicum*, doth wonderfully defend the Head and Vital parts. If the Patient grow very thirſty, it is a ſign that the Venom reacheth to the Heart: then give warm milk, and the powder of Red Coral, and apply to the Region of the Heart an Epithem made of Roſe-Vinegar, Camphire, and Sanders; Sealed Earth made into a Plaiſter, with ſome convenient moiſture, and applied, is much commended againſt the poyſon of the Spider and Toad. Laſtly, you muſt labour to bring the wound to ſuppuration, afterwards mundifie, incarnate, and cicatrize it. If the Creature which inflicted the wound were not venemous, the pain is leſs, and the danger not ſo great, and the Cure eaſily performed by ordinary Medicines.

CHAP. IV.

Of a Wound in the Nerves, Tendons, Ligaments, Veins, and Arteries.

WHether Nerve, Tendon, *&c.* are wounded, may be eaſily conjectured; and how, and with what weapon it was done, the Patient will be able to inform.

If a Sinew be hurt, there is great pain, hurt both of Senſe and motion, ſometimes a Feaver, Inflammation, Convulſion, or Raving: a breach or wound of a Vein or Artery is known by profuſion of blood. But whether the Vein or Artery be wounded, their proper ſigns muſt diſtinguiſh, *viz.* the Blood black and thick, with an equal fluxion, ſheweth a wounded Vein: but if the Blood be thin and yellow, and cometh forth leaping, like the motion of the Pulſe, then is the Artery wounded.

The Nervous Ligaments will endure Medicines of great force: If in Wounds of this nature a Tumor appear, and afterwards vaniſh away, it threatneth danger of Convulſion and Raving. If a Nerve be

wounded overthwart, and not cut aſunder, it brings the more peril of Convulſion. An Artery cut overthwart is looner joyned together, than if it were ſevered long-wiſe. An Artery cut is harder to cure than a Vein. Flux of blood is perillous, eſpecially of an Artery, for unleſs it be ſtopped, it bringeth death unavoidably. Swooning, Convulſions, Raving *&c.* in this caſe, is an evil token. For the Cure, if the Nerve be prickt, begin thus: If there be any weapon, or any outward thing ſticking in the Wound, let it be removed, and keep the part from injury; and if you fear Inflammation, open a vein. Let him lie in a warm Room, on a ſoft bed, and keep the Body looſe by Clyſters or laxative Medicines, regulated according to the nature of the humour peccant. Let his Diet be ſparing, and ſmall Beer his Drink. Let him lie as free from motion as may be; let not the cold Air, which is inimical to the Sinews, afflict him; nor too hot Air, for fear of Inflammation. Keep the Wound open, and if it be not wide enough, make it wider: then uſe ſuch Medicines that may eaſe the pain, and draw forth the eruginous and fretting matter: Medicines which heat and dry without pain are good in this caſe, as the Oyl of Turpentine, Ireos, Sage, Elder; or Water, wherein Salt and Turpentine have been boyled; the Oyl of Earth-worms, and of the yelks of Eggs mixed; or the Oyl of Roſes and Turpentine; or the Oyl of Turpentine and of Savin mixed; or Euphorbium one dram, boiled in two ounces of Oyl. For which purpoſe this Plaiſter is good: *Take of the Roots of Marſhmallows, the Meal of Barley, Beans and Lentils, of each a like quantity, as much as you think good: Boyl them in Lye; then put to it Oyl of Roſes, Camomil, Dill and Turpentine, of each ſufficient, and a little Saffron, ſo make a Plaiſter.* If the Wound will come to ſuppuration, help it forwards, and after mundifie it.

If the Nerve be cut, after you have obſerved the aforeſaid general Rules, joyn the Nerve; then apply this Medicine: *Take of Earth-worms prepared three drams, Horſtail two drams, Betony and Nettles in powder, of each one dram; Olibanum three drams: incorporate them with the fleſh of Snails beaten, and apply it four dayes:* laying on ſome Glutinative Unguent. *Take of the leſſer Centaury, Plantane, Hounds-tongue, Mouſe-ear, both the Conſounds, Horſe-tail, and Yarrow, of each one handful; Earth-worms a pound and an half; Oyl and Wine, of each one pound and an half: Vinegar four ounces: ſtamp them, and let them infuſe ſeven dayes: then add the Suet of a Ram one pound: Pitch and Rozin, of each four ounces: boyl them to the conſumption of the Wine and Vinegar; and to the ſtraining Ammoniacum, Galbanum, Opoponax, diſſolved in Vinegar, of each 5 drams: Turpentine one ounce and an half, Frankincenſe, Maſtick, and Sarcocol, of each three drams: of Saffron two ounces; Wax, as much as needeth, to make an Unguent:* Both theſe are much commended by *Jacobus Wickerus.*

If

If the Vein or Artery be cut, you muſt firſt labour to ſtanch the Blood. Secondly, to cure the Wound. Firſt, the Blood may be ſtanched, either with, or without Evacuation: With Evacuation, is to open a Vein on the contrary part, and ſometimes near the Wounds, and to let it fly, and ſuddenly ſtop it again. To ſtay the Blood without Evacuation, muſt be performed by Cupping with Scarrifying, binding and rubbing of the contrary part. Secondly, you muſt bridle the furious courſe of it, by things that thicken, cool and aſtoniſh: Things which thicken the blood, are Rice, Lentils, Jujubes, Quinces, and all Stiptick Fruits. Cold water drunk, or laid upon the member near the wound, doth aſtoniſh it. If the Vein or Artery lie ſo, that you may eaſily come at it, tie the end with fine Silk, ſtitch up the wound, and apply aſtrictive Powders upon it; and upon that lay on the like powder, mixed with the white of an Egg, with Stuphs. This Powder is good: *Frankincenſe, Aloes, Terra Sigillata, Bole-armenick, and Sanguis Draconis, of each equal parts; powder them finely, and with the white of an Egg, and the hairs of a Hare, let it be applied.* Or this, *Take of Lapis Hæmatitis, one ounce: Frankincenſe, Maſtich, Bole-armenick, Cobwebs, green Galls, dried Frogs, Soot, White-wall, and the Meal that lies upon the walls of Mills and Bake-houſes, of each two drams: Burnt Vitriol, Quick-Lime, and Gum Tragacanth, of each three drams; the ſhavings of the skin of a Ram, or He-Goat, Paper-Cards, the hairs of an Hare, and Cotton torrified, of each one dram: Aſhes dung half an ounce; make it into fine powder, and uſe it as the former.* The accidental Symptoms both of this and other Wounds, you ſhall have in a Chapter by themſelves, with their Cures.

CHAP. V.

Of Luxations and Fractures.

A Luxation, or Diſlocation, is the ſlipping of a joynt from his Natural Poſition, and proper place, into ſome ſtrange and unwonted ſeat, whereby voluntary motion is hindered. A Fracture is a diviſion or breaking of the bone: The cauſes of the firſt are either outward or inward; outward cauſes are falls, ſtrokes, extenſion, wrenching, or the like; the Patient is able to inform you. The inward cauſes are filthy, ſlimy, and Phlegmatick Humors, falling between the joynts, as it many times happeneth in the Sciatica. Cauſes of Fractures, are things of weight falling upon the place, or the Patient falls from on high, ſlippeth, or ſuch like.

A Diſlocation is known by theſe ſigns, *viz.* a Tumor in the part where the bone lies, a pit of cavity in the place from whence the bone is departed, great pain, a difficulty or deprivation of motion in that member. The bone broken is eaſily ſeen; but whether the Fracture be overthwart, or long wayes, you may diſcern thus: If it be overthwart, by feeling you may diſcern the bone ſeveral, and diſjoyned, the bones make a noiſe and crackling, when you handle each ſide diverſly. If it be long-wayes, the former ſigns appear not; and that part appeareth thicker than ordinary, uneven, and painful.

Of bones that ſlip out of their places, ſome are eaſily repoſed, and ſome more hardly; the knee eaſily ſlippeth out, and is eaſily put in again, the fingers and ſhoulders may eaſily be reduced. The Jaw-bone, the Shoulder-blade, *Astali*, the heel-bone, the hand and middle of the foot do commonly knit in fourteen or one and twenty dayes: the Hip in fifty dayes, and the foot in ſixty, if the Patient give it reſt. If in the ſetting the Bone crack, or make a noiſe, and the member look like the other, it will be well, the Elbow ſeldom ſlippeth out and is not put in again without much trouble. If the borders of the Bones are broken, it is the worſe. If a Wound, Inflammation, a violent pain accompany the Luxation, it is dangerous and hard to be cured. If it hath continued long, and is grown Callous, it is hard to be cured. If a Child happen to have a diſlocation, and it be not reduced, the member groweth little or nothing.

Likewiſe in a fracture the Bones of the Arms, Legs, Thighs and Fingers are not very dangerous, the farther from the head the better. A Fracture accompanied with a violent pain, Inflammation, wound in the fleſh, or contuſion is very bad, becauſe it cannot be dealt withal, till thoſe accidents be firſt removed. In declining age, and Cholerick perſons the Cure is difficult; in very aged perſons impoſſible, the older the Patient is, the worſe; a rib broken is dangerous. The breach of the Bone or Griſtle of the Noſe is bad, worſe if the fleſh be wounded.

In a Fracture of the Skull theſe are dangerous ſymptoms; when the Membrane is unmoveable, black or evil-coloured: loſs of Wits, reſolution or diſtenſion of the Nerves. A Tranſverſe Fracture is moſt tolerable, a ſlope Fracture with looſe fragments is worſe; but if it be ſharp-pointed, it is worſt of all.

The Skull asketh thirty dayes to be joyned: The Arm and Leggs forty dayes; the Cubit thirty; a Rib one and twenty; the Shoulder and Thigh forty; the Bone of the Noſe is joyned in eight or ten days.

For

For the Cure, first of a dislocation, the Bone must be stretched out, and compelled to its proper place. But the opperation must be warily and variously handled, according to the nature of the part, and the disposition, scituation, and knitting of the Bones, tendons and Nerves. Sometimes it may be done by the hand, and sometimes not without hands and Engines: when it is in, you must labour to keep it so, by strengthening the member, anoint it with Oyl of Roses, Myrtles and Mastich, then lay on a linnen Cloth dipped first in Oyl of Roses, upon that Cloths wet in the white of an Egg, and put upon it some astringent Powders: then rowl it up with Clothes wet in Water and Vinegar, then splent it with stiffe Leather or Pasteboard, bind it not too hard for fear of inflammation, then leave it so seven or ten days, unless any symptome arise. Then open it, and bathe it with warm water, to discusse the superfluities, and ease pain, and do it up as before, and bind it a little harder. If there be inflammation, wound, or fracture with the dislocation, it is dangerous, and many times the placing of the bone must be differred till the inflammation be eased; if it be with a wound or fracture, the following discourse of the Cure of fractures will instruct you. If any Callous hardness be gathered between the luxated bones, the place must be fomented with the decoction of Marsh and common Mallows; or afterwards it must be anointed with the Unguent of Marsh-mallows, and lay on a Plaister of Diachilon Magnum.

A fracture must be thus dealt with, *viz.* let the Patient sit or lye in a place convenient, or such as the nature of the member requireth, let two with their hands, one under the member, and the other above, or one to the left hand, the other to the right, joyn the broken bone: if you have need of more force, prepare large Tyalls of Linnen, and let two draw, one one way, and the other another, and pull the member as much as is needful; but beware of violent pulling and extention of the member, last vehement pain, Feavers, Convulsions, and resolutions be procured: when the bone is in its place and joyned, labour to keep it so, and bind it up as is taught before in binding up of a dislocation, and lay it best for the Patient's ease; open it not in fifteen dayes, unless pain, Inflammation, Itching, or some such like symptome; in the mean while, foment the member round about it with the Oyl of Roses, Myrtles and Mastich. After fifteen dayes open it again, and foment it with Wine, wherein Wormwood, Roses, and a little Salt hath been boiled, and bind it up as before, till seven dayes be past, then open it again, and apply *Emplastrum Oxycroceum* upon it. If the fracture be in the lower parts, move not the Belly by Clyster, or otherwise; if the body be full of blood, open a Vein, because it hinders defluxions. In the beginning let his Diet be but

slender,

slender, after the tenth day let him eat freely of such things as ingender thick, and cleaving juyces; as Rice, Wheat, the intrails of Sheep, and the feet of Calves and Sheep, and such like.

If there be a contusion with the fracture, you must not roul up the member as before you are taught, but slopewise on either side of the contusion, that so you may come to dress the contusion and not open the member, the like you may do if there be a wound; but if there be any small splints that prick the member, they must be taken out before. If you find that the Callus grow not, fast enough, apply such things as draw nourishment to the place: as warm water, moderate frications, and a plaister of Pitch. If it grow over great, apply that which may diminish it, rub it much, and apply a plate of Lead to the part. If it be Inflamed, foment the part with warm water, and Oyl of Roses, and such things which are appropriated to allay such Distempers; and apply no splents, till the inflammation be removed. If the part be vexed with Itch or Pustules, anoint it with *unguentum populeon, diapompholigos* or *album*. If the part gangrene, scarrifie it, and deal with it as you shall be taught in its proper place.

CHAP. VI.

Of Accidents commonly happening to wounded Persons.

I Should first begin with immoderate bleeding, being commonly the first Accident; but to avoid needless Repetitions, I shall refer the Reader to the fourth Chapter of this Book, where I have sufficiently performed this task.

If immoderate pain vex the Patient, as many times it doth; Simples mitigating pain may be made use of, *viz.* common Oyl, the Oyl of Roses and Poppies, the crums of Wheaten-bread steeped in hot water, the white of an Egg, Women's or Cows milk, Sheeps-grease; you may make compound Medicines of the root of Night-shade finely powdered, and Hogs-grease, and make an Oyntment, or you may use *unguentum è Solano*, or the white of an Egg and Stiptick Wine, and such like. Then you must consider if the Distemper be hot or cold; if hot, whether it is of the whole Body, or the part only: if the whole Body be distempered, it is a Feaver, and you must seek the Cure in the second book; if the Distemper be in the Member only, foment it with the decoction of Plantane, Roses, and such like, with the Oyl of Roses, *unguentum album, populeon, &c.* If the Member suffer by a cold distemper, which you may know by the swart

ſwart colour, looſneſs, and ſoftneſs of the part; then you muſt apply heating Medicines; *unguentum Baſilicon* will do very well in this caſe.

If a Convulſion happeneth, you muſt conſider what is the cauſe; if repletion or fulneſs of phlegm be the cauſe, let the place wherein he lyeth be naturally or artificially hot or dry: let him lie free from perturbation and trouble, let his ſleep be moderate, and only in the night. Let him be very moderate and ſparing in his Diet, which ought to be rere Eggs, Barley, Cream, the fleſh of Chickens, Capons and Hens; Raiſins, Pine-Kernels, ſweet-Almonds; of Herbs, Sage, wild Time, Hyſſop, Marjerom, and ſuch like. Let the phlegmatick humor be purged, and the convulſed part anointed, with the Oyl of Nard, Bays, Caſtor, Rue, Nutmegs, *&c. Viſalius* commendeth this following Oyntment: *Take of Oyl of ſweet Almonds, Hens-greaſe, and the marrow of Calves-feet, of each nine drams: Oyl of Violets ſix ounces, the feet of a Kid and Calf, of each fifteen ounces: boyl them in the decoction of Mallows, the root of Marſh-mallows, and the ſeeds of Quinces, till it be conſumed, then ſtrain it, and bring it into the form of a Liniment.* If Convulſion come by repletion of blood and inflammation, open the middle Vein, and draw blood at ſeveral times, give Clyſters, and deal with this inflammation as with another. If emptineſs be the cauſe of the Convulſion, direct a moiſt Diet, reſt of body and mind, and much ſleep. To the Diet aforeſaid, add ſmall ſtone fiſhes, let his drink be Barley-water, and if a little Liquoriſh and Cinamon be ſodden therein, it will be the better; Herbs proper for him, are Lettuce, Spinach, Arach, Borrage, Bugloſs, Mallows, and ſuch like: of Fruits, Mellons, Gourds, Damask-prunes, Peaches, ripe Grapes, *&c.* The conſerve of Violets, Borrage, Bugloſs, *Diatragacanthum frigidum*, and bathe his body or the part with warm Water and Oyl, or anoint with the Oyl of ſweet Almond,. Be ſure you remember to have reſpect to the greatneſs of the Diſeaſe, the ſeaſon of the Year, the Age, Strength and Conſtitution of the Patient.

Swooning often happening to wounded perſons: if violent pain be the cauſe, labour to appeaſe the pain: you have Rules enough before going. If it be occaſioned by unmeaſurable Evacuation, caſt Roſe water or cold water into his Face, uſe ſtrong Ligatures and Frications to the extream parts.

If ſome venemous quality, by reaſon of a bite of ſome venemous Creature, or wound with ſome venemous weapon, be the cauſe of this Symptome, you muſt ſeek the remedy in the third Chapter.

If Raving and Madneſs happen, appoint a mean Diet betwixt hot and cold: labour to provoke ſleep, to looſen the belly, and to expel all perturbations of the mind. If the body abound with blood, and

nothing

nothing forbid it, open a Vein; then alter and prepare the humors with Juleps made of the Syrup of Roſes, Violets, Water-Lillies, Poppies and Endive; then empty the Body with Manna, Caſſia, or ſome ſuch gentle thing; or with an Emollient Clyſter: but above all, have ſpecial regard to the wound, becauſe pain there may be the cauſe; therefore let it be often opened, and bathed with Vinegar and Oyl of Roſes, or ſomething that may powerfully appeaſe the pain.

If the Palſy happen, you muſt be very circumſpect, and appoint ſuch a Diet as for the Convulſion; let his Drink be honyed-water, and boyl therein Sage and Cinamon: or this, *Take of Cinamon two ounces, Ginger half an ounce, Grains of Paradice, Galanga and long Pepper, of each one dram; Cardamoms one dram and an half, Nutmegs, Cloves and Mace, of each one dram; boyl them in water to the waſting of a third part, ſtrain it, and ſweeten it, and let the Patient drink two or three ounces in a morning.* For Medicines internal or external, go to the ſeventh Chapter of the ſecond Book.

If the wounded perſon be coſtive, and he begin to ſuffer prejudice thereby, give him ſome Lenitive Medicines, or a Suppoſitory. If he ſuffer by ſtoppage of Urine, give him ſomewhat, which gently provoketh Urine: ſee the 68 Chapter of the Second Book. If Vomiting happen, and it increaſeth not in due ſeaſon, *Take Leven half a pound, the juyce of Mint extracted with Vinegar as much as is needful, boil them into the form of a Cataplaſm, lay it warm to the Stomach.* If the Patient feel heat, and aſtoniſhing about the wound, anoint the wound with the Oyl of Camphire. If the wound ſwell with heat, and pitteth under the finger, boyl Water-Creſſes and Water-Lillies in Roſe-Vinegar, and apply it. If there appear the Flux of the Sinews, which is a viſcous liquor from the Nerves; dreſs it with a vulnerary oyl, and lay on *Emplaſtrum Stictícum.* If the wound putrifie, and goeth back from healing, ſwelleth with heat, looks black, blew, or ſwart: *Take of Litharge one pound, Allum one pound and an half, Salt two ounces, Frankincenſe four ounces; Roman Gum five ounces, of Wine, Water and Vinegar, of each one pound: boyl them a quarter of an hour, and apply it warm.* If there grow a Puſtulous Fiſtula, that is, when the Wound is healed too ſoon, without any firm foundation, ſo that it putrifie underneath, and break out again: In this Caſe *Paracelſus* adviſeth this Cerate to be uſed, *Take of common Oyl, Virgins wax, and Litharge of Gold in powder of each one pound: boyl them together into the form of a Cerate, to which add Opoponax prepared with Vinegar and Mummy, of each three ounces: Ariſtolochia, Maſtick, Frankincenſe and Mirrh, of each half an ounce, Turpentine three ounces, Oyl of Bayes two ounces, Camphire two drams: mix them upon the fire, afterwards*

wards make it up with Oyl of Camomil. So much for the general Cure of Wounds, and their accidents.

CHAP. VII.

Of Sanguine Tumors.

FIrſt Phlegmon is a Tumor begotten of pure blood, and is for the moſt part incident to the fleſhy parts, the Antecedent cauſe is abundance of blood. In which Tumor are three things conſiderable: Firſt, the part that ſendeth it, either by reaſon of its plenty, ſtrength or ſtreightneſs of paſſages: Secondly, the part receiving it, either by reaſon of weakneſs, largeneſs, or opening of the paſſages, or by the lowneſs of its ſcituation. Thirdly, the part drawing it, which it doth either through heat or pain within it. The conjoyned cauſe is much blood in the part, which before it cometh to ſuppuration, cauſeth a Tumor, Redneſs, heat and pain; but when it is ſuppurate, the Tumor is ſoft, yielding and growing to a point, a pricking and beating pain: laſt of all the Skin breaketh, and the *Pus* iſſueth out, ſometimes if the humors be thin, and skin of the ſame Nature, the Tumor may be reſolved without ſuppuration.

To this Tumor happeneth evil accidents ſometimes, if the Chyrurgion want Care or Skill. Somtimes it turneth to corruption, and is ſeen by its leaden black colour, and ſtinking ſavour. Sometimes the matter maketh a regreſſion, and the Tumor diminiſheth, but the whole body is inflamed with a Feaver, and ſuch like accidents: And ſometimes turneth into a Schirrous hardneſs.

In the Cure, the Antecedent cauſe muſt be firſt removed: Therefore firſt let the Chyrurgion open the Liver vein, or any other Vein which he finds hath more affinity with the ſending part; if he ſee good, he may bleed him in the oppoſite part for a revulſion, and derive the matter to ſome part adjacent, by Cupping, Frication or Ligatures; and apply to the part affected Medicines that cool and repel, or beat back the flowing humors; and of this ſort are theſe Simples. Acatia, Vinegar, Balauſtines, Bolearmenick, Camphire, ſealed-Earth, Myrtles, Pomegranate-peels, unripe Grapes, Vine-leaves, the leaves of Cyprus, Plantane, Oak, Sumach, Night-ſhade, Henbane, Houſleek, Lettuce, Purſlane, Roſes, and ſuch like. Of theſe you may make Fomentations or Cataplaſms, to be uſed in the beginning of the Tumor, to hinder and beat back the blood which floweth to feed it. Take this Caution, that in ſome caſes theſe Medicines ought not to be medled with, to wit, when the humor is Malig-

nant

nant or thick: or if the Tumor be Critical: or upon some of the Glandulous parts.

Next you must deal with the conjoyned Cause, or the blood impact in the part affected, If you judge that the blood is thin, and apt to be discussed, discussing Medicines are to be applyed. This Cataplasm is good, *Take the leaves of Mallows, Melilot and Camomel, of each one handful: the seeds of Dill, Flax and Fenugreek of each half an ounce, boil them to the Consumption of the water, then beat them in a Stone-morter: and add to it the Oyl of Dill and Camomel, of each one ounce: a little Honey and Leven, and make it into the form of a Cataplasm.* But if the Matter be thick, and not fit to be discussed, then labour to bring it to suppuration. For which these simples are proper, warm Water, Butter, Wheaten-bran or Wheaten-bread, the grease of an Hog, Calf, Goose, *&c.* Grease tryed from the wooll of a Sheep, Rozin, Pitch, Figs, Saffron, Frankincense, *&c.* Of these you may make Cataplasms, and remove them twice a day. If the hot intemperature doth stir up a Feaver, let the diet be ordered, and such Medicines administred as the nature of the Feaver requireth: See the Second Book, among the Chapters of Feavers: when you find it very soft and well suppurated, open it with a Lancet where it is softest, and in the most convenient place for the Matter to come forth: afterwards mundifie, incarnate and Cicatrize it.

A Carbuncle is a Sanguine Tumor, the antecedent cause of it is black, thick, hot and fæculent blood flowing to the place; the conjoyned cause is the settling of the blood in the part as you have heard before. The signs of a Carbuncle are sometimes but one, and sometimes many small Pustules like burnt Blisters, which being broken, a crusty Ulcer ensueth. If it be a pestilential, the crust is black or ash-colour, about it redness, inflammation and grievous pain; the Patient is troubled with Loathing, and Vomiting, loss of Appetite, Palpitation of the Heart, and Swooning.

Carbuncles for the most part are attendants of the Plague and Epidemical Causes. If they come upon the Emunctuaries, there is very great danger, lest the venemous humors fall upon some principal part. If it break out about the Stomach or Jaws, there is danger of Choaking. If the colour be first red, after yellowish, it is laudable; but if it be black or blew, it is dangerous: If the accidents which accompany the Disease vanish, there is hopes.

In the Cure, first have regard to the antecedent Cause, which is thick hot blood, and must be altered and evacuated; to alter the quality of the blood, give him broth of Chickens, with Lettuce, Purslane, Pomegranates and Lemons; and his drink Barley water: give him Medicines cooling and concocting: as Juleps made of Syrup of Vine-

Vinegar, Pomgranates, Citrons, Lemons and Endive; and the diſtilled water of Lettuce, Purſlane, and the like. But if the Peſtilence be preſent, you muſt have reſpect to the malignity, and give ſuch Medicines which ſtrengthen the Heart and Vitals: *See the 90 Chapter of the Second Book:* the quantity muſt be diminiſhed either by bloodletting, cupping, or medicines, as gentle Purgers or Clyſters: in all which be well adviſed, if the Plague be preſent. If there be a great fluxion of blood to the part, lay on diſcutients and repreſſings, diſcutients you have before. Take this Caution, that you apply gentle ones in the beginning, and ſtronger when the matter is gathered, to lay defenſive to the adjacent parts; as the Oyntment of Roſes, Bolearmonick, or the Oyl of Mirtles and Vinegar; alſo attractives are convenient, as hot bread, the warm Lungs of beaſts newly killed, the taile of a Cock made bare, and a little Salt put into it and applyed, or young Pigeons ſlit alive, and applyed warm. The cauſe conjoyned muſt be taken away by Chyrurgions or Medicine: firſt ſcarrifying of the Tumor (if nothing forbid it) deeply, and waſh it with warm water, Horſleeches are good. When the matter cannot be diſperſed, or otherwiſe dealt with, you muſt apply ſuch things as have an altering or ripening quality, as is aforeſaid. If the Carbuncle be very venemous, this is commended, *viz. Take a great Onion, and cut off the head of it, and pick out the core or middle part; fill the hollow place with good Venice-treacle, paſte on the head again with a little Lever, and roaſt it in the Embers; when it is ſoft peel it, and beat it in a Morter, and apply it warm to the Sore, and renew it every ſix hours.*

This Cataplaſm is much commended, *Take of Onions and Garlick heads, of each of them four: one Lilly-root, the Seeds of Flax and Fenugreek, of each one ſpoonful: Snails with their ſhels four or five, four Figgs, Leven as much as a Walnut, Barrows-greaſe as much as two walnuts: beat them all in a morter very well, warm it, and apply it.*

Then you muſt mundifie and heal it; but if there remain a cruſty Eſcar, you muſt reſolve it; for which purpoſe this Plaiſter is good.

Take the flower of Wheat and Barley, of each three ounces, with the decoction of Mallows, Violets, and Althea Roots, and make into a ſolid Plaiſter: then add to it freſh Butter and Hogs-greaſe, of each two ounces, the yelks of two new laid Eggs.

This mollificth the cruſtineſs and eaſeth pain. If it be corrupt and putrified, you muſt make uſe of inciſion, cautery, or hot Iron.

Gangrena is a mortification of any part occaſioned by exceeding inflammation, but not fully accompliſhed, but ſome ſenſe remaineth. *Sphacelus* is when the part is utterly deprived of ſenſe, & is mortified:

ſo

ſo that if it be ſtricken, burnt or lanced, it feeleth no hurt. The fleſhy parts are not only ſubject to this, but even the Nerves and Bones. The cauſe is aduſt blood flowing to or lodged in the part: Outward cauſes are cold Air or Medicines, unmeaſurable Heat or Venome, Ligatures, Compreſſions, Contuſions.

Gangrena is known by the loſs of ſence, though not wholly black or ſwartiſh colour; there is pain, heat, and beating of the Arteries. In *Sphacelus*, there is a total loſs of ſenſe, black colour, putrified, ſtinking, rotten; being preſſed, yieldeth to the bottom, and returneth not.

The firſt is difficult to cure, the other more, and not without cutting; when the Bones and Sinews are affected, it is incurable, unleſs it be cured in the beginning, the part affected dieth, and it creepeth to the near parts, to the deſtruction of the whole Body.

In the Cure, firſt temper the blood by a cooling Diet as before, and give preparing Juleps, ſuch as are afore preſcribed. Diminiſh the ſame by blood-letting, if nothing forbid it, and by gentle Purges; as Caſſia, Fiſtula, Tamarinds, Fumitory, Catholicon, Diaprunum Lenitive, and the like: Lay repreſſing Medicines to the parts round about: *Take of the Oyl of Roſes and Mirrh, of each three ounces and an half, the Juyce of Plantane and Nightſhade, of each two ounces, boyl them to the conſumption of the Juyces: add to it white-wax one ounce and an half, the Meal of Beans, Lentils and Barley, of each half an ounce: of all the Saunders two drams and an half, Bolearmenick one ounce, the Powder of Myrtles one dram: mix them for a defenſive.*

Give the Patient ſuch things inwardly as chear the Heart, and revive the Spirits.

This done, draw up the forces againſt the conjoyned cauſe: and firſt, if nothing prohibit, bleed your Patient, and ſcarrifie the place, and waſh it with water and ſalt; cut the member, or burn it with a hot Iron, and leave nothing that is putrified, to preſerve the reſt of the Body: then apply Medicines, whoſe property is to dry and reſolve.

Quercetanus preſcribes two Unguents of great force for the purpoſe: *Take of Honey two ounces, Crocus-martis and Crocus-veneris, of each half an ounce: Mirrh and Round-Birthwort, of each one dram: Camphire one dram and an half, the Phlegme of Vitriol ſix ounces, boyl them to the conſiſtence of an Unguent: then add of Mercury Precipitate half an ounce, and make an Unguent.* Or this, *Take of Butter of Arſenick two ounces, Mercury precipitate half an ounce, Oyl of Mirrh two drams: mix them with Honey, being firſt waſhed with the Juyce of Celandine.*

When the putrefaction ceaſeth to go any farther, remove the Eſcar as you were taught before; then mundifie and heal it.

CHAP.

CHAP. VIII.

Of Cholerick Tumors.

First *Eryſipelas*, to *Ignis Sacer*, is a Cholerick Fluxion, chiefly conſiſting betwixt or about the Skins. The antecedent Cauſe is Choller abounding and flowing to the part. The conjoyned cauſe is the ſame Humor there ſetled: The firſt is known by a Cholerick Conſtitution and Diet. The ſecond is known by a great Heat, ſmall tumor, reddiſh or yellow colour, ſoon vaniſhing in touching, and quickly returning: The pain is not with pulſation and beating, but biting and pricking, and the Patient is enſible of the motion of a Tertian Feaver. *Eryſipelas* about the head is a hard thing to cure, & it eaſily gets into the Face, and there ſpreadeth; for the fleſh there is thin, and the humor light and active. If it happen to the Womb of a Woman with Child, it is deadly; if it lye neer the Bone, it is dangerous; if it return from the outward parts to the inward, it is very evil: the like judge, if it come to ſuppuration, which it ſeldom doth, but is ſent forth by tranſpiration.

First, order the Air to be cool and moiſt where your Patient lodgeth and his Diet of the ſame nature. Bleed not, unleſs blood be mixed with Choller, which is called *Eryſipelas Phlegmonoſum:* Then prepare the Humors with Juleps convenient, made of the Syrups of Vinegar Simple, Bugloſs, Maiden-hair, Violets, Water-Lillies, Endive and Succory, and their diſtilled Waters, or others of the like nature: When you have prepared the humor, purge it either by Clyſter or Potion. This Potion is much commended: *Take of the Beſt Rhubarb four ſcruples, the Flowers of Violets and Borrage, of each one dram: the decoction of Tamarinds, ſufficient: infuſe the flowers of Rhubarb ten houres, ſtrain them, and diſſolve therein Diacatholicon three drams, Syrup of Roſes two ounces, and make a* Potion. *Veſalius*, you may alter, or make variety of Potions, as you ſee occaſion: Or empty your body with this Clyſter: *Take Marſh and common Mallows, Violet leaves, Camomil, and Lettuce, of each one handful; the ſeeds of Anniſe, Fennel, and the four great cold ſeeds, of each one dram: the flowers of Borrage, Bugloſs, Violets and Water-Lillies, of each one pugil; Polypodium and Senna, of each one ounce: make a Decoction to a pint, of which add of Caſſia one ounce, Diacatholicon half an ounce, oyl of Violets two ounces, make a Clyſter.*

Add ſtrength and aid to the part, by cooling and repelling Medicines, *viz.* Epithems and Liniments made of the juyce or diſtilled Water of Nightſhade, Houſleek, Stonecrop, Fleabane and Henbane, Purſlane, Lettuce, Endive, Succory, and ſuch like; the Oyl of

Roſes and Water-lillies, Vinegar, Saunders, the white of Eggs, the Muſilage of Quince-ſeeds, *&c.* Compounds are the Unguent of Roſes, or *Refrigerans Galeni*, and ſuch like.

The conjoyned cauſe muſt be removed by Medicines which have power to evacuate and diſcuſſe: *Take of the Litharge of Gold one ounce, waſhed Ceruſe ſix drams, the juyce of Plantane and womans milk, of each one ounce and an half, Oyl of Roſes three ounces, white wax as much as ſufficeth to make an unguent.*

There are other Tumors which do commonly aſſociate with *Ereſipelas*, viz. *Herpes Eredens* or *Miliaris*, which are called Chollerick Puſhes, and the Shingles. The firſt is cauſed of a thick and ſharp ſort of yellow Choller flowing into the part, which doth feed upon and eat the Skin. *Herpes Miliaris* are ſmall Puſtules riſing upon the Skin, like the ſeeds of Millet, from whence it hath its name: It is cauſed of yellow Choller, mixed with thin Phlegm: Theſe Humors abounding in the Body will declare.

The Cure of theſe differ little from the former; appoint the ſame Diet and Medicines externally and internally, making this difference: In the firſt, let the Medicines preparing be more cutting, and the purging Medicines ſtronger, becauſe of the thickneſs of the Humor; & let the outward medicines be more powerfully diſcutient. In the Cure of *Herpes Miliaris*, obſerve the ſame Diet to your Preparatives, and ſuch things as cut Phlegm: To your purges, ſuch as purge Phlegm. External Medicines may by an eaſie Brain be regulated, little differing from the former. This Cataplaſm is very: *Take of Pigeons dung freſh, as much as you pleaſe; mix it with wheaten flower, and apply it cold, and cover it with a Colewort Leaf, renew it twice in 24 hours.*

CHAP. IX.

Of Phlegmatick Tumors.

O *Edema* is a looſe Tumor without pain, proceeding of phlegmatick Humors flowing into ſome part. The Tumor is looſe and ſoft, yieldeth to the finger, and retaineth the Pit after the finger is gone.

This Diſeaſe is more prone to Reſolution than Suppuration, ſometimes it turneth to Nodes and Knots in the fleſh.

Order you Patient with a Diet contrary in quality to the Diſeaſe, viz. Heating, drying and making thin. Then prepare the Humor for Evacuation; theſe Simples are good, Betony, Sage, Hyſop, Balm, Polymountain, Penny-royal, Calamint, Origanum, Marjerome;

Marjerome, Southernwood, Mint, Wormwood, Germander, Groundpine, Cowſlips, Agrimony, Maiden-hair, the cold Seeds, Lignum Vitæ, the roots of Cyprus, Acorus, Ireos, Galanga, Elicampane, Smallage, Parſly, Graſs, Aſparagus, Butchers Broom, Fennel, *&c.* Of theſe you may make compound medicines, to prepare the Humors for purging. This Apozem is of good virtue: *Take the root of Ireos and Galanga, of each ſix drams, Smallage, Parſly and Aſparagus, of each one ounce, of Betony, Balm, Germander, Groundpine, and Maiden-hair, of each one handful, the ſeeds of Anniſe, Fennel, Caraway and Cummin, of each two ounces, the ſeeds of Mellons ſix drams, of Raiſins ſtoned two ounces, the ſeeds of Carthamus two ounces, Senna one ounce and an half, the Flowers of Broom, red Cicers, Stœchas and Bugloſs, of each one pugil: make a Decoction, of which take two pound, and diſſolve therein Honey of Roſes, and Syrup of wormwood, of each two ounces: Sugar as much as ſufficeth, Aromaticum Roſatum two drams and an half: make an Apozem, and clarifie it for ſix Doſes.*

When the Humors are thus prepared, you muſt come to purging them with ſuch Medicines as purge the phlegmatick Humors; the next Book will furniſh you with ſtore of ſuch Medicines, ſo that I need not here inſert them. Outwardly fortifie the part with this or the like Unguent: Take of Bole-armonick and Acatia, of each one ounce, Cyprus half an ounce, Aloes and Mirrh, of each five drams, Saffron half a dram, the juyce of Coleworts two ounces, Oyl of Roſes four ounces, Vinegar one dram and an half, Wax ſufficient to make an Unguent. Concerning the matter impact in the parts, you muſt conſider whether it be thin and may be diſſolved, or thick and ſubject to ſuppuration.

If the Humor be thin, lay on this, or a Plaiſter of this nature.

Take of Cow-dung one pound and an half, Olibanum, Styrax, Moſs of Trees, Calamus Aromaticus, Spicknard, wormwood, of each half an ounce: make them up with Vinegar, and the decoction of Coleworts into the form of a Plaiſter.

If you find the matter will come to ſuppuration, apply this Plaiſter.

Take of Mallows, Brank urſine, the Root of Lillies, Onions, Snails, Leven and Flax Seed, of each a like quantity ſufficient: boyl them, and beat them in a morter with Hogs-greaſe or freſh Butter, to the form of a Plaiſter.

If you fear that the inward parts may ſuffer in the mean while, provide internal and external Medicines for the ſame: Take of Conſerve of the flowers of *Stœchas* and Roſemary, of each one ounce: of the Rinds of Citrons preſerved half an ounce, Emblicks and Mirobolans preſerved two drams: *Species Diacinnamomi* two ſcruples, with

Syrup of Citron pills make an Electuary, whereof let the Patient take the quantity of a Nut an hour before meat.

The Apoſthume being ripe, open it with an hot Iron Cauſtick; then mundifie it with *Unguentum Apoſtolorum*, or cleanſe it with this following Unguent: Take of Galbanum, Ammoniacum, Rozin, Turpentine, Pitch, Bullocks Tallow and Oyl, of each a quantity: Diſſolve the Gums in Vinegar, and then let them boil a little with the reſt upon the Fire. Afterwards incarnate and cicatrize it as you do other Ulcers.

Out of this phlegmatick Humor is ſometimes ingendred a flatuous and windy Tumor, which is gathered either under the skin, or under the Membranes, which cover and cloath the Bones and Muſcles.

They appear with a certain brightneſs and ſhining, reſiſt the touch; and being ſmitten, ſound like a Bladder: the pain is extenſive and ſtretching. Let his Drink be ſuch as expels and prevents ſuch Humors: Let the Humors be prepared by Wine, expelling Juleps, and the Body emptied by Carminative Medicines and Clyſters, and convenient purges.

Then you muſt attenuate, diſcuſſe, and ſcatter the conjoyned Cauſe; theſe Simples are fit for the purpoſe, Anniſe, Fennel, Dill, Caraway, Carrots, Cummin, Siler Montanum, Smallage, Parſly, Rue, Bay-berries, Oyl of Rue, Bays, Flower-de-luce, Nard, Spike, Nuts, Euphorbium and ſuch like. Of theſe and other Ingredients of the like Nature are many Unguents and Plaiſters formed.

Take of the Oyl of Camomil, Dill, bitter Almonds and Rue, of each one ounce; the ſeeds of Anniſe, Fennel, Carrots, Caraway, Ameos and Rue, of each half an ounce, White-wine three ounces; boil it to the conſumption of the White-wine, ſtrain it, and add Wax ſufficient to make an Unguent.

The expert Chyrurgion ought to compound and alter his Unguents, Plaiſters, and all his Medicines, according to the Conſtitution of the Patient, and Nature of the Tumor; for which it is impoſſible to lay down certain Rules. Give inwardly Diacinnamon, Diacalamenthum, Aromaticum Roſatum, Diagalanga, Dianiſum, and ſuch like; and lay a Plaſter of the ſame nature to the Stomach. If a watry Tumor is ingendred in any part, or all over the body, ſee the 58 Chapter of the ſecond Book.

Struma is a Tumor in which underneath, certain Glandules made of Matter and Blood, and incloſed with a membrane, do grow: They have their place for the moſt part about the Neck, Arm-holes, and ſometimes in other places. The principal Cauſe is Flegmatick Humors: ſometimes falls, ſtrokes, or great Surfeits may be the cauſe.

They

They that have narrow and ſhort Fore-heads, flat Temples, and broad Jaws are ſubject to this Diſeaſe. This Tumor ſeldome comes to ſuppuration: if it doth, it gathereth again: The greater the Tumor, and the deeper it is rooted, the harder the Cure.

For the Cure of the Struma, or Kings-Evil, appoint a Diet that will heat, dry and attenuate; then prepare the Humors. *Take of Oxymel compounded, ſyrup of Stœchas, Honey of Roſes, of each half an ounce: the diſtilled water of Scabious and Fumitory, of each one ounce, mix it for one doſe,* and take thereof as often as need requireth. Then purge with Diaphœnicon, Diacatholicon, Indi majoris, Hiera picra, Pill Cochiæ de Agarico, and ſuch like. It is good alſo to cleanſe the Blood by Urine: *Take of Pilewort three handfuls, Philipendula two handfuls, Pimpernel, Mouſear, Tanſie, red Colworts, Madder, of each one handful, the roots of Fennel Parſly, round Birthwort, Raddiſh, and ſtinking Gladwin, of each half a handful: the ſeeds of Nettles, Juniper and Bay-berries of each one dram: boil them in White-wine to the conſumption of half, ſweeten it with Honey, give every ſecond or third day three ounces in the morning.* If the conjoyned cauſe be fit to be reſolved, then uſe means that can mollifie, attenuate, diſperſe and ſeperate; ſuch as Diachylon Commune and Magnum, Diapalma; many unguents, Liniments and Plaiſters may be made for the purpoſe aforeſaid, which I here omit. If the matter be fit for reſolution, then have you two wayes to empty it, that is ſuppuration and inciſion. This plaiſter is good to ripen it: *Take the roots of Marſh-mallows and Lillies, of each one pound, boyl them ſoft, and beat them in a morter: Garlick and Onions boiled, of each three ounces; the Oyl of Lillies and Butter, of each two ounces: Hogs greaſe and Gooſe greaſe, of each two ounces and an half: the meal of Wheat, Fenugreek and Flax ſeed ſufficient, the Yelks of two Eggs; make a plaiſter,* when it is ripe, open it with an inſtrument, or ruptory of Cantharides of Arſnick. If it appear filthy, cleanſe it with Unguentum Apoſtolorum Egyptiacum, or ſuch like, afterwards incarnate and Cicatrize it. If it ſubmit not to medicines, it muſt be taken out by manual operation, which only belongeth to an expert and able Chyrurgion: ſeeing the whole Cure is difficult, and ought to be managed by an able Brain, and skilful hand, I omit any farther diſcourſe of it, it being my task principally to inſtruct people of mean Capacity.

There are three other phlegmatick tumors, which lye under the general notion: the firſt is called *Atheroma*, and is a tumor without pain and charge of colour, which is a humor contained in the Membranes or Nervous Coats: it is clammy, like ſodden Meal, Starch, and ſometimes mixed (as it were) with hairs, pieces of

bones, *&c. Meliſenis* is a Tumor ſomewhat thinner, and almoſt of the ſubſtance of Honey, otherwiſe agreeing with the former. *Steatoma* is much like the two former, ſave that the humor contained is like ſuet; and the Tumor doth encreaſe, and is much enlarged in proceſs of time: the inward cauſes of them all are phlegmatick Humors, with which the Body doth abound. The firſt is thus known, the Tumor is long and ridged; being preſſed returneth to its place again, but ſlowly, by reaſon of the clammineſs of the humor; the ſecond Tumor is rounder and thinner, being preſſed yieldeth and returneth ſpeedily; the laſt is hard, yieldeth not to the preſſing of the finger, for the humor is like Suet.

The firſt muſt be dealt with by corroſives and inciſion; the ſecond by diſcutients, corroſives and inciſion; the laſt no otherwiſe but not inciſion alone.

The Diet, preparatives and purges, which are proper for *Oedema*, are here to be uſed. If you find the Tumor fit for reſolution, apply diſcuſſive plaiſters, a plaiſter made of Cyclamen is much commended.

Take of Cyclamen, otherwiſe called Sow-bread, as much as you pleaſe, Hogs-greaſe and Brimſtone, of each equal parts, beat them into a form of a plaiſter. If it will not be reſolved, conſume it with eating Medicines; among many of this nature, this following is commended.

Take of ſcales or flower of Braſs half an ounce, of red Arſenick and black Ellebore, of each two drams, with Oyl of Roſes, make a plaiſter: make a deep Eſchar, and make inciſion through it, and apply a Cauſtick.

The Cure may be performed only by inciſion, but the Chyrurgion muſt beware that the Tunicle which holdeth the matter be not broken, leſt ſome part of the humor be left, to the hindrance of his operation.

CHAP. X.

Of Melancholy Tumors.

THe true and legitimate Scirrhus is a Tumor hard without pain yet ſenſible. The antecedent cauſe is Melancholy, abounding in the Body; the conjoyned cauſe is the humor fixed in the part. The firſt is known by the Melancholy conſtitution of the Patient a diet and courſe of life, which is apt to breed Melancholy. The ſecond, *viz.* the conjoyned cauſe is known by a Tumor hard and ſcarce yielding to the touch, in colour between red and black, of dull ſenſe.

Theſe

Theſe Tumors if they be timely and carefully dealt with, may be cured by reſolution; Sometimes they become indurate, and ſometimes they degenerate into a Cancer.

Let the Patient live in a temperate Air, let him uſe moderate Exerciſe, and avoid exceſſive affections and paſſions of the mind; let his Body be kept ſoluble, and let his meat be ſuch as is of good Nouriſhment and eaſie Digeſture, and let him therein be moderate.

Let the Melancholy humors be prepared by Juleps made of the Syrups of Fumitory, Borrage, Bugloſs, Endive, Succory, Rhubarb, Harts tongue, Epithymum and Vinegar, with their diſtilled waters. This Apozem is very effectual.

Take the root and leaves of Sorrel, Borrage, Bugloſs and Fumitory, the leaves of Maidenhair, Succory, Endive, Dandelion and Hops of each on handful: Balm half an handful, the four great cold ſeeds beaten, of each two drams, the ſeeds of Purſlane two drams, Anniſe and Fennel, of each one dram, Raiſins of the Sun ſtoned ſix drams Polypody one ounce, Senna one ounce and an half, Time and Epithymum, of each two drams: the flowers of Violets, Borrage and Bugloſs, of each a pugil: make a decoction in two pound, of which diſſolve the juyce of *Odoriferous* Apples, and of Bugloſs, of each four ounces, boil it again to a pint and an half, then ſweeten it with Sugar, as much as is convenient: Clarifie it, then Aromatize it with the powder, *Diamargariton Frigidum* and *Diatragacanthum Frigidum*, of each one dram: make an Apozem for four Doſes.

The humor prepared, purge it with ſuch things as purge Melancholy: theſe Simples are proper, Senna, Polypodium, Epithimum, Fumitory, Caſſia, Lapis Lazuli and Mirabolans, black Hellebore, and ſuch like. Look for compound Melancholy purgers in the next Book.

The conjoyned humor muſt be dealt with by ſuch things as ſoften, ſeparate and diſcuſs: as the greaſe tryed out of flank Wooll, Butter, the Oyl of Almonds, Camomil, Dill, Lillies, *&c.* the fat of a Cock, a Duck, Gooſe, Fox, Bear, Lyon, Sow, Calf, Stag, Eagle, Vulture, Bee Glew, Wax, fat Figgs, Marſh and Common Mallows, Lillies, Branck urſine, Ammoniacum, Bdellium, Galbanum, Styrax, Tarr, Rozin, and ſuch like, of which you may make unguents & plaiſters. This plaiſter of *Calmeteus* is of a great virtue: *Take of fat Figgs, in number twelve, boyl and ſtamp them, Ammoniacum, Bdellium, Galbanum, diſſolved in Vinegar, of each two ounces, Liquid Styrax one ounce, the Mucilage of Marſh-mallow-roots, of the ſeed of Flax and Fenugreek, of each two ounces, Oeſipus and freſh Butter, of each one ounce, oyl of Lillies three ounces, with wax as much as ſufficeth, make a plaiſter.*

A Cancer is a hard, unequal, round and venemous Tumor; of a black colour, hot and painful. it is called in Greek καρκῖνος and καρκίνωμα, it hath this name for these Reasons: First, because the Veins about it filled with Melancholy blood are stretched out like unto the feet of the Crab-fish. Secondly, because it is much like in colour to a Crab: And lastly, some will have its name to be taken from its sticking quality, that it can scarcely be pulled away, as the Sea-Crab doth, which obstinately sticketh to the place on which it layeth hold. The cause is thick and melancholy juyce contained in the part, and appeareth with a hard resisting, unequal, swartish or brown Tumor; round about it the Veins are swelled and exalted: about it there is sometimes sudden pricking, but for the most part it is of dull sense.

The thicker and blacker the humour is, so much the worse is the effect; this Disease happeneth to any part of the Body, but more especially about the Face, Ears, Lips, Womens Breasts, who have wanted their natural purgation: and it happens to Men, who were wont to have the Hemorrhodial purging, and have lost it. By reason of the thickness and stubborness of the humor, it is seldom cured, but rather turneth to an Ulcerate Cancer. Those Cancers only that are upon the extreme parts of the Body receive curation; but if they are deeply lodged, they admit not of a Cure: a Cancer that is confirmed cannot be cured, unless it be rooted up by incision or burning.

Order your Patient as before in respect of Diet, and prepare and purge the Melancholy humour as before is taught: in this case let purges be very gentle, and often reiterated. Then give Medicines which have a faculty to consume and dry up the Matter: this Electuary of *Antonius Montagnana* is good. *Take of the powder of Sea or River-Crabs drowned in Milk, and dried in an Oven, of each four ounces, the powder of Frogs, Snails and Hedge-Hogs, of each one ounce; the rind of Citrons preserved two ounces; the shaving of Ivory, and the bone of a Stags-Heart, of each three drams; Xylobalsamum, and wood of Aloes, Sanders, Coral, and the powder of Steel prepared, of each two drams; the seed of Sorrel and Citrons, the powder of Carduus, Scordium and Ceterach, of each one dram: Amber and Musk, of each two Grains; the Conserve of Borrage, Bugloss, Sorrel and Sow-thistles, of each two drams; with the simple Syrup of Apples as much as sufficeth, make an Electuary; the dose is the quantity of a Chesnut, three hours before meat.* Then apply such Medicines to the part, that may scatter the humor contained, and strengthen the part against farther defluxion: These Simples are very assistant in this Case; Nightshade, Ceterach, Agrimony, St. Johns-wort, Clary, the juyce of Coriander, the flesh of Cocks,

Snails,

Snails, River-Crabs, Frogs, the Dung of a man, burnt and waſhed Lead, oyl of Frogs, oyl of Sulphur, and ſuch like, you may make a Compound Oyntment thus: Take of Bole-armenick and Terra Sigillata, of each one ounce; of Lapis Calaminaris and waſhed Ceruſe, of each half an ounce: Tutty and Marchaſite prepared, of each three drams: the powder of Frogs and Snails dried in an Oven, of each three drams: Litharge of Gold two drams: Oyl of Roſes three ounces: oyl of Frogs one ounce and half: Vinegar two ounces: the white of two Eggs. Wax ſufficient: let them be well beaten in a Leaden Morter, and brought into an unguent.

Whilſt you purge, apply ſuch things as principally repel or beat back: in the augmentation you muſt beat back and diſcuſs; in the declination diſcuſs only, and all the while let the Patient be nouriſhed with Cordials, to defend the Heart, Liver, and all the principal parts from this ſo malignant and ſtubborn Enemy.

CHAP. XI.

Of ulcers.

AN Ulcer is a ſolution of Continuity in the Fleſh, containing *Sanies* and *Pus*. The antecedent Cauſe is Blood, Choler, Flegm, Melancholy thereto flowing, as hath been ſaid of Tumors; the joyned cauſe is diſtemperature, pain, tumour, contuſion, or ſuch like, ſtirred up by Antecedent Cauſes: Of this cometh matter either good or bad; that which is good is of a mean ſubſtance, between thin and thick, white, light, equal, and not ſtinking: that which is bad is thin, glewy, much in quantity, ſwartiſh, black, pale, ſtinking.

If the diſtemperature of the ulcer be hot, it is known by heat, redneſs, and relieved by cold things. In a cold diſtemperature, there is not ſo much redneſs, and it is eaſed by hot things. Whether the diſtemperature be moiſt or dry, the eye will diſcover.

The Cure of an Ulcer ſimply conſidered, muſt be performed by Medicines which have a digeſtive, mundificative, incarnative, and cicatrizing quality: of which ſort, I have already treated in the cure of Wounds.

I ſhall onely now briefly Treat of the Diſtempers, Adjuncts, and Accidents of ulcers.

Firſt, let the Symptome be removed: if it be hot, conſider whether it be with matter, or without; if with matter, whether it be

Sanguine

Sanguine, or Cholerick; If it be a Sanguine Diſtemper, let blood, obſerve a ſlender and cooling Diet and Medicines. If the matter be Cholerick, purge Choler, obſerve a cooling Diet, and uſe cool Medicines.

If there be a hot Diſtemperature without Matter, neither purge nor bleed, but uſe cooling Medicines; as *Unguentum Album*, *Diapompholigos*, *Rubrum*, *Camphora*, *Ex Plumbo*, and *Ex Ceruſſa*, and ſuch others. Alſo Roſe-water, the juyce or water of Nightſhade, Houſleek, Plantane, and ſuch like.

If the Diſtemperature be cold, purge Flegm if it abound, and uſe Diet and Medicines, which do heat and dry inwardly: Outwardly apply warming Oyntments, *Unguentum de Althæo*, or *Unguentum Citrinum*: waſh it with warm Wine, or the Decoction of Wormwood, Mint, Hyſop, Calamint, Origan, Roſemary, Penny-royal, and ſuch like.

If the Ulcer be too moiſt, dry it with *unguentum Pomphilogos*, *de Plumbo*, *de Ceruſſa*, *de Gratia Dei*, *de Calce*.

If it be too dry, let his Diet and Medicines be moiſtening; as *Baſilicon de Pice*, *Diachylon*, *&c.* Having removed the Diſtemperature, go on gradually to the Cure: if the matter be crude digeſt it, having digeſted it, mundifie it: having ſo done, incarnate it: and laſtly, cicatrize it.

If a Tumor doth accompany the Ulcer, you may from the Chapters aforegoing, be able to judge what the Humor is, which is the cauſe thereof. You muſt evacuate it by blood-letting, purging, thin and cooling Diet and Medicines: The Chapters aforegoing will inform you, whether it be drawn thither by the part it ſelf, or ſent from other parts, or from the whole Body: Nor need you go any farther, nor I trouble my ſelf to preſcribe Medicine, to repel and diſcuſs the Tumors, the aforenamed Chapters being ſufficiently furniſhed.

A contuſed Ulcer muſt be nouriſhed with Medicines moiſtening and ingendring good matter, and the Cure may be performed by the means preſcribed for the Cure of a Contuſed Wound.

If the Ulcer be accompanied with proud fleſh, it muſt be taken off by an Inciſion-Knife, Cautery, or hot Siſſers, *&c.* or by corroſive Medicines: the gentler ſort are Burnt Allum, Hermodactyls with Tartar, Date-Stones burnt, *Aqua-vitæ* with Sulphur, *Unguentum Apoſtolorum*, Nettle-ſeed, the Flower of Braſs, burnt Braſs, *Serpentaria*, the Root of Aſphodels, *&c.* Of a ſtronger ſort are theſe, the Powder of Mercury, *Unguentum Ægyptiacum*, or *Apoſtolorum*, with Natural Verdegreaſe. Of the ſtronger ſort are Quick-lime, Red Vitriol, burnt Vitriol,

Vitriol, Mercury ſublimate: of theſe may many Compounds be made, which for brevity ſake I omit.

If the Lips of the ulcer be hard, ſoften it with mollifying Medicines made of the fat of a Gooſe, Hen, Duck, Lion, Bear, Calf, Ox, or the like; the Oyl of Lillies, ſweet Almonds, Earth-worms, Foxes, *Unguentum Baſilicon*, *Diachilon*, and *Emplaſtrum de Mucilaginibus*. If it be ſo hard that it will not yield to Medicine, make uſe of Inciſion, Cautery, or of the aforenamed Corroſive Medicines.

If the Bone be defiled by an ulcer, take it off with a Scaling Inſtrument, or an hot Iron, after you have looſed the Scale, the firſt three days apply Oyl of Roſes, and the White of an Egg warm; the next three dayes, the yelk of an Egg, and Oyl of Roſes; after that with Butter and Honey.

If the Bone lie ſo deep, that you cannot apply your hot Iron, inject this Water: Take of White Wine one pound and an half, the diſtilled Waters of Plantane and Roſes, of each one pound; Mercury ſublimate three drams, Bole-Armenick half an ounce, Burnt Allum one ounce and an half, white Vitriol and Borax, of each half an ounce; white Sugar two ounces; Maſtich, Sarcocol, of each one ounce and an half: Pouder what is to be poudered, boyl it to the conſumption of half, then filter it, and add of the beſt *Aqua-Vitæ* one pound, and reſerve it to your uſe.

It is good alſo to lay this following powder to the putrified Bone: Take of round Birthwort, and the Bark of the Pine-tree, of each three drams: of the Roots of Hogs-Fennel and Reeds, of each two drams; of Agarick and Tartar, of each one dram and an half; Euphorbium one dram; make a powder: lay it upon the putrified Bone, or mix it with Honey or *Ægyptiacum*, or ſuch like.

If Worms breed in the ulcer, take away the humidity and putrifaction whereof they are ingendred; kill the Worms with the Juyces, or Decoction of Wormwood, Centaury, Eupatorium, Wormwood, and ſuch like bitter Herbs. So much for the general Cure of ulcers.

CHAP.

CHAP. XII.

Rules for Vomiting and Purging.

THE first thing herein considerable is the matter offending; what part of the body is afflicted, and which is the best way to evacuate the peccant humor. The matter offending is either Flegm, Water, Choler, or Melancholy. Purging Simples work gently or strongly: those that work gently only are to be given to weak Bodies: the strongest to stronger persons.

Be well advised of the offending humor before you purge, least instead of helping, you weaken nature. Before you take a purge, let the Humors be prepared by some Medicines proper for the purpose, especially if Flegm or Melancholy be the humour you would purge. Prepare the Body before with Medicines that are attenuating and cutting, and let your Purge be made up with it. The next Book will furnish you with variety of altering and preparing Medicines.

It is a matter of consequence to consider what part of the Body is afflicted, and to form your Purges accordingly. If the remote part of the body be afflicted, as the Head, Arms, Feet, and the like, let your Purge be made up into a hard form as Pills; that by their long stay in the Body, they may be the better able to draw the humours from those parts.

If the offending humour lie in the Bowels or adjacent parts, use liquid Medicines: and in all these look not upon the multitude of Ejections, but of the matter ejected.

If the Humors lie in the Tunicle of the Stomach, a Vomit is necessary, and in many cases more it is a good Revulsion: but take them not without advice from an able Physician.

If the Purge work not at all, give warm Broth, and Posset-Drink, and if the Purge were strong, give a Clister: if it work too strongly, which is worse: give such things as make the Bowels slippery for Ejection, as the Oyl of Almonds, which is good, if the mouth of the Veins be opened, or if there happen excoriation, for the same purpose Quince-seeds and Mallows boyled in milk, is good, and Gum Tragacanth dissolved in water, or Milk; the Syrup, or Marmalade of Quinces have the like virtue.

If Vomiting hold too long give a draught of Milk with a little Mastich therein; and lay to the Stomach *Emplastrum e Crusta Panis.* If either Vomit or Purge work too churlishly, some give a Pill of Laudanum, and with good success. Anoint the Stomach and Belly with

with Oyl of Roſes, and lay on it the powder of Maſtich, of Galls, and of Red Roſe Leaves.

Chymical Medicines, if they be rightly prepared and adminiſtred with care and judgment are the beſt, for they ſtay but a little while in the body, and do not bind afterwards, becauſe the Terrene part is taken away.

If the Humour be tough, it is not eaſily carried away; therefore in ſuch caſes purge gently and often.

The Doſe ought to be regulated by an able Brain: In the next Book *I* ſhall give you the Faculties and Doſe of moſt of the Medicines (in uſe) amongſt us. For the Times and Seaſons of purging, in reſpect of the motion of the Moon and Stars, *I* have given you a few general Rules at the latter end of my Almanack for the Year 1657. To which I refer you.

THE

The End of the Third Book.

THE FOURTH BOOK.

IN this I ſhall ſhew you the Faculty and Natural Operation of moſt of the Compound Medicines now in uſe amongſt us, and ſold by the Apothecary: together with a general Rule for the making of all ſuch kind of Medicines. Thoſe that deſire a more particular Deſcription of their Ingredients or Compoſitions, let them peruſe the Diſpenſatory made by the Colledge of Phyſitians of *London*: If they cannot underſtand the Latine Tongue, let them make uſe of the Tranſlation thereof by Mr. *Culpeper*, it being unfitting for this Volume. Be pleaſed therefore to accept of their Faculties and Doſes from the leaſt to the greateſt, which muſt be regulated with Judgment and Diſcretion, according to the age or ſtrength of the Patient, the Seaſon of the Year, and the nature of the Diſtemper.

CHAP. I.

Of Diſtilled Waters.

COld or ſimple diſtilled Waters, are drawn out of Herbs, Flowers, Fruits, and Roots; all which ought to be diſtilled when they are in their greateſt vigour, and ought to be gathered in a dry day about Noon. The common way is to diſtil them in a Peuter Still: The water thus diſtilled is (of all Medicines) the weakeſt, yet is of uſe in mixing them with other Medicine, that they may be the better taken. To avoid burning, put ſifted Aſhes under the Veſſel, which holds the Herbs, and give a gentle fire.

But to make the Water have more ſmell and vertue of the Herbs, do thus: Take what green Herbs and Roots, or Flowers freſh gathered, if you pleaſe to bruiſe them, and mix them with ſome Leven, and let them ſtand cloſe covered four or five dayes, then diſtil them as aforeſaid. To make it ſtronger, do thus: When you have diſtilled any Herb as aforeſaid in a common Still, by putting a paper under them

them to prevent burning and drying the Cake overmuch: Put the Water and the Cake together into a hot Still or Alembick, and let them ſtand warm 24 hours; then diſtil them, and if you would have the Water yet ſtronger, pour this Water upon more Cakes, and do as before; and if there be any Oyl upon the top of the water ſeparate it, thus you ſhall have a very ſtrong and excellent Water. Or if you perform this diſtillation in a glaſs Gourd, in a Gentle Balneo that is in warm water, your water will be very good, and far excelling the water diſtilled the common way.

To know the vertue and uſe of theſe Waters, you muſt find the vertue of the herb by ſome Herbal, or Hiſtory of Plants and Herbs. If you would have a diſtilled water out of Flowers, which ſhall retain the ſmell of the Flower, do thus: Take Roſes, Violets, Honeyſuckles, or what other Flower you would diſtil, pick them, being firſt gathered in a fair and Sunſhine-day, infuſe a handful or two of them into two quarts of the beſt White-wine, the ſpace of half an hour, not much longer (leſt with the ſubtil ſpirit, the earthy part alſo come forth): then take them forth, and infuſe in the ſame Wine the ſame quantity of Flowers; do ſo eight or ten times. Then put the Wine into a glaſs body or Gourd, and cloſe the Joynts well with Lutement, and diſtil it in a gentle Balneo, or place your Glaſs over the Vapour of hot Water, that ſo the ſubtil ſpirit only may aſcend. By this means you ſhall have a water of a moſt fragrant odour.

You may diſtil a water ſtrong of the vegetable out of dried herbs, Thus: Take of any herb dried (or ſeed or root if you pleaſe) a pound, put it into twelve pints of clear Spring-water, let it ſtand warm as aforeſaid, then diſtil it in a hot Still or Alembick; to this diſtilled water add more dried herbs, and diſtil them again as often as you pleaſe, till your water become like a Spirit. Or if you add White-wine to the herb, it will be the ſtronger: Which leads me to the diſtilled Waters preſcribed by the Colledge of Phyſitians; of one of which I ſhall ſet down the manner of diſtilling, and content my ſelf in deſcribing the virtues and quantity to be uſed of the reſt.

Spiritus & Aqua Abſinthii minus Compoſita: The Spirit and Water of Wormwood, the leſſer Compoſition.

Take of the leaves of dried wormwood two pound, Anniſeed half a pound, ſteep them in ſix Gallons of ſmall wines twenty four hours, then diſtil them in an Alembeck, adding to every pound of the diſtilled water two ounces of the beſt Sugar. Let the two firſt pounds you draw off be called the Spirit of Wormwood; the reſt wormwood-water, the leſs compoſition. In the ſame manner (omitting the Anniſeeds) you may

diſtil

distil the Spirit and Water of any Herb, root, flower, or seed whatsoever.

Spiritus & aqua Absynthii magis Composita. The Spirit and Water of Wormwood the greater Composition.

Take of common and Roman Wormwood, of each a pound: Sage, Mints, Balm, of each two handfuls: the Roots of Galanga, Ginger, Calamus Aromaticus, and Elicampane, of each three drams; Liquoris one ounce, and Raisins of the Sun stoned three ounces: the seeds of Annis and sweet Fennel, of each three drams. Cinnamon, Cloves, Nutmegs, of each two drams: Cardamoms and Cubebs, of each one dram, let the things that are to be cut, be cut, and bruised, that are to be bruised; and all of them infused in twenty four pints of Spanish Wine, for twenty four hours: then distilled in an Alembick: add two ounces of white Sugar to every pint of distilled water. Call the first pint the Spirit of Wormwood the greater Composition. *The virtues are these; it heats and strengthens the Stomach and Lungs, helps Concoction and stayes vomiting; it kills Worms in the Stomach and Belly, expels Wind, mitigates the pains of the Teeth. The Dose is from three drams to half an ounce.*

Spiritus & aqua Angelicæ magis Composita. The Spirit and Water of Angelica the greater Composition.

It comforteth the heart and vital Spirits, it rarifieth and discusseth flatuous humors, it is good against Poyson taken, against the pestilence, it is prevalent and a good preservative in pestilential times, and against ill Airs. It is good against Crudities of the Stomach, and Diseases of the Matrix proceeding from a cold Cause. The Dose is from two drams to six.

Spiritus Lavendulæ Compositus: The Compound Spirit of Lavender.

This is a very chargeable Spirit, and is of great efficacie against passions of the Heart, Convulsions, Cramps, Palsies, Apoplexies, and all sleepy Diseases, Vertigo, and comforts a cold Brain. The Dose is the same with the former.

Spiritus Castorei: Spirit of Castor.

It resisteth Poyson, and is good for such as are bitten by Venemous Creatures; gives speedy Delivery to Women in Travel, and easeth the Fits of the Mother. It helpeth Deafness, proceeding from stoppage,

page, mixed with white Wine, and dropped into the Ears. It is good againſt the Diſeaſes mentioned in the former. The Doſe is from half a dram to a dram. Give it in ſomething that is cooler.

Aqua Petoſitidis Compoſita. The Water of Butter-bur Compound.

It is good againſt the Peſtilence, and a good preſervative in Peſtilential Times: it gives eaſe to thoſe who are ſhort-winded, eaſeth the Fits of the Mother: it dryes up moiſt Humors in thoſe that have Sores hard to be cured. The Doſe is two, three, or four drams in ſome cooling Cordial.

Aqua Raphani Compoſita. Radiſh Water Compound.

This Water is good againſt Obſtructions of the Liver, Spleen, and Womb; prevaileth againſt the Scurvy, and cleanſeth women after their lying in. The Doſe is from two drams to half an ounce.

Aqua Peoniæ Compoſita. The Compound Water of Peony.

This is very prevalent againſt the Falling-Sickneſs, and Convulſions. If the Fits come daily, take it Morning and Evening: If it come weekly, take it at the New or Full Moon, the firſt or laſt Quarter: If the Diſeaſe decline, give it onely at New and Full Moon. In the Fit, it is good to rub the Jaws, Noſtrils, and Temples with it. The Doſe is from two drams to ſix.

Aqua Bezoartica. Or, Bezoar Water.

It withſtands melancholy, and is good for ſuch as are in Conſumptions. It ſtrengtheneth the Heart and Vital ſpirits. It is a Diaphoretick, and is good in peſtilential Feavers. The Doſe is from half a dram to a dram: Give it with other cooling Cordials.

Aqua & Spiritus Lumbricorum Magiſtralis. The Magiſtral Water, and ſpirit of Earth-Worms.

I conceive this was compoſed for a reſtorative for ſuch people that have lingring diſeaſes, occaſioned by Obſtruction of the Liver, ſpleen and Kidneys: as the evil habit, Hypochondriack melancholy, ſcurvy, &c. The Doſe is from half an ounce to an ounce.

Aqua Gentianæ compoſita. Gentian Water Compound.

It is a good Preſervative againſt the Peſtilence, eaſeth pains in the Stomach and helpeth Digeſtion, and drives out old Colds, openeth Obſtructions of the Liver, eaſeth the pricking pains in the Sides, and is good againſt the yellow Jaundies: it provokes the Terms, and expelleth a dead Child, or After-birth. The Doſe is from three drams to half an ounce.

Aqua Gilberti, Gilberts Water.

This Water is a very great Cordial, it ſtrengtheneth the Heart, and reviveth languiſhing Nature; it may be taken from half a dram to a dram: it is ſo coſtly, that it is almoſt out of the reach of ordinary people.

Aqua Cordialis frigida Saxoniæ.

It is a very cooling Water and profitable for Feavers, and to allay the heat of blood; it giveth reſt by ſleep. You may take from two drams to half an ounce.

Aqua Theriacalis. Or, Treacle Water.

This Water is of excellent vertue againſt the Peſtilence, and other Feavers: it is a very good counter-poyſon, and good for thoſe that have been bit by any venemous Creature, or ſuch as have the *French* Pox: for it driveth forth all virulent Humors from the Heart, and is a great Cordial. This Doſe is from half an ounce to an ounce.

Aqua Brioniæ Compoſita; Or, Briony Water Compound.

This Water is Hyſterical, eaſeth the fits of the Mother, it expelleth the After-Birth, and provoketh Womens Courſes. Let Women with Child forbear it. Let thoſe that have occaſion take from half an ounce to an ounce in the Morning faſting.

Aqua Caponis: Or, Capon-Water.

It is good for ſuch whoſe ſtrength is decayed by Feavers or other Sickneſſes: It is an excellent Medicine for thoſe that are in Conſumptions, or waſted by a Feaver Hectick or Maraſmus. Take from half an ounce to an ounce.

Aqua

Aqua Limacum Magiſtralis: Or, the Magiſtral Water of Snails.

It Openeth Obſtructions of the Lungs, and purgeth them of Flegm, and is very good for the Conſumption of the Lungs. Take half an ounce, or an ounce.

Aqua Scordii Compoſita: Or, Compound Water of Scordium.

This is a good Preſervative againſt the Peſtilence, gives reſt in Feavers, and is friendly to the Stomach and Womb. Take it from two drams to half an ounce.

Aqua Imperialis, and *Aqua Mariæ*.

It ſtrengtheneth and corroborateth the Heart, and is therefore good for ſuch as are ſubject to Faintings, Swoonings, and Palpitations of the Heart, and is a preſervative againſt Apoplexies. The Doſe is from one dram to three.

Aqua Mirabilis.

This is of admirable force and virtue, to preſerve the Body from the Apoplexy, and all Diſeaſes of the Nerves. It is very good againſt the Palſie, Convulſion, and Cramp; and is good for cold Stomachs. From two drams to half an ounce is the Doſe.

Aqua Papaveris Compoſita: Or, Poppy Water Compound.

It is good againſt Surfeits and Feavers there-from ariſing: it provoketh ſleep; cooleth the blood, and concocteth the humors. Take from half an ounce to an ounce.

Aqua Cinnamomi, Cinnamon Water.

It ſtrengtheneth the Somach, Liver, Spleen, Lungs, Heart, Brain, and the Nerves. It cleareth the Sight; is an Antidote againſt Poyſon, and biting by venemous creatures, and is good againſt a ſtinking Breath, and nauſeouſneſs of the Stomach. It is very friendly to the Womb, and is of an attenuating, opening, digeſting and ſtrengthening vertue. From two drams to ſix is the uſual Doſe: in cold Diſeaſes you may take more.

Aqua Cœlestis.

This also prevaileth against Malignant and pestilential Feavers, restoreth such as are in Consumption, comforteth the Heart, and reviveth drooping spirits. It is very hot in operation: You must scarcely exceed half a dram for the outmost Dose without the advice of a physitian. In Feavers, mix it with cooling Juleps.

Aqua Melissæ, Bawm Water.

It restoreth Memory lost, it maketh all the senses acute, it strengtheneth the Heart, brain and stomach: and for those who are troubled with cold stomachs and brain, it is a Jewel. It maketh the heart glad, the tongue nimble (in those who are subject to the palsie in that member) the teeth white, and the breath sweet. The Dose is from two drams to half an ounce.

Aqua Mentheæ, Mint Water.

It cools and strengtheneth the stomach, Liver and spleen, helps concoction, breaketh wind, and stayes vomiting. The dose is from one dram to three.

Ordinary *Aqua-Vitæ*, Anniſe-seed water, Usquebath, and such like, are commonly used; and most people know they comfort a cold stomach, and is good against hurt of digestion, coming from a cold cause. It breaks wind, and the like.

Tinctures are made of any Herb or other simple, by first bruising them and putting to them as much spirit of Wine as will cover them three or four fingers; cork it up, or seal it, and let it digest in a Bath as long as you see good. If you know the virtue of the simples, you cannot be ignorant of the Tincture.

To make physical Wines, is easie: Take this one for example; Take a handful of dryed Wormwood, for every Gallon of Wine; stop it in a Vessel close, and let it remain in steep. So you may prepare a physical Wine of any Herb, Flower, or seed whatsoever, either simple or compound.

Physical Vinegars are prepared thus: Take of red Rose buds gathered in a dry time, the Whites being cut off and dryed in the shadow three or four dayes, one pound; Vinegar eight Sextaries: set them in the Sun forty dayes; then strain out the Roses, and repeat the infusion as often as you please.

Thus may you prepare physical Vinegar of any Flower. As the

Hot

Hot Waters and Spirits are beſt for cold Bodies, and hot diſeaſes; ſo on the contrary are Vinegars beſt in hot diſeaſes, and may be externally uſed.

Theſe I thought good to add to the treatiſe of diſtilled Waters.

For the preparation of diſtilled Waters of this nature, read *Quercetanus* his Diſpenſatory; one of which I ſhall here inſert, having preſcribed it in the foregoing Books: which is his diſtilled Water againſt Spitting of blood.

Take of the roots of Biſtort, Comphry, and Tormentil, of each one ounce; the leaves of Knot-graſs, Yarrow, Speedwel, Winter-green, Sanicle, Shepherds-purſe, with its root, of each one handful: of the tops of the Black-berry Buſh, and Maſtich-tree, of each half an handful: the ſeeds of Sumach,, Myrtles, Plantane, Barberies, and white Poppy, of each ſix drams: the flowers of Water-lillies, Gourds, Quinces, and red Roſes, of each two pugils; let them be mixed, and beaten: then macerated in Balneo for the ſpace of four dayes, in the Juyces following, *viz.* Plantane, Purſlane, Sorrel, and Agrimony, of each two pound: Let them be afterwards ſtrongly preſſed out; then add to the Juyce of Acatia, Hypociſtis, of each two ounces: Terra Sigillata, and Bole-armenick, of each half an ounce; *Electuarium Diatragacanthum frigidum*, of each two drams: Macerate them for four dayes, and diſtil it in aſhes till it be dry.

Let them who are troubled with ſpitting of blood, or any inward wound or bruiſe, take two or three Choclearies, either by it ſelf, or mixed with Syrup of Myrtles, dryed Roſes, or Syrup of Comphry; and if the Flux of Blood be very violent, give a ſcruple of the Tincture of Coral with it.

CHAP. II.

Of Syrups.

OF Syrups there are three ſorts; Syrups made by infuſion, juyce and decoction; Syrups made by infuſion are made of Flowers, and ſuch Flowers, as ſoon loſe both colour and ſtrength by boyling, as Violets, Roſes, Clove-gilly-flowers, Peach-flowers, *&c.* and they are thus made. Having picked your flowers, to every pound add three pints of water made boyling hot, put them into a pewter-pot with a cloſe cover, and keep it hot 12 hours. If you would make your ſyrup very ſtrong, put in more freſh flowers as often as you pleaſe; having

ſtrained it out, put the liquor into a pewter Baſon, and to every pint add two pound of fine Sugar; put it upon a Chaffin-diſh of Coals, and melt it, ſtirring and ſcumming it till the Sugar be perfectly melted without boyling.

Secondly to make a Syrup of the juyce of an Herb, you muſt make choice of ſuch herbs as are full of juyce; then beat it in a ſtone Mortar, preſs out the juyce, put it over the fire and clarifie it (that is, ſcum it as long as any ſcum ariſe) then boyl it till a quarter of it be conſumed; to a pint of this add a pound of Sugar, boyling it to a Syrup, and ſcumming of it. You may know when it is enough if you cool a little in a ſpoon. After this manner you may make ſyrup of Wormwood ſimple, of Betony, Bugloſs, Borrage, Chamomel, Carduus, Endive, Succory, Strawberries, Fumitory, ground Ivy, St. Johns-wort, Mercury, Mouſ-ear, Plantane, Purſlane, Apples, Raſpberries, Sage, Scabious, Scordium, Houſleek, Colts-foot, and ſuch like; and when you have done ſo, and would know what they are good for, ſee the vertue of the Simples.

Thirdly, Syrups made by decoction, for the moſt part are compounds; though you may make Syrups of Simples by decoction: the operation is thus; Take of what Herb, Root, flower, or ſeed you pleaſe, and bruiſe it a little, if you make a Syrup of roots, or wherein there are many roots, let the roots macerate in the water twenty four hours; then add the herbs, and the reſt, and boyl it till half the water be conſumed, then let it ſtand; and when it is almoſt cold, ſtrain it through an hypocras-bag without preſſing; to every pint of the decoction add one pound of Sugar, and boyl it till it comes to the thickneſs of a Syrup or new hony. After this manner, the part of the Syrups following are made, except they be made of flowers or juyces. Take this for an example: *Take of common worm-wood meanly dry, half a pound, red Roſes two ounces, Indian ſpicknard three drams, old white-wine, and juyce of Quinces, of each two pound and an half, ſteep them a whole day in an Earthen Veſſel, then boyl them gently, ſtrain it, and adding two pound of* Sugar, *boyl it into a Syrup according to Art.*

This Syrup is very good for cold and Flegmatick Stomachs, it helpeth concoction, ſtrengtheneth the Stomach and Liver, provokes an Appetite, breaks wind, and is good againſt the Jaundies: the doſe is from one ounce to three.

Syrupus Acetosus, simplex vel compositus: Syrup of Vinegar, Simple or Compound.

These Syrups cut Flegm and tough Humors, they cool the body, quench thirst, and ease any stuffing in the Stomach, and are good to prepare the body for a Vomit, especially the first; if you use it so, take from one ounce to two or three: in other cases take it with a Liquorish stick.

Syrupus de Agno Casto: Or, Syrup of Agnus Castus.

I conceive by its composition it was intended to prevent immoderate Lechery, and nocturnal pollutions: for without doubt it dryeth and cooleth the natural seed, thereby restraining venereal thoughts: For my part I can say nothing of it by experience.

Syrupus de Althea: Syrup of Marsh-mallows.

This is a fine cooling, opening, slippery Syrup; good against the pains of the Stone, Gravel, or Cholick. You may give an ounce or two; it is so safe and harmless, you cannot err in the giving of it.

Syrupus de Ammoniaco: Syrup of Ammoniacum.

It opens Obstructions of the Liver and Spleen, and cools the parts, and helps all Diseases arising from their Obstructions and Heat; as Scabs, Itch, Leprosie and such like. You may take an ounce or more if you see occasion.

Syrupus de Artemisia: Syrup of Mugwort.

It helps the Coldness, Wind, Pains and all other Diseases of the Womb; it strengthens the Nerves, corrects the Blood, opens the Pores, and provokes the Terms. You may take an ounce at a time or from half an ounce to two.

Syrupus de Artemisia: Syrup of Mugwort.

It is good against Diseases in the Head and Stomach proceeding of Cold and Wind, Vertigoes, and Madness; it concocteth Melancholy, and provokes the Terms. The Dose is from half an ounce to two.

Syrupus Byzantius, Simple and Compound.

It ſtrengtheneth and freeth the Liver from Obſtructions and Diſeaſes thence proceeding, cures the Yellow-Jaundice, cuts tough Flegm, and is good againſt the Rickets. Take it with a Liquoriſh ſtick: or from half an ounce to two.

Syrupus Botryos; Syrup of Oak of Jeruſalem.

This Syrup is commended in the Aſthma, and cold Diſeaſes of the Breaſt, Coughs, and ſhortneſs of Breath. Take it with a Liquoriſh ſtick.

Syrupus Capillorum Veneris; Syrup of Maiden-hair.

This ſtrengthens the Stomach and Lungs, and helps their infirmities; it alſo cleanſeth the Reins of Gravel: for the firſt, take it with a Liquoriſh ſtick: for the laſt, give an ounce or two.

Syrupus Cardiacus: A Cordial Syrup.

It comforts the Heart, and revives drooping Spirits; it is good for people in Conſumptions, it is of an opening quality, and expels thoſe Vapours which offend the Brain. Take it from one ounce to three.

Syrupus infuſionis Cariophillorum: Syrup of Clove Gilly-flowers.

This Syrup is good in any Feaver Peſtilential, or not: in ſtrengtheneth the Heart, Liver and Stomach, and refreſheth the Vital Parts. The Doſe is from half an ounce, to an ounce and an half. It is ſo harmleſs, you cannot err in the taking of it.

Syrupus de Cinnamomo: Syrup of Cinnamon.

It ſtrengtheneth the whole Body, and helpeth Digeſtion, and comforteth the Stomach and Womb, and cheareth the Spirits. Take one ounce in a Cordial.

Syrupus Acetoſitatis Citriorum: Syrup of the Juyce of Citrons.

This Syrup hath a refrigerating, cutting, attenuating, penetrating faculty; it allays Choller, and tempers the heat of the Heart, cools the blood, and is therefore good againſt Feavers Peſtilential or not; ſmall Pox or Meaſels: it reſiſteth poyſon. The Doſe is from one ounce to four.

Syrupus

Syrupus corticum citriorum, Syrup of Citron pills.

It is of a moſt grateful ſavour, and moſt pleaſant odour; it ſtrengtheneth the ſtomach, Liver and heart, amends the heat of them, and reſiſteth palpitations, Faintings, ſwoonings; it ſtrengtheneth the Vitals, is profitable in Conſumptions and hectick Feavers: the doſe is from one ounce to two.

Syrupus è Coralliis ſimplex & compoſitus. The Syrup of Corral, ſimple and compound.

It refrigerateth, drieth and aſtringeth; it ſtayeth the immoderate Monthly flux and the Whites, the Dyſentery, all fluxes of Blood: it is good in the falling-ſickneſs, it ſtrengtheneth Nature, profitable for ſuch who have hectick feavers or Conſumptions. The doſe is from half an ounce to an ounce.

Syrupus Cydoniorum, Syrup of Quinces.

It is beſt to ſtrengthen the ſtomach, and to help the cold diſtemper of the Liver: it helps Concoction, and provokes an appetite; it helps Vomiting, and is good againſt the flux, if it be without a feaver. The doſe is from one ounce to two; take it in the morning: for a looſneſs, take an ounce before meat; for Vomiting, an ounce after meat.

Syrupus de Eryſimo, Syrup of Hedge-Muſtard.

It prevaileth againſt cold afflictions of the Breaſt and Lungs; as Coughs, Aſtmahs, Hoarſneſs, and the like: uſe it with a Liquoris ſtick, or take an ounce, with two or three ounces of ſome pectoral decoction in the morning.

Syrupus de Fumaria, Syrup of Fumitory.

It concocteth Melancholy, and freeth the blood of ſuch humors, as cauſe ſcabs, itch, Leproſie, Tetters, Ring-worms, Cancers, Corns, Warts, *&c.* It openeth Obſtructions of the Liver and ſpleen, and is ſovereign in the hypochondriack melancholy; it cooleth the Liver, and cleanſeth the Blood. The Doſe is from one ounce to three.

Syrupus Glycyrrhiza, Syrup of Liquoris.

It helps Coughs, and is good againſt Pleuriſies; for it cleanſeth the Breaſt and Lungs. Take it as a Syrup of Hedg-muſtard.

Oxy-Saccharum ſimplex, Syrup of Pomegranates with Vinegar.

It is many times uſed in the ſmall pox and Meazels, by reaſon of the

the Vinegar; it cutteth and attenuateth hot Humours, it reſtraineth Choler, and mitigates the heat. The Doſe is from two ounces to four.

Syrupus de Hyſopo, Syrup of Hyſop.

It hath a notable Faculty of cutting and expectorating tough Humors out of the Breaſt and Lungs, and to ſtrengthen the parts. It prepareth and expelleth ſalt and phlegmatick Humors in the urine, which cauſeth heat and pain in thoſe parts. For the firſt, take it with a Liquoris ſtick; for the laſt, the Doſe is from half an ounce to two ounces.

Syrupus Ivæ arthriticæ, ſive Chamæpityos, Syrup of Chamepitys, or Ground-pine.

It is good againſt the Fits of the Mother, procureth Womens Courſes, expelleth the dead Child; let Women with Child forbear it. It is good againſt the Strangury or ſtoppage of Urine, openeth Obſtructions of the Liver and Spleen: the Doſe is from half an ounce to an ounce.

Syrupus Jujubinus, Syrup of Jujubes.

It helpeth Diſeaſes of the Trachæa Arteria, occaſioned by ſharp and dry Humors, for it is cooling and moiſtening: it helps Hoarſneſs, Coughs, Pleuriſies. It is good againſt ulcers of the Lungs or Bladder, or any inflammation. Take it with a Liquoris ſtick, or take half an ounce or an ounce, as oft as you pleaſe.

Syrupus de Meconia vel Diacodium, & de Meconia compoſitus. Syrup of Meconium or Diacodium, and of Meconium compound.

It prevails againſt dry Coughs, Pthiſick, hot and ſharp gnawing Rheums, and provoke ſleep in the beginning of a Feaver, or the Body being coſtive: The Doſe is from half an ounce to two.

Syrupus Meliſſophylli, Syrup of Bawm.

It is cordial, ſtrengtheneth the Heart, Breaſt, and Stomach, clears the Spirits, and reſiſteth Melancholy: it helps them that languiſh, ſtrengtheneth Memory, and is good in Feavers: The Doſe is from half an ounce to two.

Syrupus de Mentha, Syrup of Mint.

This Syrup ſtrengtheneth the Stomach, helpeth Digeſtion, ſtays Vomiting and ſour Belchings. The Doſe is from one ounce to three.

Syrupus de Mucilaginibus, Syrup of Muſilages.

It is a fine remedy againſt the Pthiſick, Bloody Flux, Stone in the Reins

Reins or Bladder, or Ulcers there, or ſharp corroding Humors there or in any part of the Body, and is of great vertue for thoſe who have taken Phyſick too ſtrong and corroding. Take one ounce or two; ſometime, it is lawful to give four or five.

Syrupus Myrtinas, Syrup of Myrtles.

It is of a comforting and aſtringent Nature; it helpeth all Fluxes, and ſpitting of blood, and ſtrengtheneth the retentive Faculty of the Stomach. An ounce or two is the Doſe.

Syrupus Florum Nimphæ, ſimplex & compoſitus. Syrup of Water-Lilly-flowers, ſimple and compound.

It allayeth the heat of Choler, cooleth the Head, the Heart, Liver, Reins, Matrix, and allayeth all hot Diſeaſes, and provokes ſleep.

Syrupus de Papavere Erratico, Syrup of Erratick Poppies.

This Syrup cools the Blood, and may be ſafely given with moderation; in Surfets, Feavers, Frenzies, and hot Agues. The Doſe is from half an ounce to an ounce.

Syrupus de Piloſella, Syrup of Mouſe-Ear.

It is an aſtringent and heating Syrup, good for the cure of a Rupture, and neceſſary to be uſed by wounded people. The Doſe is from half an ounce to two.

Syrupus Florum Pæoniæ, vel de Pæonia compoſitus: Syrup of Peony-Flowers, or the compound Syrup of Peony.

It is good againſt the Falling-Sickneſs, Convulſion, and ſuch like infirmities. The uſual Doſe is an ounce.

Syrupus de Pomis Alterans, Syrup of Apples.

It cools the heart and ſtomach helps palpitation, breeds good blood, profitable in Hectick and other Feavers, quencheth Thirſt. You may take an ounce in the morning.

Syrupus de Praſio, Syrup of Horehound.

It cleanſeth the Lungs from thick and putrified Flegm: it is good againſt the Phthiſick and Cough in ancient people, or ſuch as are of cold Natures. Take it with a Liquoris ſtick.

Syrupus

Syrupus de quinque Radicibus, Syrups of the five opening Roots.

It openeth the Obſtructions of the Liver and ſpleen, and more eſpecially of the Reins: it is good againſt the ſtone, if you mix it with ſyrup of Maiden-hair: it is of great vertue, in preparing phlegmatick and tough humors, and is profitable in the beginning of Feavers. The doſe is from one ounce to four.

Syrupus Raphani, or Syrup of Rhadiſhes.

It breaks the ſtone of the Kidneys, and cleanſeth the part; it provokes urine and Womens purgations, and is profitable againſt the ſtone in the bladder. The doſe is from one ounce to three.

Syrupus Regius, vel Julepium Alexandrinum: Julep of *Alexandria*.

It is profitable in ſummer-time for ſuch bodies which abound with Choler; for it allayeth the heat, and evacuateth it, and is convenient to prepare it againſt purging. The doſe is from two ounces to five.

Syrupus de Roſis ſiccis, Or ſyrup of dried Roſes.

It ſtrengtheneth and comforteth the heart and vital ſpirits, helps fluxions and Corroſions, and gnawing in the Guts; ſtrengtheneth the ſtomach, and ſtays vomiting. Take it as ſyrup of Quinces.

Syrupus ſcabioſæ, Syrup of *Scabious*.

It freeth the Breaſt and Lungs of phlegm and Crudities; it eaſeth ſtitches in the ſides, and is good againſt inward Impoſthumes. The doſe is from one ounce to three.

Syrupus de ſcolopendria, Syrup of Harts-tongue.

It opens the Obſtructions of the Liver and ſpleen, prepares melancholy, and is good againſt the Quartane Ague and the Rickets. The doſe is from half an ounce to two ounces.

Syrupus de Stæchade, Syrup of Stæchas.

It ſtrengtheneth the Brain, and corrects the cold diſtemper thereof: it is of excellent vertue in the palſie, Convulſion, *&c.* coming of cold Cauſes. The doſe is from one ounce to three.

Syrupus de Symphyto, Syrup of Comphry.

It helps ſpitting of Blood, the ulcer in the Reins, ſtops the immoderate flux of the Menſtrues, all inward Wounds and bruiſes, and healeth the Rupture. From one ounce to four is the Doſe.

Syrupus

Syrupus Violarum, Syrup of Violets.

It cools and moiſteneth; it corrects the ſharpneſs of Choler, quencheth thirſt in hot Feavers, and cooleth the heart and Liver, comforts hot ſtomachs, reſiſteth putrifaction, the peſtilence and poyſon. The doſe is from one ounce to four.

Syrupus e Portulaca, Syrup of Purſlane.

It is cooling, and good for all hot Diſeaſes of the ſtomach, Liver, Reins and Bladder: it cools the blood, quencheth thirſt, provokes ſleep, and thickens thin humours. The Doſe is from one ounce to three.

Syrupus Tuſſilaginis compoſitus, The Compound of ſyrup of Coltsfoot:

It helps the infirmities and weakneſs of the Lungs; as difficulty of breathing, want of Voice, hoarſneſs, Coughs, Catarrhs, *&c.* Take it with a Liquoris-ſtick, or an ounce or two thereof, in ſome pectoral Decoction.

Syrupus de Eupatorio, Syrup of Eupatorium.

It hath an opening Faculty, but purgeth not; it opens the Obſtructions of the Liver, and correcteth the cold Diſtemper thereof, helps the Dropſie and evil ſtate of the body, provokes urine, and is good againſt the hypochondriack melancholy. The Doſe is from one ounce to three.

Purging Syrups.

Syrupus de Cichorio cum Rhabarbaro, Syrup of Succory with Rhubarb.

It purgeth the Body from Cholerick and venemous Humours, it cleanſeth the Liver, it evacuateth by ſtool and urine. The Doſe is from one ounce to two.

Syrupus de Epithimo, or ſyrup of Epithymum.

It prepareth and purgeth melancholy or aduſt humors and ſcabs, itch, *&c.* it ſtrengtheneth the ſtomach and Liver. Take it as ſyrup of Fumitory.

Syrupus e Floribus Perſicorum, Syrup of Peach-Flowers.

It gently purgeth Choler, and may be given in Feavers, to evacuate the ſharp and Cholerick Humors. It is good againſt Worms in Children: Take from half an ounce to two.

Syrupus

Syrupus de Pomis, Purgans & Magiſtralis, Syrup of Apples, Purging and Magiſtral.

Both of them purge, cool, and rectifie the Diſtemper of the Blood, and free it from Choler and Melancholy; it is good againſt the yellow and black Jaundice, Madneſs, Scurf, Scabs and Itch. The Doſe is from one ounce to three.

Syrupus de Rhabarbaro, Syrup of Rhubarb.

This is a gentle Purge, fitting for Children, antient People, and ſuch as are very weak; it purgeth Choler and Melancholy. An ounce a weak Body may take.

Syrupus Roſaceus Solutivus & e ſucco Roſarum, Syrup of Roſes Solutive, and of the Juyce of Roſes.

It looſeneth the Belly, and gently bringeth out Choler and Flegm. The Doſe is from two ounces to five.

Syrupus Roſaceus Solutivus cum Agarico, Syrup of Roſes Solutive with Agarick.

It purgeth Flegm more powerfully than the former, frees the head thereof, and relieves the ſenſes oppreſſed by it; it purgeth the Stomach and Liver, provokes urine and the Terms. The Doſe is from an ounce to two.

Syrupus Roſaceus ſolutivus cum Helleboro: Syrup of Roſes ſolutive with Hellebore.

It purgeth Melancholy, and reſiſteth Madneſs. The Doſe is from half an ounce to an ounce.

Syrupus Roſaceus ſolutivus cum Senna: Syrup of Roſes ſolutive with Senna.

It purgeth Choler and Melancholy, and leaves a binding quality behind it. The Doſe is from one ounce to two.

Syrupus de Spina Cervina, Syrup of purging Thorns.

It is good againſt the Dropſie. The Doſe is an ounce.

Syrups made with Vinegar and Honey.

Mel Anteoſatum, Honey of Roſemary Flowers.

IT is good againſt all infirmities of the Head, ariſing from a cold and moiſt Cauſe: it dries the Brain, quickens the ſenſes and memory, and ſtrengtheneth the Nervous parts: it helps all cold Diſeaſes of the Head, Stomach, Liver and Belly. It is good againſt the Dumb Palſie, Lethargie, *&c.* and all cold Rheums falling into the Eyes. See the vertues of Roſemary Flowers. The Doſe is from half an ounce to an ounce.

Mel Helleboratum, Honey Helleborated.

It purgeth melancholy, and Scabs, Itch, *&c.* it is good againſt the Quartan Ague, Madneſs, the Dropſie, Sciatica, Gout, Cramp, *&c.* An ounce is the Doſe: Be careful in taking of ſuch Medicines without good adviſe.

Mel Mercuriale, Honey of Mercury.

It is good in Emollient Clyſters.

Mel Nuceum, Honey of Nuts.

It is a very good Medicine for ſuch as have weak ſtomachs and Defluxions: it is a great preſervative againſt the Plague: Take an ounce in the morning.

Mel Paſſulatum, Honey of Raiſins.

It maketh the Body ſoluble, comforteth weak ſtomachs, and is a very nouriſhing thing for People in Conſumptions. You cannot err in taking of it.

Mel Mororum, Honey of Mulberries.

It is very good for ſore Mouths and Throats, and for heat and inflammation there, mixed with a little Plantane Water; it is good for ſore mouths in Children.

Mel Roſatum ſolutum, ſive colatum, Common Honey of Roſes or ſtrained.

They are both uſed for Diſeaſes of the mouth as the former.

Mel Roſatum ſolutivum, Honey of Roſes ſolutive.
It is uſed to cleanſe Wounds, and is a good Laxative in Clyſters.

Mel Scilliticum, Honey of Squils.
It is very effectual againſt divers diſtempers of the head, *viz.* falling-ſickneſs, head-ach, dizineſs: it drives away an old Cough, cleanſeth the Breaſt and Bowels very gently; and ſome ſay, it leaveth nothing offenſive in the body. The doſe is half an ounce to an ounce and an half.

Oxymel ſimplex, Simple Oxymel.
It is good to cut and attenuate humors, and to open Obſtructions, provokes gentle Vomiting in ſome: it is good to expectorate, and to prepare tough Flegm againſt the taking of a Vomit. Take it from one ounce to two.

Oxymel Compoſitum, Oxymel Compound.
Uſe this, if you find the former too weak to expectorate viſcous humors: it is good alſo in the Aſthma, ſtoppage of the pipes and in the Pleuriſie. The doſe is from half an ounce to two.

Oxymel Helleboratum, Oxymel Helleborated.
It ſtrongly evacuates Flegm, melancholy, and tough and viſcous humors. The Doſe is from half an ounce to an ounce for ſtrong people only.

Oxymel Julianæ.
It is good againſt the hypocondriack melancholy and the Rickets; for it is a fine opening medicine. Take an ounce, two or three.

Oxymel ſcilliticum ſimplex, the ſimple Oxymel of Squills.
It cuts and divides tough and viſcous humors, frees the Stomach and bowels of ſuch humors, and helps ſour belchings. The doſe is an ounce for a man.

Oxymel Scilliticum compoſitum, the compound Oxymel of Squills.
This is uſed, when eaſier medicines cannot expectorate. It is good againſt the falling-ſickneſs, megrim, Vertigo, ſwimming, and pain in the head, and cleanſeth the ſtomach, Lungs, and Women after their lying in. The doſe is from half an ounce to an ounce.

To theſe I add theſe following Syrups of *Quercitanus*, which I have ſometimes quoted in the former Book; whoſe manner of preparation (if rightly underſtood) and vertues, excelleth moſt extant.

Syrupus de Peto, ſimplex & compoſitus; Syrup of Tobacco ſimple and compound.

Take of the Juyce of Tobacco four pounds Simplex Hydromel one pound, Simple Oxymel four ounces; put them into a glaſs veſſel of a fit bigneſs, that one fourth part be full. Let them digeſt in *Balneo Mariæ* for the ſpace of two or three dayes, till the thickeſt fall to the bottome: then pour off the cleareſt and pureſt of the Juyce, and digeſt it again as before, till no impurity remain therein; then put to it of White Sugar two pound, and boil it to a Syrup.

The compound Syrup is thus made: Take of the Juyce ſo digeſted as before, two pound and an half, ſimple Hydromel one pound: In which macerate for the ſpace of two or three days theſe Simples following, Hyſop Maiden-hair and wall-Rue, of each half a handful; the Flowers of Colts-foot, Stœchas, Violets and Bugloſs, of each two pugills; the ſeeds of Cudweed, Nettles, Carduus Benedictus, of each one ounce; the leaves of Senna three ounces, Agarick trochiſcated one ounce, Cinamon, Mace and Cloves, of each one dram: then preſs it out ſtrongly, and let it be digeſted, to ſeperate the pure from the impure: add its equal weight in Sugar, and boil it to a Syrup. This Syrup rightly made, is of excellent uſe, and its violent, acrimonious, and venemous quality is taken away; yet it powerfully provokes Vomiting, and is excellent againſt Aſthma's, and all Diſeaſes of the Lungs, proceeding from cold and groſs Humors; as old Coughs, and difficulty of breathing. The Doſe is from one ounce to two.

His Syrup of Cinamon prepared with the Spirit of Wine, is thus made: take of Cinamon two or three ounces, or more if you pleaſe: groſly bruiſe it, and put it into a glaſs Veſſel, pouring upon it the Spirit of Wine, as much as may cover it three or four fingers, cover it cloſe, and let it ſtand in a cool place, till the Spirit of Wine hath drawn the virtue and tincture of the Cinamon: then pour it off clear. to every eight ounces of the Liquor add three or four ounces of white Sugar finely powdered: then put it over a fire, and diſſolve the Sugar: then ſet the Spirit of Wine on fire with a lighted paper, ſtirring it with a large Spatula, and all the Spirits of wine will fly away, and the Syrup remain. Or if you pleaſe, a little before the Spirit is conſumed, put it out, by covering it cloſe with a ſilver Baſon, that the Air come not at it: by this means the Syrup will be the better: this ſyrup is of a grateful reliſh, and a Medicine inferior to none in diſeaſes of the Heart; as Palpitations, Swoonings, *&c.* againſt Weakneſs, Crudities, Windineſs of the Stomach: the Doſe is half a Cochleary.

His ſyrup of Ground Ivy is thus made: take of the Juyce of

Ground-Ivy or Ale-hoof, two pound and an half: digeſt and purifie it in *Balneo Mariæ*, as you are taught before; the Juyce being perfectly cleanſed, add to it of Sugar one pound; of penids four ounces, and boil it into a Syrup. It is a very ſoveraign Medicine for the ptiſick, Ulcer in the Lungs, and for a Conſumption, cauſed by any defect in that part.

CHAP. III.

Of Decoctions and Juyces.

DEcoctions are made of Roots, Leaves, Flowers, Seeds, Fruits, or Barks, conducing to the Cure of any Diſeaſe. Decoctions principally aim at ſuch diſeaſes as lye in the paſſages: as the ſtomach, bowels, kidneys, uretors and bladder. If they be made of White-wine, they will laſt the longer, and are more penetrating then if they be made of Water. If you make your Decoction with roots, leaves, flowers, *&c.* Boil the roots firſt, as I told you in boiling of compound liquors. Such things as make the decoction ſlimy, you may tye up in a Rag. You may ſweeten it with ſugar, honey, ſugar-candy, or ſyrups ſutable to the diſtemper aimed at: and to make it keep the longer, ſtop it up cloſe in a Glaſs or ſtone-bottle, and keep it in a cool place.

Decoctum Epithymi, Or, Decoction of Epithymum.

Take of common Myrabolans, Chebula and Indica, of each half an ounce; Stæchas, Raiſins of the Sun ſtoned, Epithimum and Senna, of each one ounce; Fumitory half an ounce, Maudlin five drams, Polypodium ſix drams, Turbith half an ounce, Whey made of the milk of a Goat or Heifer four pound. Let them all boil (the Epithymum excepted) to 2 pound, the Epithymum muſt boil but a walm or two, then take it from the fire, and add black Hellebore one dram and an half, Agarick half a dram, Sal-gem a dram and an half, ſteep them ten hours, and ſtrain it out.

It purgeth melancholy and aduſt Choller, and it is a ſoveraign remedy againſt all diſeaſes cauſed by melancholy. The doſe is four ounces.

Decoctum Sennæ, the Decoction of Senna.

This alſo purgeth melancholy, and is good for weak people, and the doſe is the ſame with the former: for the moſt part other purging medicines are mixed with it, and in ſo doing, you may purge any humor.

Decoctum

Decoctum pectorale, pectoral Decoction.

This is good againſt a Cough, Aſthma, Hoarſneſs, it cleareth the Voice, and is good againſt all diſeaſes of the Lungs. The doſe is the ſame.

Decoctum commune pro Clyſtere, A common decoction for a Clyſter, and a carminative decoction.

Theſe both ſerve for Clyſters; to them you may add Oyls, ſyrups, purging Electuaries, as neceſſity requireth.

Lac virgineum: It was invented for proud Ladies and Wenches to clear their Faces of Sunburning, Freckles, Pimples, and ſuch like deformities.

To preſerve the juyce of any Herb or Fruit, take theſe few Rules: Firſt, gather the herb when it is very dry, then beat it, and preſs out the juyce. Secondly, you muſt clarifie it over the fire, till no more ſcum will ariſe. Thirdly, boil it to the thickneſs of honey, and (when it is cold) put it up into a pot or glaſs for your uſe. This is called *Rob* or *Sapa*, when you find the word *Rob* or *Sapa* ſimple, without any relation of what it ſhould be made, know it is the juyce of the white Grape. I ſhall inſert none of them, nor their Virtues, but refer them to the virtue of the ſimple, out of which *Rob*, *Sapa*, or juyce is extracted.

CHAP. IV.

Of Lohochs.

LOhoch is an Arabick word, the Greeks call it ἐκλεγμα Eclegma, the Latins *Linctus*, *viz.* a thing to be licked. It is thicker than a ſyrup, and not ſo thick as an Electuary. Its uſed generally againſt Diſeaſes in the Breaſt and Lungs; and the manner of taking it is with a Liquoriſh ſtick. The manner of making it thus; Take of any pectoral herbs or ingredients, make a decoction, then add twice its weight of honey or ſugar, and boil it to a Lohoch. Some are made of the pulp of fruits, roots and ſeeds; if there be gums in them; they muſt be diſſolved. If you would know the matter of making each of them particularly, you muſt peruſe the *London Diſpenſatory*.

Lohoch de ſarfara, the Lohoch of Coltsfoot.

Take of Coltsfoot roots cleanſed eight ounces, Marſh-mallow roots four ounces, boil them in a ſufficient quantity of water, and preſs the pulp through a ſieve, diſſolve it again in the decoction, and

let it boil once or twice, then take it from the fire, and add two pound of white Sugar, Honey of Raisins 14 ounces, juyce of Liquorish two drams and an half, stir them well with a wooden pestle, sprinkling in of Saffron and Cloves in powder, of each one scruple; Cinnamon and Mace, of each two scruples, make them into a Lohoch according to Art. It is good for a Cough and roughness of the wind-pipe.

Lohoch de papavere; Lohoch of Poppies.

It is good against salt humors, and sharp distillations upon the Lungs: it is very good in Feavers, accompanied with want of sleep; it is of great use in a pleurisie, & allays the sharpness of the humors, which cause roughness of the throat.

Lohoch è passulis; a Lohoch of Raisins.

This is a fine medicine for Children, and is good not only against Coughs and Consumptions of the Lungs; but also against Convulsions and Falling-sickness.

Lohoch e pino; a Lohoch of Pine-nuts.

It succours such as are Asthmatick, helps continual Coughs, and difficulty of breathing; it cuts and attenuates tough humors in the Breast.

Lohoch e portulaco; a Lohoch of Purslane.

It is good against inward bruises or wounds in the Lungs or those parts; for such as spit blood, it is very binding.

Lohoch e pulmone vulpis; a Lohoch of Fox-lungs.

It is very good in Phtisicks, cleanseth and healeth Ulcers in the Lungs.

Lohoch Sanum & Expertum, a sound and well experienced Lohoch.

It is good in cold Distempers of the breast and lungs, and attenuates thick and gross Humors there: No better remedy for those who have lost their tongues by Cold.

Lohoch Scillitum, a Lohoch of Squils.

It hath the same vertue with Oxymel of Squils: but more gentle; it helps Asthmas, and difficulty of Breathing; it carries away all offensive humors from the Breast and Lungs, and thereby furthers Digestion.

Lohoch Caulium, A Lohoch of Coleworts.

It opens Obſtructions of the Liver and Spleen, and is thought to be good againſt the Rickets; it cuts, attenuates, and concocts the thick and viſcous humors in the Breaſt Stomach and Bowels of Children.

To theſe I add one of *Quercetanus's* Lohochs; Take of the roots of Marſh-mallows well cleanſed half a pound, or as much as you pleaſe; boyl it till it be tender in common Hydromel; then beat it well, and rub it through a Sieve; of which take two ounces of the Species Diatragacanthi and Dia-ireos. of each three drams, of white Sugar and Penids, of each half an ounce, Flos Sulphuris rightly prepared two drams, ſyrup of Maidenhair and Coltsfoot, of each as much as ſufficeth; bring it into the form of a Lohoch, and take it with a Liquoris-ſtick.

It is an excellent Remedy (ſaith he) againſt all inveterate Coughs, whether they have their Original from a hot or cold Cauſe: againſt the Aſthma, Phtyſick, ſtoppage of the Pipes, and all other Diſeaſes of the Lungs; it maturates the Pleuriſie, and cauſes it to be ſpit up.

CHAP. V.

Preſerves, Conſerves, Sugars and Lozenges.

PReſerves are made of Roots, Barks, Fruits and Flowers: And firſt of Roots, Take of what Root you pleaſe, ſcrape it very clean, and if there be any Pith therein, take it out; boyl them in a ſpring water (or in Roſe-water, if you can afford it) till they be ſoft; then take them out, and to a pint of the Liquor add a pound of white Sugar, boyl it to the thickneſs of a ſyrup; then put in the Root, and let it boyl a little, then put it into a Glaſs, or glaſed Pot, and keep it for your uſe. So you may preſerve the roots of Angelica, Acorus, Burrage, Bugloſs, Succory, Elecampane, Eringo, Ginger, Burnet, Satyrion, Comphry, Zedoary, the ſtalks of Artichokes, Angelica, Burs, Lettuce, *&c.* before they be quite ripe; making this difference, that whereas before you took out the Pith of the Roots, you muſt of theſe make uſe of none but the Pith.

In like manner you may preſerve Barks, as Citron Pills, the pills of Lemons and Oranges, and the green Rind of Walnuts, *viz.* Take of the exterior, or outmoſt yellow skin, then boil it as before, till it be tender, make a Syrup, and preſerve it.

You may preſerve Fruits as you did the former, *viz.* pare and quarter them, and take out the Core; boyl them till they be tender, and do as you are before taught.

Another way is this, pare, quarter, and take out the Core of ſome; of others pull off the outward skin, and pull out the ſtones: take their weight in Sugar, and diſſolve it: put in the Fruits, and let them boil a little. Thus you may preſerve Apples, Pears, Quinces, Apricocks, Plumbs, Peaches, Citrons, Myrabolans, Nutmegs, Grapes, Barberries, Cherries, Cornels; *&c.* or of any of theſe fruits you may preſerve the pulp, by boiling them till they be tender, then pulp them through a Sieve: boil the pulp gently, till the water be conſumed, then add its equal weight in Sugar, and boil it to its due thickneſs. Though flowers are ſeldom, yet they may be preſerved thus. Take a Glaſs broad both at the top and bottom, firſt cover the bottom of the Glaſs with fine Sugar, then cover the Sugar with the flowers you would preſerve, lay them even and ſmooth, then cover them with Sugar, and that again with flowers, till your Glaſs be full; tie a Paper over the top, and you will have a pleaſant preſerve.

The vertue of Preſerves you may eaſily gather, if you conſider the nature of the root, ſtalk, fruit, bark or flower preſerved; they are of great uſe in Phyſick, and many times welcome to ſick people; but are moſt commonly uſed at Banquets.

Conſerves,

Conſerves are made either of Herbs or Flowers; if you make your Conſerve of Herbs, you muſt take onely the tender tops and leaves, and beat them in a ſtone Mortar; when they are beaten pretty ſmall, add to them their treble weight in Sugar, beat them very well, you cannot beat them too much, till (if you eat it) it feels not rough in your mouth: then put it into earthen pots well glazed, and keep it for your uſe.

Conſerve of Flowers are done in the ſame manner, only remember to do them whilſt they are freſh, pick them clean, and cut off the whites.

I ſhall ſay no more of Conſerves, but leave the virtue and uſe of them to the ingenious.

Lozenges.

Diacodium Solidum, ſive Tibulatum.

Take of white Poypy-heads, meanly ripe, and newly gathered, in number twenty, ſteep them in three pints of warm Spring-water, the next day boyl them till the vertue is out, then ſtrain out the Liquor, and with a ſufficient quantity of good Sugar boil it according

to

to art, that you may make it into *Lozenges.* They are good againſt thin humors, diſtilling from the head upon the lungs, ſtomach and throat: they provoke ſleep, and cool the body in Feavers.

Sacchарum Tabulatum ſimplex & perlatum.

Lozenges of Sugar ſimple and pearled, are commonly called *manus Chriſti.*

They are cooling and very Cordial, and therefore good in Feavers, and for weak people, who are ſubject to hectick feavers and Conſumptions.

Saccharum Tabulatum Compoſitum, Lozenges of Sugar compound.

They are very good for cold ſtomachs, and free the ſtomach of Choller and Flegm, and are good againſt Worms.

Saccharum Penidium, Sugar penids.

For the moſt part they are uſed in other Compoſitions, of themſelves they are good againſt Coughs.

Saccharum Roſatum, Sugar of Roſes.

It ſtrengthens weak ſtomachs, eaſeth pains in the head, reſtoreth loſt ſtrength, cheriſhes a weak Brain, and comforts drooping ſpirits, ſtayes vomiting and piſſing of blood; It is convenient for People in Conſumptions to carry in their pockets, and now and then eat a bit of them: In like manner are all the reſt to be taken.

CHAP. VI.

Of Troches.

THey are called Placentulæ, or little Cakes; they were invented principally to keep powders from loſing their vertue, by the intromiſſion of the Air, which this form doth reſiſt, and keep it pure the longer. Beſides, they are convenient for a man to carry about him when he travelleth; their form, for the moſt part, is little, round and flat. The general way of making them is thus: Take what quantity of Gum-tragacanth you pleaſe, the like quantity of Roſe-water, or any other ſutable to the diſtemper you aim at; put it in a Gally pot, and cover it, in ſix or ſeven hours the Gum will be turned into Muſilage, with which you may make any fine powder into Paſte; with the Paſte you may make troches, or little cakes, and print what you pleaſe upon them. Then dry them in the ſhaddow, and keep them for your uſe.

Trochiſci de abſynthio, Troches of Wormwood are thus made.

Take of the leaves of red-Roſes, Wormwood and Annis-ſeed, of each two drams: Juyce of Maudlin made thick, the roots of Aſarabacca, Rhubard, Spicknard, Smallage ſeeds, bitter-Almonds, Maſtich, Mace, of each one dram, Juyce of Succory as much as is ſufficient to make Troches. They ſtrengthen the ſtomach, and provoke an appetite, open Obſtructions of the Liver and Bowels, and carry away Watry and Chollerick humors. The frequent uſe of theſe Troches will be beneficial to ſuch as are inclinable to the Jaundice or Dropſie. The Doſe is from half a dram to a dram and an half.

Agaricus Trochiſcatus, Agarick Trochiſcated.

They purge phlegm and choller mixed, and free the Head and Brain thereof: purge groſs and viſcous Humors from the ſtomach. They are ſeldome or never uſed alone, therefore I forbear the Doſe.

Trochiſci Albi, the white Troches.

They are cooling and drying, and of great virtue, if a dram of them be finely powered, and mixed with an Injection for the Yard ulcerated.

Trochiſci Alexiterii, Troches againſt Poyſon.

They are good againſt all peſtilential and epidemical diſeaſes, & and a good preſervative in peſtilential times; and they ſtrengthen the Heart. Take a little now and then.

Trochiſci Albandal.

They powerfully purge groſs humors form the exterior parts: it is good in the palſie, ſleepy diſeaſe, Apoplexy and Convulſion, coming from a cold cauſe. The doſe from two grains to four: It is violent, and beſt mixed with other milder Medicines, or given in a Clyſter.

Trochiſci Aliptæ Moſchatæ.

They are compounded for Children that cannot ſwallow their milk well. The doſe is from two grains to ſix, given in breſt-Milk. Others ſay it is very good for barren Women, taken inwardly and outwardly, mixed with a plaiſter for the Womb. It is very dear, and good for Ladies.

Trochiſci

Trochiſci Alkekengi, Troches of Winter-Cherries.

They are a good Medicine to allay the heat of urine, and give eaſe in ulcers of the Reins, Bladder, and paſſage of the urine, and are good againſt the Stone: the doſe is from half a dram to two drams.

Trochiſci Bechici, Albi & Nigri, Pectoral Rouls, white and black.

They are very good for a Cough and Hoarſneſs: the doſe is from half a dram to a dram.

Trochiſci de Barberis, Troches of Barberies.

They are very good in any flux, cooling in Feavers, and allay unnatural heat in any part: the doſe is from half a dram to two.

Trochiſci de Camphora, Troches of Camphire.

They are good in burning feavers, againſt the heat of blood and Choler, and againſt the hot diſtemper of the ſtomach and Liver, or any other part, againſt the Jaundice, Hectick feavers, &c. The beſt way is to take a little often.

Trochiſci de Capparibus, Troches of Capers.

They are very profitable againſt Schirrhous tumors in the Spleen, and open Obſtructions of the Liver, and are good againſt the *Hypochoudriack*-melancholy: the doſe is from half a dram to a dram.

Trochiſci de Carabe; Or, Troches of Amber.

They are good to ſtop fluxes of the blood in any part of the body: the doſe is from one ſcruple to four.

Trochiſci Cypheos.

It is uſed in Treacle and Methridate. It is good againſt ulcers in the Lungs, and other parts of the body.

Trochiſci de Eupatorio, Troches of Maudlin.

Theſe Troches are good againſt the Jaundice, and the Dropſie, and are good in any tumor in the Liver or Spleen.

Trochiſci Galliæ Moſchatæ.

They ſtrengthen the Womb, the Brain, Heart, Animal and Vital Spirit

Trochiſci

Trochiſci Gordonii.

They are good againſt any inward Ulcers, or ulcers of the Yard, and to cool the body in feavers. Take half a dram with ſyrup of Marſh-Mallows.

Trochiſci Hedichroi.

They ſtrengthen the heart and brain, they are of a healing quality, therefore good for ſuch as have cold Stomachs: they are ſeldom uſed alone.

Trochiſci Hyſterici: Troches againſt the Mother:

They ſerve principally againſt fits of the Mother, expel the Birth, and After-birth, cleanſe a Woman after her Labour: the doſe is from half a dram to a dram.

Trochiſci de Ligno Aloes, Troches of Wood of Aloes.

They chear the heart and Vital Spirits; are good againſt heart-qualms and faintings, and againſt the Dropſie, and are a pretty Medicine for a ſtinking-breath. The doſe is half a dram.

Trochiſci e Myrrha, Troches of Myrrh.

They powerfully provoke the dead Child, after-birth, and Womens monethly purgations. The doſe is from half a dram to a dram.

Trochiſci de Plumbo, Troches of Lead.

They are good to cure ulcers in the Eyes.

Trochiſci Polyidæ.

They are good in green Wounds and ulcers.

Trochiſci de Rhabarbaro, Troches of Rhubarb.

They have a cutting, attenuating, ſtrengthening, and Choler-purging quality, by urine and otherwiſe: they are profitably uſed in the Dropſie, Jaundice, and inveterate Obſtructions following a Feaver: take from half a dram, to a dram and an half.

Trochiſci de Santalis & Spodio, Troches of Sanders and Spodium.

Both theſe are cooling and binding, allay the heat in Feavers, quench

quench thirſt, ſtop a flux, and ſtrengthen the retentive faculty: the doſe is half a dram.

Trochiſci de Scilla ad Theriacam, Troches of Squils for Treacle.

They ſerve principally for other Compoſitions; as for *Venice*-Treacle. For their particular vertue, ſee the nature of Squills.

Trochiſci de terra Lemnia, Troches of Earth of *Lemnos*.

They are very good to ſtanch bleeding at Noſe, or any flux of blood in any part of the body. Half a dram is a ſufficient doſe.

Sief de Thure, Sief of Frankincenſe.

It dries up Rheum in the Eyes.

Trochiſci de Violis ſolutivi, Troches of Violets Solutive.

They purge Water, tough flegm and Choler; they are violent, take but half a dram, and that with good advice, that they may be with ſome proper Corrigents.

Trochiſci de Agno caſto, Troches of Agnus Caſtus.

See the vertues of the Syrup of *Agnus Caſtus*.

Trochiſci de Anniſo, Troches of Annis-ſeeds.

They open the Obſtructions of the Liver, and help all Infirmities thereof: they are good in Quartan Agues: the doſe is from one dram to two.

Trochiſci de Diarrhodon.

They are good againſt Feavers coming of flegm, all Quotidian feavers and Agues, eaſe pain in the belly, and cleanſe the bowels: the doſe is from half a dram to a dram.

Trochiſci de Lacca, Troches of Lacca.

They open Obſtructions of the Liver, and help feavers ariſing from that cauſe, purge by urine, and are good in *Aſcites*, or any Dropſie: take from half a dram to a dram.

Paſtilli Adyon. & Muſa.

They heal Wounds, and cleanſe Ulcers, Fiſtulas, and ſuch like. Cleanſe the Ears that are mattery, repreſs excreſcency of fleſh, and cleanſe the filth of the bones: they are good againſt the inflammation of the Fundament, and Cholerick eating Puſtules.

Croco

Croco-Magma of Damocrates.

It ſtrengthens the ſtomach, warms the Heart, and is expulſive.

Trochiſci Ramich.

They ſtrengthen the ſtomach, Heart, Liver, and other parts, give eaſe in the Cholick, and help fluxes of Blood, and cleanſe the body of ſalt, ſharp, and cholerick Humours. You cannot err in taking of them.

Trochiſci de Roſis, Troches of Roſes.

They ſtrengthen the digeſtive faculty of the ſtomach, and eaſe pains there; they are good againſt the Hectick feaver, and the beginning of a Dropſie: they reſtore Colour loſt. Take it at any time.

Trochiſci Diacorrallion.

They ſtop the immoderate flux of the Terms, and other fluxes of blood. Take half a dram; take them with care and diſcretion. *Trochiſchi Hæmoptoici*, are like them in operation: And *Trochiſci Diaſpermation* help the Pleuriſie, eaſe pain, and differ little from the former.

CHAP. VII.

Of Pills.

THE Greeks call them Καταπότια the Latines *Pilulæ*, or little Balls; we commonly call them Pills: they were invented to purge the head principally; as alſo, the remote parts of the body, which they beſt perform, by reaſon they are long digeſting, and better able to draw the peccant humors to them. Pills are made of any powder, with Syrups, Sapa, or Jellies, by the help of a Mortar and Peſtle: As for Example.

Pilulæ de Agarico: Or, Pills of Agarick.

Take of Agarick three drachms, Blew Orris Roots, Maſtich and Hore-hound, of each one dram; Turbith five drams, *Hiera Picra* half an ounce, Colocynths, Sarcocol, of each two drachms: Myrrh one dram: Sapa, as much as is ſufficient to make it into a maſs for Pills. It purgeth Choler and Flegm from the Head, Breaſt and Lungs: the doſe is from two ſcruples to a dram in the morning.

Pilulæ

Pilulæ Aggregativæ.

Purge flegm, Choler, and Melancholy Humours: they help Diſeaſes of the ſtomach and Liver, & are good againſt Quotidian Agues. The Doſe is from half a dram to four ſcruples: take them in the morning.

Pilulæ Alaphanginæ.

They cleanſe the ſtomach, Brain, and the ſenſitive Organs, from groſs and putrid Humors, which hinder the exerciſe of their Functions: they ſtrengthen alſo and help the Concoction of the Stomach: the doſe is from a dram to four.

Pilulæ de Aloe Roſata.

Purge Choler, and free the Stomach of ſuch humors, open Obſtructions cauſed thereby, as the Yellow Jaundice, and are good againſt Worms, *&c:* the doſe is from a ſcruple to a dram: take them at night going to bed.

Pilulæ de Aloe Lota.

Purge the Brain, ſtomach and bowels of putrid humours: and ſtrengthen them: take them as the former.

Pilulæ Aureæ.

Are good in Opthalmia, or inflammation of the Eyes, help the Megrim coming from a cold cauſe, and free the Bowels of Wind: the doſe is from two ſcruples to four.

Pilulæ Cochiæ, the greater.

Puge the head of flegmatick humours, and are good againſt the inveterate Head-ach, Megrim, palſie, Falling-ſickneſs, *&c.* The doſe is from two ſcruples to four.

Pilulæ Cochiæ, the leſs.

Take them not alone.

Pilulæ ex duobus: Or, Pills of two things.

They purge Choler and Flegm; but with ſuch violence, that they ought not to be given alone.

Pilulæ de Eupatorio, Pills of Eupatorium.

Purge Choler gently, and are good in Tertian Agues, Yellow Jaundiſe, Obſtructions of the Liver and Spleen: the doſe is from half a dram to a dram, taken at night.

Pilulæ

Pilulæ Fœtidæ, Stinking Pills.

They purge groſs, tough, melancholy, and flegmatick humours, from the remoteſt parts of the body. Are good againſt the Gout, and cold afflictions of the Joynts, Leproſies, and diſeaſes of the Skin. The doſe is from half a dram to four ſcruples.

Pilulæ de Hermodactylis.

Pills of Hermodactyls are of the ſame nature with the former. The doſe is from one dram to two.

Pilulæ de Hiera cum Agarico, Pills of Hiera with Agarick.

Some will have this Pill an Univerſal Medicine: It purgeth Choler, Flegm, and Melancholy: it opens Obſtruction of the Liver and ſpleen, is good againſt the Jaundice, the Dropſie and ſcurvy, againſt Vertigoes and dizzineſs of the head, provokes the Terms, eaſeth the Mother-fits, and ſtrengthens the Womb, helps ſhortneſs of Breath: all which I have found by Experience. Authors ſay, it reſiſts Epidemical Diſeaſes, and poyſons, helps the Gout, and cures all ſorts of Agues. The doſe is from one ſcruple to four.

Pilulæ Imperiales, Imperial Pills.

Strengthen the Stomach, Liver, Bowels, and Natural ſpirit, and purge mixt Humors. The Doſe is from a ſcruple to a dram: take them at night.

Pilulæ de Lapide Lazuli: Or, Pills of Lapis Lazuli.

Purge Melancholy and Aduſt Choler: they work violently. The doſe is from two ſcruples to a dram.

Pilulæ Macri.

They ſtrengthen the Stomach, Brain and the Nerves, and purge the humors that afflict them, and hinder the motion of the Body: they open Obſtructions of the Liver and ſpleen, and are good for people who have been hurt by falls and bruiſes. The doſe is from half a dram to a dram: take them at night, and continue taking them a Week together.

Pilulæ Maſtichinæ, Maſtich Pills.

They ſtrengthen and purge the Stomach, Brain, Belly and Reins. Take them as the former.

Pilulæ

Pilulæ Mechoacanæ: Pills of Mechoacan.

They purge flegm with violence. The dose is from a scruple to half a dram.

Pilulæ de Opopanace, Pills of Opopanax.

Purge cold humours from the Joynts and Nerves, are good against the Gout and Palsie. Take a scruple or half a dram in the morning.

Pilulæ Rudii.

Purge Choler, flegm and melancholy from the head and other parts of the body: they are quick in operation, safe and the best of purges. The dose is from one scruple to half a dram.

Pilulæ Russi.

They are preservatives in pestilential Times, and evacuate malignant humours, and such as are gotten by surfets, and strengthen the Vitals. The dose is from one scruple to a dram: take them to bedward.

Pilulæ sine quibus, Pills without Which.

Purge Choler and flegm from the brain: are good for Opthalmia caused by Choler, and good in the bastard Tertian. The dose is from half a dram to a dram.

Pilulæ Stomachicæ, Stomach pills.

Strengthen the retentive and digestive faculties of the Stomach, and cleanse it of offensive humours. The dose is from one dram to two.

Pilulæ Stomachicæ cum Gummi, Stomach pills with Gums.

They are of the same nature with the former; they are stronger in operation. The dose is a dram: take them in the morning early, and sleep after them.

Pilulæ de Succino, Pills of Amber.

Are friendly to the Womb, and take away the causes of sterility, and help Conception; purging Choler and flegm, and leave a binding and strengthening quality behind them. The dose is from a scruple to a dram: take them at night.

Pilulæ ex Tribus, Pills of three things.

They strengthen the stomach and Liver, open Obstructions, help the Yellow Jaundice, and free the body of Cholerick humors, which cause the itch and scabs. The dose is from one scruple to a dram: take them at night.

Pilulæ

Pilulæ Tarpeti aureæ.

They purge Choler and Flegm, ſtrengthen the Stomach and Liver. Take them as the former.

Pilulæ Azoiereth.

Strengthen the Body, evacuate Choler from the Veins; and Cholerick, Flegmatick and putrid humors from the Stomach, and are a good preſervation in peſtilential times: the doſe and manner of taking them is the ſame.

Pilulæ ex Bdellio, Pills of Bdellium.

They are good in the immoderate flux of the *Terms* and *Hemorhoids*: the doſe is half a dram.

Pilulæ de Rhabarbaro, Pills of Rubarb.

They evacuate Cholerick Humours, help the Jaundice, open Obſtructions of the Liver, and ſtrengthen the ſtomach: take them at night, from a ſcruple to a dram.

Pilulæ Arabicæ.

They remove the diſeaſes of the head; as the Vertigo and Megrim; make a man merry, preſerve his Mind in vigour, clear the Sight, repair Hearing loſt, and free the ſtomach of vitious humors: take it in the morning from one ſcruple to four.

Pilulæ Arthriticæ.

Helps the Gout, and other Joynt-Griefs, or whatſoever Diſeaſe hath its original from flegm: take from one dram to four ſcruples, in the morning.

Pilulæ Fumariæ, Pills of Fumitory.

This Pill is good for ſuch as are troubled with Scabs, Itch, and ſuch like; for it purgeth Cholerick and Aduſt Humours, and ſalt Flegm: the doſe is from two ſcruples to a dram: take it in the morning.

Pilulæ Indæ.

They generally purge Melancholy, therefore neceſſary in all melancholy Diſeaſes; as Cancers, Leproſies, Quartan Agues, Pains and Tumors of the Spleen, Sadneſs, Fear, *&c.* The doſe is from half a dram to four ſcruples: take them in the morning.

Pilulæ Luis Majores.

They are given with happy ſucceſs, in diſeaſes of the Eyes: they purge flegmatick and mixed humors from the head, and ſtrengthen the viſive vertue: take them as the former.

Pilulæ

Pilulæ de Euphorbio: Pills of Euphorbium.

They are good againſt pains in the Loins, Dropſies, and Gouts, coming of a moiſt cauſe: half a dram is a ſufficient Doſe.

Pilulæ Scribonii.

They are good againſt ſpitting of Blood, Ptiſicks, and the like, Take a ſcruple going to bed.

Pilulæ de Cynogloſſo, & de Styrace; Pills of Hounds-Tongue, and Styrax.

They are both good againſt a Defluxion of hot Rheums upon the Lungs or other parts, againſt Cold cauſed by Defluxion, and provoke ſleep. Take one ſcruple or two, if you find your body ſtrong.

Laudanum & Nepenthes Opiatum.

It mitigateth violent pains, allayeth the Fumes that trouble the Brain in feavers, and provoke ſleep. Beware how you give Medicines in the beginning of Feavers. The doſe is from one grain to four.

CHAP. VIII.

Of Powders.

POwders may be made of any Herb, Flower, Root, Mineral, Stone, *&c.* and they are variouſly compounded, as followeth:

Aromaticum Caryophillatum.

Take of Cloves 7 drams; Mace, Zedoary, Galanga the leſs, Yellow Sanders, Troches Diarrhodon, Cinnamon, Wood of Aloes, Indian Spicknard, Long-Pepper, Cardamoms the leſs, of each one dram; Red-Roſes four drams; Gallia Moſchata and Liquoris, of each two drams; Indian-Leaf, and Cubebs, of each two ſcruples: beat them all into Powder. It ſtrengtheneth the Stomach, and clears the Vital parts, ſtayes Vomiting, breaks Wind, and helps Digeſtion: Take a dram or two.

Aromaticum Roſatum.

It ſtrengtheneth the Stomach, Heart and Brain, and is good againſt Swooning, Palpitation, Convulſion, Epilepſie and ſuch like: it diſcuſſeth Wind and ſtrengtheneth the Natural parts, and is profitably given in Conſumptions. The doſe is from half a dram to two drams.

Pulvis ex Chelis Cancrorum compoſitus: Or, the Powder of Crabs-Claws compound: Otherwiſe called *Gaſcoins* Powder.

It is very good in Feavers, either intermitting, putrid or malignant: it is of known vertue in the ſmall Pox and Meazles: it is very cordial, chears the Heart and Vital Spirits: the uſual doſe is from one grain to twelve.

Species Cordiales Temperatæ.

It is a great Cordial, ſtrengtheneth both Vital and Animal parts, and is often preſcribed among other Cordials: the doſe commonly is from a ſcruple to half a dram.

Diacalamintb, Simple and Compound.

It heats the body, and cuts groſs humours: it expels Wind, and opens Obſtructions, provokes Urine and the Terms, and cleanſeth Women in Child-bed: the doſe is half a dram.

Dianiſum.

It powerfully diſcuſſeth Wind from the Stomach and raw humors, and removes Flegmatick Humors, which cauſeth a Cough: take half a dram or a dram, being made into an Electuary.

Pulvis Radicum Ari compoſitus: Powder of *Aaron* Roots compound.

It provokes Urine and the Terms, expels the dead Child and After-birth, and cleanſeth the Womb, and eaſeth Fits of the Mother; cleanſeth the Stomach of tough humors, and is a good Antidote (ſay ſome) againſt poyſon. Give a ſcruple, or half a dram.

Diaireos Simplex: Or the Powder of the Root of Flowerdeluce.

It is good againſt Coughs: make it into an Electuary with Honey, or ſome Pectoral Syrup, and take it with a Liquoris ſtick.

Dialacca.

It ſtrengthneth the Stomach and Liver, and opens Obſtructions; mollifieth Schirrhous Tumors, and is of great vertue to remove the effects thereof, *viz.* Cachexia, and the Dropſie: it provokes Urine, and breaks the Stone in the Reins and Bladder: the doſe is from half a dram to four ſcruples.

Pulvis Cardiacus Magiſtralis.

This Powder hath not its name for nothing; it is a very great Cordial, and ſtrengtheneth the Heart and Vitals: the doſe is from one grain to ten: the Gentry may uſe it often.

Diamargariton

Diamargariton Frigidum.

It is a great Cordial, good againſt Syncopes, Aſthmahs, Coughs, and Diſtillations of ſharp humors, Conſumptions and Hectick Feavers. Half a dram is an indifferent Doſe, if it be not too dear.

Diambra.

It effectually ſtrengtheneth all the Bowels and inward parts weakned by Cold; it cheareth the Spirits, and gives the Patient a good colour; it profiteth the Womb, and is friendly to ancient men and women. The doſe is from half a dram to two drams.

Diamoſchu dulce & Amarum.

It is good againſt cold afflictions of the Brain, and all Diſeaſes thence ariſing; againſt Melancholy and all melancholy Diſeaſes. The laſt, beſides the former, hath a purging Faculty, and cleanſeth the Stomach. The doſe is from half a dram to a dram.

Species Dianthus.

It maketh a light heart, a chearful Mind, a good Stomach, and a ſound body: the doſe is the ſame with the former.

Diapenidion.

It prevaileth againſt all Diſeaſes of the Breaſt, Cough, Hoarſeneſs, loſs of Voice: take half a dram, or mix it with ſome Pectoral Syrup.

Diarrhadon Abbatis.

It ſtrengthneth the Liver, Heart, Stomach, *&c.* and quencheth unnatural heat in any of thoſe parts: the doſe is from half a dram to a dram.

Diaſpoliticum.

It is good to diſcuſs Wind in the Stomach, and removes the Diſeaſes of the part, and helps digeſture: the doſe is from one dram to two.

Diatragicanthum Frigidum.

It cures all Diſeaſes of the Breaſt and Lungs, which proceed from a hot and dry cauſe, or putrifaction in the parts; for the moſt part, it is mixed with other Medicines: Or it may be made into an Electuary with the Syrup of Violets, and you may take a dram.

Diatrion Piperion.

This Powder diſcuſſeth Wind from the Stomach and Bowels: it heats the Stomach, helps Digeſtion, and frees it of Flegm: the doſe is from a ſcruple to half a dram.

Diatrion Santelion.

It is a very good Medicine to correct the hot diſtemper of the Liver, and is good againſt a *Diarrhæa* cauſed by Cholerick humours: it helps Obſtructions of the Liver alſo. The doſe is from four ſcruples to two drams.

Pulvis Haly.

It is a good Medicine againſt *Peripneumoniæ*, or inflammation of the Lungs, Phtiſicks, and pleuriſies. Take half a dram of the powder.

Pulvis Lætificans.

It revives the Heart, and chears the Spirit, helps Digeſtion, and preſerves a good Colour. The Doſe is from one ſcruple to four. Or, of it you may make a Sacculus to be applied to the Region of the Heart, Stomach and Head, againſt palpitation and cold diſeaſes of the Head and Stomach.

Pulvis Bezoarticus Magiſtralis: A Bezoartick powder Magiſterial.

It is a great Cordial, and very good in Feavers, and in all Diſeaſes where the Vitals ſuffers. The doſe is from a grain to twelve. If you take too much, your purſe will ſoon complain.

Species Confectionis Liberantis.

It is a good preſervative in peſtilential times, and a good Medicine in peſtilential Feavers. The Doſe is from half a dram to two drams: it is a good Cordial for the Gentry.

Pulvis Saxonicus.

It is a great preſervative againſt poyſon and the peſtilence, and powerfully expels all poyſon and malignant humors out of the body. Take half a dram or a dram.

Pulvis Antilyſſus.

This powder is good againſt the biting of a Mad Dog, or any other venemous Creature; for it fortifieth the heart againſt poyſon. The Doſe is from half a dram to a dram.

Roſatæ

Roſatæ Novellæ.

It helpeth hot and dry Stomachs, and is good againſt diſtempers of the Heart, Liver, *&c.* or of any other part, cauſed by heat and dryth: it ſtrengtheneth the Vital Spirits, and provokes Sweat. The Doſe is the ſame with the former.

Pulvis Thuraloes.

It is good to ſtanch blood in any Wound: if you mix it with the white of an Egg, and with the Wool of an Hare dipped in it; apply it to the bleeding part.

Species Electuarii de gemmis frigidis.

It ſtrengthneth the Heart and Vital Spirits, and relieveth languiſhing Nature. Half a dram is the utmoſt Doſe; and that too much for a poor man.

Pulvis contra caſum: A powder for thoſe that are bruiſed by a Fall.

It is good to ſtrengthen the internal parts of one bruiſed by a fall, or otherwiſe. The Doſe is from two drams to three. Sweat after it.

Diacymini.

It is good to diſcuſs Wind, warms the Stomach, and eaſeth the pains of the Cholick, and helps digeſtion. The Doſe is from half a dram to a dram.

Diagalanga.

It diſcuſſeth Wind and cold humours in the Stomach; it corrects the cold and moiſt diſtemper of the Liver and Brain, and doth ſomewhat provoke urine. The Doſe is from half a dram to two.

Species Electuarii Diamargariton calidi.

It is a great Cordial, heats the Stomach and the Womb, and removeth cold Diſtempers thereof. The doſe is half a dram.

Lithontriphon.

It heats the Stomach, and helpeth want of Digeſtion: it is good againſt the Iliack paſſion and Cholick; breaks the ſtone in the Reins and Bladder, Strangury and Diſury. The Doſe is from half a dram to a dram.

Pleres Aromaticon.

It is good in Syncopes and palpitations, and cheriſheth thoſe who have been weakned by Sickneſſes: it ſtrengtheneth Memory, and quickeneth the Senſes; good againſt the Falling-Sickneſs, and cold afflictions of the Lungs, and is exceeding good for ſad and melancholy people. The Doſe is the ſame.

Pulvis contra Peſtem: A Powder againſt the Peſtilence.

The Title tells you the vertue of it: beſides, it chears the Heart and Vital Spirits: the doſe is the ſame.

Pulvis contra Vermes: A Powder againſt the Worms.

And is a good one for the purpoſe: the doſe is from half a dram to a dram.

Purging Powders.

Pulvis Hermodactylorum compoſitus: Powder of Hermodactyls compound.

IT purgeth Choler, Flegm, and Melancholy; but with ſuch violence, that it is the ſafeſt courſe not to meddle with it: Or let it be firſt corrected by an able Brain.

Pulvis Sennæ compoſitus major: The Powder of Senna the greater Compoſition.

Some call it *Holland* powder; or *Ralf Holland's* powder: it diſcuſſeth Wind, it helps the Cholick; opens the Obſtructions of the Reins and Bowels: the Doſe is from one dram to two.

Pulvis Sennæ compoſitus minor: Or, the powder of Sena, the leſſer Compoſition.

It purgeth Melancholy from the head and other parts. The doſe is a dram.

Diaſenna; Or, *Pulvis Sanctus*: The Holy powder.

It purgeth the ſame humour, but is very violent. The doſe is the ſame for ſtrong bodies.

Diaturbith cum & ſine Rhabarbaro: Diaturbith with or without Rhubarb.

The firſt purgeth flegm and Choler: the other flegm only; but ought neither of them to be taken, unleſs corrected by an able Brain, and adminiſtred by a skilful and careful hand.

CHAP.

CHAP. IX.

Of Electuaries.

ELectuaries are eaſily made of any of the aforegoing Powders; or, having your Ingredients ready, beat them and ſift them into fine power, and with three times the weight of Honey or Syrup, ſutable to your Ingredients, make an Electuary. As for Example:

Antidotus Analeptica.

Take of red-Roſes and Liquoris, of each two drams and 5 grains; Gum-Arabick and Tragacanth, of each two drams and two ſcruples: Sanders, White and Red, of each four ſcruples: the Juyce of Liquoris, white Starch, the Seeds of white Poppies, Purſlane, Lettuce and Endive, of each three drams: the four greater cold ſeeds husked; the ſeeds of Quinces, Mallows, Cotton, Violets, Pine-Nuts, Fiſtick-Nuts, ſweet Almonds, pulp of Sebeſtens, of each two drams; Cloves Spodium, Cinnamon of each one dram: Saffron five grains, Penids half an ounce: Make them into fine powder, and with three times their weight of Syrup of Violets make an Electuary It is good in Conſumptions and Hectick Feavers; it quencheth thirſt, and reſtoreth radical moiſture. You may take a dram as often as you pleaſe.

Confectio Alchermes.

This is uſed in Palpitations, Syncopes, and Diſeaſes of the Heart: it reſiſteth the peſtilence and poyſon, and relieveth languiſhing Nature. The doſe is from one dram to two.

Electuarium e Saxaphras: Or, Electuary of Saxaphras.

It opens Obſtructions of the Liver, Spleen, and Kidneys, and is good againſt cold Rheums and Defluxions from the Head to the Lungs, Teeth, Eyes; and helps Diſeaſes in thoſe parts, occaſioned by ſuch Defluxions: it provoketh the Terms, dries up the ſuperfluous moiſture of the Womb, and all raw thin Humours, and breaks Wind. This doſe is half a dram in the morning.

Electuarium de baccis Lauri, Electuary of Bay-berries.

It is good againſt the Cholick and all Diſeaſes cauſed by Wind or Cold; and it cuts and attennates glaſſie Flegm. The Doſe is from one dram to three.

Diacapparis: Or, a Confection of Capers.

It is good against Diſeaſes of the Spleen. The Doſe is the ſame with the former.

Diacinnamomum, A Compoſition of Cinnamon.

It ſtrengthneth the inward parts, and heats the Stomach, helps Concoction, provokes the Terms, and ſtrengthneth the Womb, and is good for people that are ſubject to flegm and Wind. The Doſe is from one ounce to two.

Diacorallion, A Compoſition of Coral.

It is cordial and binding, and cooling; it ſtrengthneth ſuch as are in Conſumptions, cools in Feavers, and ſtops fluxes; and is good for thoſe that are in a Conſumption with a Looſnes: it ſtops the Terms, and white flux. The doſe is a dram in the morning. If you have a Looſneſs, the doſe is from 1 to three, and it may be taken often.

Diacorum.

This Electuary heats the Brain, ſtrengthneth the Nerves, & quickneth the Senſes, is good againſt the Head-ach, Convulſions, Falling-Sickneſs, Catarrhs, and provokes Luſt. The doſe is half a dram.

Diacydonium ſimplex & Compoſitum: A Confection of Quinces, Simple or Compound.

They comfort the Stomach, and are good for thoſe that are ſubject to Vomiting; for it ſtrengthneth the Stomach, and moderates Womens fluxes. The doſe is from half a dram to a dram, before and after meat.

Confectio de Hyacintho.

It is a great Cordial, and cooling, and is of great vertue in all feavers, putrid, malignant and peſtilential. The doſe is from two ſcruples to half a dram.

Antidotum Hæmagogum.

It provokes urine, the Terms, and After-Birth; helps the Strangury, and breaks the Stone, opens Obſtructions of the Liver and Spleen. The doſe is from one dram to two.

Diſatyrion.

This was compoſed to provoke Luſts, and to whet on thoſe who are impotent in the acts of *Venus*, and is good againſt weakneſs of the Reins and Bladder: the doſe is from two drams to three.

Electuarium Diaspermaton.

It provokes Urine, and breaks the Stone. The Dose is from half an ounce to an ounce.

Micleta.

It is profitable in long lasting Diarrhæas and bloody Fluxes. The dose is from one scruple to four.

Electuarium Pectorale.

It strengtheneth the Stomach and Lungs, and removes the Vices thereof. Take it with a Liquorish stick.

Theriaca Diatessarion.

It frees the Stomach of pain, Wind and want of digesture, resisteth the Pestilence and Poyson: it helps stopping of the Liver, Dropsie, Jaundice, *&c.* and cold infirmities of the Brain; as Convulsions, Falling-sickness, Palsies, *&c.* The dose is from half a dram to two.

Diescordium.

It strengtheneth the Heart, provoketh Sweat, procures sleep, expels the maligaity of the pestilence, hasteneth Womens Labour, provoketh the Terms; is good for women lying-in, and stops Fluxes. The Dose is from one dram to three: To Children give less.

Methridatum, Or, Methridate.

It is good against poyson, and cold Humors in the Body, and Diseases thence coming; loss of Senses by cold, helps the Chollick, and expels Wind, provokes an Appetite: it helps Ulcers in the bladder (saith *Galen*) provokes Urine, expels the dead Child, and helps such Women as cannot conceive, by reason of the coldness and slipperiness of their Wombs. The dose is from half a dram to two.

Philonium Persicum Magistrale & Romanum.

The first stops any flux, Diarrhæa, Dysentery, or Womens Monethly Terms, when other means fail; which the second doth likewise, easeth pain, and procures rest in Feavers: *Romanum* easeth the vehemency of the pain of the Chollick, Stone, Strangury, and such like, and provokes sleep. The dose is from a scruple to four: Take it not without advice from an able Brain.

Electuarium de Ovo: An Electuary of Eggs.

It is a good Remedy in Pestilential Feavers, and a good preservative. The dose is from half a dram to a dram.

Theriaca

Theriaca Andromachi, Venice Treacle.

It reſiſteth poyſon, and preſerveth the heart from venome of ſuch as have been bitten by any venemous Creatures: It is good againſt inveterate Head-aches Vertigoes, &c. Deafneſs, dulneſs of ſight, loſs of voice, Aſthmas, old Coughs, ſpitting of Blood, difficulty of breathing, coldneſs of the Stomach and Wind, Chollick and Illiack Paſſion, hardneſs of the Spleen, Jaundies, Stone in the Reins and Bladder; provokes Urine, the Terms, Birth and after-birth: It is good againſt Ulcers in the bladder, Dropſies, Leproſies, Feavers of all ſorts, pains in the Joynts: it helps both Body and Mind, and is good againſt Melancholy thoughts and vain Fears. The doſe is from half a dram to a dram; ſweat upon it.

Theriaca Londinenſis, London Treacle.

It ſtrengtheneth the heart, is good againſt the peſtilence, and reſiſteth poyſon and infection; ſtrengthens cold Stomachs, and helps digeſtion. You may take two drams in the morning.

Diacrocuma.

It is excellent againſt cold diſtempers of the Liver, Stomach, Reins, Spleen, Bladder and Matrix, and the ſymptomes ariſing from thoſe Diſtempers, *viz.* The Dropſie and Cachexia. The doſe is from half a dram to 4 ſcruples.

Athanaſia Methridatis.

It prevails againſt poyſon, and biting of venemous Creatures, helps cold ſtomachs, and ſuch whoſe meat putrifies therein: ſtayes vomiting of Blood and old Coughs, and is good againſt all cold Diſeaſes of the Liver, Spleen, Bladder, Reins and Matrix. The doſe is from half a dram to a dram.

Electuarium e Scoria ferri.

It ſtrengtheneth, openeth, and gently purgeth the ſtomach and Spleen, eaſeth the body of Melancholy and Splenetick diſeaſes. The doſe is from three drams to half an ounce.

Confectio Humain.

It ſtrengtheneth the Heart and Brain, quickneth the ſenſes, and is a good preſervative againſt the Peſtilence. The doſe is from half a dram to a dram.

Diaireos Salomonis.

It helps all cold infirmities of the Lungs. Take it with a Liquorish-Stick.

Magnum

Magnum Antidotum Mathioli, &c. Mathiolus his great Antidote against Poyson and the Pestilence.

It is very good for that purpose: See this Bezoar Water for particular vertues. The dose is from a scruple to four.

Requies, Mitigates the heat in Feavers, and gives rest. Give not above half a scruple at first; it is scarcely safe inwardly to be given: apply it outwardly to the Temples and Wrists.

Electuarium Reginæ Coloniens.

It is good against the Stone and Wind-chollick. The dose is a dram.

Tripheva the Greater stops the immoderate Flux of the Terms and Hemorrhoids, frees the Body of crude humors, strengtheneth the Bladder, rectifies Distempers of the Spleen, expels Melancholy, and makes a good colour. The dose is from a dram to half an ounce.

Purging Electuaries.

Benedicta Laxativa.

It powerfully purgeth Flegmatick Humors from the Joynts, it purgeth the Reins and Bladder. The dose is from one dram to a dram and an half.

Cayo-Costinum.

It is a good Purge for wounded persons, whose Wounds are inflamed: it also purgeth hot Rhumes; correct it, or let it alone, Three drams or four may be given in a Clyster.

Cassia extracta pro Clysteribus; Cassia extracted for Clysters.

The Dose is an ounce; two or three given in Clysters, it purgeth the Reins, and cools them; it easeth the pains caused by the Stone, and is good to prevent the growing thereof.

Electuarium amarum majus & minus; the Greater and Lesser bitter Electuary.

They both purge Choller: the first, Flegm; and the second, Melancholy. The dose of the first is from half an ounce to an ounce: Of the other, from one ounce to two.

Diacassia with *Manna.*

This is a gallant Purge for hot Bodies; for it gently looseneth and cooleth

cooleth much, and therefore is good in Feavers, and in all diseases wherein Choller abound. The dose is an ounce, or more, as you find occasion.

Cassia extracta sine & cum foliis Senæ: Cassia extracted without and with the leaves of Sena.

They are both gentle purges; they cleanse and cool the Reins; they cleanse the Bowels of choller and melancholy, and are good in Feavers. The dose of the first is an ounce and an half: Of the other one ounce.

Diacarthamum.

It purgeth Flegm and yellow choller effectually. The dose is from one dram to six.

Diaphœnicon.

It purgeth both flegm and choller; it is good in Feavers, and easeth the Cholick and pains of the Stone, and freeth the Bowels of raw humors. The dose is from two drams to five.

Diaprunum Lenitive.

It cools and looseneth the body gently; it is good in all kind of Feavers & hot Agues, and is much commended in the Feaver hectick. The dose is an ounce to bedward.

Diaprunum Solutive.

Is the best purger of choller, and amendeth the hot distemper of the Liver. The dose is from three drams to six.

Catholicon.

It purgeth every humor abounding, especially choller: it profiteth in Feavers: it mollifieth and altereth the Humors, and strengtheneth the body: it helps infirmities of the Liver and Spleen, Gouts of all sorts, Head-aches, Tertian, Quartane and Quotidian Agues. The dose is from half an ounce to an ounce: take it going to bed, or in Clysters.

Electuarium de Citro Solutivum, the Solutive Electuary of Citrons.

It purgeth Choller, Flegm and Melancholy, and carrieth away the rotten humors in the declination of a Feaver. The dose is half an ounce.

Electuarium Elescoph.

It purgeth choller, flegm and wind, from all parts of the body: helps pains of the joynts and sides, the chollick; in cleanseth the Reins and Bladder.

Confectio

Confectio Hamech.

It purgeth Melancholy and yellow Choller: it is good againſt Melancholy and Madneſs, Scabs, Itch, *&c.* The doſe is from three drams to an ounce.

Electuarium Lenitivum; the Lenitive Electuary.

It is a fine purge fit for Feaveriſh perſons, and ſuch as have Pleuriſies: it gently openeth and mollifieth the Bowels, and purgeth (without trouble or hurt) Melancholy, Flegm and choller. The doſe is from one ounce to two.

Electuarium paſſulatum.

It cleanſeth the Reins and bladder, and is a good purge for thoſe that are troubled with Gravel, or the Stone; it purgeth Choller and Melancholy. The doſe is the ſame with the former.

Electuarium è ſucco Roſarum, an Electuary of the Juyce of Roſes.

It purgeth Choller; and the doſe is from two drams to an ounce and an half.

Hiera picra Simplex.

It is the moſt excellent Medicine to purge vitious Humors which ſtick to the Tunicles of the Stomach. The doſe is from half an ounce to an ounce: in Clyſters, from ſix drams to an ounce and an half.

Hiera cum Agarico, Hiera with Agarick.

The Vertues are the ſame with the former, purgeth Flegm more effectually. The doſe is the ſame: For the further knowledg of the Vertues, ſee the Pill of Hiera with Agarick.

Hiera Logadii.

It purgeth effectually thoſe Humors which cauſe the Palſie, Apoplexy, and ſuch like Diſeaſes. The doſe is the ſame: give it only to ſtrong Bodies.

Hiera Diacolocynthidos.

It eaſeth inveterate Head-aches, Falling-ſickneſſes, and ſuch like Evils: for it purgeth groſs Humors from the fartheſt parts of the Body: The doſe is from three drams to ſix.

Triphera Solutive.

It purgeth Choller and Flegm: Some account it profitable in the declination of Feavers, and in hot diſtempers of the Stomach and Liver. The doſe is from two drams to half an ounce.

CHAP.

CHAP. X.

Of Oyls.

AS there are of other Medicines, ſo there are of Oyls both ſimple and compound: Simple Oyls are either by expreſſion, or infuſion and concoction: Oyls by expreſſion, are drawn out of Fruits or Seeds: as out of ſweet and bitter Almonds, the ſeed of Rape and Flax: by firſt beating them in a ſtone-morter, and preſſing out the Oyl in a Preſs.

Simple Oyls by infuſion and decoction, are thus made: Take the Herbs or Flowers, of which you would make your Oyls; beat them to 2 or three handfuls, pour on a point of Oyl, put them in a Earthen pot, and cover it with a paper tyed about the top, and ſet it in the Sun a fortnight: then heat it by the fire, and preſs out the herbs: then put in as many herbs as you did at firſt; do as before, as often as you ſee good, to make your Oyl ſtrong enough: then boil it gently, till the virtue come forth of the herbs, and then ſtrain it, and reſerve it for your uſe. *In* this manner is made the Oyls of Roſes, Dill, Camomil, Melilot, Lillies, Violets, *&c.* All which for the moſt part are uſed externally: ſome of them in Clyſters, they retain the vertues of the ſimples whereof they are made; which *I* hope is enough for the *Ingenious* Searcher.

Compound Oyls are made in the ſame manner; Take this following for an Example.

Oleum benedictum, Or, Bleſſed Oyl.

Take the roots of Carduus and Valerian, of each one ounce; the Flowers of St. *John*'s-wort two ounces, Wheat one ounce and an half; old Oyl four ounces; Cypreſs Turpentine eight ounces; Frankincenſe in powder two ounces: Bruiſe the roots & flowers, & infuſe them in White-wine ſufficient to cover them: After two days infuſion, put in the Oyl, with the Wheat bruiſed, boil them together till the Wine be conſumed: then preſs it out, and add the Frankincenſe and Turpentine: then boil them a little, and keep it for your uſe. *It* is good to cleanſe all manner of Wounds, eſpecially thoſe of the Nerves and Wounds in the head.

Oleum

Oleum de Capparibus, Oyl of Capars.

It openeth obſtructions of the Liver and Spleen, and mollifies the hardneſs of the Spleen, and is good againſt the Rickets: Anoint the part by the fire.

Oleum Caſtorei compoſitum, The Oyl of Caſtor compound.

It hath a cutting and attenuating Faculty of groſs humors in the Joynts, and in cold Diſeaſes.

Oleum Catellorum, Oyl of Whelps.

It is good to anoint the Limbs and Muſcles, that are weakned by Wounds and Bruiſes.

Oleum Coſtinum, Oyl of Coſtus.

It prevaileth againſt affects of the Nerves; for it ſtrengtheneth, warmeth, attenuates, and opens obſtructions of thoſe parts.

Oleum Crocinum, Oyl of Saffron.

It hath a faculty of ſtrengthening the Nerves and the Womb, diſſipates ſwelling and hardneſs, and eaſeth pains in thoſe parts.

Oleum de Euphorbio, Oyl of Euphorbium.

It hath the ſame virtue as the oyl of Caſtor: both which dropped into the Ear, helps the Noiſe there, and cures Deafneſs.

Oleum Exceſtrenſe, Oyl of *Exeter*.

It is good to anoint the Limbs of ſuch as are Lame, by reaſon of ſome old bruiſe, cold or ſprain.

Oleum Hirundinum, Oyl of Swallows.

The Vertues are the ſame with the former.

Oleum Hyperici compoſitum, Oyl of St. *Johns*-wort compound.

It hath the Vertues of the two former, and is very good in green Wounds.

Oleum Irinum, Oyl of Orris.

It doth reſolve, maturate, and eaſe pain in all kind of Tumors.

Oleum Majoranæ, Oyl of Marjarome.

It helps all cold Diſeaſes of the Brain and Nerves: anoint the Backbone with it for the dead Palſie: anoint the Forehead for the Head-ach. Drop it into the Eeas for the noiſe and pain therein.

Oleum

Oleum Mandragoræ, Oyl of Mandrakes.

It is good to anoint the Temples of thoſe that want ſleep in a Frenzy. It is extream cold: be careful in the uſe of it.

Oleum Moſchelæum, Oyl of Musk.

It helps Deafneſs, and all cold diſeaſes of the Head, Stomach, Sides, Nerves and Reins, and is good in the Strangury and Cholick.

Oleum Nardinum, Oyl of Nard.

It hath a warming, digeſting and binding quality, and is uſed with good ſucceſs in all cold Diſeaſes of the Head, Liver and Womb: and being ſnuffed up in the Noſe, prevails againſt the Coryza, which is a Diſtillation of Humors from the Head to the Noſe.

Oleum Nicodemi.

It is good to cleanſe and heal Sores, Ulcers, Scabs, Itch, ſmall Pox, &c.

Oleum Vulpinum, Oyl of Foxes.

In pains of the Joynts, Podagra and Chiragra: This Oyl is of great uſe, ſaith *Sylvius.*

Oleum de Piperibus, Oyl of Pepper.

It heats, attenuates, cleanſeth and openeth Obſtructions: therefore Phyſitians do uſe this Oyl in the Palſie, Convulſion, and in all cold Diſeaſes of the Womb, Neck, Reins and Bladder: it eaſeth the Gout alſo.

Oleum Populeon.

It is a fine cool Oyl: ſee the Oyntment. I ſhould here ſet down Chymical Oyls, but that I fear my Book is already ſwelled into too large a Volume. They alſo retain the vertue of the Simples, whereof they are made; but are far more prevalent and full of Spirit, and are not ſafely uſed alone.

CHAP.

CHAP. XI.

Of Oyntments.

I Have in the former Books ſhewed you the manner of making of Oyntments and Plaiſters; and in regard that the way of making them is divers, according to the diverſity of Ingredients, I ſhall here only declare the Virtues and Operations of the Oyntments and Plaiſters now in uſe and ſold by the Apothecary.

Ungeuntum Album; The white Oyntment hath a refrigerating and drying faculty: Chyrurgeons uſe it to allay the heat and itching in ulcers.

Unguentum Egyptiacum, This is uſed in filthy ulcers to cleanſe them, and to eat off dead fleſh.

Unguentum Anodynum, An Oyntment to eaſe pain: it eaſeth pain and inflammation in Wounds and Tumors.

Unguentum ex Apio, An Oyntment of Smallage: it is alſo a cleanſing unguent.

Linimentum Gummi Elemy, it gently cleanſeth and filleth with fleſh ulcers, not only in the head, but in any other part.

Unguentum Aureum is accounted the beſt in curing Wounds, cleanſing the filth, and drying the moiſture.

Baſilicon the Greater and leſs; They heat, moiſten and digeſt, bring wounds to ſuppuration, and cleanſe them.

Unguentum ex Bdellio, Oyntment of Bdellium: it helps the Epilepſie, Palſie, Cramp, and all cold Diſeaſes of the Nerves.

Unguentum de Calce, Oyntment of Chalk is good againſt Burning and ſcalding.

Unguentum de Althæa ſimplex & compoſitum; The Oyntment of Marſh-mallows, Simple and Compound. It hath a notable digeſting quality, and reſolving the humors in any ſwelling and ſoftning thereof.

Unguentum Diapompholigos, it cools, binds, dries and ſtays Fluxes, either of blood, or humors in wounds, and fills hollow ulcers with fleſh.

Unguentum Elunatum ſine & cum Mercurio, The Oyntments of Elicampane without or with Quick-ſilver, was invented to kill the Itch.

Unguentum Laurinum commune; Common Oyntment of Bays: it heats and expels wind, good in Aches and Sprains; and kills the itch.

Unguentum de Minio, The Oyntment of Red-lead: it is a notable dryer, and very cool; it is used in ulcers, when all other Medicines fail.

Unguentum e Nicotiana, The Oyntment of Tobacco: it is good to kill the Itch, Lice and Worms; it cleanseth ulcers and Fistulaes, and is good against the biting of any venemous Creature.

Unguentum Nutritum, It is good against the Itch, Tetters and Ring-Worms; it allayeth the itching of Wounds; for it is of a cooling and drying nature.

Unguentum Opthalmicum, It is good in an Opthalmia, or inflammation of the Eye: anoint the Eye-lids.

Unguentum ex Oxylapatho, An Oyntment of sharp-pointed Docks: it is good against Scabs and Itch.

Unguentum e Plumbo, Or Oyntment of Lead. It drieth much.

Unguentum Pomatum, commonly called Pomatum: it is good to anoint the Nose and Lips being chopped by the Wind.

Unguentum Resinum, Is as good a Sear-Cloth for a Sprain as most are.

Unguentum Rosatum, Oyntment of Roses: Is good to allay the heat of Phlegmon and Erysipelous Tumours: it is good against gauling of the skin, and tempers the heat of the Head, Stomach and Liver.

Unguentum Desiccativum Rubrum: it is a very drying Oyntment, restrains a Flux in a Wound, and skins the sore.

Unguentum e Solano, An unguent of Nightshade: it allays the heat and itching of Wounds.

Unguentum Tutiæ, An Oyntment of Tutty, anoint the Eye-lids with it, to dry hot and salt humors flowing thither.

Valentia Scabiosæ, Tapsivalentia and Tapsimel: See the simples, and you may easily know the vertues of them.

Unguentum Agrippæ, It is good to anoint the Bellies of such as have the Dropsies.

Unguentum Apostolorum, It cleanseth Wounds, ulcers and Fistulas, consumes dead flesh, and softneth the hard Lips of ulcers, and is a good incarnative.

Unguentum Aragon, it is good in all cold Diseases, and such as have their Original from glassy Flegm, and is good in the Cholick.

Unguentum de Artanita, The Oyntment of Sow-bread: it hath been used with good success in the Ascites, when all other means have failed; for it powerfully freeth the Abdomen of serous and watry humors.

Unguentum Catapsoras, it is used to kill the Itch.

Unguentum Citrinum, it is good to take away the Redneſs, Pimples and Freckles of the Face; it makes the Skin ſmooth.

Unguentum Comitiſſæ, This Oyntment ſtrengtheneth and bindeth, and is good againſt all fluxes of the Womb and Belly.

Unguentum Martiatum, it eaſeth pain, and ſtrengtheneth the Head, Nerves and Muſcles.

Unguentum Maſtichinum, It hath the vertues of the former; the Stomach being anointed with it, it reſtores Appetite, and helps Digeſtion.

Unguentum Neapolitanum, it is uſed in the *French Pox*.

Unguentum Nervinum, it is good in old Bruiſes, and for Diſeaſes of the Nerves coming from a cold Cauſe; as dead palſie, *&c.*

Unguentum Pectorale, it ſtrengtheneth and eaſeth pains of the Stomach: it is good in a pleuriſie, and conſumption of the Lungs.

Unguentum Populeum, An unguent of Poplar: it is good in Burnings, Scaldings, and inflammations in any part.

Unguentum Reſumptivum, it is good to correct the hot and dry diſtemper of any part; it eaſeth pains which come by inflammations, and Convulſions which come in burning feavers.

Unguentum Splanchticum, it eaſeth pains of the ſpleen.

Unguentum è ſuccis, An Oyntment of Juyces: it opens Obſtructions of the Stomach and ſpleen; Anoint the Breaſt and ſides for the Rickets.

Unguentum Sumach, it is a binding Oyntment, and drying; anoint the ſtomach for Vomiting, the Belly for a looſneſs, and the Fundament for the falling out thereof.

Unguentum Refrigerans, it cures inflammation in Wounds and Tumors.

Unguentum contra Vermes; Anoint the Belly with it to kill Worms.

CHAP. XII.

Of Plaiſters.

Emplaſtrum ex Ammoniaco, A plaiſter of Ammoniacum: It mollifieth hard ſwellings of the ſpleen, and eaſeth the pains thereof.

Emplaſtrum e Baccis Lauri, A plaiſter of Bay-berries: is good againſt the Cholick, and eaſeth pain coming of Cold and Wind in any part of the Body.

Emplaſtrum Barbarum Magnum; it allayeth the inflammation of Wounds, and is good in the beginning of Gouts, and cureth the biting of any Creature.

Emplaſtrum de Betonica, A Plaiſter of Betony, unites a broken Skull, or other Bones, draws out pieces of the Skull, and cleanſeth wounds to the bottom.

Emplaſtrum Cæſaris, it is cooling, ſtrengthning and binding; it repels hot Rheums and Vapours aſcending to the Head or flowing to any other part.

Emplaſtrum Catagmaticum, There are two of this name, both are binding and drying.

Emplaſtrum Cephalicum, A Head-plaiſter: this ſtrengtheneth the head, and repels vapours, dries up the moiſture, and hot ſcalding Vapours which fall into the Eyes.

Emplaſtrum de Cerußa, a Plaiſter of Ceruſs.

It is profitable in burns and hot ulcers: it cools and drys up the moiſter.

Emplaſtrum ex Cicuta cum Ammoniaco, a Plaſter of Hemlock with Ammoniacum.

It mitigates pains, and allayes inflamamtions in the remote parts.

Emplaſtrum e Cinnabari, Eats off dead fleſh.

Emplaſtrum e cruſta panis, A plaiſter of a Cruſt of bread ſtrengtheneth the head and ſtomach.

Emplaſtrum e Cymino, A plaiſter of Cummin.

It is good againſt the Wind-Cholick, ſwellings and Aches.

Diaphalma is of a cleanſing faculty, and drying up of the excrementitious moiſture which is in Wounds and Ulcers, and is moſt in uſe in old ulcers.

Diachylum ſimplex, ireatum, magnum & cum Gummis: All of theſe diſſolve hard ſwellings, and eaſe pain and inflammation, and dry up Womens milk.

Diachylon compoſitum: Or, *Emplaſtrum e Mucilaginibus*, Plaiſter of Muſilages.

It ſuppurates and breaks Tumors, and heals them likewiſe.

Emplaſtrum Diachæ icon, Both hot and cold ſtrengtheneth the Stomach and Liver, ſtays vomiting and fluxes of the Belly: make uſe of either, according to the nature of the diſtemper.

Emplaſtrum

Emplaſtrum Divinum, A Divine Plaiſter.
It is cleanſing in Wounds and ulcers, and is a good incarnative.

Emplaſtrum Epiſpaſticum.
It is good to draw Bliſters.

Flos unguentorum. The Flower of Oyntments.
It cleanſeth, draweth out Bones, Thornes, and whatſoever is in the fleſh, and healeth ſpeedily.

Emplaſtrum Gummi Elemi, A plaiſter of Gum Elemi.
It is of ſpecial uſe in Wounds and ulcers in the head, or other parts, alſo in fractures of the skull.

Emplaſtrum Lapidis Calaminaris, it is of an exceeding drying nature.

Emplaſtrum ad Herniam, it is good againſt a Rupture; and being applied to the Reins and Womb, ſtays abortion.

Emplaſtrum Hyſtericum applied to the Navel, is good againſt Fits of the Mother.

Emplaſtrum e Maſtiche, A plaiſter of Maſtich ſtrengtheneth the Stomach.

Emplaſtrum e Meli'oto ſimplex, The Simple Melilot Plaiſter draws and heals green Wounds, ripens, breaks and heals ſwellings.

Emplaſtrum e Meliloto compoſitum, The compound Melilot Plaiſter aſſwageth pain and mollifieth any Tumor; is good againſt hardneſs of the Stomach, Liver or Spleen, and is good againſt the Rickets.

Emplaſtrum de Minio Simplex & compoſitum, A plaiſter of Red-Lead, Simple or Compound.
It is cooling, and drying, and healing.

Emplaſtrum Metroproptoticon.
It ſtrengthneth the Stomach, and ſtops a Looſneſs and Vomiting.

Emplaſtrum Nervinum, Strengthneth the head and Nerves.

Emplaſtrum Oxycroceum, It is much uſed in Fractures and Diſlocations.

Emplaſtrum e Ranis, A plaiſter of Frogs.
It was invented for Sores attending the *French Pox.*

Emplaſtrum Sicyonium: See the Oyntment of Sowbread.

Spadar ap ſeu tela Galteri, it is drying, fit for ulcers.

Emplaſtrum Stephaniaion, and Stictcum, they both draw forth corruption, ſtrengthen the Nerves, and other parts, and eaſe pain.

Emplaſtrum Stomachicum Magiſtrale, A Magiſterial Stomach-Plaiſter, it ſtrengtheneth the Stomach, helps digeſtion, and ſtays vomiting.

Emplaſtrum Dei Gratia, it is good in ulcers and wounds; it cleanſeth, cooleth, healeth and incarnateth.

℞ *Ceratum de Galbano*, A Cere-cloth of Galbanum, helps the Fits of the Mother, and cleanſeth a Woman after her lying in.

Ceratum Oeſypatum, Mollifieth hard ſwellings of the Liver, ſpleen, Womb, or any other part.

℞ *Ceratum Salinum*, A Cerate of Sanders; it helps hot infirmities of the Liver, ſtomach, and other parts.

FINIS.

A TABLE EXPLAINING

The Terms of Art, and other Words which are not in the reach of Vulgar Capacities.

A

Abdomen, the Belly or Paunch.
Abſurdity, unreaſonableneſs.
Abſtergent, Cleanſing.
Actual heat, is a heat that can be felt with the hand, as in the fire, or things heated by it, or in the Body of one in a Feaver.
Actual cold, underſtand it as the former.
Accidentally, by hap or chance.
Acrimony, ſharpneſs.
Accident, is, a ſymptome, or ſomething happening in a Diſeaſe.
Acceſs, addition, joyning to.
Acute, ſharp, violent; a Diſeaſe that ſoon ends.
Adventitious, Not natural, ſpringing from external Cauſes.
Adſtriction, binding together, ſhutting up.
Aduſt, burned.
Adjacent, Lying near.
Adverſe, Contrary.
Adjunct cauſes of Diſeaſes, Are ſuch qualities as are joyned with it.
Adjuvant cauſes, are ſuch as aſſiſt the principal cauſe.
Adnata, The outward panicle of the Eye.
Affected, Diſeaſed, troubled, diſordered.
Afflux, flowing to.
Agglutinative, Joyning, gluing, ſoldering together.
Aliment, All kind of Nouriſhment.
Alexipharmical Medicines, are ſuch as reſiſt the Plague, and all venemous Diſeaſes.
Albugo, the White of the Eye.
Alteratives, Are ſuch Medicines as alter the quality of the Body and the humors by heating or cooling, moiſtning or drying.

Animal Faculties, Are Imagination, Judgement, Memory; the Senſes, Hearing, Seeing, Smelling, Taſting, Feeling, Going, Standing, and all voluntary Motion.

Antecedent Cauſe, Is the cauſe afore-going of any Diſeaſe. The antecedent cauſe of an Eryſipelas or Cholerick Tumor is Choler abounding in the Body: the Conjunct cauſe is Choler gathered in the part.

Anodines, Medicines which aſſwage pain.

Aneuriſm, is when the internal coat of an Artery is broken, and the external coat ſwelled.

Antepileptical Medicines, Are ſuch as are good againſt the Falling-Sickneſs.

Anus, The Fundament.

Analogically, Proportionably, conveniently, equally.

Apophlegmatiſms, Medicines which draw Flegm from the Head.

Apozeme, A Medicine made of the decoction of divers Herbs, altering and purging; ſometimes Syrups mixed therewith, to prepare, and gently to purge the Humors.

Apoplectick Medicines, Are ſuch as are to be adminiſtred in the Apoplexy.

Apply, Lay on.

Aquæ Acidulæ, The Spaw-waters; they are of the nature of *Tunbridge*, *Epſome*, and *Barnet*.

Aranea Tunica, The ſixth Tunicle of the Eye, which is like a Cob-web.

Articulate Voice, is Humane Voice or Speech.

Aromatized, Spiced, perfumed, ſcented.

Artery, is a Sinew or Vein, wherein paſſeth the ſpirit of Life with the Blood, or Vital blood.

Arteria Venoſa, is an Artery, or rather a Vein; which from the right and left Region of the Lungs carries Blood and Air to the left Ventricle of the Heart.

Arterioſe, is a Vein from the right Ventricle of the Heart, which adminiſters blood to the right and left part of the Lungs.

Aſpera Arteria, The rough Artery or Wind-pipe.

Aſcent, Going up.

Aſtringents, Medicines that bind together, and ſtraiten the pores and paſſages of the Body.

Aſtriction, Straitening, or binding together.

Aſthmatical, Trouble for want of Breath.

Attracting, Drawing together.

Atteſt, Witneſs, declare.

Atrophi, When the Body pines away for want of nouriſhment.

Attenuating,

Attenuating, making thin.
Augment, is when a Disease encreaseth, and is not at the height.
Autumn, harvest, or fall of the leaf.
Axiome, an undoubted truth.

B.

Balneum Mariæ, is when a still standeth in warm water.
Bolus, signifieth a morsel: it is a medicine to be taken upon the point of a Knife.
Bellilucanæ Thermæ, hot baths in *France*.
Bituminous Bathes, come from a fat Clay of the nature of Brimstone.
Bronchia, The Branches of the Wezand and Windpipe, which spread themselves through the Lungs.

C.

Caruncle, is a piece of flesh growing upon any part.
Catarrh, is a defluxion or distillation of humors upon the Lungs, or other parts from the Brain.
Cataphora, dead sleep.
Catalepsis, Congelation or stiffness of the body.
Cauſticks, are Medicines which burn the skin and flesh to make issues.
Cautery actual, is burning with a red-hot Iron.
Cataplasm, a Pultis.
Cavity, Hollowness.
Carus, foulness, corruption, rottenness.
Calcine, to burn to ashes in a Crucible.
Cacochymical, abounding with evil humors.
Cardialgia, pain at Heart, Heart-griefs.
Cardiogmos, Heart-burning.
Carminative, are such medicines as break Wind.
Catheter, a hollow instrument to open the passage of the Urine, to draw Urine from the Bladder, or remove the Stone.
Cartilages, are Gristles.
Cataract, is a Disease of the Eye. See Chap. 11. Book 2.
Callous, the skin or flesh grown hard, or unsensible.
Cerates, are medicines made of Wax, softer than a Plaister, and stiffer than an Oyntment.
Cephalick, Capital, of or belonging to the head.
Calybated, water, milk or wine; as when the red-hot Steel is quenched

ched therein: also when a tincture of Steel is drawn by Wine, &c.

Chylus, a certain white substance wrought by the digestive faculty of the stomach, and is carried to the Liver.

Chyrurgeon, Surgeon.

Cicatrize, to bring to a scar, to skin a Wound or Ulcer.

Circumvolation, turned round.

Condense, to make thick.

Congelation, Freezing, or joyned with cold.

Chorion, the skin that covers the Child in the Womb.

Constipation, Stopping up.

Collyries, Eye-salves.

Contraction, Drawing together.

Cornea, a coat of the Eye like a horn.

Compression, thrusting together.

Contusion, bruising, bruise.

Cold seeds, the greater are the Seeds of Citrul, Cucumber, Gourd, Melone. The other are the seeds of Endive, Succory, Lettuce, Purslane.

Confirmed, is when a Disease is perfect.

Couched, is when any film is passed down, or taken out of the Eye with a Needle.

Continuity, Joyning together.

Compact, firmly united,

Concact, is when the blood is separate and made pure; or when Flegm or other humors, are separated from the blood, or other mixtures.

Connatural infirmity, is that which is born with a man: as to be born without an hand, is a connatural disease.

Convex, bunching out.

Conjunct cause. See *Antecedent cause*.

Constriction, a drawing together.

Congestion, a gathering together.

Conjoyned matter, see *Conjunct cause*.

Corroding, eating, gnawing, biting.

Consolidation, closing of a wound.

Commissura, the mold of the head, where the skull is united.

Consistence, a body or substance.

Complication of diseases, is a mixture of divers Diseases in the body.

Coalition, healing up of a wound.

Coincident, that happeneth together.

Co-indicants, are divers considerations in a sick body, which call for one and the same Remedy.

Contra-indicants, are such as diswade a Remedy.

Coction of humours, See *Concoct*.

Com-

Commemorative, Remembring what is paſt.
Contumacy, Rebellious, ſtubborn.
Corroborate, To ſtrengthen.
Coſtiveneſs, is when the Body is hard bound, and ſeldome goeth to ſtool.
Columella, is a looſe ſpungy piece of fleſh; it ſticks to the roof of the mouth juſt at the Iwallow.
Coagulate, is to thicken any thing by heat.
Coronal Suture, is the Seam where the two ſides of the Skull cloſe, running through the Crown.
Crude Humours, are ſuch as are not well digeſted in the ſtomach.
Critical Evacuation, is, when by bleeding at the Noſe, Mouth, by Vomit, *&c.* the humours offending are ſent forth by the ſtrength of Nature.
Cryſtalline Humour, is that part of Eye which is like Cryſtal.
Chronical Diſeaſes, are ſuch as laſt long.
Critical day, in Feavers, is that day as the Moon comes to the ſquare ꝛ of her place of the decumbiture, or firſt falling ſick, which for the moſt part happeneth on the 7th day.
Cupping-Glaſſes, are Glaſſes faſtened with lighted Tow or Flax, to draw forth blood, by ſcarrifying of the place.
Cumulation. See *Congeſtion*.

D.

Decoction, the Liquor wherein herbs and other ingredients are boyled.
Defluxion, a flowing of humours from the Brain to other parts: alſo humours gathering into any part cauſing a Tumor.
Delirium, Dotage, talking idly, raving in ſickneſs,
Declination of a Diſeaſe, is, when the Symptomes decay, and the Patient begins to recover.
Derived, turned away from.
Demonſtrated, proved by Argument.
Depravations, marrings, hurting, ſpoiling.
Depreſſed, made flat, hallow, or dented.
Debility, Weakneſs.
Derivation, is to draw the humour that offends from the grieved part, to another near it.
Diureticks, are medicines that provoke Urine.
Diſtillation of Humours. See *Defluxion*.

Diagnoſis,

Diagnosis, the knowledg of a Disease by the signs thereof.
Diminished, Lessened.
Discuss, is to dispel invisibly, when a swelling is wasted without breaking.
Diverting medicines, are such as hinder the defluction of humours to any part.
Dislocation, is putting out of its place.
Diffuse, Spread abroad.
Dissipate, Scatter abroad.
Dilated, made wider.
Distorted, crooked, writhed, wrested.
Digestive medicines, are such as prepare humours for Evacuation.
Dissolved, melted, or consumed.
Distention, Stretching.
Diaphragma, the Midriff.
Diagrydiates, such medicines that have Scammony in them.
Dissolution of natural heat, is a decay of Nature.
Diaphoreticks, are such medicines as provoke Sweat.
Dura mater, is the hard membrane which covers the Brain, and lyeth next to the Skull.
Dung-gate, is the Fundament, or Arse-hole.
Dispnaa, is shortness of Breath.

E.

Ebullition, Boyling of the blood or humours.
Egression, coming forth.
Empyema, a corrupt matter between the Breast and the Lungs, following a Pleurisie.
Emunctuaries, the wayes and passages Nature finds to drive ill humours into.
Emollients, such things as soften.
Embrochated, bathed, moistned, bedewed,
Emplastick diet, such meats as are of a clammy substance: as Jellies, Tripes, Feet of Beasts, and such like.
Emulgent Veins, which bring the wheyish Excrements to the Kidneys.
Emulsions, are milks made of Almonds, or the cold seeds.
Epispastick, a Payster to draw a blister.
Epithemes, are certain Powders put in bags, wet in wine, and applyed to the Region of the Heart, Liver, Spleen, *&c.*

Epidemical,

Epidemical, are diſeaſes which ariſe over a whole Nation; as the Plague, ſmall Pox, *&c.*

Errhines, are Liquors to be ſnuffed up to purge the Brain.

Eruption, breaking forth.

Eroded, Eaten, or eaten aſunder.

Eradicate, to pluck up by the roots.

Eſcharoticks. See *Potential cauteries.*

Eſchar, is the Coar that falls from the place where a Cauſtick hath been applyed.

Evacuation, is purging, emptying or voiding.

Evaporation, a ſteeming forth by Vapours, as boiling water doth.

Eventilated, the body purgeth by exerciſe, which opens the pores of the body, and purgeth the body: as Corn is purged by Fanning.

Excrement, is the Dregs of Digeſtion, voided by Dung, Urine and Sweat.

Expulſion, driving forth.

Extinguiſhed, put out, or quenched.

Extenſion, Stretching out.

Extenuating, making thin.

Excrementitious, of or belonging to Excrements.

Experſed, Squezeed out.

Extraction, Pulling out.

Exquiſite, Perfect.

Exaſperated, vexed, pained, moleſted.

Excreſcencie, is any ſupernatural growing of fleſh.

Exuberation is the ſame with an Ulcer.

Expectorating, ſpitting any thing from the Breaſt, Stomach, or Lungs.

F.

Fabrick, Compoſition, making up, or frame.

Fæces, are the Dregs, or ſuch things which ſettle in the bottome.

Fermentation, is the working of the humors.

Fiſtula, a hollow, deep, and narrow ulcer.

Filtration, ſtraining any liquid thing thorough a brown Paper, or by a piece of Cloth hanging out of one veſſel into another.

Fluid, that runs like Water.

Flatuous, is windy.

Fluxive, the ſame with Fluid.

Fomentation,

Fomentation, is when Linnen Clothes dipped in some warm Decoction or Liquor, are applyed to the diseased part, and often renewed.

Five opening Roots, are the Roots of Smallage, Sparagus, Fennel, Parsley, and Knee-Holly.

Fortified, Strengthened.

Fracture, is a breaking of the Skull, Arm, Leg, &c.

Frictions, Rubbings.

Frontal vein, is the vein of the Fore-head.

Fumigations, Perfumes; or things burnt to sweeten a Chamber.

Fuliginous, Smoaky, or sooty.

G.

Gargarisms, Medicines to wash the mouth and throat.

Gangrene, is a corruption of the part, tending to mortification.

Generating, Breeding, begetting.

Glandules, Kernels, such as are about the throat, and are called the Almonds of the Ears.

Glutinous, Clammy, or glewy.

H.

Habit of the body, is the whole substance thereof.

Hemiplegia, the Palsie on one side.

Hereditary, from Father or Mother.

Hemorrhoids, are the veins in the Fundament.

Hemorrhagies, is bleeding from any part.

Hermetical Doctrine, is that which is delivered by Physitians, who have made up their Medicines by Chymistry, or Distillation.

Horrours, Shiverings.

Hyppocras Bag, a Bag that is made of Woollen-cloth, in form of a Funnel, to strain Medicines.

Hypochondria, the parts beneath the Ribs.

Hypogastium, that part of the Belly which reacheth from the Navel, to the Hair of the Privy-parts.

Hydromel, Honey and Water.

Hysterical sickness, is Womb-sickness, or Fits of the mother.

Inanition,

I.

Initiation, Emptineſs. *Inflammation*, Great heat.
Irritation, Provoking. *Infuſion*, Steeping.
Impulſive Cauſe, is the moving cauſe.
Intervene, Come between.
Inverſion, turning the in-ſide out.
Intermiſſion, by fits, ceaſing, leaving off.
Intarnate, to breed fleſh.
Inciſion, to cut, or lay open.
Impact, thruſt, ſetled, wedged in.
Indication, is a hint to the Phyſitian, what he ought to do; as extream fulneſs of blood, gives indication of blood-letting.
Inherent, ſeated, ſticking, and abiding within.
Inordinate, diſorderly, unnatural.
Intercepted, Stopped.
Incraſſate, to thicken.
Inveterate, old, of long continuance.
Infirm, Weak.
Inſipid, Taſtleſs.
Inteſtines, the Guts.
Intenſion, increaſe, and decreaſe.
Injection, is a medicine caſt into the Womb, Bladder, or Fundament.
Inſpiſſate Juyce, is the Juyce of an Herb boyled to the thickneſs of Honey.
Invaſions of the Ague, Gout, &c. are Fits of the ſame intenſe, ſtrong, vehement.
Irrigations, Watrings, Sprincklings, and moiſtnings.
Intermitting Pulſe, is that which beats ſometimes, and then holds ſtill again.
Incoctability, an unaptneſs to be concocted, or digeſted.

L.

Laxe, Looſe, ſlack.
Laxative, which makes the Belly looſe.
Lambative, is the ſame with *Lohoch*; a medicine to be licked.
Lenitive, Gentle.
Ligatures, are ſtrings, by which the Joynts of Bones and Griſtles are bound together: the ſame is uſed for an artificial binding of any part, to draw the blood and humors from the diſeaſed part, to the part that is bound.

Livid

Livid, black and blew.

Looſneſs of continuity, is the dividing of skin and fleſh which were formerly united, as in a Wound.

M.

Maſticatories, chewing medicines to bring away Rheum.

Malignity, a venemous and poyſonful quality.

Matrix, the Womb.

Mamillares, Nerves like Teats, which ſerve for Smelling.

Malax, to ſoften.

Macerate, to ſteep or infuſe.

Maturate, to ripen.

Menings, ſilms or coats that cover the Brain.

Meſeraick Veins, that charge Chyle from the Stomach to the Liver.

Membranes, Skins or coats of the Arteries and Veins.

Mercurial medicines, are ſuch as are made of Quick-ſilver.

Meſentery, is that which holds the guts together.

Morbifick, or *Morbifick matter*, is that which is the cauſe of the diſeaſe.

Mortification, is a deading, or loſing of ſenſe in any part.

Mollifie, is to ſoften.

Mundifie, is to cleanſe.

Muſilage, is made of Gum Tragacanth diſſolved in water; or by beating of any Seeds or Roots that have a ſlimy faculty.

Muſcle, is a part which ſerves for voluntary motion of the Body: it is harder and leſs ſenſible than a Sinew; and ſofter and more ſenſible than a Ligature.

N.

Narcotick medicines, are ſuch as cauſe ſleep by dulling and ſtupifying the Brain and Senſes.

Nauſeouſneſs, inclination to vomit.

Nerves, Sinews.

Nitre, Salt-peter: the true Nitre is rarely found.

Nidorous, ſmelling of Burnt-fat, Oyl, &c.

Nocturnal Pollutions, is when a man ſheds his Sperm in his ſleep.

Noxious, Hurtful.

Nutrition, Nouriſhment.

Obſtructions

O.

Obſtruction, ſtopping.
Oblique, crooked, athwart.
Obnoxious, ſubject, apt, liable.
Obſcure, dark, hid, ſecret, &c.
Occult, hidden, unknown.
Oedema, a flegmatick ſwelling, white, and without pain, or but little pained.
Omentum, the Caul that covereth the Guts.
Opiate, ſignifieth any medicine, which hath Opium in it; ſometimes any ſoft Electuary like Treacle.
Optick Nerves, are the Nerves which bring nouriſhment from the brain to the Eyes.
Ophthalmia, inflammation of the Eyes.
Organs, are peculiar parts fitted for ſome notable ſervice: as the eye, to ſee; the ear, to hear, &c.
Orifice, the Mouth or paſſage into any thing; the hole that is made in the vein, by letting of blood, or in a wound.
Original, foundation, or beginning.
Os Sacrum, the great hip-bone, on which the Ridg-bone reſteth.
Os Criboſum, is the bone full of holes about the Noſe, through which the Snot iſſueth.
Oval, is the ſhape of an Egg.
Oxycrate, is Vinegar and Water mingled.
Oxyrrhodine, Vinegar of Roſes, and medicines made therewith.

P.

Paralyſis, *Paraplegia*, the Palſie.
Paroxyſme, is the fit of an Ague, or any other diſeaſe.
Palliative Cure, is the mitigating the Symptome of a Diſeaſe.
Peripneumonia, inflammation of the Lungs.
Pericranium, the skin which covereth the Skull.
Pellicles, little thin skins.
Perſpicuous, clear to be ſeen, as in a Glaſs.
Peritonæum, the inner coat of the belly.
Peccant Humours, are the humours that offend or cauſe the Diſeaſe.
Perforated, bored through.
Periſtaltick motion of the Guts, is when the Guts contract themſelves, and caſt forth the Excrements.

Parincum, is the Ridge like ſpace between the privities and funda=ment.

Prepoſterous, unnatural, unfitting.

Perturbation, is trouble.

Perſpirable, to be breathed thorough, when the Pores of the Body are open.

Pernicious, deadly, deſtructive.

Penetrate, to enter.

Phrenſie, is raging and madneſs, joyned with a Feaver.

Phlebotomy, Bloodletting.

Phlegmon, a Swelling cauſed by blood.

Pharmacopœia, a Diſpenſatory, a deſcription of the making of all Medicines.

Pia Mater, the inner Caules & Films, which cover the brain.

Pituitous, Flegmatick.

Periodical, by courſe or fits.

Peſſaries, a kind of Suppoſitories made of Wool, to be put into the Matrix.

Plethorick, too full of blood.

Plenitudo, Fulneſs.

Pleura, the 3 membrane which clotheth the Ribs on the inner ſide.

Pores, little holes in the skin, through which vapours and ſweat iſſue forth.

Potential heat or coldneſs, is contrary to actual; which is ſo in operation, not to ſenſe.

Ponderous, Weighty.

Potent, Powerful.

Pomander, a thing formed like an Apple to ſmell to.

Prognoſtick ſignes, are fore-telling what will become of the Diſeaſe and the Patient.

Privation, loſs.

Preternaturally, otherwiſe than the courſe of nature requireth.

Preceed, go before.

Preparing of the Humours, is ſeperating them from the good blood, making them thin, if they be too thick; thickning them if they be too thin, to the intent they may be better evacuated.

Probable, likely.

Profound, Deep.

Producing, cauſing or breeding.

Procatartick cauſes, the primary and firſt working cauſes.

Precipitated, thrown down, caſt down.

Protraction, is lengthening out.

A Pugil, is as much of Herbs as can be taken up between the thumb and fore-finger.
Pulsation, is beating of the Arteries.
Pupilla, is the middlemost round circle of the Eye, which we call the Sight.
Putrid, Rotten, filthy, stinking.
Pustula, a pustle, push, or Whelk.
Pubes, the hairy part about the privities of men and women.
Pus, matter, corruption, filthyness which runs from a Boil, Impostume, or such like: Quitter is the same.

R.

Radical Moisture, is the fundamental Juyce of the body, which preserves natural heat.
Raucedo, Hoarsness.
Rarifying, making thin.
Repletion, overmuch fulness of blood and humour.
Resolution, Weakning, or dissolving the strength of any part.
Revulsion, drawing back blood or humours from the part affected.
Repelling, driving back the humours to the affected part.
Relaxing, Slacking.
Remitted, abated, lessened.
Restriction, limitation, exception.
Reliques, the remainders of an humour.
Retraction, drawing back.
Retentive faculty, the power of nature to hold or keep its nourishment.
Reduced, brought back again.
Refractions, breaking of the presentation of visible objects.
Recruited, made up, repaired, restored.
Resolving Medicines, are such as loosen and scatter humours gathered into any part.
Repercussives, such as drive back the humours.
Relaxation, Looseness.
Refrigerating, Cooling.
Respiration, Breathing.
Reflux, flowing back again.
Recipient part, is the part which receiveth the humour offending.
Regression, is going back.
Reiterate, to repeat.
Ruption, Breaking.

S.

Sanguineous, Bloody. *Sanies*, Matter.

Saphæna, the Vein which passeth by the Ancle, on the in-side of the Foot.

Scarrification, lightly cutting the skin, to draw blood by a Cupping-glass.

Scorbutick persons, who are troubled with the Scurvey.

Situation, place or posture.

Scirrhus, a hard swelling without pain.

Serous, like Whey.

Sediment, the setling or Dregs of any thing.

Sealing a Glass, is to make the Neck red-hot and soft, and work it with a pair of Tongues till it be firm, and cannot receive, or let out the Air.

Seton, is an issue kept open with a Skein of silk.

Sincere, pure, and unmixed.

Sinews or Nerves, are small strings, which carry the faculty of Sense and Motion from the Brain all over the body.

Spurious, bastard, counterfeit, not perfect.

Spinal, belonging to the back-bone.

Sphacelus, is when the flesh and bone in any part is dead.

Spasmus, Cramp.

Speculum Oris, is an Instrument to hold open the Mouth or Throat.

Sphincture, the muscle of the Arse.

Spadarap, a cere-cloath.

Specifick, peculiar and hidden.

Stuphs, Hot-houses, stows to sweat in.

Strangulation, strangling, Choaking.

Sternon, the breast-bone.

Stupor, Dulness,

Sternutations, Medicines to provoke Sneezing.

Stupifying, benumming, taking away the sense of Feeling.

State of the Disease, is when the disease is at the height.

Suppository, is to put up into the Fundament, to loosen the Body.

Sudorifick, that causeth Sweat.

Subeth, a Dead sleep.

Superficies, the out-side of any thing.

Sutures, the seams of the head, where the skull is joyned.

Superfluous, too much, unnecessary.

Suppuration, is when the matter in an Impoſthume is inclinable to break.

Suppreſſions Stoppage.

Suffocation, Choaking.

Suffuſion, is a ſhedding abroad of Humours.

Sulphurous, pertaining to Brimſtone.

Sympathy, is fellow-feeling: a Diſeaſe is ſaid to come by ſympathy, from the diſeaſe of another; as the Stomach being foul, cauſeth pains in the Head; this comes by ſympathy.

Symptomes, are evil diſpoſitions, which accompany a diſeaſe: as heat, thirſt, want of ſleep, *&c.* are ſymptomes of a Feaver.

Syſtole, and *Diaſtole*, are the double motions of the pulſe; when the pulſe falls, contracts and ſinks under the finger, it is called *Syſtole*: The *Diaſtole* is, when the Artery riſeth, and ſtretcheth it ſelf out.

T.

Tartarous, is a matter hard and congealed, like Tartar.

Tablets, are the ſame with Lozenges.

Teſticles, the ſtones of a Man, or any male creature.

Tendons and Cords, are made of Ligaments and Nerves, that ſo the Ligaments being inſenſible, may the better ſupport the ſenſible Nerves.

Terminated, Ended.

Treble Weight, thrice the Weight.

Thorax, the Cheſt.

Tincture, is the vertue of any thing drawn by ſpirit of wine, or any other piercing Liquor.

Torpor, Numneſs.

Topical Medicines, are ſuch as are applyed outwardly.

Torrified, roaſted or toſted.

Tranſpiration, the paſſage of the Humours through the pores of the Body.

Tranſlating, carrying a Humour from one part to another.

Tranſparentneſs, Clearneſs.

Tranſverſe, Croſs.

Tumor, Swelling.

Turgent, ſwelling, working, and full of motion.

Tunicles, little Coats or Skins.

V.

Vapours, Steems which arise from the stomach and other parts to the Head.
Vertigo, a swimming in the Head.
Vesicatories, Medicines to draw Blisters.
Vertebræ, the turning bones of the Back.
Ventricles of the Brain, are the hollow places there.
Venenosity, Poysonfulness.
Vehicle, that which serves to carry.
Venery, is Lechery.
Vital Functions, are the Faculties of the Heart.
Visive Spirits, are the Spirits which nourish the sense of Seeing.
Vitreous Humor, Serves to the making up of the Eye, and is like Molten Glass.
Viscous Humors, are such as cleave and rope like Bird-lime.
Vicissitude, the following of one thing upon the neck of the other.
Ulcerated, having an ulcer or sore.
Uvea Tunica, a tunicle of the Eye, resembling the skin of a Grape.
Ureters, are the pipes which bring the Urine from the Kidneys to the Bladder.
Uvula: See *Columella*.
Unguents, Oyntments.

W.

Water-gate, the privities in Women.

The End of the Second Table.

A TABLE EXPLAINING

The Names of ſuch Simples as are unknown to the Vulgar.

Acacia is a Liquor drawn out of the Fruit of a Tree, called by that name, growing in *Egypt*, and another in *Pontus*; but more commonly it is taken for the pulp of Sloes.

Agarick, is a kind of Muſh-room that groweth upon the Larch-tree in many places of *Italy*, *Aſia*, *Sileſia*, &c.

Althæa, are Mallows which grow upon the Salt-Marſhes in this Nation.

Album Græcum, is a Dogs-turd that is white.

Aloes, is the Juyce of Sea-Houſleek; it groweth in *Arabia*, *Aſia*, *Syria*, and in the *Indies*.

Ammoniacum, is is a Gum which comes from a Plant called Fennel-Gyant growing in *Africa*, and many other places, and in *Europe*, alſo.

Ammeos, is the Herb called Biſhops-weed, growing in many places of this Nation.

Amber and *Ambergreeſe*, is taken from the Sea.

Antimony, is a Mineral.

Arſnick, is a kind of Oker.

Aſſa Fætida, is a Gum that iſſueth out of a Plant called Laſer-wort, growing in *Media*, *Syria*, *&c.*

Aſarum, is an herb vulgarly called Aſarabacca.

Balauſtines, The Flowers of Wild-Pomegranates.
Bdellium, is a Gum of a Tree called by the ſame name; it grows in *Arabia*.
Benjamin or *Benzoin*, is a Gum.
Bezoar, is a Pretious Stone.

Caſſia Fiſtula, is the Fruit of a large Tree, called the Caſſia-Tree; it groweth in long black Pods: it goweth in *Arabia*, *Ægypt*, *Syria*, *Armenia*, and in great abundance in *Hiſpaniola*.
Caper-Roots, is the Root of the Shrub that bears the Capers, we here eat for Sawce: It grows in *Arabia*, *Italy*, *Spain*, *France*, and many other places.
Caſtor, is the Beaſt called a Beaver; but moſt commonly taken for his Stones uſed in Medicine.
Calamus Aromaticus, is a ſweet-ſmelling Flag: There are many ſorts, and they grow in many places; as *Turkey*, *Ruſſia*, *Egypt*, *Judæa*, *&c.*
Camphire, is the Gum of a great Tree which groweth in *India*; that is the beſt that is white and brittle.
Calcitis, A pretious ſtone of the colour of braſs.
Cardamomes, is that which is commonly called Grains of Paradiſe; and it groweth upon a low herby Shrub in the Eaſt-Indies.
Carthamus, is a Baſtard-Saffron.
Cambugia, is a Gum, as ſome ſay, I know not.
Carabi, is Amber.
Canthárides, are flies which will draw Bliſters.
Ceruſe, is made of White-lead.
Ceers, are a kind of Peaſe ſown in Gardens.
China, is the Root of a Tree which grows not onely in *China*, but alſo in many places of the Eaſt and Weſt-Indies.
Coloquintida-Apple, is the fruit of the bitter Gourd; its narural Soil is *Barbary*, but it groweth in moſt of the Eaſtern Countries.
Colophonia, A kind of Scammony: See Scammony.
Crocus Metallorum, is made of Antimony and Salt-Peter, calcined in a crucible.
Crocus Martis, and *Crocus Veneris* are made, the firſt of Steel, the other of Copper, by the Art of Alchimy: Read *Paracelſus de rerum natur*, and many other Authors.
Cremor Tartari, Or Salt of Tartar: The operation thereof, ſee *Pharm. Dogm. Reſtit. Quære* Pag 585.
Citrons, are the Fruit of the Pome-Citron, or Citron-tree; they grow in *Spain*, &c.

Cypreſs,

Cypreſs, it is a Tree now frequently in our Gardens; its Natural Soil is the Eaſtern Countries, and the Northern parts of *America*.

Diagrydium: See Scammony.

Elaterium; is the Juyce of Wild-Cucumers dried.
Euphorbium, A Tree found by King *Juba*, and named by the name of his Phyſician.
Emblicks, are one ſort of the Mirabolans, which are ſix ſquare: They grow in the Eaſt-Indies Wild.
Epithymum, is Dodder growing upon Time.

Flos Sulphuris, is a Chymical preparation of Sulphur.
Flegm of Vitriol, is alſo made by Chymiſts.
Frankincenſe, is a Rozin.

Galanga groweth in the Eaſt-Indies.
Galbanum, is the Gum of Fennel-Gyant, which groweth in *Syria*.
Gum Tragacanth, Or Gum Dragant, iſſueth from the Root of a ſmall buſhy-plant, called Goats-beard. They grow in *Candy*, *Mabſelles*, and *Mompelier* in *France*.
Guajacum, is a Tree as big as an Oak; it grows plentifully in the Weſt-Indies. You may buy the Bark, or the Wood ground at the Druggiſts.

Hellebore, Black and White, are Herbs growing as well in this Nation, as in many places beyond the Sea.
Hermodactyls, ſome think are the Roots of a Wild-Saffron.
Hypociſtis, is a Shrub growing in *Italy*, *Spain*, *France*, and moſt hot Countries.
Hydromel, is Water and Honey mixed together.

Jallap, is a root like our Briony: it is a ſort of Mechoacan, it is called black Mechoacan. It grows in the Weſt-Indies.

Ireos, The Flower-de-luce.

Jujubes, are the Fruit of a Tree growing in *Africa*, *Egypt*, *Arabia*, *Syria*, and the moſt Eaſtern Countries.

Kermes, are the Berries of the Holm-Oak, which groweth in *Italy*, *Spain*, *France*, and many places of *Europe*: Alſo in *Aſia*, *Africa* and *America*.

Laudanum, is the Gum of one ſort of Hypociſtis, called Gum Ciſtis.

Lac Sulphuris, is a Chymical preparation of Sulphur: See page 58 of *Quercetanus's Diſpenſatory*.

Lapis Lazuli, is a Stone of a green and blew colour.

Lapis Calaminaris, They uſe it in making of Braſs; it is aſtringent, and is uſed in Eye-waters.

Lapis Hæmatitis, is a Blood-ſtone, and is like blood congealed.

Lentils, is a ſort of Pulſe growing in many places of this Nation ſome call them *French* Wheat.

Lignum Vitæ: ſee Guajacum.

Lignum Aloes, is a very odoriferous wood, and groweth in the Eaſt-Indies.

Linſeeds, is the ſeeds of Flax.

Litharge, is the Scum of Gold, Silver or Lead.

Lupines, There are ſeveral ſorts and colours of them grow in *England*; it is a kind of a Bean.

Manna, is a kind of Dew which falls upon Trees in hot Countries, like our Honey-Dews.

Mush-Mallows: See *Althæa*.

Maſtick, is the Gum of the Maſtick-Tree: it groweth in hot Countries, as well in Europe, as elſewhere, moſt plentifully, and the beſt Gum groweth in *Chio*.

Mechoacan, is whiter than Jalap, of the ſame nature.

Mercury Precipate, is a Chymical preparation of Quick-ſilver.

Mirabolans, are a kind of Plumbs growing in the Eaſt-Indies: There are five ſorts; the Citrine or Yellow, Indies or Black, Chebules or Purple, Bellericks or round, Emblick or ſix ſquared Mirabolans.

Myrrh, is a Gum.

Myrtles, Grow in *Spain*, *Portugal* and *Italy*, and are a Shrub or ſmall Tree.

Mummy, is mans fleſh prepared with Balſoms.

Nigella, is an Herb which is common in Gardens with us.

Olibanum, is Roſin like Frankincenſe.

Opopanax, the Juyce of Hercules-all-heal.

Opium,

Opium, is the Juyce of Poppies, or a Liquor dropping from them.
Oxycrate, Vinegar and Water.

Piſtachios, are the Fiſtick Nuts: they grow in the Indies, and moſt hot Countries.
Polypody, is the Fearn of an Oak.
Pomegranates, are a Fruit growing upon a Tree, ſeven or eight Cubits high, in *Granado*, *Spain*, *Portugal*, *Italy*, &c.

Ruberb is now planted in *England*, but its natural Soil *China* and the *Indies*: there are many ſorts.

Sarſaparilla, is a prickly bind-weed: that which grows at *Peru* is moſt uſeful.
Saxaphras, is a large Tree: it groweth in *Florida*, and moſt of the Weſtern Indies.
Sanders is a great Tree: it grows in the Eaſt-Indies, Brazil, the Iſland Tymor, &c. There are three ſorts, Red, White, Yellow.
Sanguis Draconis, Or Dragons blood, is the Gum of the Dragon-Tree, which groweth in the Canary Iſlands to a goodly ſtature.
Satyrimon, is a common Herb in Meadows, and is called Dogs-Stones.
Sagapenum, is the Gum of Fennel-Gyant, when it groweth in *Media*.
Sandarach, ſome call it red-Arſenick: it is found in Gold and Silver Mines.
Sarcocolla, is the Gum of a Tree growing in *Perſia*.
Senna, is the Leaves of a Tree of ſmall ſtature: it groweth in *Arabia Fœlix*, and in *Syria*.
Scammony, is the Juyce of an Herb: it is a very violent purger, and an Out-landiſh Plant.
Spodium, The Soot which riſeth in the trying of Braſs.
Spicknard, is a low Herb; it groweth in the *Indies*, *Italy*, *France*, and many other places.
Stœchas, is the Flower of Cud-weed.
Sumach, is a Forein Tree, much in uſe in Phyſick; in dying and dreſſing of Leather.

Taca-mahacca, is a Gum.
Tartar, is a ſtony ſubſtance, growing to the ſides of Wine-Veſſels.

Tama-

Tamarinds grow upon a Tree as big as a Plum-Tree, and are like a Kidney Bean-cod, full of a black ſubſtance or pulp: it groweth in *Arabia.*

Terra Sigillata, is a ſealed Earth, brought out of the Straits in little Cakes.

Thapſia, is a kind of Fenne.

Turbith, is a Root that purgeth Flegm.

Tutty, is the heavier Soil of Braſs, that ſticketh to the top of melting Furnaces.

Verdegreaſe, is the Flower of Braſs.

FINIS.

BIBLIOTHECA · BODLEIANA ·